User and Reference Manual



Copyright ©2015 Altova GmbH. All rights reserved. Use of this software is governed by an Altova license agreement. XMLSpy, MapForce, StyleVision, SchemaAgent, UModel, DatabaseSpy, DiffDog, Authentic, MissionKit, FlowForce, RaptorXML, MobileTogether, and Altova as well as their respective logos are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Altova GmbH. Protected by U.S. Patents 7,739,292, 7,200,816, and other pending patents. This software contains third party software or material that is protected by copyright and subject to other terms and conditions as detailed on the Altova website at http://www.altova.com/legal_3rdparty.html.

Altova MobileTogether Designer User & Reference Manual

All rights reserved. No parts of this work may be reproduced in any form or by any means - graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems - without the written permission of the publisher.

Products that are referred to in this document may be either trademarks and/or registered trademarks of the respective owners. The publisher and the author make no claim to these trademarks.

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this document, the publisher and the author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of information contained in this document or from the use of programs and source code that may accompany it. In no event shall the publisher and the author be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damage caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by this document.

Published: 2015

© 2015 Altova GmbH

Table of Contents

1	Altov	a MobileTogether Designer	3
2	New	Features	6
3	Intro	duction	10
3.1	Mobile'	Together Overview	11
3.2		ology Q&A	
3.3		Steps	
3.4	_	in MobileTogether	
4	Tuto	rials	22
4.1	QuickS	tart (Part 1)	24
	4.1.1	Create a New Design	25
	4.1.2	Set Up a Page	27
	4.1.3	Add a Page Data Source	28
	4.1.4	Format the Design	
	4.1.5	Add a Control: Combo Box	
	4.1.6	Add a Control: Image	
	4.1.7	Define Control Actions	
	4.1.8	Validate the Project	
	4.1.9	Run a Simulation	
	4.1.10	Deploy to Server	
4.2	_	tart (Part 2)	
	4.2.1	Load Data from a File	
	4.2.2 4.2.3	Change Source Node	
	4.2.3	Run a Simulation	
	4.2.4	Set Data File as Default File	
	4.2.5	Create Dynamic Links to Web Pages	
	4.2.7	Save Data Back to File	
4.3		se-And-Charts	
ਾ.੭	4.3.1	The Project Structure	

	4.3.2	The Main Page	71
	4.3.3	Data Sources of the Main Page	74
	4.3.4	The Combo Boxes	78
	4.3.5	The Tabular Report	81
	4.3.6	The Charts	82
	4.3.7	Edit Offices Table	87
	4.3.8	Edit Sales Table	92
4.4	SubPag	ges-And-Visibility	98
	4.4.1	Design Structure	100
	4.4.2	Data Source Listings	102
	4.4.3	Top Page: Data Sources	104
	4.4.4	Top Page: Customers Table	106
	4.4.5	Top Page: Action Group, Go to Sub Page	108
	4.4.6	Top Page: Show All Orders Action	111
	4.4.7	Sub Page: Data Sources	112
	4.4.8	Sub Page: Orders Table	114
	4.4.9	Sub Page: Visibility Property	116
	4.4.10	Sub Page: Decimal Totals in XPath	117
	4.4.11	Simulation and Testing	119
5	The	User Interface	122
5.1	Main W	Vindow	124
	5.1.1	Page Design	125
	5.1.2	DB Query	127
5.2	Pages I	Pane	128
5.3	Files Pa	ane	130
5.4	Control	s Pane	132
5.5		ources Pane	
5.6	Ū	ew Pane	
5.7		& Properties Pane	
5.8	•	ges Pane	
6		Project	144
6.1		on of Project Files	
6.2	Deployi	ing the Project	147
6.3	Project	Properties	151
6.4	Localiza	ation	156
6.5	Namesi	paces	157

6.6	Global 1	Resources	158
6.7	Perform	nance	159
	6.7.1	Embed XML in Design File	160
	6.7.2	Data Querying with XQuery 3.1	161
	6.7.3	Data Storage on Servers	162
	6.7.4	Persistent Data Storage on Clients	164
7	Data	Sources	166
7.1	Adding	Page Data Sources	168
7.2	Types	of Data Sources	169
7.3	Page S	ource Options	175
7.4	HTTP/	FTP, REST, and SOAP Requests	177
	7.4.1	HTTP/FTP Request Settings	
	7.4.2	REST Request Settings	
	7.4.3	SOAP Request Settings	188
7.5	Root N	odes	190
7.6	Page S	ource Trees	192
	7.6.1	Tree Structure	195
	7.6.2	Tree Data	197
7.7	Names	paces in the Project	200
7.8	Caches		201
7.9	Contex	t Menus	204
8	Page	e Design	218
8.1	Page P	roperties	219
8.2	Control	S	222
	8.2.1	Assertion Message	
	8.2.2	Button	229
	8.2.3	Chart	236
	8.2.4	Check Box	240
	8.2.5	Combo Box	246
	8.2.6	Date	251
	8.2.7	DateTime (iOS)	
	8.2.8	Edit Field	
	8.2.9	Horizontal Line	
	8.2.10	Image	
	8.2.11	Label	
	8.2.12	Radio Button	283

	8.2.13	Signature Field	290
	8.2.14	Space	296
	8.2.15	Switch	298
	8.2.16	Table	303
	8.2.17	Time	310
8.3	Events		315
	8.3.1	Page Events	316
	8.3.2	Control Events	318
8.4	Actions	S	320
	8.4.1	User Interactions	323
		Message Box	325
		Send Email To	326
		Send SMS To	331
		Make Call To	332
		Open URL	333
	8.4.2	Database	334
		DB Begin Transaction	335
		DB Execute	337
		DB Commit Transaction	340
		DB Rollback Transaction	341
	8.4.3	Page	342
		Go to Page	344
		Go to Subpage	345
		Close Subpage	349
		Solution Execution	350
		Scroll to Bottom	352
		Hide Keyboard	353
		Update Display	354
	8.4.4	Geolocation Services	355
		Start Geolocation Tracking	356
		Read Geolocation Data	357
		Stop Geolocation Tracking	361
		Show Geolocation on Map	362
	8.4.5	Images	364
		Let User Choose Image	365
		Save Image to File	366
	8.4.6	Miscellaneous	367
		Comment	368
		Execute On	369
	8.4.7	Update Data	370
		Update Node(s)	372

		Insert Node(s)	376
		Append Node(s)	380
		Delete Node(s)	384
	8.4.8	Page Sources	385
		Reload	387
		Load/Save File	388
		Load/Save HTTP/FTP	389
		Load from SOAP	390
		Save	392
		Reset	394
		Execute SOAP Request	395
		Execute REST Request	397
	8.4.9	If, Loop	398
		If-Then	399
		If-Then-Else	400
		Loop	401
	8.4.10	Action Groups	403
		Creating and Editing Action Groups	404
		Using Action Groups	407
8.5	Tables		408
	8.5.1	Static Tables	409
	8.5.2	Repeating Tables	411
	8.5.3	Dynamic Tables	414
	8.5.4	Table Properties	417
	8.5.5	Table Context Menu	420
8.6	Images		422
	8.6.1	Image Source	423
	8.6.2	Base64-Encoded Images	425
	8.6.3	Exchangeable Image File Format (Exif)	428
	8.6.4	Images Chosen by End User	435
	8.6.5	Transforming Images	441
	8.6.6	Images in Databases	442
8.7	Charts		443
	8.7.1	Creating and Configuring Charts	444
	8.7.2	Chart Data Selection	447
		Chart Data Selection: Simple	451
		Chart Data Selection: Flexible	456
	8.7.3	Chart Settings and Appearance	463
		Basic Chart Settings	464
		Advanced Chart Settings	470

		Dynamic XPath Settings	487
8.8	Hyperli	inking to Solutions	489
8.9	Page R	Refresh	493
8.10	Server	Connection Errors	495
9		h/XQuery: Expressions, Functions,	500
9.1	XPath/	XQuery Expressions and Functions	501
	9.1.1	Edit XPath/XQuery Expression Dialog	502
		XPath/XQuery Expression Builder	504
		XPath/XQuery Expression Evaluator	507
	9.1.2	MobileTogether Extension Functions	509
	9.1.3	User-Defined XPath/XQuery Functions	520
	9.1.4	FAQ about XPath/XQuery	523
9.2	Global	Variables	525
	9.2.1	Static Global Variables	527
	9.2.2	Dynamic Local Variables	530
	9.2.3	User Variables	533
10	Data	bases	536
10.1	DBs as	s Data Sources	538
10.2	Connec	eting to a Database	542
	10.2.1	Starting the Database Connection Wizard	
	10.2.2	Database Drivers Overview	
	10.2.3	Setting up an ADO Connection	549
		Connecting to an Existing Microsoft Access Database	
		Creating a New Microsoft Access Database	
		Setting up the SQL Server Data Link Properties	554
		Setting up the Microsoft Access Data Link Properties	555
	10.2.4	Setting up an ODBC Connection	557
		Viewing the Available ODBC Drivers	559
	10.2.5	Setting up a JDBC Connection	560
		Configuring the CLASSPATH	562
	10.2.6	Setting up a SQLite Connection	564
		Connecting to an Existing SQLite Database	565
		Creating a New SQLite Database	566
	10.2.7	Using a Connection from Global Resources	567
	10.2.8	Examples	568

		Connecting to Firebird (ODBC)	569
		Connecting to Firebird (JDBC)	572
		Connecting to IBM DB2 (ODBC)	574
		Connecting to IBM DB2 for i (ODBC)	580
		Connecting to IBM Informix (JDBC)	583
		Connecting to Microsoft Access (ADO)	585
		Connecting to Microsoft SQL Server (ADO)	587
		Connecting to Microsoft SQL Server (ODBC)	591
		Connecting to MySQL (ODBC)	594
		Connecting to Oracle (ODBC)	597
		Connecting to PostgreSQL (ODBC)	602
		Connecting to Sybase (JDBC)	604
10.3	Databas	se Connections on Linux and Mac	606
	10.3.1	SQLite connections on Linux and Mac	607
	10.3.2	JDBC connections on Linux and Mac	608
	10.3.3	Oracle Connections on Mac OS X Yosemite	609
10.4	Selectin	ng DB Objects as Data Sources	610
10.5	Editing	DB Data	613
10.6	Saving 1	Data to the DB	617
10.7	_	B Execute Action	
10.8	Display	ing DB Data	626
10.9	Databas	se Query	628
	10.9.1	GUI Overview and Toolbar	630
	10.9.2	Connecting to Data Sources	632
	10.9.3	Browser Pane	634
	10.9.4	Query Pane: Description	638
	10.9.5	Query Pane: Working With	642
	10.9.6	Results and Messages Pane	643
11	Altov	a Global Resources	646
11.1	Defining	g Global Resources	647
	11.1.1	Files	
	11.1.2	Folders	656
	11.1.3	Databases	658
11.2	Using C	Global Resources	661
	11.2.1	Assigning Files and Folders	
	11.2.2	Assigning Databases	
	11 2 3	Changing the Active Configuration	

12	Simu	lation	666
12.1	Simulati	on in MobileTogether Designer	667
12.2	Simulati	on on Server	670
12.3	Simulati	on on Client	674
12.4	Geoloca	tion Settings	676
12.5		es Pane	
13	AppS	Store Apps	684
13.1	Generat	e Program Code from Project	685
13.2		Workflow to Server	
13.3		Program Code	
	13.3.1	Android	
	13.3.2	iOS	698
	13.3.3	Windows App	699
	13.3.4	Windows Phone	702
13.4	SPL Te	mplates	703
	13.4.1	SPL Syntax	705
	13.4.2	String Mechanisms	708
	13.4.3	Properties of \$Options	710
	13.4.4	Properties of \$Application	713
	13.4.5	Miscellaneous Objects	714
14	Menu	u Commands	716
14.1	File		717
	14.1.1	New	718
	14.1.2	Open	719
	14.1.3	Reload	723
	14.1.4	Close, Close All, Close All But Active	724
	14.1.5	Save, Save As, Save Copy As, Save All	725
	14.1.6	Deploy to MobileTogether Server	730
	14.1.7	Open from MobileTogether Server	732
	14.1.8	Delete from MobileTogether Server	
	14.1.9	Generate Program Code for AppStore Apps	736
	14.1.10		
		Print	
	14.1.12	Print Preview, Print Setup	739

	14.1.13	Recent Files, Exit	741
14.2	Edit		742
	14.2.1	Undo, Redo	743
	14.2.2	Cut, Copy, Paste, Delete	744
	14.2.3	Select All	746
14.3	Project.		747
	14.3.1	Validate	748
	14.3.2	Reload Page Source Structures	749
	14.3.3	Simulate Workflow	750
	14.3.4	Trial Run on Client	751
	14.3.5	Use Server for Workflow Simulation	752
	14.3.6	Global Variables	753
	14.3.7	List Usages of All Global Variables	755
	14.3.8	List Usages of All Page Source Variables	756
	14.3.9	XPath/XQuery Functions	757
	14.3.10	List Usages of All User-Defined XPath/XQuery Functions	760
	14.3.11	Action Groups	761
	14.3.12	List Usages of All Action Groups	763
	14.3.13	Cache Overview	764
	14.3.14	Localization	765
	14.3.15	Simulation Language	771
	14.3.16	List All File and Directory References	772
	14.3.17	List All External Data References	773
	14.3.18	List Unused Functions, User Variables, and Action Groups	774
	14.3.19	Maintain OAuth Settings	775
	14.3.20	Import OAuth Settings	. 777
14.4	Page		. 778
	14.4.1	Page Actions	779
	14.4.2	Actions Overview	780
	14.4.3	Jump to Control	781
14.5	View		782
	14.5.1	Status Bar and Panes	783
	14.5.2	Zoom Levels	784
14.6	Tools		785
	14.6.1	Global Resources	
	14.6.2	Active Configuration	
	14.6.3	Customize	
		Commands	
		Toolbars	
		Keyhoard	793

	Menu	795
	Options	797
14.6.4	Restore Toolbars and Windows	798
14.6.5	Options	799
Windov	v	805
14.7.1	Cascade and Tile	806
14.7.2	Close, Close All, Close All But Active	807
14.7.3	Currently Open Window List	808
Help		809
14.8.1	Table of Contents, Index, Search	810
14.8.2	Activation, Order Form, Registration, Updates	811
14.8.3	Other Commands	813
Freq	uently Asked Questions	816
Appe	endices	820
XSLT a	and XPath/XQuery Functions	821
16.1.1	Altova Extension Functions	823
	XPath/XQuery Functions: Date and Time	824
	XPath/XQuery Functions: Geolocation	838
	XPath/XQuery Functions: Image-Related	847
	XPath/XQuery Functions: Numeric	856
	XPath/XQuery Functions: Sequence	860
	XPath/XQuery Functions: String	867
License	Information	873
16.2.1	Electronic Software Distribution	874
16.2.2	Software Activation and License Metering	875
16.2.3		
16.2.4	Altova MobileTogether Designer End User License Agreement	877
ex		885
	14.6.5 Window 14.7.1 14.7.2 14.7.3 Help 14.8.1 14.8.2 14.8.3 Freq Appe XSLT a 16.1.1	14.6.5 Options Window 14.7.1 Cascade and Tile 14.7.2 Close, Close All, Close All But Active 14.7.3 Currently Open Window List Help 14.8.1 Table of Contents, Index, Search 14.8.2 Activation, Order Form, Registration, Updates 14.8.3 Other Commands Frequently Asked Questions Kapendices XSLT and XPath/XQuery Functions 16.1.1 Altova Extension Functions XPath/XQuery Functions: Date and Time XPath/XQuery Functions: Geolocation XPath/XQuery Functions: Image-Related XPath/XQuery Functions: Sequence XPath/XQuery Functions: String License Information 16.2.1 Electronic Software Distribution 16.2.2 Software Activation and License Metering 16.2.3 Intellectual Property Rights 16.2.4 Altova MobileTogether Designer End User License Agreement

Chapter 1

Altova MobileTogether Designer

1 Altova MobileTogether Designer

MobileTogether Designer is an entirely free-to-use product for Windows machines that establishes your mobile solutions precisely the way you want them. With an easy-to-comprehend approach, you employ drag-and-drop functionality to create elegant mobile solutions. MobileTogether Designer comes equipped with a complete mobile simulator so that you can instantly simulate your mobile solution in the designer. You can also run the mobile solution directly on your mobile device to view your project in real-time.



MobileTogether Designer video demos

At the Altova website you can view <u>video demos</u> that show how to use MobileTogether Designer to build a variety of MobileTogether solutions. These videos provide a fast introduction to the powerful features of MobileTogether Designer.

This documentation

This documentation is the user manual of MobileTogether Designer. It is organized into the following sections:

- Introduction
- Tutorials
- The User Interface
- The Project
- Data Sources

- Page Design
- XPath/XQuery: Expressions, Functions, Variables
- Databases
- Altova Global Resources
- <u>Simulation</u>
- AppStore Apps
- Menu Commands
- Frequently Asked Questions
- Appendices

Current version: 2.0

Last updated: 09 November 2015

Chapter 2

New Features

2 New Features

Features that are new in MobileTogether Designer version 2.0 are listed below. These are followed by the new-features lists of previous versions.

Version 2.0

New features and updates in MobileTogether Designer Version 2.0 are listed below.

- Designers can create their own MobileTogether custom apps that end users can
 download to mobile devices. We call these apps AppStore Apps. The section <u>AppStore</u>
 <u>Apps</u> describes how to generate the program code for such apps from MobileTogether
 Designer. Code can be generated for Android, iOS, Windows (touch-enabled devices and
 PCs), and Windows Phone. After the code has been generated, it can be compiled into
 the corresponding AppStore App.
- Solutions on mobile devices can be suspended (paused and minimized). A new project property, <u>On Switch to Other Solution</u>, can be set to suspend the solution when the enduser switches to another solution. The end-user can switch back to the minimized solution by clicking its icon in the *Running* tab of MobileTogether Client. Another way to specify whether a solution is canceled or suspended is via the <u>Solution Execution</u> action.
- A <u>Signature Field</u> control enables end-user signatures to be stored as images in a data source node.
- You can define and test actions to take when server connection errors occur.
- <u>Simulations have been enhanced</u> to better emulate actions defined in the design. For example, server connection errors are simulated by an option to prevent server access.
- JSON data sources can be used as page sources.
- Page data can be accessed and saved via <u>REST requests</u>. Such data can be used in page sources, and can also be accessed or saved via page source actions.
- REST requests support <u>OAuth authorization</u>. Each design has a pool of settings that can be used anywhere in the document. The settings can be managed in the <u>Maintain OAuth</u> <u>Settings</u> dialog. Furthermore, settings can be <u>imported</u> into the active document from other open MobileTogether Designer documents.
- Page data can be accessed and saved via <u>SOAP requests</u>. Such data can be used in page sources and page source actions.
- New actions: Execute SOAP Request, Execute REST Request.
- The <u>data retention option for page sources</u> offers considerable flexibility about whether data is stored on the client or server.
- A page event, <u>OnServerConnectionError</u>, has been added.
- Two <u>dynamic</u>, <u>local variable</u>s have been added: MT_HTTPExecute_Result and MT_ServerConnectionErrorLocation.
- <u>Commands to list all files, directories, and external data sources</u> that are used in the project.
- Cells of <u>Repeating Tables</u> and <u>Dynamic Tables</u> are associated with page source nodes
 via XPath expressions, and were previously read-only. The content of such cells are now
 editable.

Version 1.5

New Features 7

New features and updates in MobileTogether Designer Version 1.5 are listed below.

- A Send Email To action enables emails to be sent during the execution of a solution.
- The MobileTogether extension function mt-email-attachment creates text and image attachments for emails that are sent with the Send Email To action.
- <u>Links can be placed in the body of emails</u> that are sent as HTML. These links can target Internet pages and MobileTogether solutions.
- The control events and page events of a solution can trigger links that go to other MobileTogether solutions. Furthermore, the URLs that point to the MobileTogether solutions can contain URL query strings, which allow specific page contents to be displayed. See Hyperlinking to Solutions.
- Hyperlinks that target solutions pass their URL query parameters to the targeted solution.
 These parameters can be stored in the smt_InputParameters global variable, from where they can be referenced.
- Three link-related MobileTogether extension functions have been added: mt-run-solution-url-parameters, and mt-run-solution-url-parameters.
- A powerful <u>Loop</u> action enables reiteration over a set of nodes, and thereby provides more design possibilities and solution functionality.
- Two other actions have been introduced: Hide Keyboard, and Update Display.
- A new radio button control has been introduced.
- The strings of a solution automatically appear in the language of a mobile device if the solution has been <u>localized</u> in that language. In this release, the default and localization strings can be <u>exported/imported between the project and separate XML files</u> for each language. This enables individual translators to work independently of each other translating the default-language strings into their different target languages. Each translated XML file can be imported separately back into the project.
- When entering the mt-load-string function in an XPath expression in the Edit XPath/
 XQuery Expression dialog, all the custom strings defined in the project are displayed in a
 popup. The value of the string in the simulation language currently selected in
 MobileTogether Designer is also displayed.
- A new function, <u>mt-localized-string-name</u>, returns the control name or string name of the submitted (localized) string.
- The <u>button</u> control has the new Button Look property that enables an icon to be added as the button display from a predefined selection of icons.
- The <u>horizontal line</u> control has the following new properties: Line Style, Margin Top, Margin Bottom.
- The width of all controls can be specified as a percentage of the page width (via the control's ControlWidth property).
- Click events have been differentiated according to how long the user clicks the control.
 Taps on the control are On Click events, while longer presses are On Long Click events. Click events are available for the following controls: Buttons, Charts, Images, and Labels.
- The <u>Insert Node(s)</u> and <u>Append Node(s)</u> actions have an option to remove the inserted/ appended node/s from their original locations in project data sources.
- Keyboard shortcuts for adding actions to the definition of an event.
- Each control in the design can have one or more class names assigned to it via its Browser CSS Class property. Rules for class selectors can be defined in an external CSS file, which must be deployed to the server. The reference to this external CSS file is defined in the project's browser settings.
- An external CSS file can be used to store additional CSS styles.
- A new dialog for a project's <u>browser settings</u> collects the settings that define the behavior
 of the browser in the client mobile device.
- Custom fonts can be embedded in a design.

- Enhancements to the XPath/XQuery Expression dialog include interactive functions-andoperators information in popups, information about global variables and custom strings.
- <u>User-Defined XPath/XQuery Functions</u> can be ordered in the ascending/descending/dialog order of function names.
- Updating server settings on client devices.

Version 1.4

New features and updates in MobileTogether Designer Version 1.4 are listed below.

- Support for geolocation retrieval and processing, which is a vital feature for transportation-based mobile solutions. <u>Actions to track, read, and display geolocation data</u> can be defined for events. Additionally, <u>Altova XPath extension functions for manipulating geolocation data</u> can be used in the design's XPath expressions. Geolocations can also be <u>set for designer and server simulations</u> so that geolocation input can be tested in the simulator.
- Support for XQuery 3.1, which provides new features for using maps, arrays, data in the JSON format, and more. You can use the <u>Edit XPath/XQuery Expression Dialog</u> to create and check XQuery expressions.
- <u>String localization</u> (translation into additional languages) enables translations of the strings of a solution to be stored with a project. The language in which the solution runs is automatically selected to be the same as that of the mobile device. You can test localized solutions by running simulations in a specific language.
- Specific headers can now be added to HTTP requests. This is in addition to parameters that can be specified in the HTTP request.
- Solutions can be chained to execute one after the other. The next solution to execute is specified in an option of the Cancel Solution action. [The Cancel Solution action is obsolete since v2.0; it is superseded by the <u>Solution Execution</u> action.]
- <u>Simulations</u> have been enhanced for iOS7/8 rendering and for <u>XML tree editing</u>. Being
 able to modify the XML tree in the simulator and see the resulting changes immediately in
 the simulation speeds up testing.
- The <u>Project menu</u> contains commands to show: (i) <u>used global and page source</u> <u>variables</u>; (ii) <u>used user-defined XPath/XQuery functions</u>; (iii) <u>used action groups</u>; (iv) as well as <u>unused variables</u>, <u>functions</u>, <u>and action groups</u>. This improves the maintenance and development of large, complex solutions.

Chapter 3

Introduction

3 Introduction

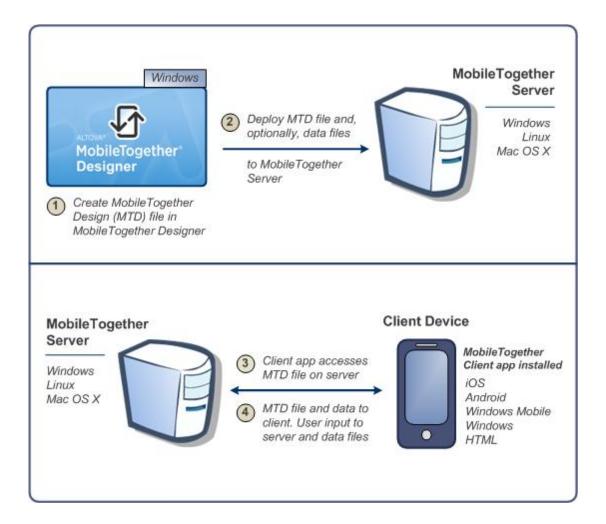
This section provides an overview of MobileTogether and MobileTogether Designer. It contains the following sections:

- MobileTogether Overview
- Terminology Q&A
- Design Steps
- XPath in MobileTogether

3.1 MobileTogether Overview

MobileTogether consists of the following modules:

- MobileTogether Designer, in which MobileTogether solutions for mobile clients (MTD files with the extension .mtd) are created. These MobileTogether solutions are then uploaded to MobileTogether Server.
- MobileTogether Server, which serves MobileTogether solutions to mobile clients.
- MobileTogether Client apps (for iOS, Android, Windows Phone 8, Windows RT, Windows Metro, web clients, web-based smartphones/tablets), on which the end user receives and interacts with MobileTogether solutions (.mtd files) delivered by MobileTogether Server.



System requirements

MobileTogether Designer

Windows XP (SP2 for x64, SP3 for x86), Vista, 7, 8, 10	Windows	XP (SP2 for x64, SP3 for x86), Vista, 7, 8, 10
----------------------------------------------------------	---------	------------------------------------------------

Windows Server	2008 R2 or newer

▼ MobileTogether Server

Windows	XP (SP2 for x64, SP3 for x86), Vista, 7, 8, 10
Windows Server	2008 R2 or newer
Linux	 CentOS 6 or newer RedHat 6 or newer Debian 6 or newer Ubuntu 12.04 or newer
Mac OS X	10.8 or newer

▼ MobileTogether Client

iOS	6 and higher for Apple mobile devices
Android	4.0 and higher for Android mobile devices
Windows Mobile	Windows Phone 8 for Windows phones
Windows RT, Metro	Windows 8, 10; Windows RT for Windows touch- enabled PCs and tablet computers
HTML	HTML browsers for any other mobile devices

Introduction Terminology Q&A 13

3.2 Terminology Q&A

How does the MobileTogether system work?

• In MobileTogether Designer, you create MobileTogether Design files (MTD files), which have the file extension .mtd.

- These files are deployed to a <u>MobileTogether Server</u>, from where they are served to the mobile client device as MobileTogether solutions.
- The data files that are used to populate the design template/s in the MTD file may reside at their original locations or can be deployed to MobileTogether Server together with the MTD file.
- On the mobile client, the <u>end user</u> can view reports presented in a format defined in the MTD file. End users can also update data files from their mobile client devices (via MobileTogether solutions).

What's in an MTD file and in a MobileTogether project?

- An MTD file is a native MobileTogether Designer document.
- Each MTD file contains one MobileTogether project.
- A MobileTogether project consists of one or more <u>pages</u>. A page is what the end user sees on the mobile client device.
- If there is more than one page in the MTD file, then these pages are connected to one
 another in a simple sequence, with the first page leading to the next, and so on, till the
 last page is reached. (The order can be changed by setting <u>page actions</u> when <u>page or</u>
 <u>control events</u> are triggered.)
- <u>Sub-pages</u> can also be defined, and these can be accessed from within main pages with the GoToSubpage action.

What does a page consist of?

- A page consists of <u>page controls (also called 'controls' for short)</u>, formatted for viewing on the mobile client device and set up for user-interaction.
- Each control has different properties. These properties define associated content, formatting, and action/s to perform when an <u>event of a control (control event, for short)</u> is triggered.
- For each page, a set of data sources can be defined in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> of that page.
- The content associated with a control can come from one (or more) of these <u>data</u> <u>sources</u>. Such data is accessed using the XPath or XQuery language.
- Via its controls, therefore, a page presents data to the end user and can accept modifications to its data sources.

What are the different kinds of events and actions in a design?

14 Introduction Terminology Q&A

• <u>Control events</u> and their actions: Each control on a page can have events that trigger actions you can specify. For example, the combo box control has the OnFinishEditing event, which occurs when an item from the dropdown list of the combo box is selected. This event can be defined by you to trigger a desired action, such as changing data as a result of the combo box selection.

<u>Page events</u> and their actions: The page itself (as a single entity) can be associated with
events that trigger actions. For example, OnPageLoad is a page event. This event can be
defined by you to trigger a desired action, such as loading data into the page from a
certain data file.

Introduction Design Steps 15

3.3 Design Steps

Given below is a broad outline, in steps, of how to create a MobileTogether Design file (MTD file).

1. Create a new MTD file

Each MTD file represents a project consisting of one or more pages in a simple sequence. When a new MTD file is created, it has one default page that has no data source. You can add data sources to the default page, and you can add more pages to the project (see the points below). Create a new MTD file with the File | New command. The file is created in memory and must be saved with the File | Save command to store it on disk. Define Project Properties and specify other project-related settings.

2. Add data sources for the page (page sources)

Each page is assigned data sources, from which it obtains the data that will be displayed in the page. The data sources of a page are added via the Page Sources
Pane
and are shown there as a tree of nodes. Data from these nodes is used by the controls in the page design, for display, or for processing that leads to some kind of data representation (such as charts or images). Nodes in data source trees are addressed using XPath expressions. Client data input can also be saved back to the data sources if desired. See the section Page Sources for details.

3. Add controls to the page, and define their properties and event-actions

Page controls are added to a page from the <u>Controls Pane</u>. Each control has a set of properties (defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>) and data (from the <u>data source trees</u>) associated with it. A control can also have one or more predefined events. You can specify the action/s to be performed when a control event is triggered. For example, a button control has the event <code>OnButtonClicked</code>, and this event can have an <code>Open URL</code> action associated with it. For more information, see the sections <u>Events</u> and <u>Actions</u>. Additionally, pages also have events, and you can specify actions to perform when a page event is triggered. For example, when a page is loaded (a page event), an action can be specified that loads data from a specified XML file into a given page data source.

4. If required, add more pages to the project and design these

Additional pages can be added to the initial page. A new page can be added as a top page or a sub page by clicking the **Add Page** icon in the <u>Page Pane's toolbar</u>. The sequence of top pages in the <u>Pages Pane</u> determines the sequence of the workflow.

5. Create a flow between top pages and sub pages

You can further structure the solution's workflow by using sub pages. These are accessed from within top pages with the GoToSubpage action (of control or page events). Other page-related actions provide for more movement between pages.

16 Introduction Design Steps

6. Optionally, add additional design and user-related functionality to the project After all the pages have been added and the structure of the workflow has been finalized, you can revise your page designs and workflow. Any additional design components or actions can be inserted in the project now.

7. Run a simulation of the MobileTogether solution

You can test the design by running a <u>workflow simulation</u> within MobileTogether Designer. The simulation shows (in MobileTogether Designer itself) how the workflow will be executed on the client device. Select **Project | Simulate Workflow** or press **F5** to start the simulation. The <u>Messages Pane</u> provides a detailed and step-by-step report of workflow activity, enabling effective and easy debugging.

8. Deploy the MTD file to MobileTogether Server

After making final changes and re-testing the file, save it, and then <u>deploy it</u> to MobileTogether Server. The MobileTogether solution is now ready to be accessed by mobile client devices.

9. Optionally, create the solution as an AppStore App

You can create a MobileTogether custom app that end users can download to mobile devices. We call these apps AppStore Apps. The section AppStore Apps describes how to generate the program code for such apps from your MobileTogether Designer project. Code can be generated for Android, iOS, Windows (touch-enabled devices and PCs), and Windows Phone. After the code has been generated, it can be compiled into the corresponding AppStore App.

3.4 XPath in MobileTogether

The XPath language plays a crucial part in the design of MobileTogether solutions. XPath is used to locate, access, manipulate, generate, and save data in the various data trees used in the design and to define the functioning of different design components. Some important ways in which XPath is used in a MobileTogether design are given below. This overview is intended to give you a broad sense of the flexibility and power of XPath and of how XPath is used in MobileTogether designs.

For more information about XPath, see the XPath 3.1 Recommendation of the W3C, which is the latest version of the language available and is the version supported by MobileTogether Designer. To get you started using a more learning-based approach, see the following:

- Altova's A Gentle Introduction to XPath
- Altova's XPath 3.0 Training
- W3C's XPath Tutorial

Locator expressions

The locator expressions of the XPath language are used to locate nodes in XML trees. A locator expression typically consists of a path that locates the required node. Here are some examples:

- /Company/Office: Locates all Office child elements of the Company element, which is
 the top-level document node. We know that the Company element is the top-level
 element because it occurs directly under the root node, which is indicated by the first
 forward slash.
- /Company/Office[3]: Locates the third Office child element of the Company element.
- /Company/Office[3]/@location: Locates the location attribute of the third Office child element of the Company element.
- //Office[@location='US']: Locates all Office elements that have a location attribute having a value of US.

The list above shows just a few basic locator expressions. There are many more ways in which locator expressions can be constructed.

Operators

Operators allow you to apply filters, build conditions, and manipulate selections and data. For example, here are just two operators:

- if (Selection='US') then //Office[@location='US'] else //
 Office[@location!='US']: This if operator selects US or non-US offices depending
 on the content of the Selection child element.
- for \$i in //Office return \$i[@location='US']: This for operator returns all Office elements that have a location attribute having a value of US.

XPath functions

XPath functions enable the manipulation, calculation, and generation of data. For example, a function can take a string as input (the function's argument), and convert into lowercase or even remove a part of the string. The XPath functions that can be used in MobileTogether designs are of the following types:

■ Built-in functions

The XPath language contains a large library of built-in functions which enable you to extract data as well as metadata related to the XML tree, and even to generate data. For example:

- count(Office): Returns the number of Office child elements.
- day-from-date("2015-04-26"): Returns the number 28, which is the day part of the function's date argument.

User guides and references for the built-in functions are widely available on the Internet. A full list of the functions can be found in the XPath 3.1 Recommendation of the W3C.

Altova extension functions

This is a set of of XPath extension functions that Altova is developing to provide developers with more functionality in XPath. There are currently some <u>60 extension functions</u>, ranging from functions that provide geolocation information to those that convert integers to hexadecimal strings and vice-versa. For example:

- format-geolocation(33.33, -22.22, 2) returns the xs:string "33.33N 22.22W"
- hex-string-to-integer('1') returns 1

Altova extension functions are available for use in all MobileTogether designs. For usage information, see the <u>Altova Extension Functions</u> section in the MobileTogether Designer user manual.

■ MobileTogether extension functions

These are XPath extension functions developed by Altova for specific uses in MobileTogether designs. For example:

- mt-has-server-access(10) returns true if server access is possible within the time in seconds that is specified as the argument of the function, false otherwise.
- mt-load-string('MyCourier') returns the localized MyCourier string that is stored in the solution's string pool. The language of the localization is selected automatically according to the language of the mobile device.

MobileTogether extension functions are available for use in all MobileTogether designs. For usage information, see the MobileTogether Extension Functions section in the MobileTogether Designer user manual.

■ User-defined extension functions

These are XPath extension functions that you, the user, can define in a design for some special purpose you have in mind and for which no suitable function exists in the function libraries listed above. For example, you might want to define a function to convert temperatures between the Celsius and Fahrenheit scales. User-defined functions are defined within a single MobileTogether project and are used in that specific project. How to define such custom functions is described in the User-Defined XPath/XQuery Functions section of the MobileTogether Designer user manual.

Global variables

Global variables contain information about the client mobile device. For example, there is one variable to indicate the device's type, another to indicate its dimensions, and yet another to indicate the device's current orientation (landscape or portrait), and so on. The values of all these variables are obtained at run-time from the client device as part of standard mobile communication procedures. Variables can then be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. As a result, processing can be specified that is conditional upon a device's inherent static properties (such as size) or its changeable dynamic properties (such as orientation).

MobileTogether's global variables are predefined and are listed in the section <u>Global Variables</u> together with each variable's description and possible values. The example below of the $\mathtt{MT_iPad}$ global variable (possible values: $\mathtt{true}() \mid \mathtt{false}()$) shows how global variables are called in XPath expressions. The symbol is used to indicate that what follows is the name of a global variable, which is the usual way to indicate variables in XPath.

```
if ( $MT_iPad=true() ) then "Apple" else ""
```

Chapter 4

Tutorials

4 Tutorials

This section contains tutorials that will guide you through the basic steps needed to create a MobileTogether design, as well as help you to understand more advanced MobileTogether features.

- The QuickStart Tutorials takes you through the basics, all the way up to deploying the MTD file and associated files on MobileTogether Server.
- The <u>Database-And-Charts tutorial</u> uses a finished design file to explain how to work with databases and how to create charts.
- The <u>SubPages-And-Visibility</u> tutorial shows you how to open a sub page from a top page, and how to filter the display of a data structure using the Visible property.

Finished design files, as well as the data sources and image files used in the tutorials, are available in the *(My) Documents* folder: Altova\MobileTogetherDesigner1\MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials.

We strongly recommend that you create the folder C:\MobileTogether and then copy all the files that are in the Tutorials folder to the C:\MobileTogether folder. This is because the supplied design files (.mtd files) use absolute URLs to target resources in the C:\MobileTogether folder. It is therefore best to save all the tutorial files together in the C:\MobileTogether folder.

After you have completed the tutorials, you could open the more advanced example design files (.mtd files) in the MobileTogetherDesignerExamples folder. These examples show how various features of MobileTogether Designer can be used, and so can be used as reference points for your own designs.

File paths in Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, and Windows 8

File paths given in this documentation will not be the same for all operating systems. You should note the following correspondences:

 (My) Documents folder: Located by default at the following locations. Example files are located in a sub-folder of this folder.

Windows XP	C:\Documents and Settings\ <username>\My Documents</username>
Windows Vista, Windows 7/8	C:\Users\ <username>\Documents</username>

• Application folder: The Application folder is the folder where your Altova application is located. The path to the Application folder is, by default, the following.

Windows XP	C:\Program Files\Altova\
Windows Vista, Windows 7/8	C:\Program Files\Altova\
32 bit Version on 64-bit OS	C:\Program Files (x86)\Altova\

Tutorials 23

File URLs in example files

File URLs in example files might be absolute URLs. In such cases, they will probably not correspond to the directory structures of your work environment. If you use the supplied example files, make sure that file URLs in

them—and any XPath expressions that build such URLs—point to the correct file locations on your machine or network.

24 Tutorials QuickStart (Part 1)

4.1 QuickStart (Part 1)

This QuickStart tutorial guides you through the basic steps of creating a MobileTogether design for a MobileTogether solution. The solution displays the splash screen of an Altova product which the end user selects in a combo box. The tutorial shows you how to set up a page, its data source, how to add controls, and make the display of the splash screen conditional upon end-user input. It also explains validation, how to deploy the design file to MobileTogether Server, and how to run simulations. After you have finished with this QuickStart tutorial, you should have a good understanding of the broad working principles of MobileTogether designs. You will then be ready to tackle more complex designs.

This tutorial is organized into the following sections, each of which deals with one key aspect of creating a MobileTogether design.

- Create a New Design
- Set Up a Page
- Add a Page Data Source
- Format the Design
- Add a Control: Combo Box
- Add a Control: Image
- Define Control Actions
- Validate the Project
- Run a Simulation
- Deploy to Server

The tutorial files

The files for this tutorial are located in your (My) Documents MobileTogether folder:

MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\. You can save the splash screen image files that are used in the tutorial to any other location and use them from there if you like.

- The file you will end with should be similar to: QuickStart01.mtd
- The image files used in the tutorial are the *.bmp files in the folder

Create a New Design

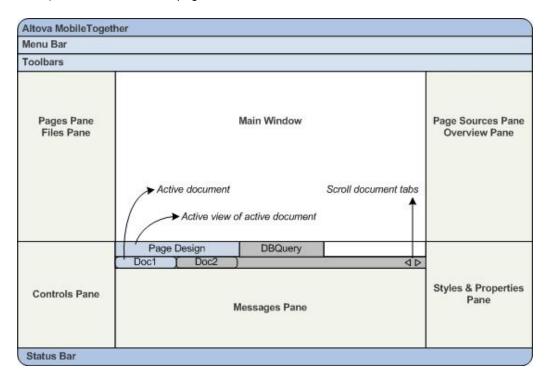
In this part, you will:

- Create a new MobileTogether design
- Save the design to file
- Set up the design's preview properties: the preview device and magnification level
- Familiarize yourself with the GUI of MobileTogether Designer

A MobileTogether design is created in an MTD (MobileTogether Design) file, which has the .mtd extension and is native to MobileTogether Designer.

To create a new MobileTogether design, do the following:

1. Click **File | New**. This opens a new design file in the main window of the GUI (*figure below*). It will have a default page called New Page1.



- 2. The new design will be in a tab called New Design1. Click **File | Save**, and save the file with any name to any location you like. Make sure, however, that you save your design file in the same folder as the splash screen images. (Since your design, when complete, will show the splash screens of Altova products, you could, for example, call it AltovaSplashScreens.mtd.) The new file name, which will have a .mtd extension, replaces New Design1 in the file's tab. The file name also appears in the application's title bar.
- 3. In the <u>Main toolbar of MobileTogether Designer</u>, you can select your **preview device** and set the **magnification** of the design. Select the options you want. Since mobile devices have different background colors and dimensions, selecting an appropriate preview device

will help you visualize your design better. You can change the preview device at any time if you wish to visualize the design on another device. Note that these settings will also be applied to simulations.

- 4. Familiarize yourself with the Main Window and its tabs, and with the different panes that are located around the main window. The user interface is described in the section, The User Interface.
- 5. Switch between the <u>Page Design</u> and <u>DB Query</u> tabs of the <u>Main Window</u>, and see how the contents of the panes change.

Set Up a Page

A MobileTogether design can consist of one or more pages. A page is what the end-user sees on the mobile client device. If there are multiple pages in a design, the page sequence is defined by their sequential order in the Pages Pane. Within a page, controls can be set to go to sub pages (that typically contain reusable modules). In this part of the tutorial, in order to keep things simple, we will create a project that has only one page. For more information about pages, see the description of the Pages Pane.

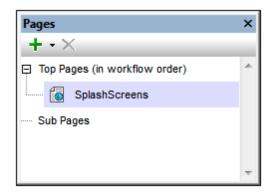
We are building a design that has one page. In this part, you will:

- Give the default page a name
- Add a label control so as to display a title for the page
- Format this label

Page name and the label control

Give the default page of the new design a name as follows:

1. In the <u>Pages Pane</u> (screenshot below), double-click New Page1 and rename it to <u>SplashScreens</u>.



- From the <u>Controls Pane</u>, drag and drop the <u>Label control</u> into the design. The control will be placed at the top of the page. A red exclamation mark appears in the control when you click anywhere outside the control. On hovering over the exclamation mark, a message is displayed, warning that the label has no content.
- 4. In the Table toolbar, click **Center** to center the text. Then click **Text Color** and/or **Background Color** (also in the Table toolbar) if you wish to set these properties.
- 5. With the <u>Label control</u> selected, the label's properties are displayed in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>. If you like, modify any of the <u>label's formatting properties</u> available in this pane, such as the margin-bottom property to create empty space below the label.

Add a Page Data Source

You have so far created a page and given it a title. In this part, you will:

- Add an empty XML data source for this page
- Since this data source has neither structure or content, create structure and content directly in the Page Sources Pane
- Set a default XPath context node
- Buttons in this section

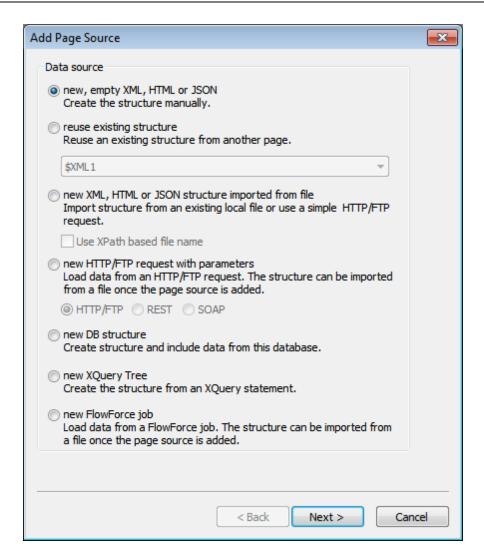


Add Source

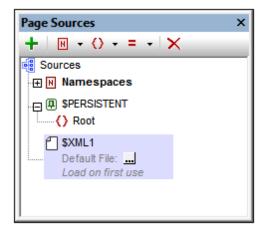
A page can have one or more data sources from where data can be obtained. Data sources are defined in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> and can be specified to be read-only or editable. They can be external sources, or can be created directly in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> and contain static data. The types of data sources that can be used are described in the section <u>Data Sources</u>. In this tutorial, we will add one type of data source, an editable empty XML source, for which we will then create a structure and content directly in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u>.

To add the data source for the page, do the following:

1. Click the **Add Source** button in the toolbar of the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> to display the Add Page Source dialog (*screenshot below*).

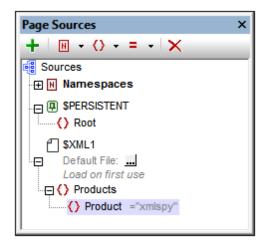


- 2. Select New, empty XML, and click Next.
- 3. In the next screen, keep the default settings (*XML*, *Editable*, *Data is copied to client*, *Load data on first use*), and click **OK**. (When a data source is created as editable, data in it can be modified.) A root node called sxml1 is added to the Page Sources tree in the Page Sources Pane (*screenshot below*).



4. Notice that the XML tree with the root node \$xml1 is empty. Right-click \$xml1 and select Add Child | Element, then enter the element name, Products.

- 5. Add a child element to Products (by right-clicking it and selecting **Add Child** | **Element**), and name the child element Product. If you wish to rename the elements, double-click the element names and edit them.
- 6. Right-click the Product element, select Ensure exists on load (fixed value), then enter xmlspy (see screenshot below). This will be the Product element's default content when the page loads.



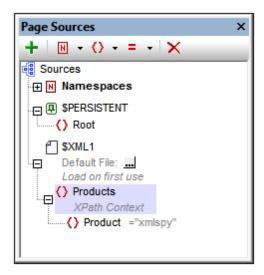
Notice that there is no default XML file assigned to \$XML1. A default file would provide the data that goes into the nodes of the data source's tree. The data provided by a default file can be overridden by data that is manually entered in a tree node. In our case, there is a single data node: \$XML1/Products/Product, and it has the string xmlspy as its default content. The XML data structure is:

```
<Products>
    <Product>xmlspy</Product>
</Products>
```

Set a Page XPath Context Node

Each page has a Page XPath Context Node, which is used as the context node for relative XPath expressions defined on that page. The Page XPath Context Node is indicated in the Page Sources Pane with the label XPath Context (see screenshot below). Note that each page has its own Page XPath Context Node.

We will change the Page XPath Context Node to the Products node. Do this by right-clicking Products and selecting **Set As Page XPath Context**. The element Products will be set as the Page XPath Context Node—this is indicated by the node being labeled XPath Context (see screenshot below).



Note: If you wish, in your XPath expression, to reference a node in a data source tree other than that of the Page XPath Context Node, use an absolute path to that node, starting with the root node of that tree. For example: sxml2/someRootElement/someOtherElement.

Format the Design

The design page now has a name (<u>SplashScreens</u>), a display title (<u>Altova Splash Screens</u>), and a data source (<u>\$XML1</u>). In this part, you will:

- Add a Table control for presentation purposes
- Add formatting: the horizontal line control, spacing, and color
- Copy-paste controls to other parts of the design

Add a table

We will add a table for presentation purposes.

- 1. From the <u>Controls Pane</u>, drag the <u>Table control</u> into the design and drop it below the label.
- 2. In the New Table dialog that appears, specify that the table should have two static columns and one static row, and then click **OK**. The table is created with a single row and two columns.
- 3. From the <u>Controls Pane</u>, drag and drop the <u>Label control</u> into the left-hand cell, and give it a static text value of <u>Altova Product</u> (see screenshot below, which shows the table highlighted).



Add a horizontal line, spacing, and color

Add a horizontal line to separate the title from the table as follows:

1. From the <u>Controls Pane</u>, drag and drop the <u>Horizontal Line control</u> between the title and the table (see screenshot below, the horizontal line is dark blue).



- 2. With the line selected in the design, in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, set the color and width of the line.
- 3. Copy the line, by selecting it and pressing **Ctrl+C**, and paste it below the table (using **Ctrl+V**). The line will be copied with all the properties that you defined for it.
- 4. You can change the background color of the label, the table, and individual table cells. Try this by placing the cursor in the respective components, and selecting different

- background colors in the Styles & Properties Pane.
- 5. Select the label control and set Margin Top and Margin Bottom properties in the Styles & Properties Pane.

6. Try copying different components to various parts of the design.

Add a Control: Combo Box

We will add a combo box to the right-hand cell of the table you created in the previous section. We will then define the properties of the combo box. A combo box needs two important property definitions:

- The combo box values: These values will populate the dropdown list of the combo box and provide the options the user can choose (visible entries). Each visible entry will have a corresponding XML value that will go into the associated XML node.
- The associated XML node: This data source node is synced with the combo box selection. It receives its value from the combo box selection. Its initial value determines the initial combo box selection.
- Buttons in this section



Additional Dialog

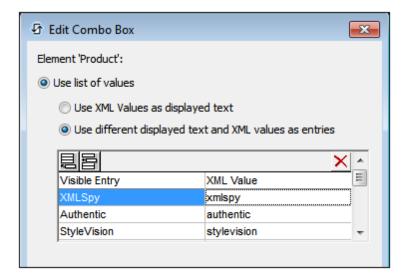
Add a combo box

Add the combo box and define its properties as follows:

1. From the <u>Controls Pane</u>, drag and drop the <u>Combo Box control</u> into the right-hand cell of the table (see screenshot below).



- 2. Drag the Product node from the Page Sources Pane, and drop it on to the combo box. This associates the Product node with the combo box, and creates what we call a source node. When the end user selects an option from the combo box, the XML value of the selected option will be passed to the Product node and will become the Product node's content.
- 3. To define the dropdown list items of the combo box, select the combo box, and, in the Styles & Properties Pane, click the **Additional Dialog** button of the Combo Box Entry Values property. The Edit Combo Box dialog (screenshot below) appears.



- 4. Select *Use list of values*, and then *Use different text and XML values*. Enter values for the visible entry (which is what will appear in the dropdown list of the combo box) and for the corresponding XML value (which is what will be written into the Product node). When we add the Image control, you will find out why we want the XML values lowercased. (Hint: The image names are lowercased, for example, xmlspy.bmp.) You can add up to nine Altova products to this list in any order you like: XMLSpy, Authentic, StyleVision, MapForce, DiffDog, DatabaseSpy, MobileTogether, SchemaAgent, UModel.
- 5. Select the *Sort values* check box at the bottom of the dialog to sort the list when it is displayed, and click **OK** to finish.

When the completed solution is executed or a <u>simulation of the completed project is run</u>, the dropdown list of the combo box (*screenshot below*) will display the values listed in the *Visible Entry* column definitions (*see screenshot above*).



The objective of our project is this: When the end user selects an entry from the dropdown list, the XML value corresponding to that entry (see screenshot of the combo box definition above) will be passed to the Product node of the data source. Note that the default content of Product is xmlspy (defined when the node was created). We can then use the value in the Product node to build the URL of the splash screen image to display. We will do this in the next part of the tutorial, Add a Control: Image.

Add a Control: Image

We will now add an image to the design. This image will be the splash screen of the Altova product that the end user selects in the combo box ($\underline{see\ previous\ section}$). The most important property of an image is the Image URL property, which selects the image to display. The URL we will build is a relative URL that looks for the image file in the same folder as the design file. You could, of course, use an absolute file URL or an image at an Internet location.

In this part, you will:

- Add an image control
- Define the Image URL property using an XPath expression that allows the URL to change
 dynamically with the combo box selection. The images referred to in this tutorial are
 located in the folder, MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials, located in your
 MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials, located in your
 MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials, located in your
- Buttons in this section



XPath

Add an image

Add the image and define its properties as follows:

- 1. From the Controls Pane, drag and drop the Image control below the table.
- 2. In the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, name the image by setting its Name property to Image: SplashScreen.
- 3. Select the Image source property, and click the **XPath** button in the toolbar of the Styles & Properties Pane. This displays the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog.
- 4. Enter the XPath expression: concat(Product, '.bmp'), and click OK.

This XPath expression produces a **relative URL** that locates a .bmp file in the same folder as the design file. You should specify the location that is correct for you, that is, the location where the image files have been saved. If you need to, you can use an absolute URL (see example below). The filename (for example, xmlspy) is obtained from the Product node, which in turn gets its content from the selection that the end user makes in the combo box. The default value of the Product node was set to xmlspy, so the XPath expression and starting image URL will be as below:

```
This XPath expression: concat(Product, '.bmp')

Produces this absolute URL: xmlspy.bmp
```



When the end user selects a product from the dropdown list of the combo box (see screenshot above), say MobileTogether, the splash screen of MobileTogether will be displayed (screenshot below). This is because the XML value corresponding to the MobileTogether selection is mobiletogether. This XML value is passed to the Product node, and it is used in the XPath expression to dynamically build the relative image URL: mobiletogether.bmp.



To ensure that the image is reloaded whenever a combo box selection is made, a Reload action

must be set on the combo box. How to do this is described in the next section, $\frac{\text{Define Control}}{\text{Actions}}$.

Define Control Actions

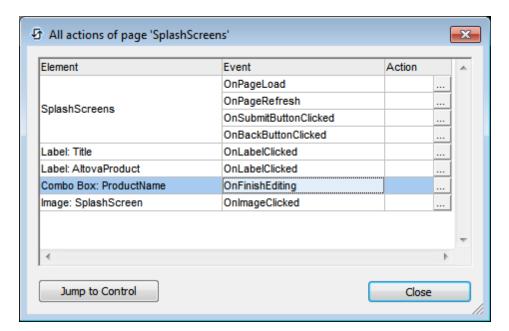
Control actions define what action a control takes in response to an event such as a button click or combo box selection. Actions that can be taken include: updating data nodes, reloading or saving page sources, or executing database commands.

In this part, you will:

- · Look at all the page actions and control actions defined for the page
- Add a combo box action that updates the image whenever the combo box is edited

Overview of page actions

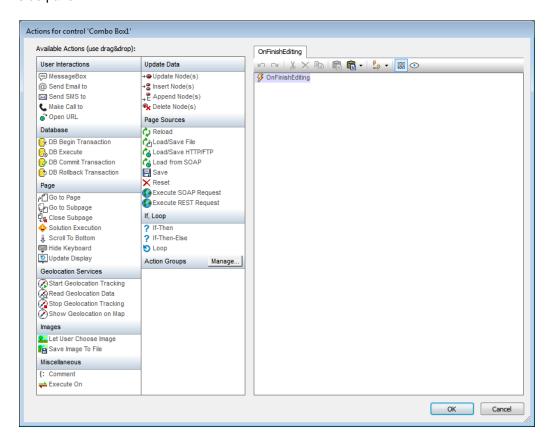
To go to an overview of all actions of the SplashScreens page, click Page | Actions Overview. The Page Actions Overview dialog (screenshot below) appears. It displays all the events and their actions as currently defined for the page. The display includes page events and control events, and their respective actions. The SplashScreens element in the screenshot below refers to the page; all the other elements are the different controls of the page design. You can see that there is currently no action defined for any event.



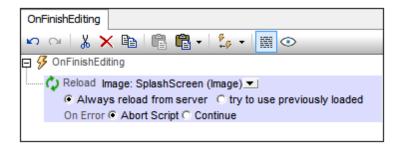
Define the Reload action on the combo box control

Defining a control action consists of two parts: (i) selecting the control event that triggers the action; and (ii) specifying the action to perform when the event occurs. In our example, we want to do the following: When the end user makes a combo box selection, the image must be reloaded. This is because we want the image URL to be re-evaluated with the new value of the Product node (selected in the combo box). So, when combo box editing is finished, we want the *Reload* action to reload the image. Define this combo box event-and-action as follows.

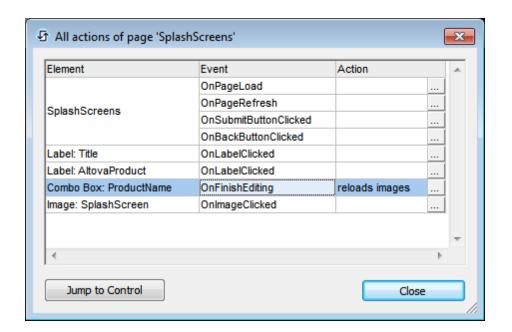
 Right-click the XML:Product combo box and select Control Actions on OnFinishEditing. This opens the Control Actions dialog for the combo box (screenshot below). There is only one combo box event: onFinishEditing (see the right-hand-side pane). If additional events were available they would be shown as additional tabs of the right-hand pane. All the available actions for events are listed, in groups, in the left-handside pane.



- 2. Drag the **Reload** action from the Page Sources group and drop it in the **onFinishEditing** tab (*screenshot below*). This specifies that a reload action must be carried out when the combo box has been edited.
- Click the drop-down arrow (next to \$XML1), select Image: SplashScreen, and click OK.
 This specifies that the image control will be updated when the combo box value is changed.



If you now check the Page Actions Overview dialog, you will see that a *Reloads Image* action is defined for the combo box's <code>OnFinishEditing</code> event.



Validate the Project

Now that the design of the page is complete, you should validate the project (**Project | Validate**) to check for errors. On validating, you will get a message saying that there are no errors or warnings.

- Warnings indicate design issues that might need your attention, but these issues are not fatal and will not prevent the solution from running.
- An error message, on the other hand—as opposed to a warning—would be fatal and should be remedied.

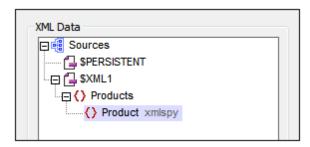
Note: A number of messages in the Messages window can be expanded to reveal more detail, and often contain clickable links that provide more information.

Run a Simulation

You can run a simulation of the project workflow directly within MobileTogether Designer. The simulation device will be the device currently selected in the <u>preview device combo box</u> of the Main toolbar. You can change the preview device to see the simulation on different devices. To run the simulation, select **Project | Simulate Workflow** or **F5**. This opens the simulator and starts the simulation.



The XMLSpy splash screen is displayed because the default value of **Product** was set to **xmlspy**. You can see this in the XML Data pane on the right if you expand the \$XML1 node (screenshot below).



Now, in the simulation, click the combo box to display its dropdown list (screenshot below).



Select a product from the list and notice how the image and value of the **Product** node changes. (Note that, for iOS devices, you will need to press **Set** to confirm selections.)



After you have finished, click **Close** or press **Esc** to close the simulator.

Running a server simulation

A server simulation uses MobileTogether Server to run the simulation (**Project | Use Server for Workflow Simulation**). In the Web UI of MobileTogether Server, you must set the solution's working directory (**Settings | Server Side Solution's Working Directory**, see screenshot below). All relative paths in the design will be resolved relative to the directory specified in this setting. In order for server simulation to work correctly, enter the path of the directory where your referenced files are saved. The directory setting shown in the screenshot (C:\MobileTogether\) means that both the design and image files must be in the folder C:\MobileTogether\\ (since the relative image URLs in the design indicate that the image files are to be found in the same directory as the design).

Server side solution's working directory:

Directory:

C:\MobileTogether\

Specify the server side directory where solution's files can be saved. It is also used as the base for resolving solution's relative paths.

Deploy to Server

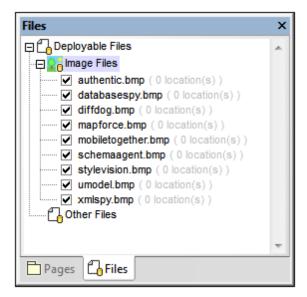
After you have successfully validated the project and tested the simulations, you are ready to deploy the project to MobileTogether Server. When the project is deployed to the server, it becomes a solution that a MobileTogether Client app can run. For more information about deploying the project and files, see the sections Deploying the Project and Location of Project Files.

In order to deploy the project to MobileTogether Server, you will need to access the server as a user having the privilege, *Save Workflow from Designer*. The access rights of users of MobileTogether Server are defined in the Web UI of MobileTogether Server. See the MobileTogether Server user manual for information about setting user privileges.

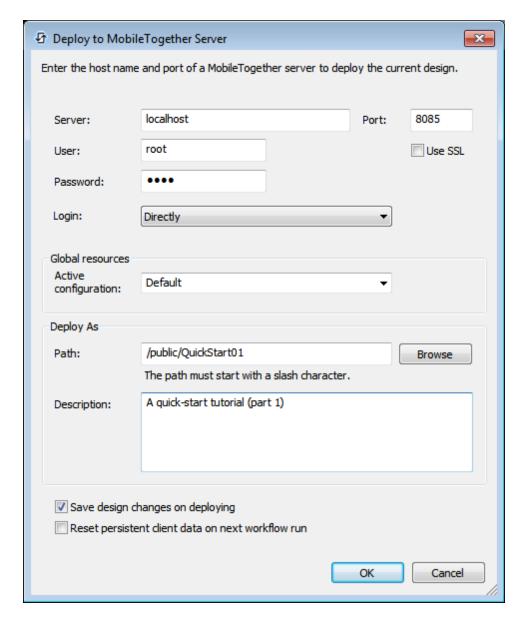
Deploying the project to MobileTogether Server

Deploy the project and its associated (image) files to MobileTogether Server as follows:

1. In the <u>Files Pane</u> (*screenshot below*), right-click Image Files, and, in the context menu that appears, select **Add File**.



- 2. Browse for the image file and add it to the Image Files list.
- 3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 for all the image files that are required.
- 4. Select **File | Deploy to MobileTogether Server**. This displays the Deploy to MobileTogether dialog (*screenshot below*).



- 5. Enter the MobileTogether Server address and administrator port (default HTTP port is 8085, HTTPS is 8086).
- Enter the user name and password with which you want to access MobileTogether
 Server. Note that this user must have the Save Workflow from Designer privilege in order
 for deployment to be successful. See the MobileTogether Server user manual for
 information about user privileges.
- 7. In the *Deploy As | Path* field, enter the name under which you wish to deploy this solution on the server. For example, in the screenshot above, the solution will be saved in the / public container and will have the name Quickstart01. On MobileTogether Server, you will see only the one entry: Quickstart01. The image files will be contained in this entity and will not be visible as separate files.
- 8. Click **OK** when done. The project and the files selected for deployment are now deployed to MobileTogether Server as the workflow, QuickStart01.

That's it!

4.2 QuickStart (Part 2)

The second part of this QuickStart tutorial continues where Part 1 left off. It focuses on using an external XML file as its data source. You will learn how to generate a dynamic dropdown list for the combo box from the data in the XML file, how to create dynamic links to website pages, and how to save data back to the XML file.

This tutorial is organized into the following sections, each of which deals with one key aspect of creating a MobileTogether design.

- Load Data from a File
- Change Source Node
- Run a Simulation
- Use File Data for Combo Box Entries
- Set Data File as Default File
- Create Dynamic Links to Web Pages
- Save Data Back to File

The tutorial files

The files for this tutorial are located in your (<u>My) Documents</u> MobileTogether folder: MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\. The Tutorials folder also contains the splash screen images referred to in the tutorial. You can save these images and the XML file to any other location and use them from there if you like.

- The file to start with is the file you created in Part 1. Alternatively, you can use the supplied design file, Quickstart01.mtd
- The file you will end with should be similar to Quickstart02.mtd
- The XML data file is AltovaProducts.xml
- The image files are: *.bmp

Load Data from a File

In this part, you will:

• Specify that the data for the solution be taken from an XML file when the solution page is loaded. The file, located in the <u>Tutorials folder</u>, is called <u>AltovaProducts.xml</u> and its listing is given below. It has a similar structure to the <u>data source created in Part 1</u>, with the only difference being that there is one new element: <u>selection</u>.

 Modify the tree structure of the data source to match the different structure of the XML data file.

■ Listing of the XML file, AltovaProducts.xml

Located in the MobileTogether folder of the (My) Documents folder.

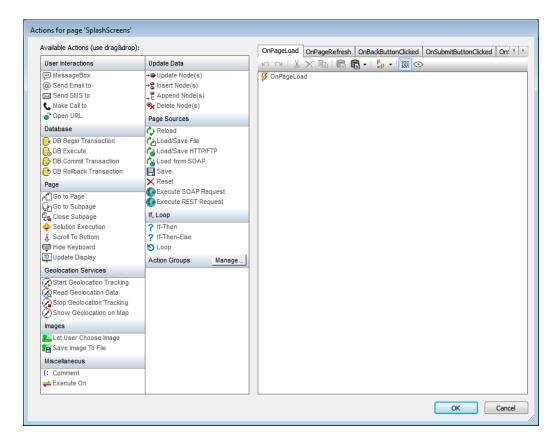
MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\AltovaProducts.xml.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<Products>
<Selection></Selection>
<Product>XMLSpy</Product>
<Product>MapForce</Product>
<Product>StyleVision</Product>
<Product>DatabaseSpy</Product>
<Product>DiffDog</Product>
<Product>SchemaAgent</Product>
<Product>SchemaAgent</Product>
<Product>UModel</Product>
<Product>Authentic</Product>
</Products></Products></Products></Products></Products></Products></Products></Products></Products></Products></Products></Products></Products></Products>
```

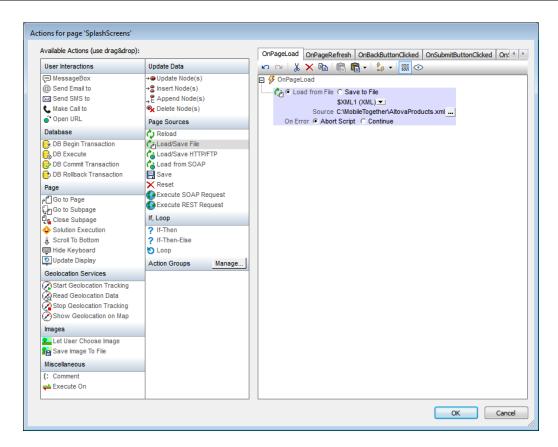
Specify data file to use on page load

To specify that data for the page data source be taken from an XML file, do the following:

- 1. Open Quickstart01.mtd, which is located in the MobileTogether folder of the (My) Documents folder. MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\.
- 2. Click Page | Page Actions. This displays the Page Actions dialog (screenshot below).



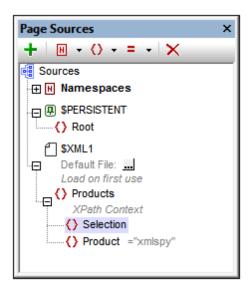
- 3. Drag and drop the Load/Save File action into the tab of the OnPageLoad event.
- 4. Make sure that the Load from File option is selected (see screenshot below).
- 5. Click the **Additional Dialog** button of the source entry. This displays the Specify File dialog.
- 6. Select Absolute/Relative Path and browse for the file, AltovaProducts.xml.
- 7. You will be asked whether you want to deploy this file together with the design file to MobileTogether Server. Click **Yes**. The file will be set as the data file to load for the data source \$xml1 when the page is loaded (screenshot below).



8. Click OK to finish.

Modify the data structure of the page source

The XML data file has an extra selection element. So, in order for the XML tree to hold the data from this element, we will now add a selection element to the XML tree of the data source in the Page Sources Pane (see screenshot below and Iisting above). Add the selection element to the tree by right-clicking either Products or Product and selecting, respectively, Add Child or Append, and then Element. Rename the element to Selection by double-clicking the element and then editing the name.



We will not add any default value for <code>selection</code>. This is because, when the page is loaded, we want the data for the page to come from the file <code>AltovaProducts.xml</code>. It was the action we defined for the <code>OnPageLoad</code> event of this page (see above). If we were to set a default value for <code>selection</code>, then this default value would override the value obtained from the <code>selection</code> node in <code>AltovaProducts.xml</code>. So with no default values assigned in the Page Sources Pane, when the page is loaded, the <code>selection</code> node will be empty. This is because the <code>selection</code> node in <code>AltovaProducts.xml</code> is empty (see the file listing above). We will test this in simulations later in the tutorial.

Change Source Node

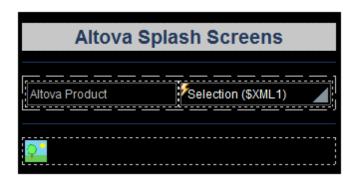
In this part, you will:

- Change the source node of the combo box
- Save the XPath expression of the image

Change source node of the combo box

Each page control can have a **source node**, which is a node in one of the data sources. The link is made by dragging the data source node from the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> onto the control in the design. Essentially, a source node transfers data from the XML node to the control. But how the data in the XML node relates exactly to the control depends on the type of control it is. For example: A combo box selection updates its page source link—an XML node—and that value is reflected in the combo box display, whereas the source node of an image provides the URL of the image. When you hover over a control, the popup indicates how the source node will be used, for example, as an XML node to edit (for combo boxes), or as a data originator (for images).

We will change the source node of the combo box, from Product to selection. Do this by dragging the selection node from the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> onto the combo box control (see screenshot below).



We do this because we want to put the end user's combo box selection in the selection element rather than the Product element. The reasons for wanting this are:

- There are multiple sibling **Product** elements in the file AltovaProducts.xml, each of which contains data we do not want to change.
- If the source node were Product, only the first Product element (Product[1]) would be updated with the combo box selection. This is undesirable.
- The best solution would be to store the end user selection in a separate element.

After changing the source node from Product to selection, the combo box selection will update the selection node—and not the Product node.

Change XPath expression of the image URL

Since the XML value of the combo box selection goes into the selection node, this node must

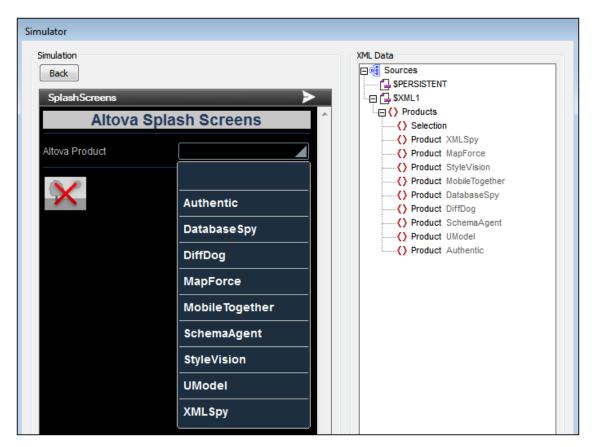
be used in the XPath expression that constructs the image URL. In the design, select the image, and click the XPath button of the Image URL property (in the Styles & Properties Pane). In the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression Dialog that appears, modify the XPath expression so that Product is replaced by selection. For example:

```
If you have: concat(Product, '.bmp')
Change it to: concat(Selection, '.bmp')
```

This XPath expression uses the end user's combo box selection (now stored in the selection node) to generate the image file name. Since the image file and design file are in the same folder, the file name generated by the XPath expression is also the relative path to the image file from the location of the design file.

Run a Simulation

If you run a simulation now (Project | Simulate Workflow or F5), you will see the following:



What you see	Reason
Selection node in XML Data tree is empty	Value comes from the empty selection node in AltovaProducts.xml, the file that is loaded on page open
Combo box is empty	Because the selection node is empty
Dropdown list has empty entry	Empty entry added as a result of current combo box selection (=empty)
No splash screen is displayed	Image URL is built using the empty selection node

If you now select a product from the dropdown list (for example, MobileTogether), the splash screen of that product will be displayed (screenshot below).



This is because:

- 1. A combo box selection (of, say, MobileTogether) puts the corresponding value (mobiletogether) into the selection node.
- 2. The value in the selection node is used to correctly construct the image URL.

Notice also that the combo box, from now onwards, no longer has the empty entry in its dropdown list. This is because the selection node is not empty any longer and because the list of defined combo box entries, therefore, does not have an empty entry.

After you have finished, click **Close** or press **Esc** to close the simulator.

Use File Data for Combo Box Entries

In this part, you will:

- Use the data tree structure to generate the combo box entries
- Run a simulation to test the effect of the change

■ Listing of the XML file, AltovaProducts.xml

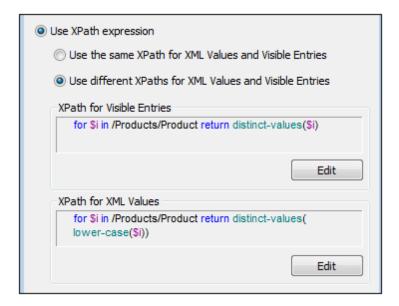
Located in MobileTogether folder of (My) Documents folder.

MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\AltovaProducts.xml.

Edit the combo box entries

Edit the combo box entries as follows:

1. Select the combo box, and, in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, click the Additional Dialog button of the <u>Combo Box Entry Values</u> property. The Edit Combo Box dialog (*screenshot below*) appears.



- Select Use XPath expression, and then Use different XPath for XML Values and Visible Entries.
- 3. Enter the XPath expressions for *Visible Entries* and *XML Values* as shown in the screenshot above.
- 4. Select the *Sort values* check box at the bottom of the dialog to sort the list when it is displayed.
- 5. Click **OK** to finish.

Remember that the Products node was defined as the <u>default XPath context node for this page</u>. The XPath for expression iterates over the Product child nodes of Products (the context node) and returns a sequence of all the unique distinct values, alphabetically sorted. In the case of the XML Values sequence, the values are transformed to lowercase before being filtered for uniqueness. These two sequences are the entries of the dropdown list (Visible Entries) and their corresponding XML values (XML Values). The advantage of using the data tree structure to build the combo box entries and a data source file to load data is that combo box entries are generated dynamically from the data source file; they are not hard-coded as items of a list in the design. Consequently, if a new product is added to the XML file, it will automatically appear as an entry in the dropdown list.

Run a simulation

When you run a simulation, it will run in exactly the same way as when the combo box entries were defined as a list (see the previous section, Run a Simulation). The only difference will be that the entries of the dropdown list will be the values of the Product elements in AltovaProducts.xml (see listing above). When an entry from the dropdown list is selected, the corresponding (lowercase) XML value will be entered in the selection node, and the image URL will be correctly evaluated.

Change data in the data source file

Make the following two changes in the data source file, AltovaProducts.xml (listing above):

- Add a lowercase product name to the selection node as shown in the listing below
- Remove a few Product elements from the file, or add some Product elements to the file, and change the order of the Product elements. In the Edit Combo Box dialog (see above), also test the effect of selecting/deselecting the Sort values check box.

After making these changes, save the file and run a simulation. The initial splash screen will be that of the product in the **selection** node. Also, the dropdown list of the combo box will not have any empty entry, and the number of entries in the dropdown list will be equal to the number of unique Product elements in the XML file.

Set Data File as Default File

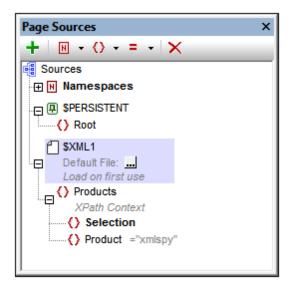
In this part, you will:

- Specify a default file for the page data source
- Run a simulation
- Buttons in this section
 - ... Additional Dialog

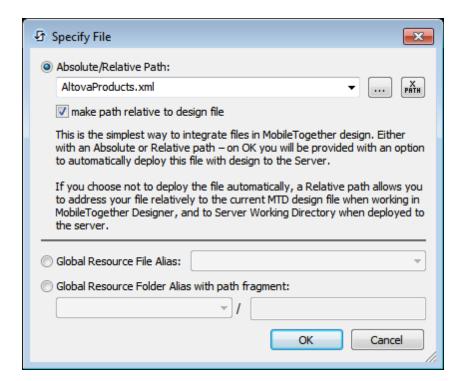
Specify a default file for the page data source

The data that goes into a data source can be specified by selecting a default file for the data source. Do this as follows:

1. Click the **Additional Dialog** button of the \$xml1 default file (screenshot below).



2. Select Absolute/Relative Path, check the Make path relative to design file check box, and browse for the file AltovaProducts.xml.



- 3. On clicking **OK**, the file will be added as the default file, and its data will populate the data source tree.
- 4. Click **Page | Page Actions** to open the Page Actions dialog.
- 5. In the OnPageLoad tab, select the <u>Load from File entry</u> and delete it. This is because the *Load from File* action is now redundant since the file AltovaProducts.xml has been specified as the default file of the page's only data source.
- 6. Run a simulation to test whether the default file is being used.

Create Dynamic Links to Web Pages

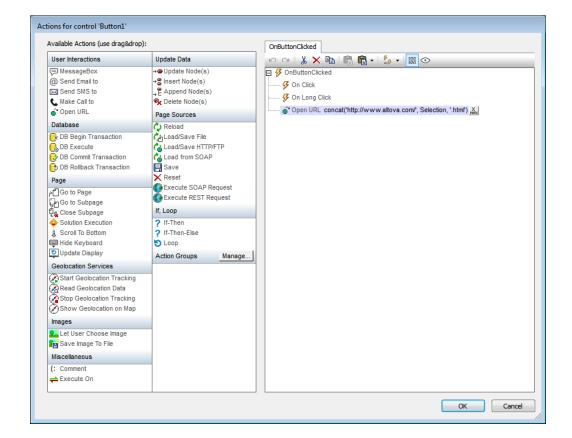
In this part, you will:

- Add a button that links dynamically to a web page (using an XPath expression)
- Run a simulation

Add a button that links to a web page

We will now add a button that links to the product description page of the product selected in the combo box. Do this as follows:

- 1. Drag the button control from the <u>Controls Pane</u> and drop it below the image (see the simulator screenshot below).
- 2. Enter the text Go to Product Description.
- 3. Right-click the button and select **Control Actions for OnButtonClicked**.
- 4. In the Actions dialog that appears (*screenshot below*), drag the *Open URL* action into the OnButtonClicked tab and drop it below the OnClick and OnLongClick events as shown in the screenshot below. Since there is no action specified for either type of click, the *Open URL* action is performed as the next (additional) action to perform after any of the two events is triggered.
- 5. Click the **XPath** button, and, in the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog that appears, enter the XPath expression: concat('http://www.altova.com/', Selection, '.html')



6. Click **OK** to finish, and save the file.

Run a simulation

Run a simulation by clicking **F5** or **Project | Simulate Workflow**. When the simulation starts, select a product in the combo box and then click the **Go to Product Description** button (see screenshot below). This will take you to the product description page on the Altova website.



Save Data Back to File

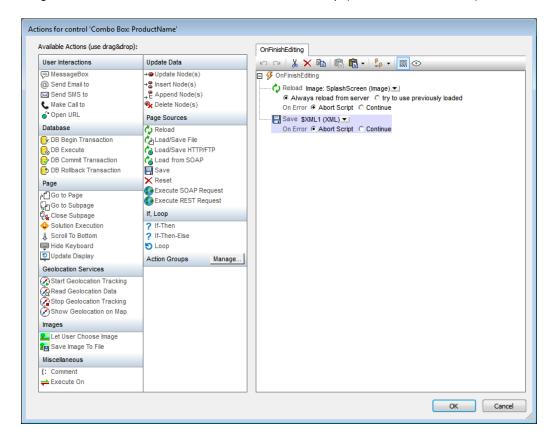
In this part, you will:

- Save changed data back to file using a control action
- Run a simulation to test the success of the Save to File action

Save data to file after editing combo box

You can specify that a change made by editing the combo box is saved back to file. Since the source node of the combo box is the <code>Selection</code> element, the combo box selection will be saved to this element. To specify that the change is saved back to the <code>Selection</code> element in the default file, we will add the <code>Save</code> action to the <code>OnFinishEditing</code> event of the combo box. Do this as follows:

- 1. Right-click the combo box and select **Control Actions for OnFinishEditing** from the context menu.
- 2. This displays the Control Actions dialog for the combo box, which already has the *Reload* action that targets the image.
- 3. Drag the Save action below the Reload action, and drop (see screenshot below).



- 4. Click **OK** to finish, and then save the file.
- 5. To test whether the change is saved to the default file, open the default file in an editor, run a simulation, select a combo box entry, and then reload the default file in the editor. The new combo box selection will appear as content of the Selection element in the

default file.

Note:

If you wish to save to some file other than the default file, use the *Save to File* action (instead of the *Save* action). If you wish to save to a web page, use the *Save to HTTP/FTP action*. (In this case, you will also need to provide the authentication details that allow the user to modify the page at the HTTP URL.)

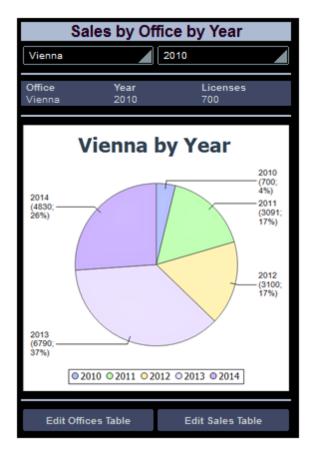
That's it!

4.3 Database-And-Charts

This Database-And-Charts tutorial (**DBAndCharts.mtd**) shows you how to work with databases (DBs) and charts. It explains how to:

- Set up DB tables as data sources so that DB table data can be displayed and edited
- How to display DB data based on end user choices
- How to create charts that are based on the DB data

The screenshot below shows the first page of the <code>DBANDCharts.mtd</code> solution. The end user can select the office and year for which sales are to be displayed. These selections are made in combo boxes at the top of the design. The total sales for that year are then displayed in the <code>Licenses</code> column of the results table below the combo boxes. Whenever a new office or year is selected in either of the combo box, the results table is automatically updated to reflect the new selection. Additionally, a pie chart showing the sales, by year, for the selected office is displayed. Each slice represents a year, with its sales volume and the percentage of all sales till now that year represents. Whenever a new office is selected, a pie chart showing the statistics of that particular office is displayed.



Below the chart are two buttons that each take you to a page in which the relevant DB table data can be edited.

The tutorial files

The files for this tutorial are located in your $(\underline{\textit{My}})$ Documents MobileTogether folder: MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\.

• The design file is **DBAndCharts.mtd**. Open it and read the descriptions in the tutorial to see how the design was built and how it works.

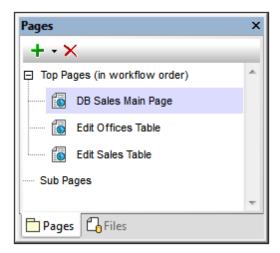
• The MS Access database, OfficeSales_DB.mdb, contains the tables used as the data sources of the design.

The Project Structure

Open <u>DBAndCharts.mtd</u> and validate it (**Project | Validate**) to check that the file correctly connects to the Access DB, <u>OfficeSales_DB.mdb</u>. If there is a connection error, make sure you correct this before proceeding. (See the section, <u>Data Sources of the Main Page</u>, for more information.)

As shown in the Pages Pane (screenshot below), the project consists of three top pages:

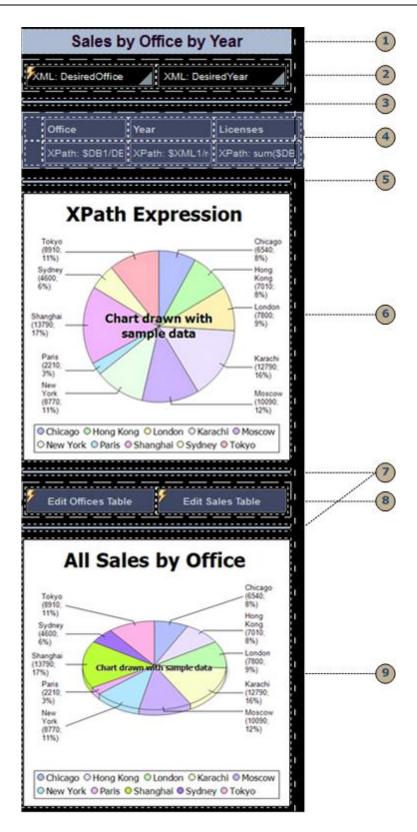
- DB Sales Main Page: This is the start page. It displays the DB data and has two buttons that go, respectively, to the other two top pages.
- Edit Offices Table: Is arrived at via a button click from the main page and enables editing
 of the DB's Offices table.
- Edit Sales Table: Is arrived at via a button click from the main page and enables editing of the DB's Sales table.



When the solution runs, note that it is the first top page in the list above, *DB Sales Main Page*, that is loaded in the client app.

The Main Page

The design of the *DB Sales Main Page* is show below. Its components are numbered in the callouts and are described below.



All the components are controls that have been dragged from the <u>Controls Pane</u> and dropped into the design. Each has then been assigned properties in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>. For controls

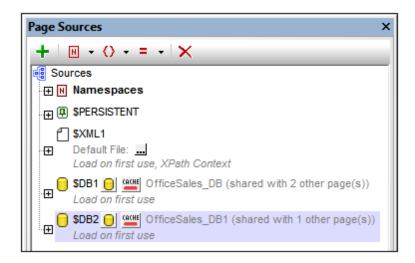
that need to be associated with data from the data sources, the appropriate source node has been assigned by dragging the data source node onto the control. The combo boxes and buttons additionally have actions associated with their events. Actions are assigned in the Actions dialog for the control, which is accessed by right-clicking the control and selecting the **Control Actions for...** command.

1	A label control to display the title of the page; style properties applied
2	Combo boxes for end user selection of Office and Year. See detailed description
3 5 7	A horizontal line control as layout component; style properties applied
4	Table control with cells that contain DB data. See detailed description
6 9	Chart controls that display DB data in the form of charts. See detailed description
8	Button controls with <code>OnButtonClicked</code> actions that go to <u>Edit Offices</u> and <u>Edit</u> <u>Sales</u> pages

The *DB Sales Main Page* has an action defined for its <code>OnPageLoad</code> event (**Page | Page Actions**) that updates a data source node. This action is explained in the next section, Data Sources of the Main Page.

Data Sources of the Main Page

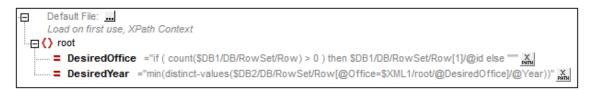
The main page has three data sources: \$XML1, \$DB1, and \$DB2. These are displayed and managed in the Page Sources Pane (see screenshot below).



The XPath context node of the page is the root node \$XML1. This means that all XPath expressions on this page have \$XML1 as their context node. To locate a node in any of the other trees (\$DB1 and \$DB2, which are the root nodes of these trees) start the XPath locator path with the respective root node.

The first data source: \$XML1

This data source was created as an editable empty XML. The root node \$xmll contains a root element (root), which has two attributes (DesiredOffice and DesiredYear). The root node, \$xmll, was set (via its context menu) as the XPath context node for the page two. No default file is set, so no data is imported into the tree.



This data source (\$XML1) has been created to hold the end user's combo box selections:

- The DesiredOffice attribute holds the end user's Office selection
- The DesiredYear attribute holds the end user's Year selection

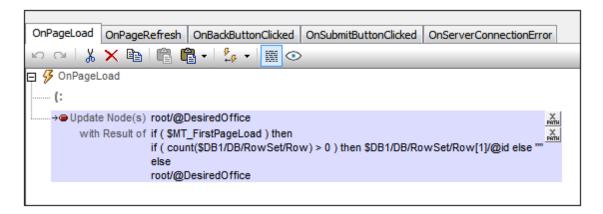
In order to hold the data selected in the combo boxes, the two attribute nodes are associated with the combo boxes as page source links. Each of the two page source links is made by dragging the attribute node onto the respective comb box (see simulator screenshot below).



Each of the nodes has been given an initial value when the page loads (via the context menu command Ensure Exists before Page Load (XPath Value)). This is because the value of the node appears in the associated combo box, and we want the combo box to have an initial selection (see simulator screenshot above). The XPath expressions that provide the initial values are:

- For @DesiredOffice: if (count(\$DB1/DB/RowSet/Row) > 0) then \$DB1/DB/RowSet/Row[1]/@id else ""
 If there is one or more records in \$DB1, sets the @id value of the first record as the value of @DesiredOffice. If there is no record, sets the empty string as the value of @DesiredOffice.
- For @DesiredYear: min(distinct-values(\$DB2/DB/RowSet/Row[@Office=\$XML1/root/@DesiredOffice]/@Year))
 In \$DB2, selects all the records of the office selected in @DesiredOffice, collects the unique years from these records, and then selects the year with the minimum numerical value.

Additionally, we have specified that the @DesiredOffice node is correctly filled whenever the main page loads. This is done with an *Update Node* action on the OnPageLoad event of the main page (Page | Page Actions).



The action updates the <code>@DesiredOffice</code> node. If this is the first loading of the page, then the ID of the first office is passed as the content of <code>@DesiredOffice</code>. Otherwise the value is what is already present in <code>@DesiredOffice</code>. The result of this is that during an execution, the value in <code>@DesiredOffice</code> is not changed, but the value is initialized whenever the page is loaded for the first time.

The second data source: \$DB1

The second data source (\$DB1) is the Offices table in the MS Access database, OfficeSales_DB.mdb. The data for this data tree comes from the DB's Office table.

```
OfficeSales_DB (shared with 2 other page(s))

OB

OB

OROWSet

Id (Read Only, Primary Key) ="(: calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us :)

let $all := $DB1/DB/RowSet/Row/@id

let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))

let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1

return $id"
```

The Offices table has two columns (id and city), which are represented in the data tree as attributes of the Row element, which itself corresponds to a row in the DB table. Since the id column is the primary key and values in it cannot be changed, we cannot edit this column. However, we need to create id values for new rows. We automate this by writing an XQuery expression to generate the id value for every new row that is created. The XQuery expression is inserted by using the context menu command, Ensure Exists before Page Load (XPath Value):

```
let $all := $DB1/DB/RowSet/Row/@id
let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))
let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1
return $id
```

Note that the id value is the unique ID number of the office, whereas the city value is the name of the city in which the office is. This is important because while it is the id that is used to uniquely identify an office (via the \$XML1/root/@DesiredOffice node), it is the name of the city that we use to identify an office to the end user.

An originalRowset node must be created (via the context menu) if any node in the data source is to be edited. This is required so that OriginalRowSet holds the original data while Rowset holds the current (edited) data. The two sets of data (original and edited) are required so that MobileTogether Designer can tell the difference between what is new, updated, and deleted, and can make the necessary changes at the right time. It is also required so that it can create new primary keys with the XQuery let statement. When the database is updated, the updated data becomes the new original data and is entered in the OriginalRowSet node.

The third data source: \$DB2

The third data source (\$DB2) is the Sales table in the MS Access database,

OfficeSales_DB1.mdb. The data for this data tree comes from the DB's Sales table.

```
OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))

RowSet

() Row

id (Read Only, Primary Key) ="(: calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us :)

let $all := $DB2/DB/RowSet/Row/@id

let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))

let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1

return $id"

Clicenses

Month

Year

Office

OriginalRowSet
```

Each row in the Sales table has five columns (id, Licenses, Month, Year, and Office). The DB table row corresponds to the Row element in the data source tree. The table's columns correspond to the attributes of the Row element. The id attribute has an XQuery expression to generate the id value for every new row that is created. The XQuery expression is inserted by using the context menu command, Ensure Exists before Page Load (XPath Value):

```
let $all := $DB1/DB/RowSet/Row/@id
let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))
let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1
return $id
```

An OriginalRowset node must be created (via the context menu) if any node in the data source is to be edited. This is required so that OriginalRowSet holds the original data while Rowset holds the current (edited) data.

The Combo Boxes

The two combo boxes at the top of the page are used to accept end user selections and to display data based on these selections. The screenshot below shows the combo boxes when the solution is run; the tabular report below the combo boxes is based on the combo box selections.



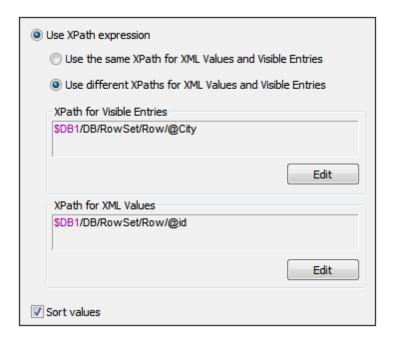
The next screenshot shows the combo boxes in the design. The combo boxes have been placed in separate cells of a table for layout purposes.



The DesiredOffice combo box

The following settings have been made:

- A source node link is made between the combo box and the \$XML1/root/
 @DesiredOffice node by dragging the node onto the combo box. This serves to pass the combo box selection to the node and the value of the node to the combo box.
- The items in the dropdown list of the combo box are defined in the Edit Combo Box dialog (screenshot below), which is accessed via the **Additional Dialog** button of the Combo Box Entry Values property (in the Styles & Properties Pane).



Notice that the values in the dropdown list are taken from the \$DB1/DB/Rowset/Row/@city node (that is, the names of the cities). But the value that goes into the \$XML1/root/@DesiredOffice node (because of the source node link) is taken from the \$DB1/DB/Rowset/Row/@id node. Since the Sort Values check box has been selected the items of the dropdown list will be sorted.

An *UpdateNode* action has been set for the onFinishEditing event. Right-click the combo box and select **Control Actions for OnFinishEditing** to display the action definition. The node to be updated is root/@DesiredYear. The update value is provided by an XPath expression: min(distinct-values(\$DB2/DB/RowSet/Row[@Office=\$XML1/root/@DesiredOffice]/@Year)). This expression selects all the records of the office selected in the combo box, then collects the unique years from these records, and finally selects the year with the minimum numerical value.



So, when Vienna is selected in the first combo box (as in the screenshot above), all the records in \$pb2 with @Office='Vienna' were searched and a sequence of the unique years in these records was created. The year with the minimum numerical value—in this case 2010—is passed to the node to be updated—in this case \$xml1/root/@DesiredOffice. Since this node is the source node of the second combo box (the @DesiredYear combo box), this combo box now displays the minimum year value—in this case, 2010.

The DesiredYear combo box

The following settings have been made:

• A source node link is made between the combo box and the <code>\$XML1/root/@DesiredYear</code> node by dragging the node onto the combo box. This serves to pass the combo box selection to the node and the value of the node to the combo box.

• The items in the dropdown list of the combo box are defined in the Edit Combo Box dialog (screenshot below), which is accessed via the **Additional Dialog** button of the Combo Box Entry Values property (in the Styles & Properties Pane).



Notice that both the values in the dropdown list as well as those that will be passed to the XML node are the same. They are the sequence of all the unique years in which the selected office has recorded sales. Since the *Sort Values* check box has been selected the items of the dropdown list will be sorted.

The Tabular Report

The tabular report is displayed in the table below the two combo boxes. When the end user selects the office and year for which a report is required, the tabular report displays the total sales of that year (in terms of number of licenses). The screenshot below shows the page when the solution is run.



The next screenshot shows the tabular report in the design. The table consists of two rows and four columns, with the first column being used to provide padding. Each of the remaining six cells contains a label with a text value that is either directly entered text or is calculated by an XPath expression. See each label's Text property in the Styles & Properties Pane.



The XPath expressions are as follows:

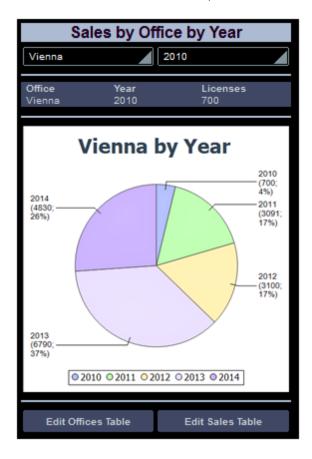
- <u>DesiredOffice</u>: Is taken from \$DB1. It is the @City value of the Row with an @id equal to the id value of the combo box selection.

 \$DB1/DB/RowSet/Row[@id=\$XML1/root/@DesiredOffice]/@City
- <u>DesiredYear</u>: Is taken from \$xmll. It is the value of the @DesiredYear. The year is either selected by the end user in the combo box, or is the minimum of all unique sales years for that office.
 \$xmll/root/@DesiredYear
- <u>Licenses Sold</u>: Is taken from \$DB2. Sums up all @Licenses values of the Row elements with @Office and @Year attributes equal to the values of the combo box selections. (Note that the @Office values in \$DB2 are the ID values of the offices, not their city names.)

 Sum(\$DB2/DB/RowSet/Row[@Office= \$XML1/root/@DesiredOffice][@Year= \$XML1/root/@DesiredYear]/@Licenses)

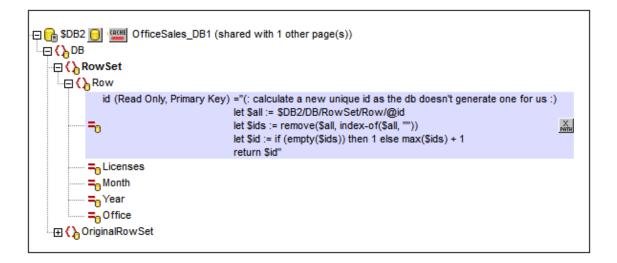
The Charts

There are two charts in the design. The first chart shows the yearly breakdown of all sales of the office selected in the combo box (see the simulator screenshot below).



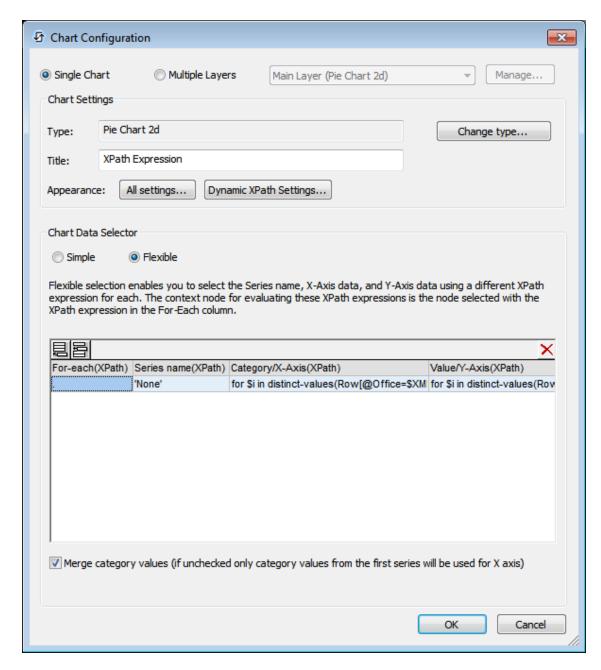
XPath context node

The main chart definitions are what goes on the X and Y axes. Since these are determined by XPath expressions it is important to correctly select the XPath context node for the chart. For the context node, it is best to select the immediate parent of the nodeset that will be used for the X and Y axes. Since we are going to use data from the Sales data table, we will use the \$DB2 tree for creating the chart (screenshot below). And since our nodeset for both axes will consist of the Row element, we select Rowset as the XPath context node. We do this by dragging the Rowset node onto the chart. The node is displayed bold, indicating that it is a source node.



Defining the chart axes

We are now ready to define the chart's axes. Open the chart's Chart Configuration dialog (screenshot below) by either double-clicking the chart or clicking the Additional Dialog button of the Chart Settings property (in the Styles & Properties Pane). Note that the chart type is a pie chart.



For pie charts, we need two series (for the X and Y axes). The *Flexible* option is ideal for defining the axes for two series. The *For-each* setting selects the current node (RowSet). We define the following XPath expressions for the two axes:

• <u>X-Axis</u>: Creates a sequence of the unique years during which the selected office recorded sales.

for \$i in distinct-values(Row[@Office=\$XML1/root/@DesiredOffice]/@Year)
return \$i

• <u>Y-Axis</u>: For the selected office and for each of its unique years, sums up the sales (stored in its @Licenses attribute)

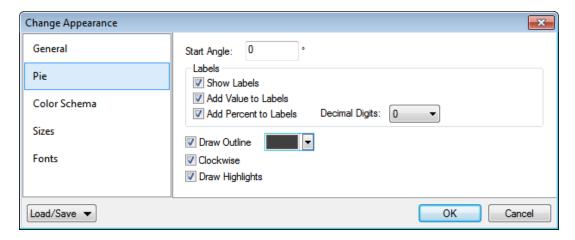
for \$i in distinct-values(Row[@Office=\$XML1/root/@DesiredOffice]/@Year)

return sum(Row[@Office= \$XML1/root/@DesiredOffice][@Year=\$i]/@Licenses)

Additional definitions

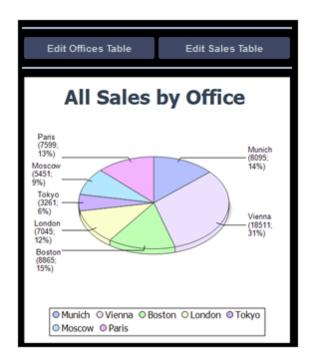
Additionally, the following settings were made:

- In the Chart Configuration dialog, click **Dynamic XPath Settings** and set the title using an XPath expression. This enables the selected office to be displayed in the title.
- In the Chart Configuration dialog, click **All Settings**. In the Change Appearance dialog that appears, select *Pie* and select *Add Value to Labels* and *Add Percent to Labels*.



The second chart

The second chart is similar to the first, but is a 3D pie chart (*screenshot below*). It shows the sales of each office over all years as a part of total sales over all years.



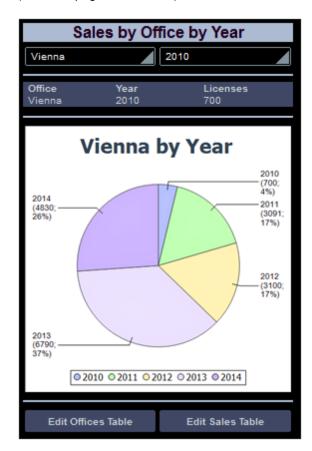
The XPath expressions are as follows:

- <u>X-Axis</u>: Creates a sequence of the city names of offices (not IDs), with city names being taken from \$DB1.
 - for \$i in distinct-values(Row/@Office) return \$DB1/DB/RowSet/Row[@id=\$i]/
 @City
- Y-Axis: For the selected office, sums up the sales (stored in its @Licenses attribute)

 for \$i in distinct-values (Row/@Office) return sum(Row[@Office=\$i]/
 @Licenses)

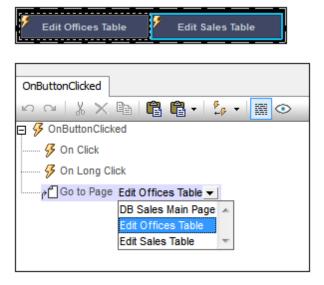
Edit Offices Table

The Edit Offices table has been created on a separate top page. When the solution runs, this page is accessed from the main page (*screenshot below left*). Clicking the button **Edit Offices Table** loads the Edit Offices table (*screenshot below right*). The Offices table has seven rows, each of which has a non-editable ID column, an editable City column, and a Delete control (*see screenshot below right*). Additionally, there is an Append Row control below the last row, a **Submit** button in the *Edit Offices Table* bar, and a **Back** button to go back to the previous page (the main page in this case).





In the design, the **Edit** buttons (*first screenshot below*) have both been assigned the *Go to Page* action on their respective OnButtonClicked events (right-click the button and select **Control Actions for OnButtonClicked**). These *Go to Page* actions (*second screenshot below*) load the respective target pages.



Creating the editable Offices table

The Offices table in the DB has the structure displayed in the data tree of \$DB1 (screenshot below). Since the @id attribute is the primary key, it cannot be changed. This means that when a new record is appended, the end user cannot enter an @id value via the solution. The @id value must be generated automatically using an XQuery expression. The XQuery expression is inserted by using the context menu command, Ensure Exists before Page Load (XPath Value):

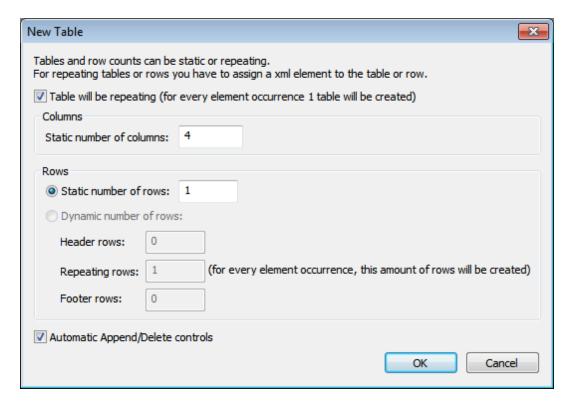
```
let $all := $DB1/DB/RowSet/Row/@id
let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))
let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1
return $id
```

In the design, we will do the following:

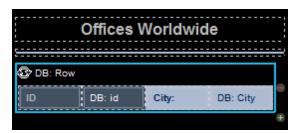
То	How
Display all (Office) rows	Add a repeating table, with the Office row as the repeating element
Include controls for deletion and addition of rows	When adding the table, enable the automatic inclusion of Delete/ Append controls
Enable editing of @City values	Add an Edit Field control that has a source node to @City
Save changes back to DB	Add a Save action to the page's OnSubmitButtonClicked event; Also, right-click \$DB1 and toggle on Create OriginalRowSet
Go back to the main page	Add a Go to Page action to the page's OnBackButtonClicked event

■ Add a repeating table that has Append/Delete controls

On dragging the table control from the <u>Controls Pane</u> and dropping it in the design, the New table dialog appears (*screenshot below*).

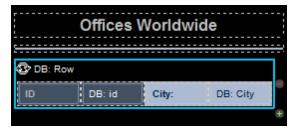


Specify that the <u>table will be repeating</u>, enter the number of columns (4) and rows (1), select the *Automatic Append/Delete Controls* check box, and click **OK**. Labels are added to the first three cells of the row, as shown in the screenshot below. A source node link to the @id node of \$DB1 is created for the second label (DB:id).



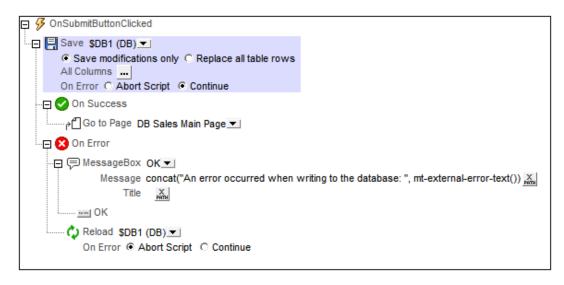
■ Enable editing of @City in \$DB1

An edit field control is added to the fourth cell and a source node link to the @City node of \$DB1 is created for it (DB:City). We use an edit field control in this cell because we want the end user to be able edit @City values; all the other cells have label controls.



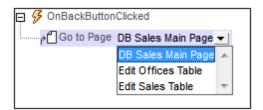
■ Page actions: 'Save' and 'Go to page'

Click Page | Page Actions to open the Page Actions dialog (screenshot below).



Actions are defined for the following events:

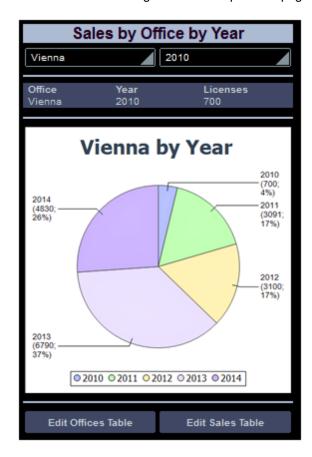
- onsubmitButtonClicked: Saves all columns of the page to the DB (\$DB1) and goes
 back to the main page. You might also want to add the Reload action so that the
 DB is reloaded with the unmodified data in case the record is not saved to the DB
 (see screenshot above).
- OnBackButtonClicked: Goes back to the main page.



The tree of the data source must also include an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, which is a copy of the <code>RowSet</code> element. Original data is saved in the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, so that the columns of the <code>RowSet</code> element can be edited. The <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element is updated with the new value only when the data is saved back to the DB.

Edit Sales Table

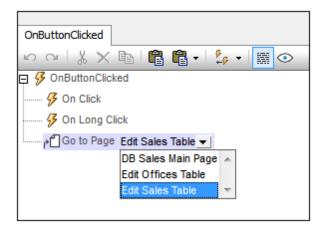
The Edit Sales table, like the Edit Offices Table, has been created on a separate top page. When the solution runs, this page is accessed from the main page (*screenshot below left*). Clicking the button **Edit Sales Table** loads the Edit Sales table (*screenshot below right*). The Sales table has multiple rows, each of which has a non-editable (sales item) ID column, editable Office, Month, Year, and Licenses columns, and a Delete control (*see screenshot below right*). Additionally, there is an Append Row control below the last row, a **Submit** button in the *Edit Sales Table* bar, and a **Back** button to go back to the previous page (the main page in this case).





In the design, the **Edit** buttons (*first screenshot below*) have both been assigned the *Go to Page* action on their respective OnButtonClicked events (right-click the button and select **Control Actions for OnButtonClicked**). These *Go to Page* actions (*second screenshot below*) load the respective target pages.

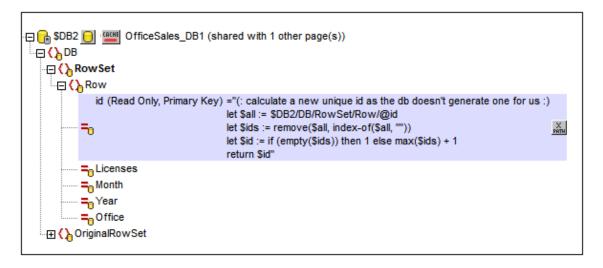




Creating the editable Sales table

The Sales table in the DB has the structure displayed in the data tree of \$DB2 (screenshot below). Since the @id attribute is the primary key, it cannot be changed. This means that when a new record is appended, the end user cannot enter an @id value via the solution. The @id value must be generated automatically using an XQuery expression. The XQuery expression is inserted by using the context menu command, Ensure Exists before Page Load (XPath Value):

```
let $all := $DB2/DB/RowSet/Row/@id
let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))
let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1
return $id
```



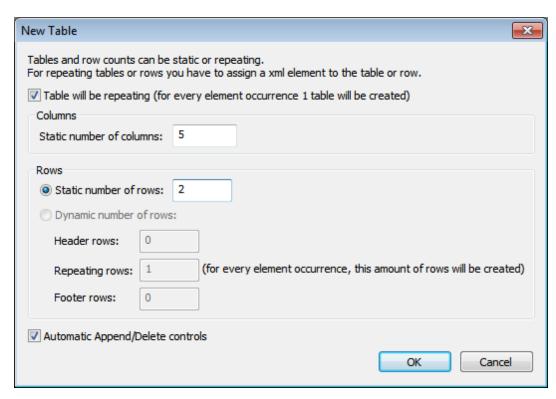
In the design, we will do the following:

То	Do this
Display all (Sales) rows	Add a repeating table, with the Sales row as the repeating element

Include controls for deletion and addition of rows	When adding the table, enable the automatic inclusion of Delete/Append controls
Enable editing of editable values	Add a combo box and edit field controls that have page source links
Save changes back to DB	Add a Save action to the page's OnSubmitButtonClicked event; Also, right-click \$DB2 and toggle on Create OriginalRowSet
Go back to the main page	Add a Go to Page action to the page's OnBackButtonClicked event

■ Add a repeating table that has Append/Delete controls

On dragging the table control from the <u>Controls Pane</u> and dropping it in the design, the New table dialog appears (*screenshot below*).

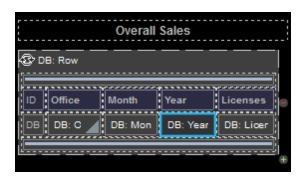


Specify that the <u>table will be repeating</u>, enter the number of columns (5) and rows (2), select the *Automatic Append/Delete Controls* check box, and click **OK**. Labels are added for headers to the cells of the first row. A label is added for the uneditable @id value to the first cell of the second row. A source node link to the @id node of \$DB2 is created on this label (DB:id).



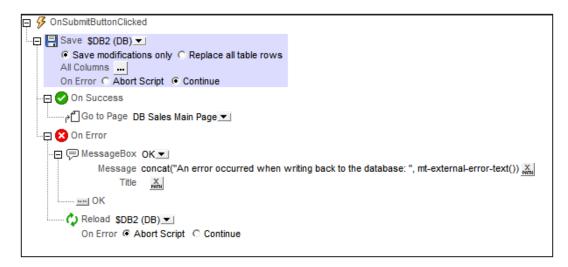
■ Enable editing of the editable nodes

A combo box is added for the office (with a source node link to @Office), and edit fields are added for the month, year, and licenses cells, with page source links to the respective nodes.



■ Page actions: 'Save' and 'Go to page'

Click Page | Page Actions to open the Page Actions dialog (screenshot below).

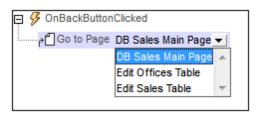


Actions are defined for the following events:

Tutorials Database-And-Charts 97

 OnsubmitButtonClicked: Saves all columns of the page to the DB (\$DB1) and goes back to the main page. You might also want to add the Reload action so that the DB is reloaded with the unmodified data in case the record is not saved to the DB (see screenshot above).

• OnBackButtonClicked: Goes back to the main page.



The tree of the data source must also include an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, which is a copy of the <code>RowSet</code> element. Original data is saved in the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, so that the columns of the <code>RowSet</code> element can be edited. The <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element is updated with the new value only when the data is saved back to the DB.

4.4 SubPages-And-Visibility

This tutorial shows you how to open a sub page from a top page, and how to filter the display of a data structure using the <code>Visible</code> property. It also describes how to use dynamic tables, action groups, the Update Node action, and decimals in XPath functions. The top page (first screenshot below) displays all the customers that are currently stored in the database. If the end user clicks a customer detail (name, city, etc), a sub page opens showing the current orders of that customer (second screenshot below).



Customer	Order	Amount	
789: JuniorsRV	002/2015-04-03	EUR 8345.60	
789: JuniorsRV	005/2015-04-06	EUR 2786.45	
Total: 11132.05			

The data for the design is stored in two data sources: one that stores customer data, and a second that stores order details. The two data sources have a customer code column in common, which is used to connect customer data with order details. We use XML files in this tutorial, but the data sources could as easily be databases, in which the customer code column is used as the primary key.

The tutorial files

The files for this tutorial are located in your <u>(My) Documents</u> MobileTogether folder: MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\.

- The XML data file that contains customer data is Customers.xml
- The XML data file that contains order data is orders.xml
- The design file you will end with should be similar to SubPagesAndVisibility.mtd

Tutorial structure

This tutorial is organized into the following sections:

- Design Structure
- Data Source Listings
- Top Page: Data Sources
- Top Page: Customers Table

- Top Page: Action Group, Go to Sub Page
- Top Page: Show All Orders Action
- Sub Page: Data Sources
- Sub Page: Orders Table
- Sub Page: Visibility Property
- Sub Page: Decimal Totals in XPath
- Simulation and Testing

Design Structure

The design file contains a top page (named Customers) and a sub page (named Orders). The top page (Customers, *first screenshot below*) displays all the customers that are currently stored in the database. If the end user clicks a customer detail on the top page, a sub page (the Orders page, *second screenshot below*) opens. This page shows the current orders of that customer. The top page also has an option to display, on the sub page, all current orders in the database, that is, the orders of all customers.

The key mechanism of this design is that of displaying (in the sub page) the orders of only the one customer that is selected on the top page. This is achieved with the <code>visible</code> property of a table that displays all the current orders. The property specifies which elements should be visible, and so acts as a display filter. We will specify, via an XPath expression, that only the orders of the selected customer will be visible. This filtered table is a simple and effective alternative to creating a customer-specific table that contains only the orders of the selected customer.

Design steps

The design will be built up as described below. (*The screenshots show simulations of the completed design.*)

Top page: Customers

- Create the top page and two data sources: \$xml1 and \$customers
- Create a dynamic table to contain customer data from \$CUSTOMERS. Each row of the table will correspond to one customer in the XML data source \$CUSTOMERS
- Create a sub page named Orders
- Create an action group that does the following: (i) update nodes in \$xmll with data about the customer node that the user clicks; (ii) goes to the sub page named Orders
- Assign the action group to each label that contains customer data. As a result, when some customer data is clicked, then the action group is executed
- <u>Create a label to show all orders</u>. The action of this label (show all orders) is in contrast to the other Go to Sub Page actions, which show the orders of a single selected customer



Sub page: Orders

- Create the three data sources for the sub page: \$xml1 (shared with top page),
 \$CUSTOMERS (shared with top page), and \$ORDERS
- Create a dynamic table to display the order details in the data file (screenshots below

- show the order tables of (i) a selected customer, and (ii) all customers). Each row of the table will correspond to one order in the XML data source <code>\$ORDERS</code>
- Set up the visibility property of the table's repeating row group to show (i) only the customer selected on the top page, or (ii) all customers
- Create an XPath expression to generate the total amount of (i) all orders of the selected customer, or (ii) all current orders

Customer	Order	Amount	
789: JuniorsRV	002/2015-04-03	EUR 8345.60	
789: JuniorsRV	005/2015-04-06	EUR 2786.45	
Total: 11132.05			

Customer	Order	Amount	
456: HiDeHo	001/2015-04-03	EUR 4906.38	
789: JuniorsRV	002/2015-04-03	EUR 8345.60	
123: New Fashion	003/2015-04-04	EUR 5645.20	
123: New Fashion	004/2015-04-05	EUR 3805.68	
789: JuniorsRV	005/2015-04-06	EUR 2786.45	
456: HiDeHo	006/2015-04-07	EUR 7460.50	
T-4-1: 20040 84			
Total: 32949.81			

Data Source Listings

The design will have three XML data sources:

- \$XML1 is a tree that is created directly in the design. Its purpose is to store the end-user's selection of which customer's order details to display in the sub page. The \$XML1 data source is shared by both pages of the design.
- \$CUSTOMERS contains the details of three customers. The XML tree structure and the customer data are imported from the XML file Customers.xml (see listing below). The \$CUSTOMERS data source is used in both the top page as well as the sub page.
- \$ORDERS contains the details of six orders placed by the three customers of Customers.xml. The XML tree structure and the order details are imported from the XML file Orders.xml (see listing below). The orders in the \$ORDERS data source are displayed in a table in the Orders sub page.

■ Listing of the XML data source, Customers.xml

Located in the MobileTogether folder of the (My) Documents folder.

MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\Customers.xml.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<Customers>
  <Customer code="123">
    <Name>New Fashion</Name>
    <AddressLine01>56 Tromer Street</AddressLine01>
    <AddressLine02></AddressLine02>
    <City>Stockholm</City>
   <ZipCode>1000</ZipCode>
    <Country>Sweden</Country>
    <Email>contact01@newfashion.dummy</Email>
    <Phone/>
  </Customer>
  <Customer code="456">
    <Name>HiDeHo</Name>
    <AddressLine01>7 Norsk Street</AddressLine01>
    <AddressLine02></AddressLine02>
    <City>Oslo</City>
    <ZipCode>7065</ZipCode>
    <Country>Norway</Country>
    <Email>contact02@hideho.dummy</Email>
    <Phone/>
  </Customer>
  <Customer code="789">
    <Name>JuniorsRV</Name>
    <AddressLine01>81 Bjork Street</AddressLine01>
    <AddressLine02></AddressLine02>
   <City>Copenhagen</City>
    <ZipCode>4538</ZipCode>
    <Country>Denmark</Country>
    <Email>contact03@juniorsrus.dummy</Email>
    <Phone/>
  </Customer>
```

```
</Customers>
```

■ Listing of the XML data source, Orders.xml

Located in the MobileTogether folder of the (My) Documents folder.

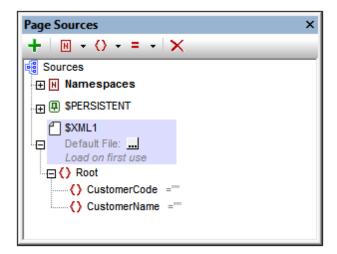
MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\AltovaProducts.xml.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<Orders>
 <Order number="001">
   <CustomerCode>456</CustomerCode>
   <OrderDate>2015-04-03/OrderDate>
   <OrderAmount>4906.38/OrderAmount>
   <Currency>EUR</Currency>
 </Order>
 <Order number="002">
   <CustomerCode>789</CustomerCode>
   <OrderDate>2015-04-03/OrderDate>
   <OrderAmount>8345.60
   <Currency>EUR</Currency>
 </Order>
 <Order number="003">
   <CustomerCode>123</CustomerCode>
   <OrderDate>2015-04-04
   <OrderAmount>5645.20</OrderAmount>
   <Currency>EUR</Currency>
 </Order>
 <Order number="004">
   <CustomerCode>123</CustomerCode>
   <OrderDate>2015-04-05/OrderDate>
   <OrderAmount>3805.68/OrderAmount>
   <Currency>EUR</Currency>
 </Order>
 <Order number="005">
   <CustomerCode>789</CustomerCode>
   <OrderDate>2015-04-06</OrderDate>
   <OrderAmount>2786.45/OrderAmount>
   <Currency>EUR</Currency>
 </Order>
 <Order number="006">
    <CustomerCode>456</CustomerCode>
   <OrderDate>2015-04-07
   <OrderAmount>7460.50/OrderAmount>
   <Currency>EUR</Currency>
 </Order>
</Orders>
```

Top Page: Data Sources

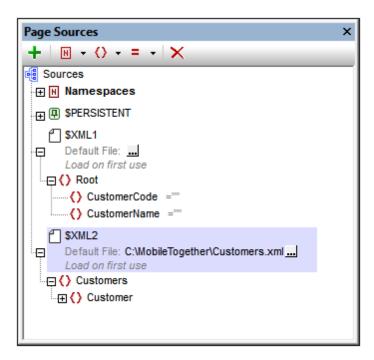
In this section, we will create the top page and its data sources. Do this as follows:

- 1. Create a new design file with the File | New command.
- 2. Save the file with any name you like.
- 3. In the Pages Pane, rename the top page (which is created by default) to Customers. Do this by double-clicking the page name and then editing it.
- 4. In the Page Sources Pane, add a new empty XML source by clicking the Add Source icon, and selecting New, empty XML. In the second screen, keep the default selections. A data source called \$XML1 will be created (see screenshot below).
- 5. Manually build the structure of this data source so that it is as shown in the screenshot below. Do this by right-clicking nodes in the tree (starting with \$xml1) and using the Add Child, Append, and Insert context menu commands.
- 6. Right-click the customerCode node, and select the command Ensure Exists on Load (fixed value). In the value box that appears for the node, press Enter without having entered any value. Do the same for the CustomerName node. This ensures that the two nodes are created empty in the \$XML1 tree when the page loads.

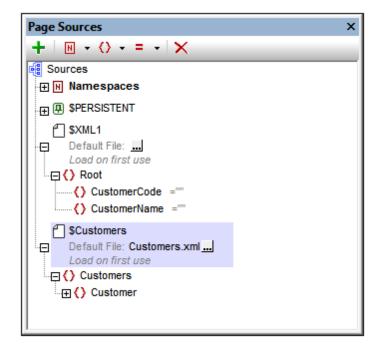


At runtime, we plan to have the nodes of the \$XML1 tree updated with the data (code and name) of the customer that the end user selects from the list of customers displayed on this page.

7. Create a second data source by clicking the Add Source icon, and selecting New XML or HTML structure imported from file. Browse for the file Customers.xml and click Open. When you are prompted about whether to deploy the file, choose Yes. A data source called \$xml2 will be created (see screenshot below).



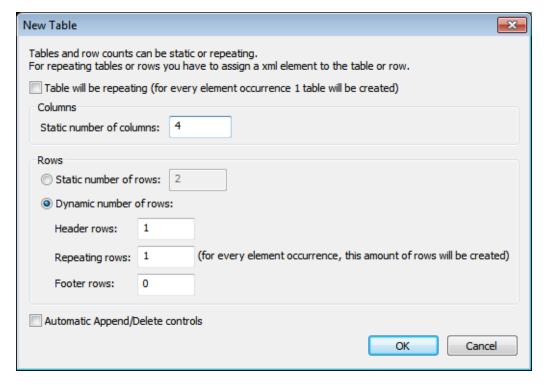
- 8. Double-click the root node \$XML2 and edit the name to \$CUSTOMERS (see screenshot below).
- 9. Click the **Additional Dialog** button of the \$CUSTOMERS default file. In the dialog that appears, select the *Relative paths* check box to make the file's path relative to the design (see screenshot below).



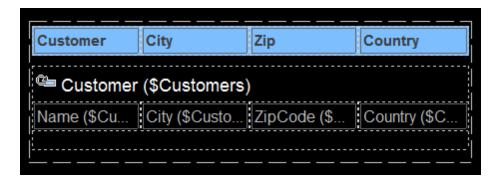
Top Page: Customers Table

We will now create a table to display details of all the customers currently stored in the XML data source Customers.xml. Create the table as follows.

- 1. Drag a <u>Table control</u> from the <u>Controls Pane</u> and drop it into the design.
- 2. In the New Table dialog that appears (see screenshot below), create the table as a dynamic table. Do this by selecting Dynamic number of rows. This will create a table with as many rows as there are corresponding row elements in the data source. Specify that the table has four columns and one header row (see screenshot below). Click OK to create the table.



- 3. From the Page Sources Pane, drag the Customer element to the Repeating Row icon of the table in the design. Each customer element will now correspond to one row of the table, and the customer element will be the XPath context node of the table.
- 4. Drag a Label control from the Controls Pane and drop it into the first column of the header row. Type in Customer as the text of the label (see screenshot below). Create headers for the other columns similarly: City, Zip, and Country.
- 5. Select all four labels (by pressing Ctrl while selecting each label), and apply whatever label formatting you like (via the Styles & Properties Pane).
- 6. Drag a Label control from the Controls Pane and drop it into the first column of the tablebody row. Then, from the Page Sources Pane, drag the Customer/Name element of the \$CUSTOMERS data source onto the label (see screenshot below). This label will display the contents of the customer's Name element.
- 7. Create the contents of the other table columns similarly: by dragging the City, ZipCode, and Country elements onto the respective labels (see screenshot below).



8. Select all four labels (by pressing **Ctrl** while selecting each label), and apply whatever label formatting you like (via the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>).

Top Page: Action Group, Go to Sub Page

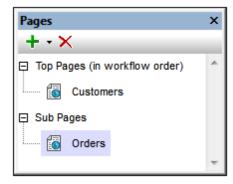
In the <u>previous section</u>, we created a table that displays the details of each customer in a separate table row. When the end user clicks on any customer detail (say name or city), we want to display that customer's current orders. We plan to do this by creating a sub page that will filter all current orders to display only those of the selected customer. When the end user selects a customer in the top page, the selection will be conveyed to the sub page via the shared \$xmll data source. In the sub page, the selected-customer data is used in the visible property of the table row group to filter the orders. We need therefore to do the following when the end user makes a selection by clicking a customer-detail label:

- Convey customer details of the clicked label to the \$xmll tree (which is shared between top page and sub page).
- Go to the sub page, which will show the orders of the selected customer.

These are the actions that will need to be performed when any of the labels in a customer row is clicked. Since the same sequence of actions must be executed for each label, we can save the sequence of actions in a common action group, and then assign this action group to each label's onLabelClicked event. Before we define the sequence of actions we need to create the sub page that the Go to Subpage action will target.

Create the sub page

Click any item in the <u>Pages Pane</u> and select **Add Sub Page**. Rename the added sub page to Orders (see screenshot below). You can double-click the name of the sub page to edit it.



Create the action group

We will create an action group consisting of the following actions:

- Two Update Node actions to update the two nodes of the \$xml1 data source.
- A Go to Subpage action to go to the Orders sub page.

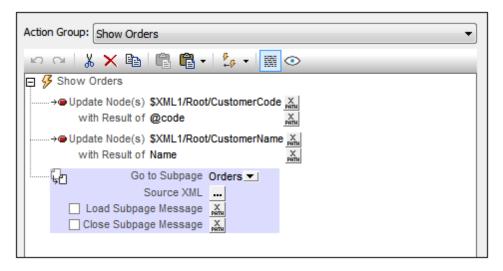
After we create the action group, we can assign it to the OnlabelClicked event of each of the four table-body-row labels. At runtime, the action sequence will be executed when the end user clicks the label of any customer detail.

Create the action group as follows:

- Right-click any of the four table-body-row labels and select Control Actions for OnLabelClicked.
- 2. In the <u>Actions dialog</u> that appears, in the left-hand pane, click the **Manage** button of Action Groups.
- 3. In the Manage Group Actions dialog that appears (*screenshot below*), click the **Add a Group** icon in the menu bar. Rename the added group to Show Orders (*screenshot below*, you can double-click the name to edit it).



- 4. Click the **Additional Dialog** button of Show Orders to display the Action Groups dialog (*screenshot below*).
- 5. Define the two <u>Update Node</u> actions and the <u>Go to Subpage</u> action as shown in the screenshot below, taking care to enter the XPath expressions exactly as shown. For the <u>Go to Subpage</u> action, select the Orders sub page from the dropdown list of the combo box.



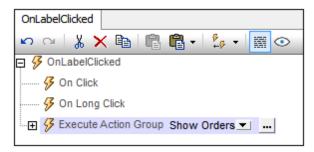
6. Click **OK** when done.

We have set the following updates: (i) the \$XML1//CustomerCode element will be updated with the Customer/@code value of the selected customer (from Customers.xml), and (ii) the the \$XML1//CustomerName element will be updated with the Customer/Name value of the selected customer (from Customers.xml).

Assign the action group to events

We now need to specify that the Show Orders action group is executed when a label is clicked. Do this as follows.

- 1. Right-click the Name label of the first column of the table-body row, and select **Control Actions for OnLabelClicked**.
- 2. In the <u>Actions dialog</u> that appears, drag the Show Orders action group and drop it below the On Long Click event as shown in the screenshot below. Click **OK** to finish.



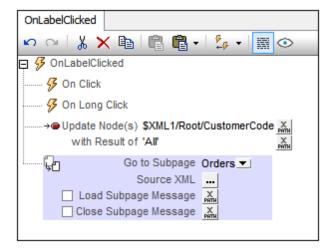
3. Repeat Step 2 for each of the three other labels of the table-body row. This ensures that the Show Orders sequence of actions will be executed when any of the four labels of a row is clicked.

Top Page: Show All Orders Action

In the <u>previous section</u>, we created a sequence of actions to perform when the end user clicks any one customer in the table of customers. In such an event, the orders of that customer will be displayed in the subpage. (We plan to do this by using the visibility property of the Orders table.) In this section, we will create a label that end users can click if they wish to see all the current orders (of all customers) in the <u>Orders.xml</u> database.

Add the Show all orders label as follows:

- Drag a <u>Label control</u> from the <u>Controls Pane</u> and drop it below the Customers table. Type in *Show all orders* as the text of the label (see screenshot below).
- 2. Format the label as you like with properties from the Styles & Properties Pane.
- 3. Open the the Actions dialog via the control's context menu command **Control Actions**OnLabelClicked Action, and add a sequence of actions for the OnLabelClicked event (see screenshot below).



Note that the XML1/Root/CustomerCode element has been defined to update to 'All' if the end user clicks the *Show all orders* label.

4. Click OK to finish.

Sub Page: Data Sources

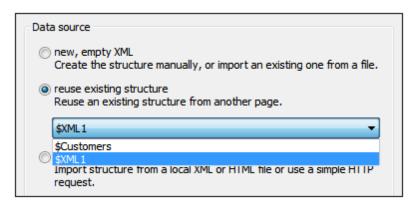
The sub page has already been created because this step was needed earlier, in order to define the Go to Subpage action. Our sub page is called Orders. It will have the following data sources:

- sorders, which will have the structure and content of orders.xml. This data source is needed in order to display the orders contained in Orders.xml
- \$XML1: This data source is shared with the top page. It is needed in the sub page because it contains information indicating which orders the end user wants to see. Specifically, it will contain the code of the customer that the user has selected on the top page.
- scustomers: This data source is the same one that is used in the top page and it is shared with the top page. It is used in the sub page to retrieve customer information, such as the customer name.

Adding the data sources

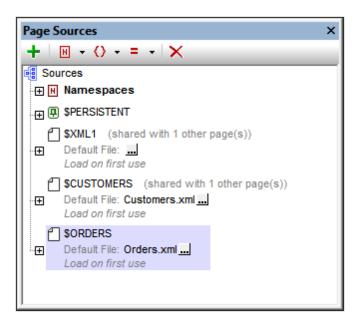
Add the three data sources as follows:

- 1. In the Page Sources Pane, click the Add Source icon, and select Reuse existing structure (see screenshot below).
- 2. In the option's combo box (screenshot below), select \$xmll, and click **OK**.



The \$xmll source will be added. Next to its name will be an annotation saying that it is shared with one other page. Note that the structure and content of \$XML1, as created in the top page, is already present.

- 3. Add the second shared data source, \$CUSTOMERS, in the same way. Note that the structure, content, and default file will be as created in the top page.
- 4. In the Page Sources Pane, click the Add Source icon, and select New XML or HTML structure imported from file. Browse for the file orders.xml and click Open. When you are prompted about whether to deploy the file, choose Yes. A data source called \$XML2 will be created.
- 5. Double-click the root node \$xmL2 and edit the name to \$orders (see screenshot below).
- 6. Click the Additional Dialog button of the \$orders default file. In the dialog that appears, select the Relative paths check box to make the file's path relative to the design (see screenshot below) and click **OK**.

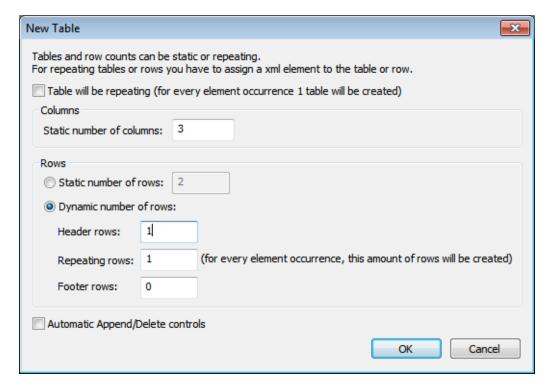


After the data sources have been added, you are ready to create the design of the sub page.

Sub Page: Orders Table

We will now create a table to display the orders of the customer that is selected on the top page by the end user. The orders are stored in the XML data source Orders.xml. Create the Orders table as follows.

- 1. Drag a Table control from the Controls Pane and drop it into the design.
- In the New Table dialog that appears (see screenshot below), create the table as a dynamic table. Do this by selecting Dynamic number of rows. This will create a table with as many rows as there are corresponding row elements in the data source. Specify that the table has three columns and one header row (see screenshot below). Click OK to create the table.



- 3. From the <u>Page Sources Pane</u>, drag the order element to the **Repeating Row** icon of the table in the design. Each order element will now correspond to one row of the table, and the order element will be the XPath context node of the table.
- Drag a <u>Label control</u> from the <u>Controls Pane</u> and drop it into the first column of the header row. Type in <u>Customer</u> as the text of the label (see <u>screenshot below</u>). Create headers for the other columns similarly: <u>Order</u> and <u>Amount</u>.
- 5. Select all three header labels (by pressing **Ctrl** while selecting each label), and apply whatever label formatting you like in the **Styles & Properties Pane**.
- Drag <u>Label controls</u> from the <u>Controls Pane</u> and drop them, respectively, into the three columns of the table-body row.
- 7. Select all three table-body row labels (by pressing **Ctrl** while selecting each label), and apply whatever label formatting you like in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>.

The labels of the table-body rows have now been placed in the table cells. Their text will be specified via the XPath expressions described in the next section.

Create XPath expressions for the label texts

The table output we want is shown below. Notice the contents of the different columns.

Customer	Order	Amount
789: JuniorsRV	002/2015-04-03	EUR 8345.60
789: JuniorsRV	005/2015-04-06	EUR 2786.45

To create XPath expressions for a label's text, first select the label. In the Styles & Properties
Pane, select the label's Text property and click the XPath icon in the pane's menu bar. In the XPath dialog that appears, enter the respective XPath expressions. Note that the XPath context node is the respective \$ORDERS/Orders/Order element.

For the Customer column

```
if ($XML1/Root/CustomerCode!='All')
then concat(CustomerCode, ': ', $XML1/Root/CustomerName)
else concat(CustomerCode, ': ', for $i in CustomerCode return $CUSTOMERS/
Customers/Customer[@code=$i][1]/Name)
```

- For a table with orders of a selected customer, the customer name is obtained from the \$XML1 tree.
- For a table showing all orders, the customer name is retrieved from the \$CUSTOMERS tree
 by using the customer code in the \$ORDERS tree as the key. (The customer code is
 present in both trees.)

For the Order column

```
concat(@number, '/', OrderDate)
```

For the Amount column

```
concat(Currency, ' ', OrderAmount)
```

Finishing the Orders table

After having defined the contents of each column, format the labels as you like with properties from the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>. Now we have to specify the visibility property of the table row group so that only the customer that has been selected on the top page will be displayed in the table. The visibility property is described in the <u>next section</u>.

Sub Page: Visibility Property

The Orders table that we have created in the Orders sub page is a dynamic table that generates one row for each Order element (or record) in the data source Orders.xml. The Order elements are presented in the order in which they occur in the data file. But we can control which Order elements are displayed. This is done with the Visible property of the Table Row Group. The property takes an XPath expression that selects the Order elements to display

To set the XPath expression of the **visible** property, select the repeating row in the design, and, in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, go to the properties of the Table Row Group, and click the **XPath** icon of the **visible** property. In the <u>Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog</u> that appears, enter the following XPath expression:

if (\$XML1/Root/CustomerCode!='All') then CustomerCode=\$XML1/Root/CustomerCode
else CustomerCode

This XPath expression works as follows:

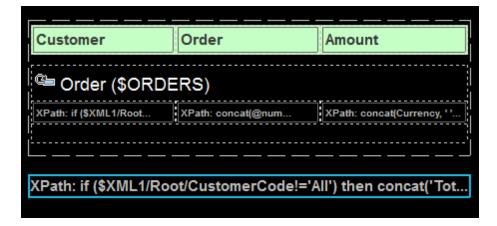
- 1. The if clause of the expression tests whether the element \$XML1/Root/CustomerCode contains the string All.
- 2. If the element \$XML1/Root/CustomerCode does not contain the string All, then all Order elements that have their CustomerCode element content equal to the content of the \$XML1/Root/CustomerCode element will be selected. In effect, these will be the Order elements of the customer that was selected by the end user. Remember that the customer's CustomerCode has been stored in the \$XML1 data source (see Top Page: Action Group, Go to Sub Page).
- 3. If the element \$XML1/Root/CustomerCode contains the string All, then all Order elements that have a child CustomerCode element will be selected. In effect, this will select all Order elements in the data file.

Note: The advantage of using the **visible** property is that it is a simple, efficient, and effective alternative to other ways of generating a table containing selected elements only.

Sub Page: Decimal Totals in XPath

To complete the design, we will add a label that displays the total amount of the displayed orders. Do this as follows:

- 1. Drag a <u>Label control</u> from the <u>Controls Pane</u> and drop it below the Orders table (see screenshot below).
- 2. In the Styles & Properties Pane, Click the XPath icon of the control's Text property.
- 3. In the In the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog that appears, enter the XPath expression to calculate the total amounts (the expression is given below), and click **OK**.



The XPath expression to calculate the total amount

We need to calculate totals in two events: (i) for the orders of the selected customer, and (ii) for all orders. This can be done with the following XPath expression:

```
if ($XML1/Root/CustomerCode!='All')
then concat('Total: ', xs:decimal(sum ($ORDERS//Order[CustomerCode=$XML1/Root/
CustomerCode]/OrderAmount)))
else concat('Total: ', xs:decimal(sum ($ORDERS//OrderAmount)))
```

This XPath expression works as follows:

- 1. The if clause of the expression tests whether the element \$XML1/Root/CustomerCode contains the string All.
- 2. If the element \$XML1/Root/CustomerCode does not contain the string All, then the OrderAmount element of all Order elements that have their CustomerCode element content equal to the content of the \$XML1/Root/CustomerCode element will be selected. These will be the amounts of those Order elements of the customer that was selected by the end user. Remember that the customer's CustomerCode has been stored in the \$XML1 data source (see Top Page: Action Group, Go to Sub Page).
- 3. If the element \$XML1/Root/CustomerCode contains the string All, then all OrderAmount elements will be selected.

The selected OrderAmount elements are summed using the sum() function of XPath. Since the sum() function uses the xs:double type and returns an xs:double number, the amount will have more than the two decimal places we require in a currency. We therefore use the xs:decimal

type converter to round the ${\tt xs:double}$ to a two-decimal place number.

Simulation and Testing

After completing the design, run a simulation (by pressing **F5**) and test your design. The screenshots below show the top page and sub pages in the MobileTogether Designer simulator.

Top page: Customers



Sub page: Orders (for selected customer and all customers, respectively)





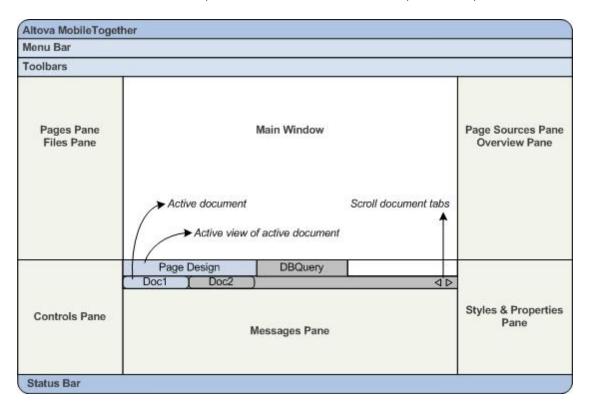
That's it!

Chapter 5

The User Interface

5 The User Interface

The Graphical User Interface (GUI) consists of a Main Window (consisting of the Page Design and DB Query View tabs) and several panes (see screenshot below). By default, the panes are located around the Main Window, but can be moved around the GUI, minimized, or hidden.



The panes, which are listed below, are described in the sub-sections of this section:

- Pages Pane
- Files Pane
- Controls Pane
- Page Sources Pane
- Overview Pane
- Styles & Properties Pane
- Messages Pane

Showing/hiding panes

A pane can be displayed or hidden by toggling it, respectively, on or off in the **View** menu. A displayed pane can also be hidden by right-clicking its title bar of the displayed pane and selecting the command **Hide**.

The User Interface 123

Floating and docking the panes

An individual pane can either float free of the GUI or be docked within the GUI. When a floating window is docked, it docks into its last docked position. A window can also be docked as a tab within another window.

A window can be made to float or dock using one of the following methods:

- Right-click the title bar of a window and choose the required command (Floating or Docking).
- Double-click the title bar of the window. If docked, the window will now float. If floating, the window will now dock in the last position in which it was docked.
- Drag the window (using its title bar as a handle) out of its docked position so that it floats. Drag a floating window (by its title bar) to the location where it is to be docked. Two sets of blue arrows appear. The outer set of four arrows enables docking relative to the application window (along the top, right, bottom, or left edge of the GUI). The inner set of arrows enables docking relative to the window over which the cursor is currently placed. Dropping a dragged window on the button in the center of the inner set of arrows (or on the title bar of a window) docks the dragged window as a tabbed window within the window in which it is dropped.

To float a tabbed window, double-click its tab. To drag a tabbed window out of a group of tabbed windows, drag its tab.

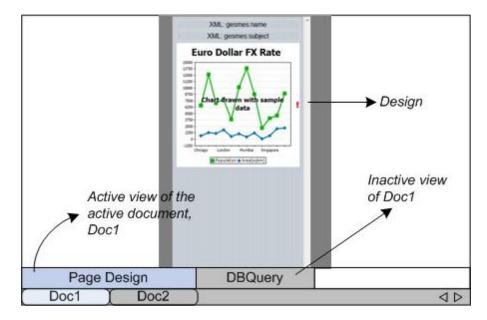
Auto-hiding panes

The Auto-hide feature enables you to minimize docked panes to buttons along the edges of the application window. This gives you more screen space for the Main Window and other panes. Scrolling over a minimized pane rolls out that pane.

To auto-hide and restore panes click the drawing pin icon in the title bar of the pane window (or right-click the title bar and select **Auto-Hide**).

5.1 Main Window

The Main Window (*screenshot below*) is where you design the pages of the MobileTogether Designer project and directly query a database to preview table data. It consists of two views, only one of which can be active at a time: Page Design and DB Query.



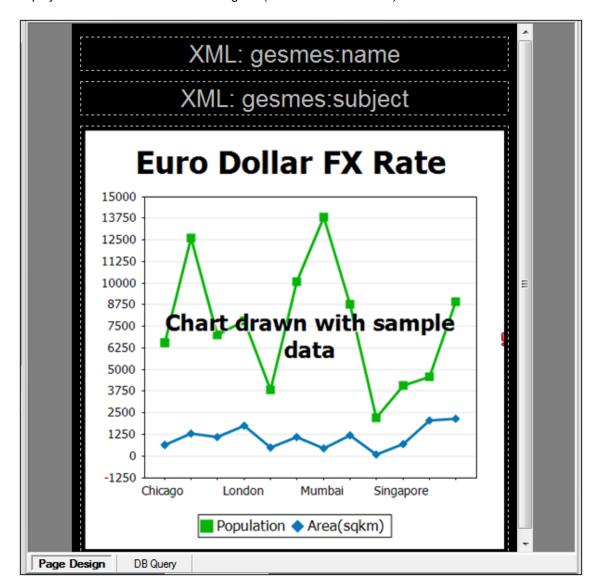
MobileTogether Design (.mtd) files in the Main Window

Note the following points:

- Any number of MobileTogether Design (*.mtd) files can be open simultaneously. You can switch among the open documents and edit them.
- Each open document has its own window and a tab with its name at the bottom of the Main Window. To make an open document active, click its tab.
- If several files are open, some document tabs might not be visible for lack of space in the document tabs bar. Document tabs can be brought into view by: (i) using the scroll buttons at the right of the document tab bar, or (ii) selecting the required document from the list at the bottom of the Window menu.
- You can activate open files in the sequence in which they were opened by using Ctrl+Tab or Ctrl+F6.
- Right-clicking a file tab opens a context-menu that contains a selection of <u>File</u> commands, such as <u>Print</u> and <u>Close</u>.
- Placing the mouse cursor over components in the Main Window displays a popup containing further information about the function of that component.

Page Design

The **Page Design View** (**Page View** for short) is the view in which the page that is going to be deployed to the mobile device is designed (*see screenshot below*).



To design a page, drag-and-drop controls from the <u>Controls Pane</u> into the design, and then specify, in the <u>Properties Pane</u>, the settings of that control. Controls can be positioned anywhere on the page. As you drag a control over the page, possible drop positions are indicated with an arrow. The settings of a control can be edited at any later time by selecting the control in the design and editing its settings in the <u>Properties Pane</u>. Delete a control in the design by selecting it and pressing **Delete**.

Page View settings

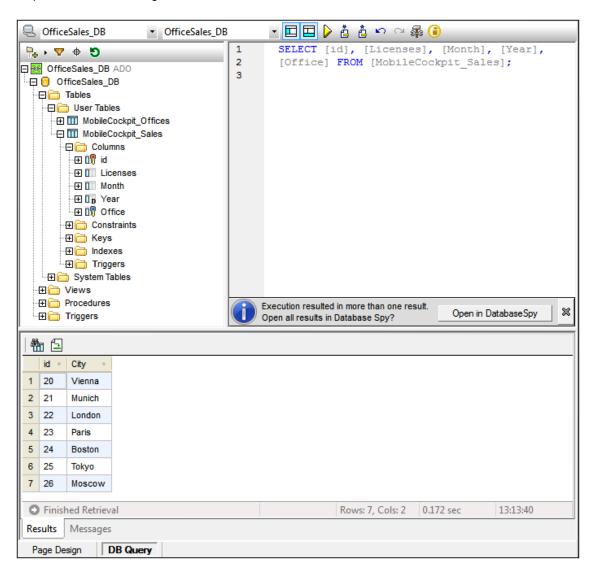
The screenshot below shows the Page View settings in the Main toolbar.



- Device Selector: This combo box allows you to select various mobile devices, so that the design can be previewed for specific devices.
- Portrait/Landscape Preview Toggle: Toggles the design preview between portrait and landscape.
- Zoom level: A combo box to select the zoom level in 10% steps from 10% to 100%. The zoom level can also be modified via the **View** menu.
- Lock all page views to same device and zoom level: The page views of all open documents will be locked to the currently selected device and zoom level.

DB Query

The **DB Query View** (*screenshot below*) enables you to directly query any major database from within the MobileTogether Designer GUI. The database could be a data source referenced in the active document or an external database. Note that each DB Query pane is associated with the currently active design. You can have connections to multiple databases for a single design. There can also be multiple designs open in MobileTogether Designer. Queries and actions defined in the DB Query View are independent of other MobileTogether Designer tabs, and are not saved as part of the .mtd design file.

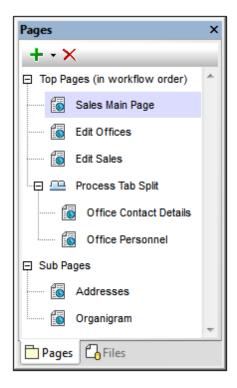


See the section, Database Query, for a detailed description.

128 The User Interface Pages Pane

5.2 Pages Pane

The **Pages Pane** enables you to add new pages to a project and displays a tree of all the pages in the project (*see screenshot below*). To see the default location of the Pages Pane, go to The Graphical User Interface (GUI).



To display a page, click its entry in the Pages Pane.

Top pages, sub pages, and tabbed pages

There are three kinds of project page:

- Top pages: A top page is part of the sequence of pages that makes up a workflow. When
 the solution is started, it progresses from the first page to the last, in the order listed in
 the Pages Pane. You can change the position of a page in the list by dragging the page
 to a new position. Tabbed pages are also part of the workflow sequence, but sub pages
 are not.
- Sub pages: A sub page is not part of the sequence of pages that make up the workflow of the project. It is similar to a module that is called by a control in a top page (or tabbed page). For example, an <code>OnButtonClicked</code> event of a Button control in a top page could use the <code>GoToSubpage</code> action to go to a particular subpage, and then return to the top page (or go to another page).
- Tabbed pages (or tab splits): A tabbed page (or tab split) is a page with tabs, each of which, contains a page. For example, in the screenshot above, the tabbed page (*Process Tab Split*) is defined to have two tabs that contain, respectively, the pages *Office Contact Details* and *Office Personnel*. Tabbed pages are part of the page sequence that makes up the project's workflow.

The User Interface Pages Pane 129

Adding, renaming, and deleting pages

Besides the methods listed in the following table, you can also use context menu commands for some of these tasks (see *further below*).

То	Do this
Add a page	Click the Add Page icon in the pane's toolbar. From the dropdown menu, select Add Top Page , Add Tab Split , or Add Sub Page . A new page is added to the Pages Pane with a name of <i>New Page X</i> or <i>Process Tab Split</i> , and the empty new page is displayed in the Main Window.
Rename a page	Double-click the name in the Pages Pane and edit the name.
Delete a page	Select the page you want to delete and click the Delete icon in the pane's toolbar, or press Delete .

Context menu

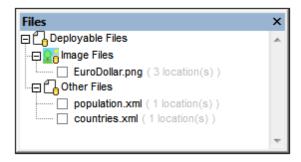
The context menu of items in the Pages Pane enables you to insert pages before the selected item (**Insert**), or to append pages (**Add**) to the sequence of top pages and to the list of sub pages. Child pages can only be added to tabbed pages via the context menu of the tabbed page item.

То	Do this
Add a page before a top page, sub page, tabbed page, or child page of a tabbed page	Right-click the page and select Insert Page
Add a top page at the end of the <i>Top Pages</i> list	Right-click any item and select Add Top Page
Add a sub page at the end of the Sub Pages list	Right-click any item and select Add Sub Page
Add a child page at the end of a list of child pages of a tabbed page	Right-click the tabbed page and select Add Page as Child

130 The User Interface Files Pane

5.3 Files Pane

The **Files Pane** (*screenshot below*) lists the files of the project that can be deployed to the server. Some files, such as the default files of data sources, are added automatically to the list of deployable files when these files are first associated with the project. But you can also add files directly to the list of deployable files via the context menu (obtained by right-clicking inside the Files Pane). These deployable files can be image files and other files, such as XML files, and they are organized in the pane under two headings: *Image Files* and *Other Files* (*see screenshot below*).



Each file has a check box next to it. To deploy a file, select its check box. To not deploy a file, de-select its check box.

The following information and actions are available in the Files Pane:

- Add or remove files via commands in the pane's context menu (see below).
- Make a filepath relative or absolute via the respective commands in the file's context menu.
- The total number of times the file is used across all the pages of the project is displayed next to the file name.
- Check the box in front of each file name to deploy the file to MobileTogether Server when
 the project is deployed to the server. Uncheck the box if you do not want to deploy the
 file.

About deployed files

Deployed files are read-only files that are stored on the server. Deploying is ideal for default XML files, image files, and other data files that will be used to only read data. If the data file is to be written to and stored on the server, do not deploy it, but store it on the server at a location that the MTD file correctly references. (See the section Location of Project Files for details.) Files to be deployed are transferred to the server at the time when the solution is deployed. (See the section Deploying the Project for details.) When a file is deployed, it is stored with that design. Deploying a file subsequently with another design does not affect previously deployments.

- + Deploy only if the file is used as a read-only file.
- + Deploy if, for some reason, the file's URL will not be accessible to clients.
- + Deploy if you want the file in the same unchanged state when accessed by clients.
- + Deploy if file loading needs to be faster.
- Do not deploy if the files needs to be written to.
- Do not deploy if the large size of files on the server is an issue.
- Do not deploy if the file changes continuously and solutions require the latest version.

The User Interface Files Pane 131

- Do not deploy if the design is to be sent to others; in this case, consider embedding data files in the design.

Adding and removing deployable files from within the Files Pane

То	Do this
Add a file	Right-click in the Files Pane and, from the context menu that appears, click Add File , and then browse for the file you want. The added file appears in the <i>Image Files</i> or <i>Other Files</i> list, according to what file type it is.
Remove a file	Right-click the file you want to remove and, from the context menu that appears, click Remove File .

Adding deployable files to the project from outside the Files Pane

Files can be deployed from outside the Files Pane is the following ways:

- When a file is added as a page source or when an image file is added to a page design, a
 dialog is displayed that asks whether the file should be deployed to MobileTogether
 Server. If you click Yes, the file is added to the Files Pane with its check box selected. If
 you click No, the file is added to the Files Pane with its check box unselected. You can
 select/deselect a file's check box in the Files Pane (see screenshot above) at any later
 time.
- In the context menu of the <u>root node of a data source</u> in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u>.

■ Also see

Deploy to MobileTogether Server
Location of Project Files
Deploying the Project
Data Storage on Servers.

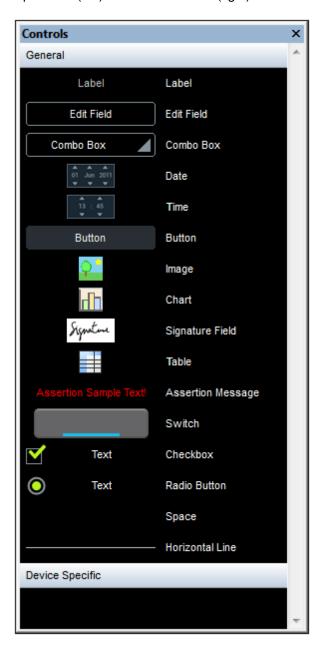
132 The User Interface Controls Pane

5.4 Controls Pane

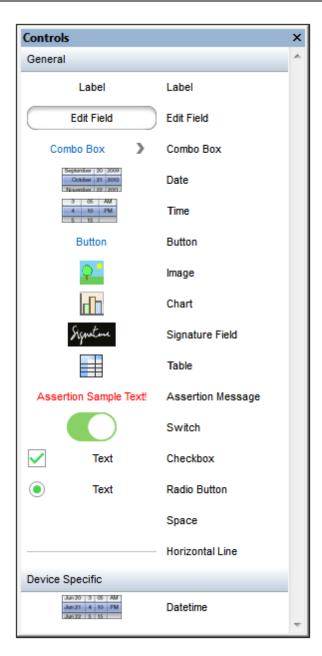
The **Controls Pane** shows all the controls that can be added to a page design or to a workflow. To see the default location of the Controls Pane, go to The Graphical User Interface (GUI).

Page design controls

Page design controls are available when the <u>Page Design tab</u> is selected in the Main Window. The appearance of the Controls Pane and the controls corresponds to the <u>currently selected</u> <u>device</u>. For example, the Controls Panes shown in the screenshots below are for Android LG Optimus 7 (*left*) and iPhone 6 Plus (*right*).



The User Interface Controls Pane 133

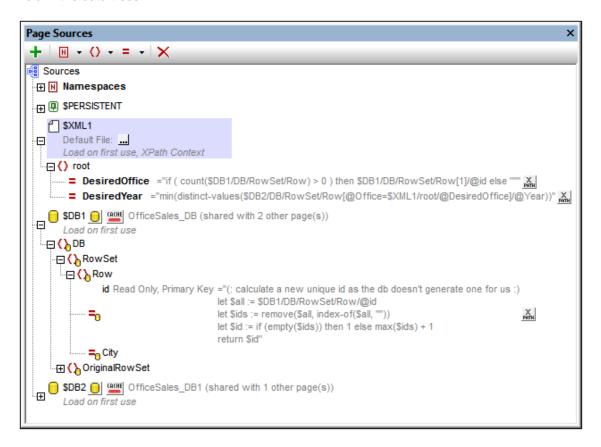


The pane's controls are organized into a *General* section and a *Device-Specific* section. To add a control to a page design, drag and drop the control onto the desired location in the <u>page design</u>.

134 The User Interface Page Sources Pane

5.5 Page Sources Pane

The **Page Sources Pane** (*screenshot below*) is where page data sources are managed. These data sources provide both (i) the structure of data trees used in the design, as well as (ii) the data held in the data trees.



The pane provides the following main functionality:

- Displays all the data sources of the page currently selected in the <u>Pages Pane</u>
- Displays all the namespaces declared for the active project
- Enables data sources to be added to the page, via the toolbar's Add Source icon
- Enables namespaces to be added to the project, via the toolbar's **Add Namespace** icon
- Enables the default data file of a data source to be set. The data file provides the data that goes into the nodes of the data source
- Enables elements and attributes to be added to a tree, relative to the selected node
- Enables elements and attributes to be given fixed values or XPath-generated values on page load
- Enables the default XPath context node to be set (the highlighted node in the screenshot above). The selected node will be the context node for all XPath expressions defined for that page
- Enables nodes to be associated with controls in the page design. This is done by dragging the node onto the control. The associated node (called the page source link) is displayed in bold. When you hover over such a node in the data source tree, a popup provides information about the associated control/s in the design. Controls that are associated with a page source link have an icon at the control's top left. Hovering over the icon displays information about the associated page source link.

The User Interface Page Sources Pane 135

• Enables items in the pane (namespaces, trees, elements, and attributes) to be deleted

For detailed information about how to manage and work with page sources, see the section, Page Data Sources.

Manually creating a tree structure

Elements and attributes can be added relative to any node in a tree structure (including the <u>root node</u>), and they can be deleted. Select a node in a data source, and click the appropriate toolbar command (*see toolbar screenshot below*). Temporary elements and attributes are intended to hold data used for calculations or data that for any other reason should not be saved to file. The data of temporary nodes is not saved.

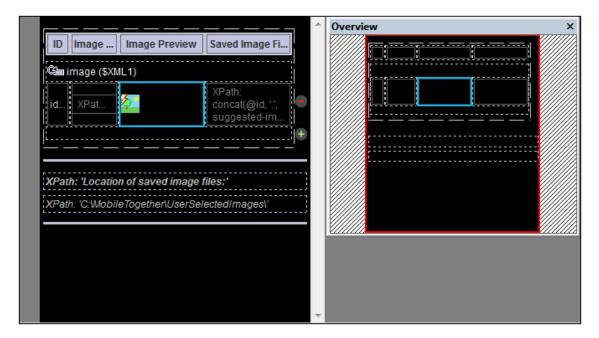


Icon	Command	Does this	
+	Add Source	Displays the Add Page Source dialog. A root node is created for the data source that is added. Only one child element can be added to a root node.	
H	Add Namespace	Inserts or appends a namespace declaration under the <i>Namespace</i> entry. Edit the default prefix if you want, and enter a namespace.	
⟨⟩ ▼	Add Element	Inserts, appends, or adds a child element relative to the selected node.	
= +	Add Attribute	Inserts, appends, or adds a child attribute relative to the selected node.	
×	Delete	Deletes the selected node.	

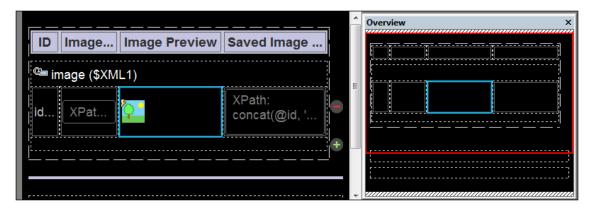
136 The User Interface Overview Pane

5.6 Overview Pane

The **Overview Pane** (*screenshot below*) shows a small version of the <u>Page Design View</u>. To see the default location of the Overview Pane, go to <u>The Graphical User Interface</u> (GUI).



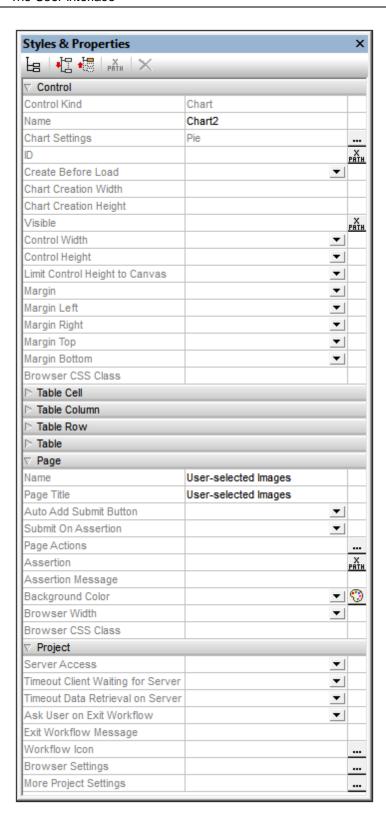
In the Overview Pane in the screenshot above, the extent of the design is indicated by the black area. The red rectangle is the viewport. It indicates the part of the design that is currently visible in Page Design View, and its dimensions correspond to those of the displayed part of the design (compare the screenshots above and below). If a component is selected in the design, the selected component will be highlighted in the Overview Pane (see screenshots). If part of the design is not displayed in the viewport, you can grab the red rectangle in the Overview Pane and move it so that the required part of the design is brought within the viewport. The screenshot above shows that the entire design is inside the viewport, but in the screenshot below, the lower parts of the design are outside the viewport. These parts can be moved into view by dragging the red rectangle down.



The Overview Pane is useful for managing the viewing of large diagrams.

5.7 Styles & Properties Pane

The **Styles & Properties Pane** (*screenshot below*) displays the properties of the currently selected page controls, pages, and project, and enables these to be conveniently edited in one place. The Styles & Properties Pane is divided into the following sub-panes: (i) *Control,* for the properties of the page control currently selected in the design, (ii) *Page,* for the properties of the current page, and (iii) *Project,* for the properties of the current project. The Table control and its parts (cells, columns, and rows) are each given a separate pane (*see screenshot below*). Table and table-part sub panes are only displayed if, in the design, a part of a table is selected.



Styles & Properties Pane toolbar

The commands available in the Styles & Properties toolbar (*screenshot below*) are listed in the table below:



Icon	Command	Does this		
H	List Non-Empty	Toggles between displaying all properties and only those that have values defined for them. Properties that have default values are considered empty.		
₽	Expand All	Expands all sub-panes.		
•	Collapse All	Collapses all sub-panes.		
X	Edit XPath	Enabled when a property that requires an XPath expression is selected. It displays up the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog.		
×	Reset	Resets the property to empty or to its default value.		

Entering and editing property values

Property values are entered or edited depends on the type of entry field the property has:

Type of entry field	Do this	
Text field	Double-click, and enter or edit the property value.	
Combo box	Select a value from the dropdown list.	
Color palette	Pops up the color palette to enable selection of a color.	
Edit XPath	Pops up the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog to enable the entry of an XPath/XQuery expression. The expression provides the value of the property.	
Additional dialog	Click to open the associated dialog. This could be, for example, the Actions dialog or the Open File dialog.	

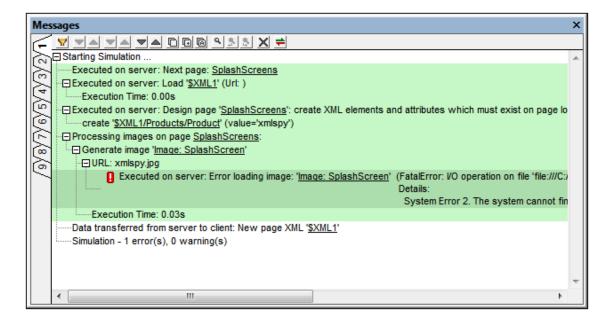
140 The User Interface Messages Pane

5.8 Messages Pane

The **Messages Pane** (*screenshot below*) displays messages in the following contexts:

• It reports the <u>validation results</u> of the currently active project. This includes all pages in the project. If an error is reported, the error message contains a link that points to the component that generated the error.

• During <u>simulations</u>, it provides a detailed and step-by-step report of the progress of the workflow.

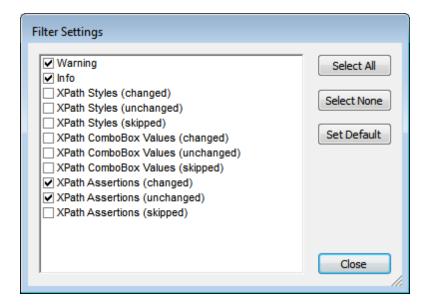


The toolbar of the Messages Pane contains commands that enable the following actions: filtering of the messages, navigation of the messages, copying of messages, searching the messages, setting the background colors of server and client log messages, and clearing the current tab. There are nine Messages tabs. Therefore, you can retain the results of a validation in one tab while carrying out a simulation with a new tab open.

Filtering messages

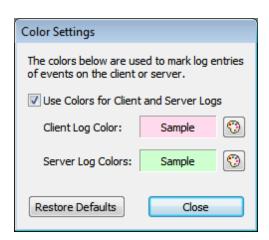
You can specify what kind of messages are displayed in the Messages Pane. To do this, click the **Filte** button in the toolbar of the Messages Pane (*screenshot above*). This displays the Filter Settings dialog (*screenshot below*). Select the message types you want to display and click **Close**. This feature can be very useful, for example, if there are too many messages and you wish to focus on just one type of message.

The User Interface Messages Pane 141



Color settings

For messages that are displayed during simulations, different colors can be set for actions that take place on the server and on the client. If you set clearly distinguishable colors, you can very easily follow the workflow in the Messages Pane. This can be of great help in debugging. To set customs colors, click the **Colors** button in the toolbar of the Messages Pane (*screenshot above*). This displays the Color Settings dialog (*screenshot below*), in which you can set the colors you want.



Chapter 6

The Project

6 The Project

This section describes options that are relevant at the project level:

- Location of Project Files
- Deploying the Project
- Project Properties
- Localization
- Namespaces
- Global Resources
- Performance

The Project Location of Project Files 145

6.1 Location of Project Files

The project file (aka design or MTD file), which has the .mtd extension, is deployed to the server. It is the solution that will be accessed by the MobileTogether Client app. When the project file is deployed to the server it is stored in a MobileTogether Server database, and the server will reference the file by its name. The project file uses other files (such as XML files and image files), from which it reads data and to which it can write data. These associated files can be stored at the following locations:

■ Deployed to the server with the project file

- These data files will be read-only on the server.
- The files are stored in the server's database. The advantage is that access to the data files is internally handled within the project.
- A file can be referenced in the design with a relative or absolute path. When the file is deployed, it is the string that makes up the filepath in the design (relative or absolute) that will be used as the internal file reference on the server database.
- For the details of deployment, see: <u>Deploying the Project</u>, <u>Files Pane</u>, <u>Deploy to MobileTogether Server</u>.

■ Embedded within the project file

- This applies to XML data files (typically the default files of data sources).
- The advantage of embedding is that the XML data and images will be transported together with the project file, and will be correctly accessed from within the project. Therefore, server access is not required in order to access these files.
- As with deployed files, embedded XML files will be read-only.
- The disadvantage is that the size of the project file increases.
- To embed a file, right-click its <u>root node</u> in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u>, and select <u>Embed XML in Design File</u>. You can select whether files are <u>automatically re-embedded</u> when the user starts a simulation or deploys the solution to the server.

■ A directory on the server

- Files of any type can be stored in any directory on the server. These files can be readwrite
- However, care must be taken to correctly configure (i) the file's location when it is added, and (ii) MobileTogether Server's Server Side Solution's Working Directory setting.
- If files are referenced by relative paths, the relative paths are resolved relative to the Working Directory.
- If files are referenced by absolute paths, the directory containing the file must be a descendant directory of the Working Directory. For example:

If the absolute path of the referenced file is: C:\Altova\MobileTogether\Test\First.xml

and the Working Directory is set to: C:\Altova\MobileTogether then the XML file will be accessed correctly.

It will not be accessed correctly if the Working Directory is set to: C:\Altova\MobileTogether\Files Or to C:\Altova\MTD

• The advantage of using directories on the server to store data files is that the data accessed by the solution will always be up-to-date.

■ A URL accessible over the Internet

- Files of any type can be stored at any URL that the server can access over the Internet.
- If a file is added as a data source, security authorizations can be set when specifying the properties of the data source.
- The advantages of using Internet locations are: (i) data accessed by the solution will always be up-to-date, and (ii) the solution is portable.

■ Also see

146

Deploy to MobileTogether Server Files Pane Deploying the Project Data Storage on Servers.

6.2 Deploying the Project

After you have completed the design of your project in MobileTogether Designer, the project (or design) is ready to be deployed to one or more MobileTogether Servers. In order to deploy the project to a MobileTogether Server, you need to have an HTTP connection to the machine on which the targeted MobileTogether Server is running. Once the project is deployed, it is available as a MobileTogether solution that MobileTogether Client applications running on mobile devices can access.

Deployment and access control

The available deployment options provide you with considerable flexibility in controlling access to solutions. There are two broad levels of access control.

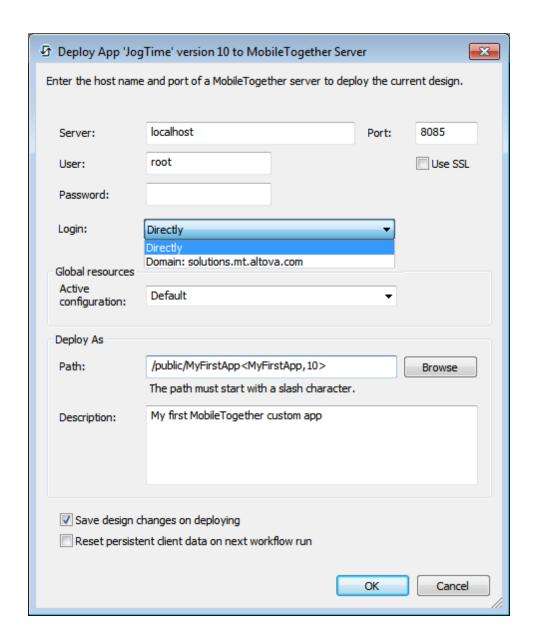
On a first level, access can be controlled at the server level, according to the kind of server access (internal/external) that is allowed:

- Deployment to in-house servers behind a firewall automatically restricts access to internal users, for example, to the employees of a company.
- Deployment to servers that allow external access allow external end users to access MobileTogether solutions, for example, the customers or clients of a company.

On a second level, for each server a set of users can be defined that have access to the solutions on that server. Access will be available only to those clients that submit the appropriate username and password. The users of a server and their privileges are defined in settings of MobileTogether Server. See the <u>user manual of MobileTogether Server</u> for details of how to define users, roles, and user privileges.

How to deploy a project

A project is deployed to the server with the <u>File | Deploy to Server</u> command. This command displays the Deploy to MobileTogether Server dialog (*screenshot below*), in which you specify the <u>server connection details</u> and whether the server uses SSL communication.



What is deployed?

The following files are deployed when the project is deployed with the <u>File | Deploy to Server</u> command:

- The project file (aka design or MTD file), which has the .mtd extension, is deployed to the server. This file is the solution that will be accessed by the MobileTogether Client app.
- All the deployable files in the <u>Files Pane</u> that have their check boxes selected. These files are typically image files and the default files of <u>data sources</u>.

All deployed files will be stored on the server and will be correctly accessed by the design file.

This is very convenient because you do not have to worry about the files being correctly accessed. Note, however, that these files are read-only. So, any files that need to be written to cannot be deployed, but must be stored manually on the server. The server and the design file must then be correctly configured to access the writable file. See the section Location of Project Files | A directory on the server for details of how to do this.

Deployed files and the locations of project files

Deployed files are read-only. If there is a Save action defined for a file that is marked for deployment (in the <u>Files Pane</u>), then the design will be invalid—since the file will be read-only when deployed and cannot be written to. Deployed files are saved in the design and are read from there.

Files that are not deployed must be stored at a server location that is correctly referenced in the design. To build a correct reference to the file, you must correctly configure (i) the file's location when it is added, and (ii) MobileTogether Server's Server Side Solution's Working Directory setting. See the section Location of Project Files | A directory on the server for more information.

Updating server settings on client devices

In order for a client device to run a solution, the server's access settings must be configured on that device. If the server settings change—for example, if the MobileTogether Server is moved to another machine that has a different IP address—then the server settings on client devices must be modified accordingly. The MobileTogether function mt-server-config-url generates a URL that contains the new server settings and looks something like this: mobiletogether://mt/change-settings?settings=<json encoded settings>. This URL can be sent as an email link to the MobileTogether Client device. When the link is tapped, server settings on the client are automatically updated.

The JSON-encoded server settings that are contained in the URL are provided by the argument of the mt-server-config-url function (described here). For an example of how to use this function, see the example solution ClientConfiguration.mtd in the MobileTogetherExamples/SimpleApps folder of your MobileTogether Designer installation.

Note: At the time of writing (late April 2015), links to update server settings do not work in Gmail and some other email applications, but they work perfectly in popular clients such as AquaMail, K9, and MailWise. They have been tested in AquaMail and K9 and work correctly in these applications.

■ Also see

<u>Deploy to MobileTogether Server</u>, for a description of the Deploy to Server dialog (screenshot above)

<u>Location of Project Files</u>

<u>Files Pane</u>

<u>Data Storage on Servers</u>.

The Project Properties 151

6.3 Project Properties

Project properties are defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and are described below. The screenshot below shows default values.



Server Access

This option specifies the level of server access while the solution runs. The default is always.

- Always: Connection to the server is required in order to run the solution. The server is continually accessed while the solution runs.
- On Demand: The MobileTogether Client app runs the solution on its own; it connects to the server only when it needs to exchange data with the server. To run the solution, the app uses data in the internal SPERSISTENT tree, other persistent data, or embedded data. You can use the XPath function mt-has-serveraccess to check whether a server connection exists, and then use actions to save appropriately. For example, if no connection exists, then the data can be saved as persistent data on the client. As soon as a connection to the server is established, data can be saved to databases and/or files on the server.
- Never: The MobileTogether Client app runs the solution entirely on its own and without needing a connection to the server or any data from the Internet.

▼ Timeout: Client Waiting for Server

The amount of time the client waits for a response from the server. The value is an integer value in seconds that can be entered or selected from the dropdown list of the combo box. The default value is 15 seconds. If the timeout period is exceeded, then an error message is displayed on the client.

152 The Project Properties Project Properties

▼ Timeout: Data Retrieval on Server

The amount of time the server waits for data to be retrieved from a source external to the server (from a DB or URL, for example). The value is an integer value in seconds that can be entered or selected from the dropdown list of the combo box. The default value is 10 seconds. If the timeout period is exceeded, then an error message is displayed on the client. An exception to this is when load actions have the setting *On error* set to Continue.

Ask User on Exit Workflow

A boolean setting that sets whether the user is asked to confirm (workflow) solution exit. Select true or false in the combo box. Default value is true. If true, the text defined as the value of the next property, *Exit Workflow Message*, is displayed before the solution exits.

▼ Exit Workflow Message

The text of the message that is displayed as a prompt to confirm (workflow) solution exit. The message is displayed only if the previous property, *Ask User on Exit Workflow*, is set to true. The default message is: *Do you really want to exit this solution?*

▼ On Switch to Other Solution

While a solution is running, the end-user could switch to another solution. If this happens, the *On Switch to Other Solution* setting determines whether the original solution is suspended (paused and minimized), or canceled. If the solution is suspended, then the solution is paused at that point, and no further solution action is executed: for example, no timers are executed, no geolocations are used. When the solution is resumed, actions defined for the *On Reopen* option of the OnPageRefresh event are executed. The setting's options are:

- Cancel this solution: The default value. The solution is canceled; any unsaved data will be lost.
- Suspend this solution: The solution is paused but is kept open. Its icon will become
 available in the device's Running tab. To switch back to the solution, the end-user
 clicks the solution's icon in the Running tab.

Note: To test this property, the solution must be deployed to the server and run from there.

Note: Also see the <u>Solution Execution</u> action, which is another way to specify whether a solution is canceled or minimized.

The Project Properties 153

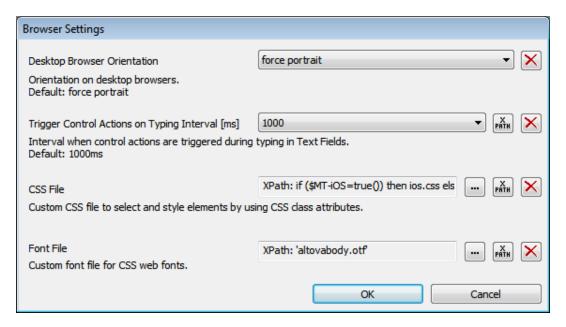
Note: Web clients do not support suspended solutions; only the active solution is supported.

▼ Workflow Icon

Clicking the property's **Additional Dialog** button displays a Browse dialog in which you can browse for the PNG image file to use as the icon of the project on client apps. By default, the MobileTogether icon will be used.

Browser Settings

Clicking the *Browser Settings* property's **Additional Dialog** button displays the Browser Settings dialog (*screenshot below*). Here you can define certain settings related to the browser of the mobile device. These settings are described below.



The following settings can be defined:

- Desktop Browser Orientation: The combo box options enable you to select the orientation of the browser: Force Portrait and Force Landscape. The default is Force Portrait.
- Trigger Control Actions on Typing Interval: This setting applies to web clients only (as opposed to MobileTogether Client apps on mobile devices). Since updates of solution pages that are edited in web clients must be sent to the server for processing, it is useful to be able to specify when the updated data should be sent to the server. The value selected here is the time interval after which updated data is sent. The server processes the updated data and returns it so that all affected page

154 The Project Properties Project Properties

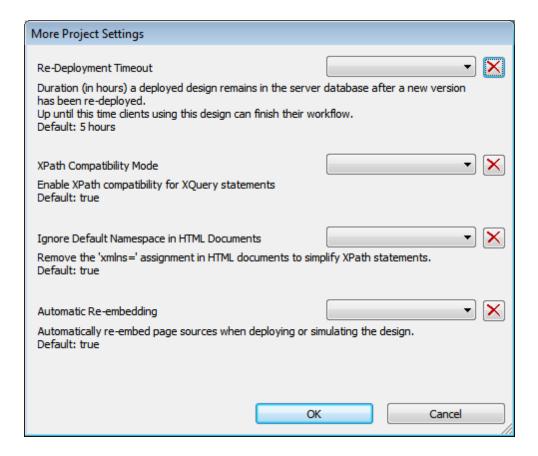
components are refreshed. The default of this setting is 1000ms. If the setting is disabled (by selecting disabled in the dropdown list of the combo box), then the control action is triggered when the end user changes focus, for example, by clicking somewhere else on the page. An XPath expression can be used to obtain the value of the setting, which must be either the string 'disabled' or a number that is read by MobileTogether Designer as being the number of milliseconds.

- CSS File: Specifies the external CSS file that is read in order to evaluate CSS properties assigned to the class selectors of controls in the design. Each control in the design has a property called Browser CSS Class, which defines a CSS class name specific to that control. CSS properties for these class selectors can then be defined in an external CSS file, which is deployed to the server. The CSS file to look up for the class rules is specified in this (CSS File) setting. You can select the CSS file via a file path or global resource alias. You can also use an XPath expression to generate the file path. Alternative CSS files for different clients can be specified by using XPath's if...then...else conditional construct (see screenshot above). Note that the CSS rules defined in the external CSS file have a lower priority than the definitions that are made in a control's properties.
- Font File: Specifies a font file that you want to embed in the design and use in addition to the system fonts. You can either browse for the font file, locate it with a global resource, or generate its filepath with an XPath expression. A font that is embedded in the design in this way can be referenced via the font-family property of CSS.

More Project Settings

Clicking the *More Project Settings* property's **Additional Dialog** button displays the More Project Settings dialog (*screenshot below*). You can select whether files are <u>automatically re-embedded</u> when the user starts a simulation or deploys the solution to the server.

The Project Properties 155



The following settings can be defined:

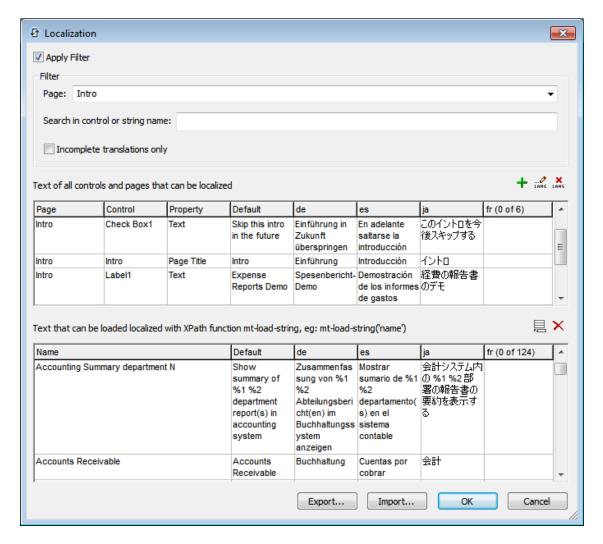
- Re-deployment Timeout: The time in hours after a new version of a solution is deployed that the superseded solution is kept on the server. This overlap time enables clients currently using the older solution to complete work. The default is 5 hours.
- XPath Compatibility Mode: When set to true, XQuery constructs that are invalid in XPath are resolved so that XQuery statements containing these constructs are compatible with XPath and can be used where XPath expressions are allowed. Currently, this concerns XQuery entity and character references, which are allowed in XQuery, but not in XPath. When XPath compatibility mode is set to true, XQuery entity and character references are read in XPath as text; they are not resolved. The default value for this setting is true.
- Ignore Default Namespace in HTML Documents: Since only one default namespace is allowed in an XML document, not ignoring the default namespace in HTML documents could create errors in reading XML data sources. The default is true: The HTML default namespace is ignored.
- Automatic Re-embedding: Embedding refers to the embedding of data sources in
 the project (design) file. If Automatic Re-embedding is enabled (true), then page
 data sources are re-embedded when deploying or simulating, ensuring that the
 latest data source files are embedded and that the data, therefore, is up-to-date. The
 default is true.

156 The Project Localization

6.4 Localization

A solution is created in a default language. But the text strings used in the solution can be localized (translated) into multiple languages. When the solution runs in a mobile device, the language of the solution is automatically selected to be the same as that of the mobile device. If the solution has not been localized into the language of the mobile device, the default language of the solution is used (see screenshot below).

The localized strings are defined in the Localization dialog (*screenshot below*) by adding a column for each new language and defining the localized strings in this column. For details, see the description of the menu command, Project | Localization. Additionally, named text strings can also be localized and subsequently referenced anywhere in the design by using the mt-load-string (NameOfString).



Localized solutions can be tested by selecting the simulation language you want via the **Project** | Simulation Language command and then running a simulation.

The Project Namespaces 157

6.5 Namespaces

Namespaces are important for correctly identifying nodes, and for correctly locating nodes with the use of XPath expressions. The *Namespaces* item in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> (*screenshot below*) contains all the namespaces that have been declared for the project, irrespective of what page is currently active in <u>Page Design View</u>.



Namespaces can be declared in two ways:

- Automatic declaration on data import: When an external XML file is added as a page source, namespaces in the source are automatically imported into the design and declared for the scope of the entire project. They then appear under the Namespaces item in the Page Sources Pane (see screenshot above). The namespace prefixes are automatically set to match the original prefixes if such matching creates no ambiguities in the design. Prefixes assigned in the namespace declaration are used in node names, and must be used in XPath expressions that are intended to locate these nodes in the page source.
- User-defined: You can also add namespaces by clicking the Namespace icon in the
 toolbar of the Page Sources Pane (screenshot above). Being able to add your own
 namespaces to a project enables you to create nodes that belong to one or more userdeclared namespaces. This is useful for disambiguating between nodes that have the
 same local name.

To delete a namespace, select it and click **Delete** in the pane's toolbar.

Note: A namespace prefix can be renamed at any time in the design process by double-clicking it in the Page Sources Pane and editing it. All references to the old prefix in XPath expressions throughout the design will be changed to the new prefix.

Note: The XPath default namespace (xpath-default-ns='') is used for all XPath/XQuery functions, including extension functions and <u>user-defined functions</u>.

158 The Project Global Resources

6.6 Global Resources

Global Resources in MobileTogether allow you to easily specify different database server names, file locations, or other configuration-specific parameters in a way that lets you easily switch from a development to a production system—and you can do that independently for each mobile solution. Because of this, Global Resources enable you to design and test quickly, and, thus, to save time.

As you develop a mobile solution in MobileTogether Designer, the Global Resources dialog allows you to identify each file, database connection, or directory with a user-defined name that can then be used to reference that resource anywhere in your solution. With Global Resources you can set up different configurations and easily switch your mobile solution modes by selecting a different Global Resources configuration.

Once you deploy a new mobile solution to MobileTogether Server, you can upload this configuration with your solution to control the access of your solution to specific servers even after it has been deployed. Administrators can configure the mobile solution's resource configuration on the fly, so a mobile solution can switch from a testing to a production environment with one click.

For more information about how to work with Global Resources, see the section, <u>Altova Global</u> Resources.

6.7 Performance

You can optimize performance of your MobileTogether solutions by being aware of how MobileTogether Server and the MobileTogether Client app work together, how MobileTogether Server can be used to do the most data-intensive processing and store large amounts of data, and how settings to optimize performance can be made in the project design in MobileTogether Designer. This section describes important optimization concepts.

- Embed XML in Design File
- Data Querying with XQuery 3.1
- Data Storage on Servers
- Persistent Data Storage on Clients

Embed XML in Design File

Instead of the solution referencing external XML data sources, any XML data can be embedded directly into the design file. This option is perfect for smaller data sets that are needed on the client side, such as a list of choices for a combo-box or other static data. This data is then transmitted to the client as a part of the overall design file and is always instantly available on the client side every time you run the app. So no additional data transfers between client and server are needed.

To embed a data source in the design file, right-click the data source and select **Embed XML in Design File**.

Data Querying with XQuery 3.1

Using the powerful XQuery 3.1 language, you can write expressions that significantly reduce the amount of data being transferred between the server and client. Database views, queries, or web service calls to external data sources will yield raw data for a mobile application. This often contains redundancies or may not be the ideal structure for the intended data display in the mobile application. XQuery's powerful FLWOR expressions allow you to easily restructure and regroup the data to ensure the most efficient data transfer from server to client and the most useful presentation in the client application.

This new version of XQuery has several new features, including support for maps, arrays, and data in the JSON format.

You can use the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression Dialog to create and check XQuery expressions.

Data Storage on Servers

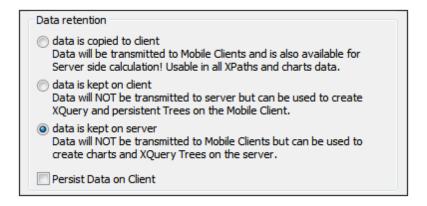
The speed with which data for solutions is processed can be enhanced by storing certain types of data on the server:

• Data that is used to generate charts and graphs, which are images, does not need to be sent to the client; only the image needs to be sent. So the data used to generate the charts and graphs can be kept on the server, and does not need to be transferred.

Powerful "Keep Data on Server" Setting

To reduce the amount of data transmitted over the mobile data network—which improves the performance of any mobile solution—MobileTogether lets you select exactly which data you want to transmit to the client devices and which data to keep on the server. For example, if a certain data set is only necessary to display a graph, then that data can be kept on the server. The graph image will be rendered by the server and transmitted to the client without the underlying data being transferred over the mobile network. For large data sets this produces a significant performance boost.

This setting (to keep data on the server and not send it to the client) is made for a data source at the time the data source is added. The setting is in the Data Retention pane (*screenshot below*) of the Add Page Source dialog (Screen 2). It is also available as a command in the context menus of root nodes in the Page Sources Pane.



Caching

Using settings in MobileTogether Designer and MobileTogether Server, you can specify caching behavior for all data sources. This boosts the speed of MobileTogether greatly because when the server receives a request from the Mobile App, it will already have the data available. There are two main reasons to create caches: (i) If a page data source generates reports slowly (for example, a large database); (ii) If a data source is not modified often. In such cases, execution of a solution would be faster if data is taken from data caches on the server. In order to keep caches up-to-date, the frequency of cache updates can be specified when the cache is created. Once a cache has been defined in MobileTogether Designer, it can be used by the data sources of different designs, providing the underlying data structure is compatible.

As pioneered in Altova MapForce and FlowForce Servers, MobileTogether contains more than just the usual caching parameters such as expiry and refresh time. You can manually determine the amount of time that passes before caching again. Also you can define how many unique combinations of multiple query parameters (either for databases or for web services) should automatically be cached. A client requesting the data will now immediately get it from the cache, whereas the server will retrieve it only if the cache time has elapsed. This is beyond simple caching as MobileTogether actually automatically executes the query to whatever interval the designer specifies. When it is a query with parameters, the designer can specify how many unique combinations of parameters should be cached, and then the server will follow those instructions.

A new cache is defined in MobileTogether Designer for a data source. Right-click a data source in the Page Sources Pane, select **Cache Settings**, and specify the properties of the cache.

If a data source is defined as having a cache, the cached data will be used when the solution is run. Caches can be used as soon as the solution has been deployed to the server.

Persistent Data Storage on Clients

For user-entered data and data that doesn't change too frequently, you can choose to store data persistently on each client device. This reduces the amount of data being transferred between the server and client, and so increases performance speed. Performance is additionally boosted because the round-trip time between server and client is reduced—even for different sessions of the same user that are hours apart. Persistent data can be defined in the following ways:

- <u>Default persistent trees</u>: By default, a \$PERSISTENT tree is defined for every page in a design. All \$PERSISTENT tree data is stored on the client. The data can be static or dynamic. If a node in the tree is associated with a control that accepts end-user input, then data in that node of the tree can be edited by the end user.
- <u>Trees that can be made persistent</u>: In the <u>Page Sources Pane</u>, right-click the root node
 of any tree that is not persistent. In the context menu that appears, select the command
 Persist Data on Client. That tree will be made persistent. The data in the tree will be
 stored on the client, and will be loaded when the solution starts.
- Server access on demand: This setting can be defined in the Styles & Properties Pane. It specifies that a connection between client device and server is made only when needed. This effectively means that the solution uses persistent data on the client or data that is embedded in the solution. A connection to the server will only be made when specifically required by the design, for example, when the design specifies that data be saved to a database on the server. This approach is very useful for boosting performance when working with databases.

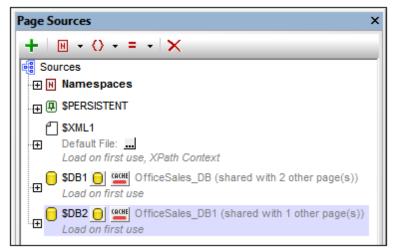
Chapter 7

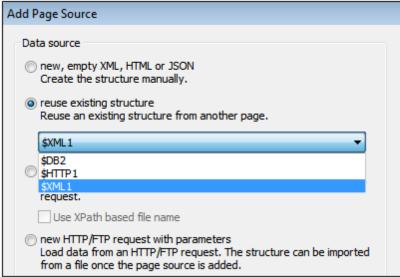
Data Sources

7 Data Sources

Each page can have a set of page data sources (or page sources). These sources (see screenshot below left) are available to controls of that page, and that page only. However, a single page source can be reused among multiple pages.

- New page sources are added via the <u>Add Source command of the Page Sources Pane</u>.
 How to add a new page source is described in the section Adding Page Data Sources.
- A page can reuse the page sources of other pages. An option for specifying the page source to reuse is available when <u>adding a new page data source</u> (screenshot below right).





Note the following points:

- Page sources are added in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> (screenshot above), one source at a time
- Page sources are added from data sources, which may be XML, HTML, JSON, XQuery, or DB data sources, data sources accessed via HTTP, FTP, REST or SOAP, or other

Data Sources 167

- page sources of the project. See the section Types of Data Sources for more information.
- Each page can have multiple page sources based on data sources of different kinds. For example, the screenshot above left shows a page that has one XML-based and two DBbased page sources.

A page source can be editable or non-editable (read-only). This property is specified at
the time when the page source is added and can be modified with the root node's context
menu toggle command Read Only Data.

Organization of this section

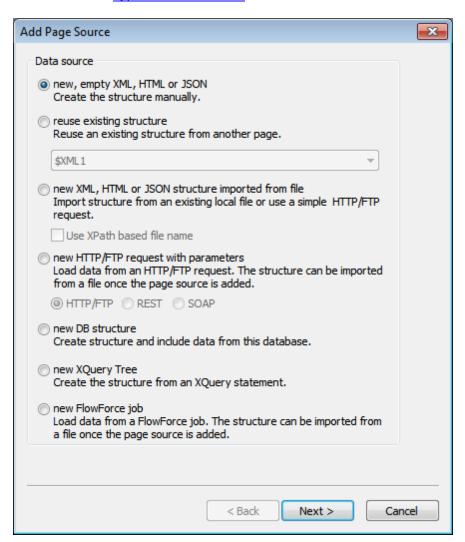
This section is organized as follows:

- Adding Page Data Sources: shows how to add a page source
- Types of Data Sources: lists and describes the various type of data sources that can be added to a page
- Page Source Options: describes the properties of page sources
- HTTP/FTP, REST, and SOAP Requests: explains the settings for making these requests
- Root Nodes: explains the concept of root nodes and root elements, and how these are
 used in the trees of data sources. This section also gives the naming convention of root
 nodes
- <u>Page Source Trees</u>: shows how the structure of a source tree and data in the tree's nodes are used in a page
- Namespaces in the Project: explains the significance of namespaces in the project, and how namespaces are used
- Caches: describes how the mechanism for caching data on the server works
- Context Menu: describes the context menu commands of the Page Sources Pane

7.1 Adding Page Data Sources

To add a page data source (or page source), select the page in the <u>Pages Pane</u>, and then do the following.

Click the **Add Source** icon in the toolbar of the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> to display the Add Page Source dialog (*screenshot below*). Select the type of data source to add (*listed below*), specify the properties of this data source, and click **Next**. The various types of data sources are described in the next section, Types of Data Sources.



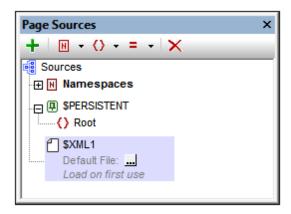
7.2 Types of Data Sources

The types of data sources that are available for addition as page sources are listed below:

New empty XML, HTML or JSON

When a new empty XML, HTML, or JSON page source is added in the Add Page Source dialog, it is created as an XML page source. You must specify, in the next screen of the Add Page Source dialog, whether the data source is an XML, HTML, or JSON file. A root node named \$xml is created for the new page source (see screenshot below). If the data source is specified as XML or HTML, then no other node or any namespace is created in the tree. If the data source is specified as JSON, then a root element called json is created under the root node. You can now construct an XML document structure under the root node by using one or both of the following methods:

- adding element and attribute nodes to the root node (with the toolbar commands to do this). See Tree Structure for details.
- importing a structure from an XML, HTML, or JSON file via the Import command of the root node's context menu.

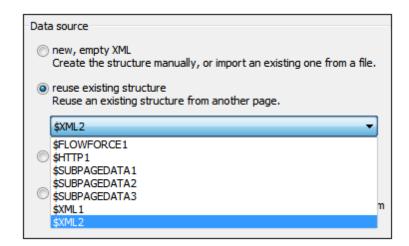


How to add data to the tree (including by assigning a default file) is described in the section, <u>Tree Data</u>.

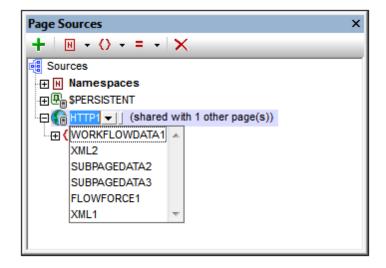
Note: You can change the data type of the page source via the root node's context menu command **Data Type**.

Reuse existing structure

This option is useful if you want to reuse a structure that you have already created in another page of the project. The reusable page source must be in *another page*—not the same page —of the project, and the page could be either a top page or a sub page. The *Reuse* option is enabled only if a page source exists in another page of the project.



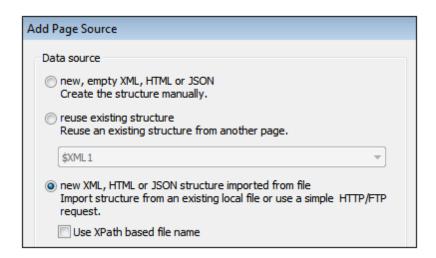
The available page sources are listed by the names of their root nodes in the dropdown list of the options's combo box (see screenshot above). Select the page source you want to reuse and click **OK**. A new root node is created with the same name and structure as the reused page source (see screenshot below). The number of pages with which the page source is shared is listed (see screenshot below) and the name/s of the sharing pages are displayed when you place your mouse over the root node's name in the tree. You can subsequently change the data structure to that of another page source by selecting another reusable page source in the combo box next to the name of the root node (see screenshot below).



How to add data to the tree (including by assigning a default file) is described in the section, Tree Data. How to modify the tree structure is described in the section Tree Structure.

▼ New XML, HTML or JSON structure imported from file

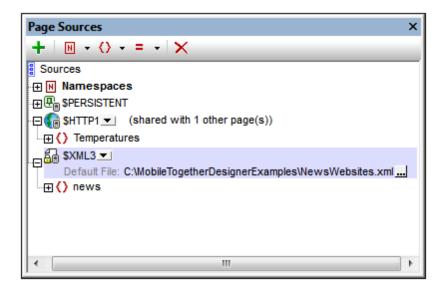
If this option is selected (see the screenshot below), clicking **Next** displays the <u>Add Page</u> Source dialog, in which you set the usage options of the selected data source.



You must specify, in the next screen of the Add Page Source dialog, whether the data source is an XML, HTML, or JSON file. What happens when you click the **Finish** button of this dialog depends on whether the *Use XPath-based file name* option (see screenshot above) was selected or not.

- If the check box was selected, the <u>Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog</u> appears. You can build an XPath expression here to generate the file URL you need.
- If the check box was not selected, a dialog box appears in which you can select the XML, HTML, or JSON file that provides the structure of the page source. You can browse for the file, use a file URL, or use a global resource.

The structure of the XML/HTML/JSON file is imported as the structure of the page source (see screenshot below). XML and JSON file structures are displayed under the \$xml root node; HTML file structures are displayed under the \$xml root node. The structure of an HTML or JSON data source is imported as an XML tree structure. An imported JSON structure will have a root element named json. The XML/HTML/JSON (data source) file is also automatically defined as the default file of the page source. This means that data from the file is used as the data of nodes of the new page source. If the file is selected with a URL, you can use the HTTP or FTP protocol to retrieve the file. The path of the default file can also be specified with an XPath expression; this allows the dynamic composition of file paths, for example, paths that are based on node content in other page sources.



To change the file URL, double-click the URL entry or click the **Additional Dialog** icon at the right-hand side of the entry. If a reusable structure from another project page is available, a combo box next to the name of the root node enables you to select the reusable structure (see screenshot above). How to modify the tree structure is described in the section, <u>Tree Structure</u>.

Note that HTML retrieval is done using a correcting parser. As a result, if an imported HTML structure has an invalid data object model because of missing elements (according to the
<a href=

```
will be corrected to:

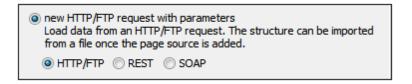
        <ttr/>

        <ttr/>
```

▼ New HTTP/FTP request with parameters

A data source containing data can be added via an HTTP or FTP request and the structure added subsequently. After you select this option you can specify whether the data source will be obtained using HTTP/FTP, REST, or SOAP (see screenshot below). If you select HTTP/FTP or REST, you must specify, in the next screen of the Add Page Source dialog,

whether the data source is an XML, HTML, or JSON file. You can subsequently change your selection in the respective Settings dialog (<u>HTTP/FTP</u> or <u>REST</u>). (If you select SOAP, the data source must be parsed as XML; this option is automatically set and cannot be changed.)



On clicking the **Finish** button of the Add Page Source dialog, the <u>Edit Web Access Settings</u> <u>dialog</u> (for HTTP/FTP requests), <u>RESTful API Request dialog</u> (for REST requests), or <u>WSDL File Selection dialog</u> (for SOAP requests) is displayed. See the section <u>HTTP/FTP</u>, <u>REST</u>, <u>and SOAP Requests</u> for a description of how to specify the settings of these requests.

If the request is carried out successfully, the page source is added (as a <u>root node</u>) and data from the data source is loaded. The tree structure, however, is not created. It can be imported and/or created manually. How to create the tree structure is described in the section Tree Structure.

New DB structure

This option enables you to create a structure and add data from a database. On selecting this option and clicking **OK**, the database (DB) Connection Wizard appears. After making the connection to the DB, you can select the table data to be imported for data source structure and data content. A root node is inserted, with the database name next to the name of the root node. The root node also has the DB structure below it. See the <u>Databases</u> section for more information. The <u>Database-And-Charts</u> tutorial provides an example of how to use DBs.

▼ New XQuery tree

Selecting this option and clicking **OK** opens the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog. Enter an XQuery statement that retrieves the required data, and click **OK**. A page source is created that has the structure of the data retrieved by the XQuery statement.

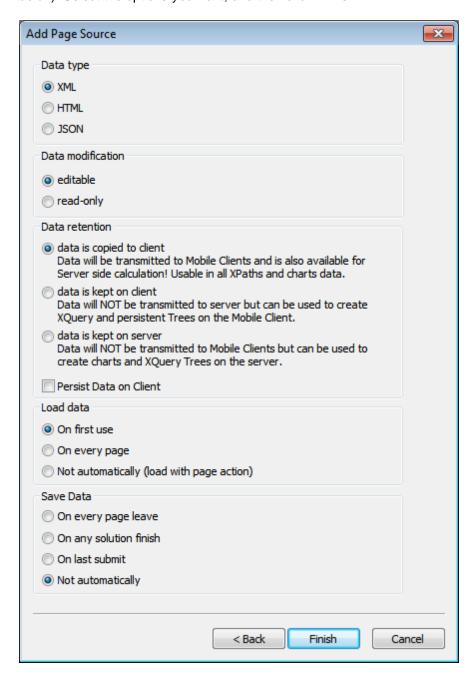
New FlowForce job

Selecting this option and clicking **OK** opens the Edit FlowForce Settings dialog. Enter the FlowForce settings to connect to a FlowForce server and specify a FlowForce job. On clicking **OK**, a new data source is created that contains data retrieved by running the FlowForce job. The structure of the data source can be modified subsequently. How to do

this is described in the section, <u>Tree Structure</u>. For information about Altova's FlowForce application, see the <u>FlowForce page on the Altova website</u>.

7.3 Page Source Options

After you have selected the type of data source that you wish to add, and clicked **Next**, the Add Page Source dialog displays the usage options of the selected data source (see screenshot below). Select the options you want, and then click **Finish**.



Note that some options will not be available for some types of page source. All the available options are listed below.

Data type

The format of data in the data source being added. Select from XML, HTML, or JSON. After the

page source is added, you can change the data type in the context menu of the page source node (context command Data Type). The root node of the page source in all three cases is \$xml. However, if you select JSON, then the root element will be named json. Note, however, that page sources that are read as JSON will also be saved as JSON (not as XML); this applies to saving via the Save Data project property, and the Save Data project property, and the Save Data project property.

Data modification

Select *Editable XML* or *Read-only XML*. When a page source is created as editable, data in its tree nodes can be modified. Data in read-only page sources cannot be modified. Both types of page source can be used to display data. But if you want to enable end users to write to data nodes, create the page source as an editable XML.

Data retention

Specifies whether data is: (i) copied to the client from the server, (ii) kept on the client, or (iii) kept on the server. There are two issues to consider when making this choice: (i) the calculations that are possible on client and server respectively, and (ii) how the location of the data can speed up processing.

Some calculations are done client-side only (for example, the resolving of XPath expressions to send an SMS); some calculations are done server-side only (for example, the creation of charts; only the final chart image is transferred to the client); and some calculations can be done both client-side and server-side (for example, the updating of XML tree nodes). All calculations are first attempted on the client. If a calculation is not possible on the client, the calculation is passed to the server. So, in order to save processing time, it is best to keep data where it can be accessed faster. If all calculations can be carried out client-side, then it is advisable to keep data on the client. Otherwise, you should consider one of the other two options.

The *Persist Data on Client* option loads a solution with the client data it had when the solution was last closed. The client data is said to "persist" between two solution runs.

Load data

Selects whether data is loaded the first time the page is loaded, every time the page is loaded, or when specified by a page action. The selected option can be changed subsequently via the context menu of the source tree's root node.

Save data

This option is enabled if the data source is an external file (XML, HTML, or DB). It selects whether data is saved on (i) leaving the page, (ii) exiting the entire solution, (iii) when the user clicks the last **Submit** option, or (iv) when expressly defined as a page or control action. See <u>Page Source</u> Actions.

7.4 HTTP/FTP, REST, and SOAP Requests

This section describes the settings needed to make HTTP/FTP, REST, and SOAP requests. These requests are made either to load data from external sources or to save data to external sources. The requests are made in the following situations:

- When <u>adding page sources</u>: In this situation, requests are typically made to load data from external sources
- When <u>defining actions related to page sources</u>: Actions can be specified for page events and control events, and the requests in these actions can be used to either load from or save to external data sources

This section describes the respective dialogs for:

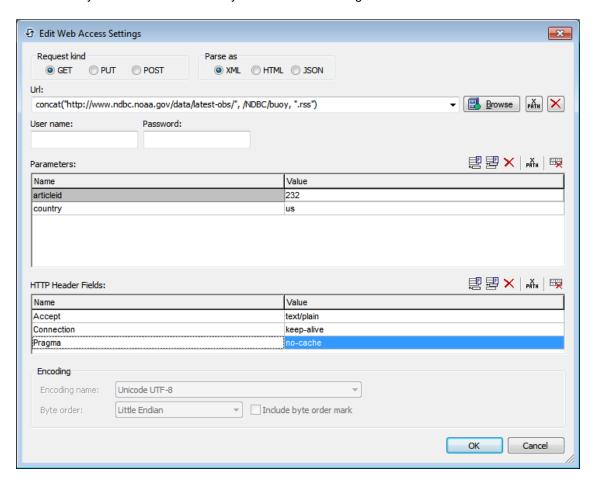
- HTTP/FTP request settings
- REST request settings
- SOAP request settings

Creating page source structures

The requests that are defined in these settings dialogs are saved in the design, and will be executed at runtime. The page sources will be created but will not contain a tree structure. In order to create a structure, you can import the structure from an XML file or create the structure manually. For example, you can save a SOAP response as an XML file and then import the XML file to generate the tree structure of the page source. See the section Page Source Trees for more information.

HTTP/FTP Request Settings

The settings for HTTP/FTP requests are defined in the Edit Web Access Settings dialog (screenshot below). Enter the request kind, the URL of the target resource, the data format of the target resource (XML, HTML, or JSON), user authentication information, and, optionally, query parameters and headers. In the screenshot below, for example, the GET request is composed using an XPath expression: It targets a .rss page on the http://www.ndbc.noaa.gov website. The name of the RSS page is taken from the /NDBC/buoy node, and the target page will be parsed as XML. Query parameters and headers can be added to the request. The charset header, however, is automatically generated by MobileTogether Designer and will not be overwritten by a charset header that you enter in this dialog.

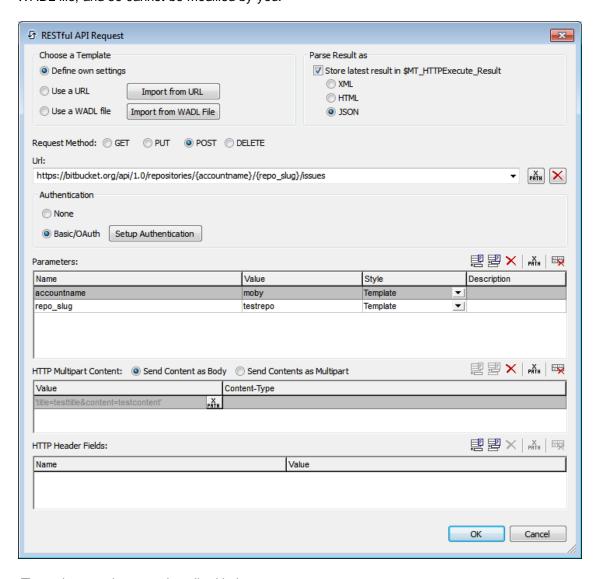


On clicking **OK**, the request is carried out.

will be corrected to:

REST Request Settings

The settings for REST requests are defined in the RESTful API Request dialog (*screenshot below*). You can choose to (i) define your own settings, (ii) import a URL, or (iii) use a WADL file. If you choose to define your own settings, you can specify your own definitions for the individual settings. If you import a URL or use a WADL file, some settings will be defined in the URL or WADL file, and so cannot be modified by you.



The various settings are described below:

- <u>Templates and result parsing</u>, including \$MT_HTTPExecute_Result
- Request method
- URL
- Authentication
- Parameters
- HTTP content
- HTTP header fields

Templates and result parsing

With templates are meant the three frameworks within which settings can be defined (your own settings, URL, or WADL; see screenshot above). You can switch between templates at any time by selecting the appropriate radio button. If the URL or WADL template option is already selected and you wish to use a different URL or WADL file, click, respectively, **Import from URL** or **Import from WADL**. Selecting the URL or WADL option (or their respective **Import** button) opens a dialog in which you can specify the URL or WADL file to use.

Define own settings

If you define your own settings, you can enter the request to a REST server as a URL, specify the data format of the target resource (XML, HTML, or JSON), then enter user authentication information, and, where appropriate, query parameters, and HTTP content and headers. See the descriptions below of each of these settings.

Use a URL

If a URL is long or complex, then it is better to import the URL in the *Use a URL* template rather than enter it in the *Define Own Settings* template. For example, a URL can contain a number of parameters, as in the example below (which is a Google query that contains five parameters):

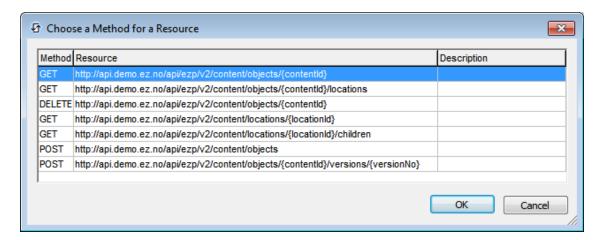
```
https://www.google.at/search?q=REST+WADL&ie=utf-8&oe=utf-8&gws_rd=cr&ei=89cDVrDHMIP0Up_5vcAB
```

If you import this URL, it is entered in the template's URL field, and the parameters are entered automatically in the template's Parameters table. You can select the data format of the target resource (XML, HTML, or JSON) and the *Request Method* (GET, PUT, POST, or DELETE). You can then enter values for the parameters, but you cannot delete a parameter or change its type. If you wish to change the URL, click **Import from URL**. For a description of parameters, see the Parameters section below.

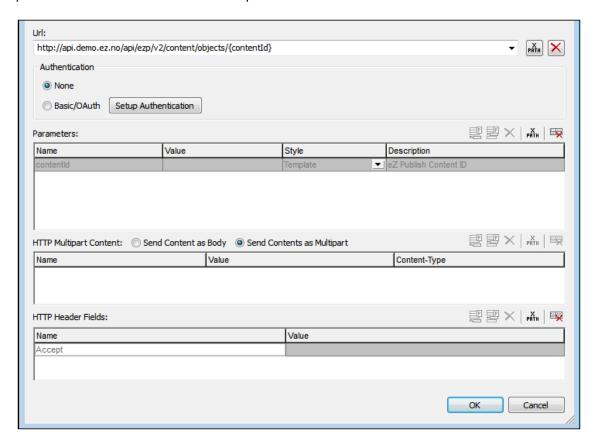
Use a WADL file

A WADL file is an XML document that defines the resources provided by a web service and the relationships between the resources. Resources are defined by resource elements. Each resource contains: (i) param elements to describe the inputs of a resource, and (ii) method elements to describe the request and response of a resource. The request element specifies how to represent the input, what types are required and any specific HTTP headers that are required. The response element describes the service's response, as well as error information.

When you select the *WADL* option you are prompted for the WADL file you want to use. After clicking **OK**, the Choose Method dialog appears (*screenshot below*). This dialog displays the methods defined in the WADL file.



Select the method you wish to use, and click **OK**. The URL of the resource is entered in the URL field of the template, and the parameters, and HTTP content and headers defined in the WADL file for that resource are entered in the respective tables of the template (see screenshot below). In the template, you can enter the values of parameters and HTTP content and headers, but parameter names cannot be edited and parameters cannot be deleted.



Parse Result as

The result is what is returned by the web service in response to the request. In the *Own Settings* and *URL* templates, you must specify how this result is to be parsed (as XML, HTML, or JSON) so that MobileTogether can process the result correctly. In the WADL template, the information

about the result format is taken from the definitions in the WADL file and automatically selected; as a result these radio buttons are disabled in this template.

You can choose whether the result should be stored in the \$MT_HTTPExecute_Result or not. If stored, you can use the result, via this variable, at other locations in the design.

Request method

In the *Own Settings* and *URL* templates, you must specify the Request method (GET, PUT, POST, or DELETE). In the WADL template, the request method is determined by the selection you make in the Choose a Method for a Resource dialog (*see above for screenshot*), and is automatically selected in the template; as a result these radio buttons are disabled in this template.

URL

The URL field can be edited only in the *Define Own Settings* template. In this template, you can enter the URL directly, or as an XPath expression. Use the Reset button to clear the entry in the URL field.

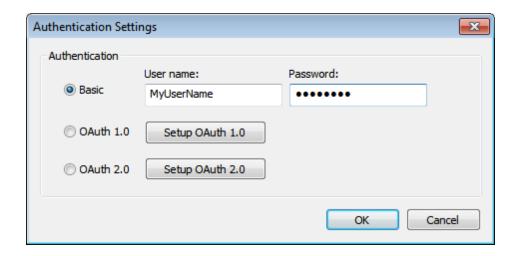
Authentication

You can supply authentication information if this is required for accessing the server. If no authentication is required, select *None* in the RESTful API Request dialog (see screenshot above).

Authentication information can be supplied in the following ways:

- Basic: A user name and password is supplied (see screenshot below)
- OAuth 1.0
- OAuth 2.0

If you wish to set up authentication information, click **Setup Authentication** in the RESTful API Request dialog (see screenshot above). This displays the Authentication Settings dialog (screenshot below), in which you can select the type of authentication the server requires and then supply the authentication details.



OAuth authentication

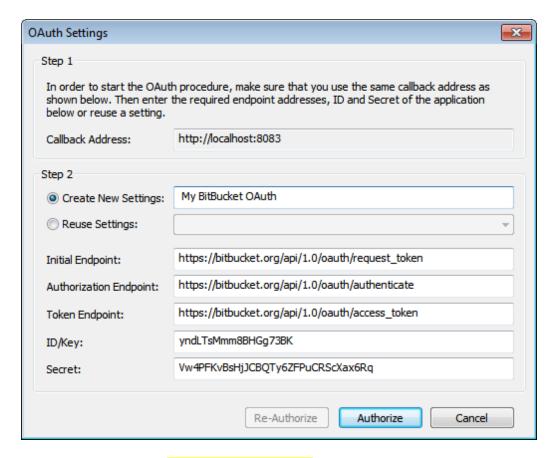
OAuth essentially authenticates MobileTogether Designer and authorizes access to the resources of the web service identified by the URL. This assumes that the web service supports OAuth. As an example web service that supports OAUTH, see the BitBucket documentation about OAuth 1.0.

The OAuth system works broadly as follows:

- 1. At the web service, create an OAuth key (or ID) and secret. Together these are known as an OAuth consumer.
- Make a note of the web service's OAuth endpoints. There are three endpoints for OAuth 1.0 (Initial Endpoint, Authorization Endpoint, and Token Endpoint), and two endpoints for OAuth 2.0 (Authorization Endpoint and Token Endpoint). The endpoints are usually constant for all consumers.
- 3. Set up the application to access the web service with these five (OAuth 1.0) and four (OAuth 2.0) pieces of authentication information.

After you have obtained your key and secret from the web service, and noted the endpoints you need, you are ready to set up MobileTogether Designer to access the web service. Do this as follows:

1. In the Authentication Settings dialog (*screenshot above*), click **Setup OAuth 1.0** or **Setup OAuth 2.0**. The OAuth Settings dialog (*screenshot below*) appears.



- 2. Set Callback Address to http://localhost:8083. This address is fixed; it is the address of the machine on which you are working.
- Create New Settings: Give your settings a name. This enables the settings to be reused (via the Reuse Settings combo box option) for other solutions that use the same resources.
- 4. Enter the endpoints declared by the web service. These are usually constant across the service for all consumers.
- 5. Enter your key (or ID) and secret.
- 6. Click Authorize to finish.

Parameters

In the *Define Own Settings* template, parameters can be freely added, edited and deleted. In the *Use URL* and *Use WADL* templates, however, you can only edit the values of parameters; you cannot add or delete parameters, or edit their names. You can add the following types (or styles) of parameters (see the 'Styles' column of the screenshot below.):

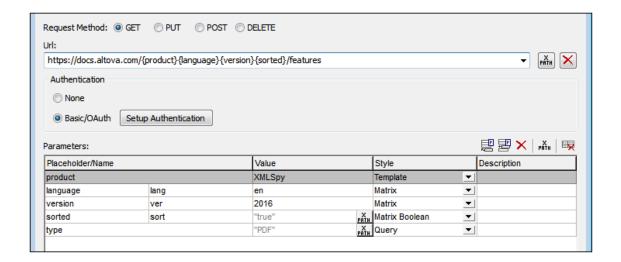
• Template: Template parameters use placeholders to substitute a value in a URL at runtime. For example, in the screenshot below, there is one template parameter with the placeholder {product}. This placeholder is used in the URL (see screenshot below). It has curly braces around it to indicate that it is a placeholder. When the URL is used at runtime, the value of the placeholder is substituted in the corresponding place in the URL. The relevant part of the URL would therefore resolve to: https://docs.altova.com/

- *Matrix:* In the case of matrix parameters, the placeholder in the URL is replaced by a name=value pair. In the screenshot example below, there are two matrix parameters, given in the URL by the placeholders {language} and {version}. These placeholders in the URL would resolve to the parts highlighted in blue: https://docs.altova.com/XMLSpy;lang=en;ver=2016.../features. The semi-colon separator; is prefixed to each parameter as part of the substitution.
- *Matrix Boolean:* If the value of a matrix boolean parameter is set to true, then the parameter's placeholder is replaced by the parameter's name. If the value is set to false, then the parameter's placeholder is replaced by the empty string (that is, by nothing). So in the example shown in the screenshot below, the matrix boolean placeholder would resolve to the highlighted part: https://docs.altova.com/

 XMLSpy;lang=en;ver=2016;sort/features. The semi-colon separator; is prefixed to each parameter as part of the substitution.
- Query: Query parameters do not use placeholders. All the query parameters are gathered into a query string and this string is appended at runtime to the path part of the URL. For example, the URL shown in the screenshot below will resolve at runtime to this:

 https://docs.altova.com/XMLSpy;lang=en;ver=2016;sort/features?type=PDF.

 The question mark separator ? is prefixed to the query string. Additional queries are prefixed by the ampersand separator &. So a query string with two queries would look like this: ?type=PDF&about=json.



Columns of the Parameters table

The Parameters table has four columns. The use of the first three columns is explained in the description of the types of parameters given above. Notice that template, matrix, and matrix boolean parameters use placeholders. While template parameter placeholders are replaced by values, matrix and matrix boolean parameter placeholders are replaced by name-value pairs and names, respectively. Query parameters have no placeholders; their name-value pairs are appended to the path part of the URL. The *Description* column contains descriptions of the parameter for you, the MobileTogether Designer user.

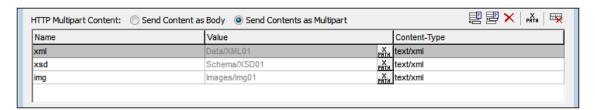
Parameter table icons and table editing

At the top right of the Parameters table, there are icons that enable you to manage entries in the table.

- Appending and inserting parameters: Use Append to add a new parameter as the last
 parameter in the table. Use Insert to insert a new parameter directly above the currently
 selected parameter. The order in which parameters are entered in the table is
 unimportant. It is the order of the placeholders in the URL that counts. All query
 parameters are gathered into a query string that is appended to the path part of the URL
 at runtime.
- Deleting parameters: Click **Delete** to delete the selected parameter.
- XPath expressions for parameter values: When a parameter is selected, click XPath to
 open the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog and enter an expression that resolves to a
 string. This string is entered as the value of the parameter. In these cases, an XPath icon
 appears in the Value column of the parameter. Clicking this icon enables you to edit the
 XPath expression.
- Resetting parameter values: Click Reset parameter to delete the value of a parameter.
- Editing parameter names and values: Click in the respective field and edit.

HTTP content

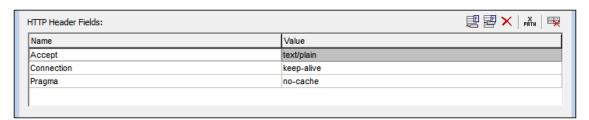
You can specify content to send with HTTP PUT and POST requests. You can send the content as a single item in the body of the request (Send content as body) or as multiple items in a multipart request (Send contents as multipart). Select the appropriate radio button from these two options.



Append or insert a content entry using the icons at top right. Then enter a name for the content part being sent, and the content part's content type. The content's value is the actual content being sent. In the screenshot above, the content is obtained, via XPath expressions, from page source nodes. Images are sent in Base64 format.

HTTP header fields

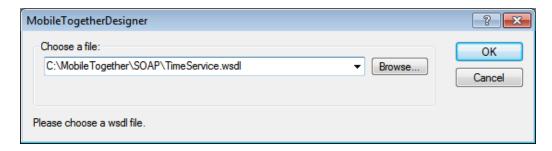
HTTP header fields are colon-separated name-value pairs, for example: Accept:text/plain. Append or insert an entry for each header, and then enter the header name and value (see screenshot below).



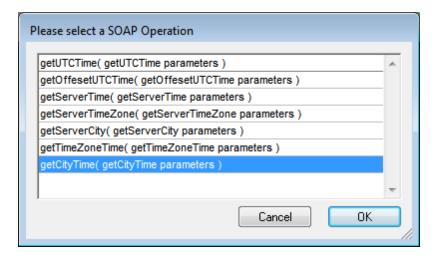
SOAP Request Settings

MobileTogether Designer enables you to make SOAP requests via WSDL. A WSDL file describes what operations are provided by a given web service. The SOAP protocol is then used to call one of these operations over HTTP. The procedure in MobileTogether Designer for making the request is as follows:

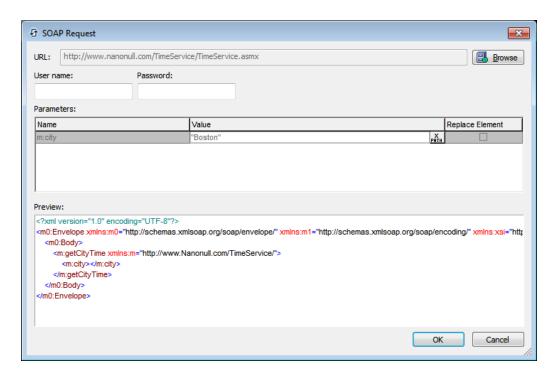
Select the WSDL file that defines the web service operation you want to request. When
you make a SOAP request, the first dialog that appears enables you to select the WSDL
file (screenshot below).



On clicking **OK**, the Select a SOAP Operation (screenshot below) is displayed. This
dialog displays the web service operations described in the WSDL file. Select the
operation you want to request, and click **OK**.



3. The SOAP Request dialog (screenshot below) appears. The URL in the URL field is the URL of the web service. The Preview pane shows the text of the SOAP request. If the request contains parameters, then these are listed in the Parameters pane, and you can enter an XPath expression that generates the value of the parameter. In the screenshot below, for example, the parameter m:city has been given a value that is generated by the XPath expression "Boston". If you need to enter authentication information to access the web service, enter your user name and password in the respective fields. At the right of the URL field is a Browse button. Click it to choose another WSDL file and make another SOAP request.

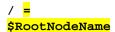


- 4. Click **OK** when done. The SOAP request will be saved and will be sent at runtime.
- 5. Run a simulation to check the SOAP response.

190 Data Sources Root Nodes

7.5 Root Nodes

Each page data source is conceptualized as a tree. The **root node** of each tree is identified by a **variable name** that is unique within each MobileTogether design (project). The terminology used to address and describe the basic parts of page source trees is given below. A listing of all the page source variables of a project, together with their uses in controls and actions, can be displayed in the Messages window when you click the command **Project | List Usages of All Page Source Variables**.



- The **root node** is the topmost node of a tree.
- A root node is represented by a variable of the form \$ROOTNOdeName,
 where ROOTNODEName is a name that identifies a particular tree's root node. An example is \$XML. See Names of Root Nodes below.

```
>
<Element-
1/>
...
<Element-</pre>
```

RootEleme

N/>

nt>

</

- The root element is the outermost element of an XML document, and contains all the other elements of the document. (In XML language, the root element is also sometimes called the document element.)
 - **Element** The root element is considered to be a child of the root node.

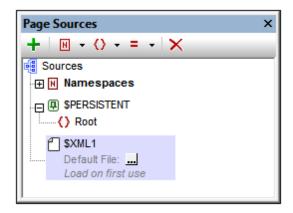
Accessing tree nodes with XPath

The nodes of a tree can be accessed with XPath expressions. When using an XPath expression, be aware of what the context node is. One node across all the page sources of a page can be set as the XPath Context Node of the page (by right-clicking that node and selecting **Set as Page XPath Context**). This node will be the context node for all XPath expressions on the page. Exceptions are some controls, such as the chart and repeating table controls, which use their respective page source links as context nodes for XPath expressions that are used within the control. Whether a page XPath context node is set or not, a node in any tree is always accessible by starting the XPath expression with the tree's root node. For example: \$xml1/root/element1.

Names of root nodes

The names of root nodes are generated automatically when <u>page data sources are added</u>. The screenshot below, for example, shows two root nodes, named \$PERSISTENT and \$XML1. The name of a root node can be changed by double-clicking it and editing it.

Data Sources Root Nodes 191



The automatically generated name of the root node depends on the type of the page source: XML, HTML, HTTP-accessed, DB, XQuery, or FlowForce job

\$PERSISTENT	 The \$PERSISTENT tree is the tree saved on the client. This tree is created in every new design with an empty root element called Root (see screenshot above). A structure must be created for it, either manually, or by importing an XML structure via its context menu's Import command. Data can be assigned to the nodes of the \$PERSISTENT tree, either static data or dynamic data (using XPath expressions or by assigning a \$PERSISTENT tree node to a control). \$PERSISTENT tree nodes that are assigned (as page source links) to a control will be updated on the client. This means that when a solution is loaded in the client, nodes that are assigned to a control will take their data from the \$PERSISTENT tree—and not from other data sources. 	
\$XML	XML documents, created manually or imported. Default data file is optional.	
\$HTML	HTML documents, created manually or imported. Default data file is optional.	
\$HTTP	Documents accessed via <u>HTTP/FTP, REST, or SOAP</u> . The requested resource <u>provides the data</u> .	
\$DB	The selected database table provides both structure and data.	
\$XQ	XQuery documents.	
\$FLOWFORCE	FlowForce jobs.	

Note: A root node can be renamed at any time in the design process by double-clicking its name in the Page Sources Pane and editing the name. All references to the old name in XPath expressions throughout the design will be changed to the new name.

7.6 Page Source Trees

Tree structure

A page source has an XML tree structure. The screenshot below shows the XML tree structure of a page source that is a DB table.

```
SDB2 OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))

| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))
| OfficeSales_DB1 (shared
```

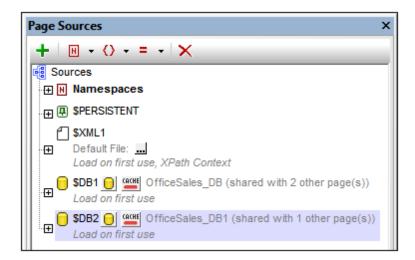
The structure of a page source is created in the following ways:

- Imported from an XML or HTML document, or an XQuery statement, when a page source is added (see Adding Page Data Sources), or subsequently
- Created manually in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> by adding elements and attributes to a new empty XML tree (via the <u>pane's toolbar icons</u>)

Accessing tree nodes

The nodes of every page source in the page can be accessed by XPath expressions anywhere in that page.

On each page, any node in any tree can be set as the **XPath context node for that page** (by right-clicking the node and selecting **Set as Page XPath Context**). All XPath expressions on the page will then be evaluated in the context of that node. The XPath context node of a page is indicated with the text <u>XPath Context</u>. In the screenshot below, \$xmll is the XPath context node of the page. All XPath expressions on this page will be evaluated relative to \$xmll.



Whether a page context node is set or not, any node can be addressed by starting the locator expression with the root node of the specific tree. For example, in the XQuery statement that is highlighted in the first screenshot on this page, the second line has a let expression that locates the @id node with a locator expression that starts with the root node \$DB2.

A source node (or page source link) is a tree node that is associated with a control.

- A source node is associated with control by dragging the source node from its tree onto the control.
- Once a source tree node has been defined as a page source link, it is displayed in a bold font in the page source tree.
- Typically, a page source link is used to display the source node's content in the control; for example, a <u>Label control</u> would display the content of the associated page source link.
- In the case of charts and repeating tables, the control's source node serves as the context node (XPath origin) of all XPath expressions used to define properties of the control.

Tree data

The data that is used in a MobileTogether solution is stored in the nodes of the project's page source trees. This data is obtained in one of the following ways:

- A file is specified as the default file of a data source. This file must have a structure that
 corresponds to the structure of the page source. Its data is then used as the data of the
 page source.
- A node can be given a fixed value (via the **Ensure exists (fixed value)** command in the node's context menu). This value overrides any value imported from a default file.
- A node is assigned an XPath expression (via the Ensure exists (XPath value) command
 in the node's context menu). The XPath expression generates the content of the node.
 This value overrides any value imported from a default file.
- A node is updated when an event is defined to trigger an *Update node* action, or when a node is the source node of a control that provides editing functionality (for example, the combo box and edit field controls).

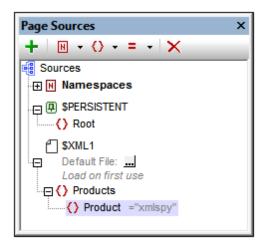
Page source links

A **source node (or page source link)** is a page source tree node that is associated with a control. In the cases of controls that provide editing functionality—such as the combo box and edit field controls—data edited by the end user is passed to the tree node. A source node is assigned to a control by dragging it from the Page Sources Pane onto the control.

The page source link of a control is **displayed in bold** in the data source tree. When you hover over a page source link, a popup provides information about the associated control/s in the design. Conversely, controls that are associated with a page source link have an icon at the control's top left. Hovering over the icon displays information about the associated page source link.

Tree Structure

When a <u>page source is added to a page</u>, a <u>root node</u> is created for that page source in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> (*screenshot below*). Depending upon the <u>type of the page source</u> that is added, a tree structure might or might not be automatically created. For example, when a new XML tree is created with the structure being imported from an external XML file, a structure is created automatically at the time the page source is added. On the other hand, when a page source is added via an HTTP request, for example, no tree structure is created.



After a page source has been added and a root node has been created, a tree structure can be added in the following ways:

- By importing an XML structure from an external XML file
- By manually building up the tree using commands in the toolbar of the <u>Page Sources</u>
 <u>Pane</u>

These methods are described below.

Importing an XML structure

Right-click the root node in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u>, click **Import Structure from XML** in the root node's context menu, and browse for the XML file to use. The following outcomes are possible:

- If the root node has no descendant tree structure, the XML file's root element and its tree structure are imported. The XML file's root element is added as the root element of the page source.
- If the root node has a root element, then this root element and all its descendants are replaced by the root element of the XML file and its tree structure.

The imported tree structure can be modified manually, as described below, and data can be assigned to its nodes (described in the next section, Tree Data).

Manually creating a tree structure

Elements and attributes can be added relative to any node in a tree structure (including the <u>root</u> <u>node</u>), and they can be deleted. Select a node in a data source, and click the appropriate toolbar command (*see toolbar screenshot below*). Temporary elements and attributes are intended to hold data used for calculations or data that for any other reason should not be saved to file. The data of temporary nodes is not saved.



Icon	Command	Does this
+	Add Source	Displays the Add Page Source dialog. A root node is created for the data source that is added. Only one child element can be added to a root node.
H ▼	Add Namespace	Inserts or appends a namespace declaration under the <i>Namespace</i> entry. Edit the default prefix if you want, and enter a namespace.
⟨⟩ ⋅	Add Element	Inserts, appends, or adds a child element relative to the selected node.
= +	Add Attribute	Inserts, appends, or adds a child attribute relative to the selected node.
×	Delete	Deletes the selected node.

Adding node content manually

You can manually add content to individual nodes via two commands in the context menu of the selected node:

- Ensure Exists Before Page Load (Fixed Value): A fixed string value is added as content of the node and displayed in the tree.
- Ensure Exists Before Page Load (XPath Value): An XPath expression provides the content of the node. The XPath expression and Edit XPath icon are displayed in the tree.

The node's content is generated before the page is loaded, and the page is passed with this node content to the client.

Note that content added manually in this way overrides content added via a default file or with the **Ensure Exists on Load** commands.

Tree Data

Editable and read-only data

Data in tree nodes can be editable or non-editable (read-only), depending on whether the tree is that of <u>an editable page source or a read-only page source</u>. Whether a page source is editable or read-only is defined at the time the <u>page source is added</u>. If you wish to change the editable/read-only definition, delete the page source and re-create it with the new definition.

Client actions can change the content of editable nodes. For example, if a combo box is associated with a node of an editable data source, the end user's combo box selection will be passed to the associated node and become its modified value. In the case of read-only data sources, the content of associated nodes is used for display purposes only. These associated nodes are known as **page source links**. A source node link is added to a control by dragging the tree node onto the control.

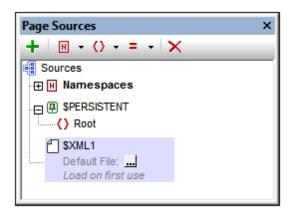
Assigning data to data sources

Data is assigned to nodes (in both editable and read-only data-source trees) in the following ways:

- Assign a default file: The data in the default file is passed to the nodes of the tree and becomes the content of the nodes. The structure of the default file must be the same as that of the page source tree.
- Add node content manually: The context menu of every node has commands that allow
 the content of the node to be specified (the Ensure exists commands). If the node
 already has content assigned by another method (such as via a default file), the manually
 added node content overrides the previously assigned content.

Assigning a default file

An XML data source can have a default file assigned to it. The data in the default file will be passed to the page source as its data tree. To assign a default file do the following: Just below the root node name of the page source is an entry for the default file (see screenshot below).



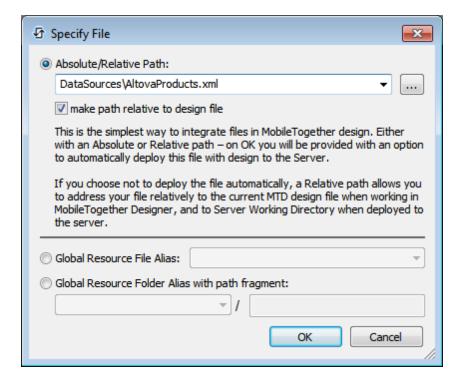
Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the Specify File dialog (*screenshot below*), select the required file, and click **OK**. The assignment is made and the file path appears in the *Default File* entry. After a default file has been assigned, you can change the assignment by double-

clicking the Default File entry and browsing for the new default file.

Data from the default file will be used as the data of the page source. However, in order for the data to be used, the default file must have the same structure as the page source. Note that, when a default file is assigned to a page source, its structure is not automatically imported. To import the structure of the XML file, use the context menu command Import Structure from XML. You can also manually create the structure of the data source to match the structure of the default file.

Specify File dialog

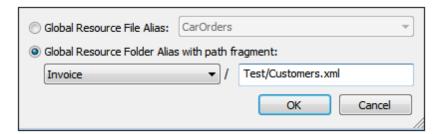
The Specify File dialog enables you to browse for a file or specify the file via a global resource. Select the option you want.



- Absolute/Relative Path: You can enter a path or browse for a file. The path can be relative
 to the design file, or absolute. If the file is deployed to the server along with the design
 file, then the relative/absolute path specified in the dialog will be used internally (in the
 server's database) to access the file. If the file is not deployed, then it must be stored in a
 directory on the server. In this case: (i) if a relative path is selected in the Specify File
 dialog, then, at runtime, this relative path will be resolved on the server with reference to
 the Working Directory (defined in the MobileTogether Server settings); (ii) if the path in the
 Specify File dialog is absolute, the file's containing folder on the server must be a
 descendant of the Working Directory. See the section Location of Project Files for
 details.
- Global Resource File Alias: Select a file alias from the file aliases available in the combo box. The available file aliases will be those currently defined in the Global Resources Definitions file. Each file alias maps to different file resources according to the currently active configuration in MobileTogether Designer (selected via the command Tools)

Active Configuration). See the section Altova Global Resources for details.

• Global Resource Folder Alias with path fragment: Select a folder alias from the folder aliases available in the combo box (see screenshot below).



The available folder aliases will be those currently defined in the Global Resources Definitions file. Each folder alias maps to different folder resources according to the currently active configuration in MobileTogether Designer (selected via the command **Tools | Active Configuration**). The path fragment specifies the rest of the path to the file resource. See the section Altova Global Resources for details.

Adding node content manually

You can manually add content to individual nodes via two commands in the context menu of the selected node:

- Ensure Exists Before Page Load (Fixed Value): A fixed string value is added as content of the node and displayed in the tree.
- Ensure Exists Before Page Load (XPath Value): An XPath expression provides the content of the node. The XPath expression and Edit XPath icon are displayed in the tree.

The node's content is generated before the page is loaded, and the page is passed with this node content to the client.

Note that content added manually in this way overrides content added via a default file or with the **Ensure Exists on Load** commands.

7.7 Namespaces in the Project

Namespaces are important for correctly identifying nodes, and for correctly locating nodes with the use of XPath expressions. The *Namespaces* item in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> (*screenshot below*) contains all the namespaces that have been declared for the project, irrespective of what page is currently active in <u>Page Design View</u>.



Namespaces can be declared in two ways:

- Automatic declaration on data import: When an external XML file is added as a page source, namespaces in the source are automatically imported into the design and declared for the scope of the entire project. They then appear under the Namespaces item in the Page Sources Pane (see screenshot above). The namespace prefixes are automatically set to match the original prefixes if such matching creates no ambiguities in the design. Prefixes assigned in the namespace declaration are used in node names, and must be used in XPath expressions that are intended to locate these nodes in the page source.
- User-defined: You can also add namespaces by clicking the Namespace icon in the
 toolbar of the Page Sources Pane (screenshot above). Being able to add your own
 namespaces to a project enables you to create nodes that belong to one or more userdeclared namespaces. This is useful for disambiguating between nodes that have the
 same local name.

To delete a namespace, select it and click **Delete** in the pane's toolbar.

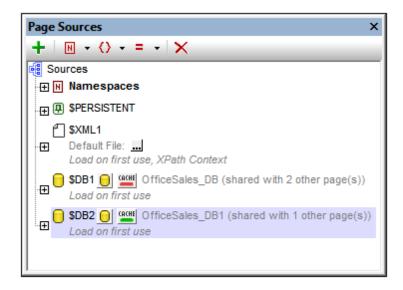
Note: A namespace prefix can be renamed at any time in the design process by double-clicking it in the Page Sources Pane and editing it. All references to the old prefix in XPath expressions throughout the design will be changed to the new prefix.

Note: The XPath default namespace (xpath-default-ns='') is used for all XPath/XQuery functions, including extension functions and <u>user-defined functions</u>.

Data Sources Caches 201

7.8 Caches

The data in external resources (XML files and DBs) that are linked to a page source can be cached on the server. Whether a page source has been cached on the server is indicated by the color of the Cache icon of the data source (see screenshot below). A red cache symbol indicates that the page source has not been cached. A green symbol indicates that the page source has been cached. If a page source is not linked to an external resource (for example via a default file), then it has no cache symbol (as for \$XML1 in the screenshot below).



Reasons for caching

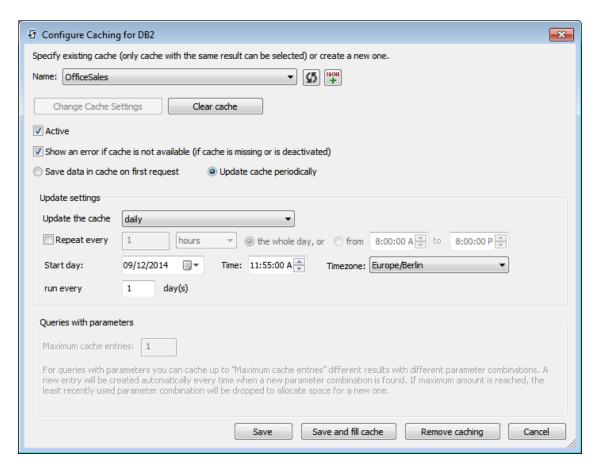
There are two main reasons to create caches: (i) If a page data source generates reports slowly (for example, a large database); (ii) If a page source is not modified often. In cases of both these types, execution of a solution would be faster if data is taken from data caches on the server.

In order to keep caches up-to-date, the frequency of cache updates can be specified when the cache is created. Once a cache has been defined in MobileTogether Designer, it can be used by the page sources of different designs, providing the underlying data structure is compatible. If a page source is defined as having a cache, the cached data will be used when the solution is run. Caches can be used as soon as the solution has been deployed to the server.

Creating caches

To create a cache for a page source, or to edit the settings of a cache that has already been created, click the **Cache** icon of the page source or select **Cache Settings** from the context menu of the root node of the page source. This displays the Configure Caching dialog (*screenshot below*).

202 Data Sources Caches



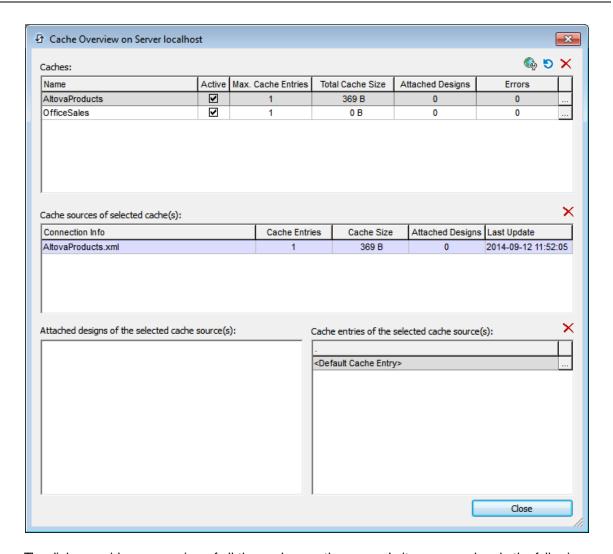
In this dialog, you can do the following:

- Refresh the connection to the server to check for the latest caches that match the structure of this page source.
- Add a new cache for this page source.
- Click Change Cache Settings to edit the settings of a cache that already exists.
- Activate/deactivate the cache.
- Specify whether an error should be displayed if the cache is missing when the solution is
 run.
- Specify the frequency with which the cache should be filled.

Cache Overview

The Cache Overview dialog (screenshot below) is accessed with the menu command **Project** | **Cache Overview**.

Data Sources Caches 203



The dialog provides an overview of all the caches on the server. In it, you can also do the following:

- Activate/deactivate caches.
- Delete caches.

204 Data Sources Context Menus

7.9 Context Menus

Commands in the context menus of items in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> are described below. They are organized into two groups:

- Context menus of root nodes
- Context menus of tree nodes.

Context menus of root nodes

The commands listed below are available in the context menus of <u>root nodes</u> (\$XML, \$DB, \$HTML, etc). In addition to the commands that are common across all types of data sources (XML, DB, HTML, etc), some types of data sources have commands that are specific to its type (for example, commands for DB page sources). The specificity of such commands is noted where relevant.

▼ Insert, Append, Add Child

Enables the addition of elements and attributes relative to the selected node. **Insert** adds the node before the selected node. **Append** adds the node after the last node of that type. If you wish to add a node immediately after the selected node, go to the following node and use the **Insert** command.

▼ Keep data on server

To reduce the amount of data transmitted over the mobile data network—which improves the performance of any mobile solution—MobileTogether lets you specify exactly which data to transmit to client devices and which data to keep on the server. For example, if a certain data set is only necessary to display a graph, then that data can be kept on the server. The graph image will be rendered by the server and transmitted to the client without the underlying data being transferred over the mobile network. For large data sets this produces a significant performance boost.

This toggle command specifies whether data in the tree is stored on the server. Note that if it is stored on the server, then it cannot be defined as persistent. See the **Persist data on client** command below.

Read only data

A toggle command which specifies that data in the tree is read only. A read-only data tree is used to provide data for display and calculations. It cannot be used to hold data that needs to be edited.

▼ Persist data on client

A toggle command that makes a tree a persistent tree. Any number of trees can be defined as persistent. When a tree is defined as persistent, data in it is retained on the client device after the solution is exited. When the solution is opened the next time on that client, the persistent data is displayed. If a tree is defined as persistent, then it cannot be stored on the server. See the **Keep data on server** command above.

▼ Load data

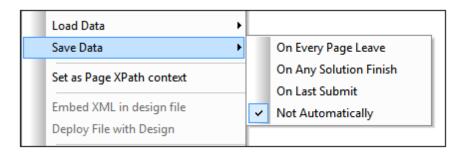
This command rolls out a sub-menu with the following mutually exclusive options (only one can be selected):

- On First Use: Loads the tree on entering a page where it is used. Once loaded, it
 will not automatically be reloaded anymore. If you share the same tree on multiple
 pages, then the first time one of such pages is opened (doesn't matter whether it is
 a Top page or Sub page), the tree will be loaded and will remain in memory.
- On Every Page: Reloads the tree every time you open a page containing the tree, whether the page is a Top page or Sub page. You must be careful with this option: It can slow the processing if loading takes significant time. But this will ensure that the data is retrieved afresh for every page.
- Not Automatically: The tree will not automatically be loaded for you. You must use the Reload, Load from File, or Load from HTTP actions to load it. Alternatively, it can be created completely from scratch with the Append Node and Insert Node actions, without having to load data from any source. Note that you can use any of these five actions independently of the Load Data setting. That is, these actions can be used to reload your tree at specific moments even if Load Data is set to On First Use or On Every Page.

The default is On First Use.

▼ Save data

The **Save Data** command rolls out a sub-menu with the following mutually exclusive options (only one can be selected):

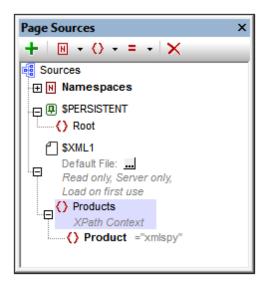


- On Every Page Leave: Data in the tree is saved every time a page containing that tree is exited.
- On Any Solution Finish: Data in the tree is saved when the solution is exited, no matter at what point or how the solution is exited.
- On Last Submit: Data in the tree is saved when the workflow progresses as
 designed, from first page to last page, and when the last Submit button is tapped. If
 this option is selected and the solution is exited before the last Submit button is
 tapped, then data in the tree will not be saved.
- Not Automatically: The tree will not automatically be saved. You must use the <u>Save</u>, <u>Save to File</u>, or <u>Save to HTTP/FTP</u> actions to save data.

The default is Not Automatically.

▼ Set as page XPath context

Sets the selected node as the XPath context node of the page. An annotation to the effect is displayed below the node (see screenshot below). The XPath context of the page is the context node for all XPath expressions on the page.



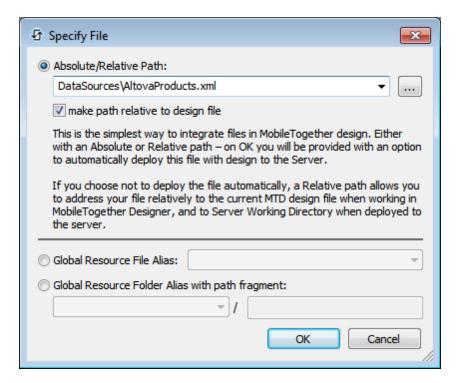
This command can be toggled on and off. So, you can enable a node as the XPath context node of the page, or you can toggle off a node's setting as the XPath context node of the page. If a node is set as the XPath context node when another node already has this setting,

then the setting is toggled off for the previously assigned node and toggled on for the newly assigned node.

▼ Choose default file [root nodes with default files]

Displays the Specify File dialog (*screenshot below*), in which you specify the file to use as the default file. Data from the default file will be used as the data of the data source. However, in order for the data to be used, the default file must have the same structure as the data source. Note that, when a default file is assigned to a data source, its structure is not automatically imported. To import the structure of the XML file, use the context menu command **Import Structure from XML**; see below. You can also manually create the structure of the data source to match the structure of the default file.

The Specify File dialog enables you to browse for a file or specify the file via a global resource. Select the option you want.

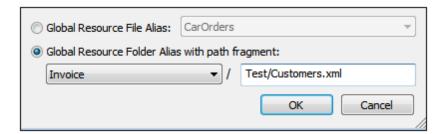


• Absolute/Relative Path: You can enter a path or browse for a file. The path can be relative to the design file, or absolute. If the file is deployed to the server along with the design file, then the relative/absolute path specified in the dialog will be used internally (in the server's database) to access the file. If the file is not deployed, then it must be stored in a directory on the server. In this case: (i) if a relative path is selected in the Specify File dialog, then, at runtime, this relative path will be resolved on the server with reference to the Working Directory (defined in the MobileTogether Server settings); (ii) if the path in the Specify File dialog is absolute, the file's containing folder on the server must be a descendant of the Working Directory. See

the section Location of Project Files for details.

Global Resource File Alias: Select a file alias from the file aliases available in the combo box. The available file aliases will be those currently defined in the Global Resources Definitions file. Each file alias maps to different file resources according to the currently active configuration in MobileTogether Designer (selected via the command Tools | Active Configuration). See the section Altova Global Resources for details.

• Global Resource Folder Alias with path fragment: Select a folder alias from the folder aliases available in the combo box (see screenshot below).



The available folder aliases will be those currently defined in the Global Resources Definitions file. Each folder alias maps to different folder resources according to the currently active configuration in MobileTogether Designer (selected via the command **Tools | Active Configuration**). The path fragment specifies the rest of the path to the file resource. See the section Altova Global Resources for details.

Embed XML in design file

This command is enabled when the <u>root node</u> of an XML page source is selected that has a <u>default file assigned to it</u>. Selecting it embeds the XML data source in the design (.mtd) file. After a data source is embedded, the property <u>Embedded</u> is added to the annotation of the root node. See the sections <u>Location of Project Files</u> and <u>Embed XML in Design File</u> for more information about (i) the advantages and disadvantages of embedding, and (ii) alternatives to embedding.

Deploy file with design

This toggle command is enabled when a page source is associated with a deployable file, typically a default file. The deployable file will already be listed in the Files Pane.

- Toggling the command on selects the check box of the file in the <u>Files Pane</u>, thus deploying it.
- Toggling the command off de-selects the file in the <u>Files Pane</u>; the file will not be deployed.

Note that when a file is first added to the design, you are prompted about whether you wish to deploy the file or not.

List variable usage

The <u>root node of every page source</u> is a variable, for example \$xmll or \$delta The List Variable Usage command lists, in the <u>Messages Pane</u>, all the usages of the selected root node variable. The items in the list are controls and actions in which the variable is used. (Variables are typically used in XPath expressions.) Clicking an item in the list highlights the control or opens the Actions dialog containing the variable usage.

▼ Data type

Select **XML**, **HTML**, or **JSON** from the submenu that rolls out. Your selection specifies what type of data source you plan to target, and enables MobileTogether Designer to correctly process the incoming or outgoing data. You can change this selection at any time. A change will cause the data source to be re-parsed for the new data type.

▼ Reload structure

Reloads the structure of the selected page source. The command is enabled only if the structure is based on an external resource, such as an XML file or DB. In the case of XML files, this means that if there is a <u>default file</u>, then the command is enabled.

▼ Import structure from XML

Opens a Browse dialog in which you can select the XML or HTML file from which to import the XML structure of the page source tree. If the tree already contains a structure, you will be prompted about whether one or multiple nodes of the existing structure should be retained or not. If you choose to retain the existing structure and the new structure cannot be merged into the existing structure, then the new structure is imported as a sibling of the existing structure. This command is not available for tree structures that have a root element named json and expect data from a JSON data source.

Note: When a structure is imported from an XML file, the file is set as the <u>default file</u> and the file's data is also imported.

▼ Export structure to XML

Opens a Browse dialog in which you can select an XML file to which to export the XML structure of the page source tree. You can choose an existing XML file or create a new one. If you choose an existing file, the file's existing data will be overwritten by the exported structure. This command is not available for tree structures that have a root element named json and target a JSON data source.

▼ Import structure from JSON

Opens a Browse dialog in which you can select the JSON file from which to import the XML structure of the page source tree. If the tree already contains a structure, you will be prompted about whether one or multiple nodes of the existing structure should be retained or not. If you choose to retain the existing structure and the new structure cannot be merged into the existing structure, then the new structure is imported as a sibling of the existing structure. This command is available only for tree structures that have a root element named json and expect data from a JSON data source.

Note: When a structure is imported from an XML file, the file is set as the <u>default file</u> and the file's data is also imported.

Export structure to JSON

Opens a Browse dialog in which you can select an XML file to which to export the XML structure of the page source tree. You can choose an existing XML file or create a new one. If you choose an existing file, the file's existing data will be overwritten by the exported structure. This command is available only for tree structures that have a root element named json and target a JSON data source.

▼ Choose DB data source [\$DB only]

This command is enabled for database type (\$DB) root nodes. It opens MobileTogether Designer's Database Connection Wizard, with which you can connect to a DB data source. After connecting to the DB, you can select the table to add as the page source. If the new table data cannot be merged into the existing structure, then the new table structure is created as a sibling of the existing structure.

If the DB is shared (as a data source) by other pages in the design, then you are prompted to choose from the following options:

 Modify Shared Structure: The modifications you are about to make to the page source structure on this page will be shared on the other pages where this DB structure is used.

- Copy Structure: The structure is copied to a new page source, and its root element
 is given a different name. The original page source is removed. The new data
 structure is not shared any more with any structure on other pages. You can now
 modify this page source while leaving data sources on other pages unchanged.
- Cancel: Cancels the modification process.

Choose DB tables and views [\$DB only]

This command is enabled for database type (\$DB) root nodes. It opens MobileTogether Designer's Database Object Selector window, in which you can select the DB tables and views to import as a page source.

▼ Create OriginalRowSet [\$DB only]

In order for data to be edited and saved, the tree of the page source must also include an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, which is a copy of the <code>RowSet</code> element. The original data is saved in the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, while edited data is saved in the <code>RowSet</code> element. When the page source is saved, the difference between the two trees, <code>OriginalRowSet</code> and <code>RowSet</code>, is calculated, and the data source is updated on the basis of the difference. If the modification is successful, then the modified data is copied to <code>OriginalRowSet</code> so that <code>OriginalRowSet</code> contains the newly saved DB data, and the modification process can be repeated.

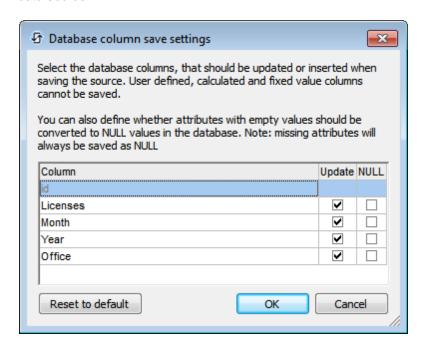
To create an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> for a page source, right-click the root node of the page source and toggle on the command <code>Create OriginalRowSet</code>.

The **Create OriginalRowSet** command is enabled for database type (\$DB) root nodes. It is a toggle command that creates/removes an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> data structure that contains the original data of the page source. User modified data is saved in the main structure created from the data source. When modified data is saved back to the DB, the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> structure is modified to contain the data newly saved to the DB. Till the time modified data is saved to the DB, the <code>originalRowSet</code> structure. This ensures that the original DB data is still available in the tree.

▼ Filter columns [\$DB only]

This command is enabled for database type (\$DB) root nodes. It opens the Database Column

Save Settings dialog, in which you can specify which columns should be saved to the DB data source.



The dialog displays the columns of the data source. Columns that cannot be updated (because they are user-defined, fixed-value, or calculated-value) will not have an *Update* option check box. Deselect the columns you do not want to update. Attributes with empty values can be converted to NULL values in the DB by checking that column's *NULL* check box. Note that missing attributes will always be saved as NULL. If you wish to reset the Save settings so that all columns are updated, click **Reset to default**.

▼ HTTP/FTP Request Settings

This command is enabled for <u>root nodes of the HTTP/FTP type</u> (that is, **\$HTTP** root nodes). Depending upon whether the current page source request is made with HTTP/FTP, REST, or SOAP, the appropriate settings dialog will be opened: <u>Edit Web Access Settings</u>, <u>RESTful API Request Settings</u>, Choose WSDL File.

Cache settings

These two commands are available on root nodes and roll out sub-menus with load and save options.

• Loading options: Data can be loaded when the page source is first loaded, every time when the page source is loaded, or not loaded at all automatically. In the last case, loading can be specified via a page action. Default is On First Use, that is, the

- data source is loaded when it is used for the first time.
- Saving options: Data can be saved automatically when the page is left, when a solution finishes, when the last submit action is carried out, or not at all automatically. In the last case, saving can be specified via a page action. Default is Not Automatically.

Context menus of tree nodes

The commands listed below are available in the context menus of **tree nodes** (all elements and attributes except the root node). In addition to the commands that are common across all types of page sources (XML, DB, HTML, etc), some types of page sources have commands that are specific to its type (for example, commands for DB data sources). The specificity of such commands is noted where relevant.

▼ Insert, Append, Add Child

Enables the addition of elements and attributes relative to the selected node. **Insert** adds the node before the selected node. **Append** adds the node after the last node of that type. If you wish to add a node immediately after the selected node, go to the following node and use the **Insert** command.

▼ Ensure exists on load (fixed value)

This context menu item is available for tree nodes. A fixed value can be provided for the selected node when the page is loaded. Click the command and enter the value. This command is a toggle command. So, clicking it when a fixed value is already assigned will remove the value.

Ensure exists on load (XPath value)

This context menu item is available for tree nodes. An XPath-generated value can be provided for the selected node when the page is loaded. On clicking the command, the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression Dialog is displayed. Enter the XPath expression to generate the value of the node. This command is a toggle command. So, clicking it when an XPath value is already assigned will remove the value.

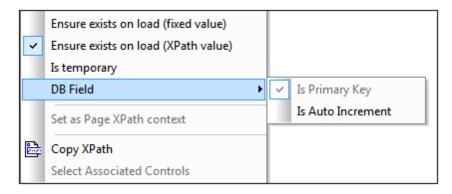
▼ Is temporary

Sets the selected node as a temporary node. Data in temporary nodes is not saved when

the tree is saved. Since temporary nodes are outside the framework of valid workflow data, they are intended for use in calculations and for storage of any data that is not wanted as part of the final data.

▼ DB field

This context menu item is available for DB nodes, and has a sub-menu with two commands:



- Is Primary Key: Sets the selected node as the primary key column if a primary key
 has not already been auto-detected during retrieval from the DB.
- *Is Auto Increment:* Sets the selected node to auto increment. The node then becomes read-only.

Primary keys in MobileTogether Designer

Primary keys in DBs typically are auto-incrementing. When this is the case and a new row is added to a table, the primary key column of the added row is automatically incremented. In MobileTogether Designer, when a table is retrieved the primary key and auto-increment information is automatically retrieved and displayed in the Page Sources Pane (see screenshot below).

```
SDB1 GOBE OfficeSales_DB (shared with 2 other page(s))

Rowset

Row

id (Read Only, Primary Key) ="(: calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us :)

let $all := $DB1/DB/RowSet/Row/@id

let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))

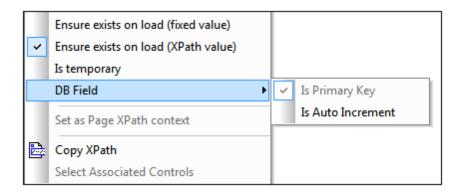
let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1

return $id"

City

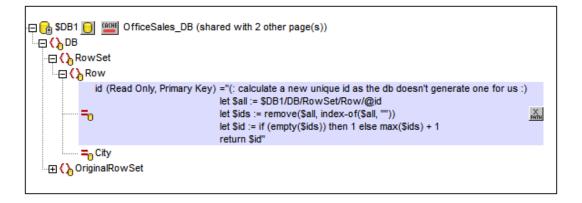
OriginalRowSet
```

If auto-retrieval of this information was not successful, the context menu of tree nodes contains toggle commands that enable you to correctly annotate nodes (see screenshot below).



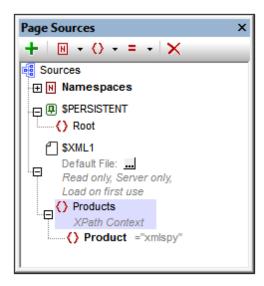
If the primary key column is not auto-incrementing, new primary key values for appended rows must be automatically generated using an XQuery expression. This is because primary key columns cannot be edited. The XQuery expression is inserted by using the primary-key node's context menu command, **Ensure Exists before Page Load (XPath Value)**. In the example below, a new value is generated for the primary key @id by using the following XQuery expression:

```
let $all := $DB1/DB/RowSet/Row/@id
let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))
let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1
return $id
```



▼ Set as page XPath context

Sets the selected node as the XPath context node of the page. An annotation to the effect is displayed below the node (see screenshot below). The XPath context of the page is the context node for all XPath expressions on the page.



This command can be toggled on and off. So, you can enable a node as the XPath context node of the page, or you can toggle off a node's setting as the XPath context node of the page. If a node is set as the XPath context node when another node already has this setting, then the setting is toggled off for the previously assigned node and toggled on for the newly assigned node.

▼ Copy XPath

Copies the XPath locator expression of the node to the clipboard. The locator expression starts at the root node. For example: \$XML1Products/Product is the locator expression of the Product node.

▼ Select associated controls

Selects the controls in the design diagram that are associated with the selected node. Such associations are typically page source links between the node and page controls.

Chapter 8

Page Design

8 Page Design

A page design consists of page controls, such as combo boxes, edit fields, labels, and charts. Page controls are dragged from the <u>Controls Pane</u> into the design and dropped at the required location in the page design. Controls can display and process data from data sources. These data sources are displayed in the form of trees in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u>. Data is associated with a control, typically, by dragging a data node from the tree onto the control. These data associations are called the **page source links** of the control.

Additionally, you can do the following:

- Set control properties: With the control selected, set its properties in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>. The properties of each control are described in the section Controls.
- Set control actions: Control actions can be set when control-related events are triggered. Define control actions by right-clicking a control, and selecting **Control Actions**. The various control actions that are available are described in the section Actions.
- Set page properties: With the page selected, set page properties in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>. See Page Properties for a description of properties.
- Set page actions: Page actions can be set when <u>page-related events</u> are triggered. Define page actions by right-clicking in an empty part of the page, and selecting **Page Actions**.
 The various page actions that are available are described in the section Actions.

In this section

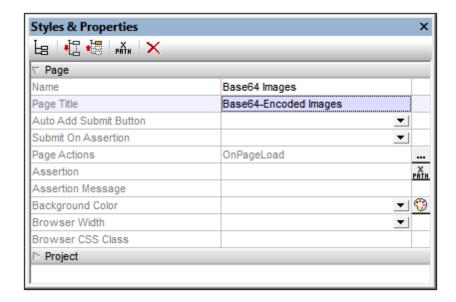
This section is organized as follows:

- Page Properties, which explains the page properties that are set in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>
- <u>Controls</u>, which describes the various controls available for inclusion in page designs and their various properties
- Events, which describes page events and control events
- Actions, which describes a set of common actions that can be defined for both page and control events
- Tables, which explains how to use the three types of table that can be used in a design
- Images, which describes the powerful image handling capabilities of MobileTogether
- Charts, which explains how charts can be configured in the design
- Hyperlinking to Solutions, which describes mechanisms for startin a solution from (i) another solution, or (ii) a link in an email
- Page Refresh, which describes how to define a page refresh event and specify the actions to take when the event is triggered
- Server Connection Errors, which shows how to specify the actions to take when a serverconnection-error event is triggered

Page Design Page Properties 219

8.1 Page Properties

Page properties are defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and are described below. The screenshot below shows default values.



Name

The name of the page. It is used to reference the page within the project. If the Page Title property (see below) is not specified, it is also the title of the page in the solution. Click inside the value field and enter the name you want.

▼ Page Title

The title of the page in the solution. Click inside the value field and enter the name you want. Alternatively, you can enter an XPath expression by clicking the **XPath** icon in the pane's toolbar. If a value for this property does not exist, then the value of the Name property will be used as the title of the page in the solution.

Auto-Add Submit Button

A boolean setting that defines whether a **Submit** button is automatically added to the page. Select true or false in the combo box. The default value is true. (The **Submit** button of a page in the solution is usually located at the top right of the page, and it submits data on the page for action. Typically, the workflow then moves on to the next page.)

220 Page Design Page Properties

Submit on Assertion

Allows or disallows a page submission if there are invalid assertions on the page. Select from the following values:

- Disable: The Submit button is disabled if there is an invalid assertion on the page.
 This is the default setting.
- Enable: The Submit button is enabled even if there is an invalid assertion on the page.
- Ask: The Submit button is enabled even if there is an invalid assertion on the page.
 However, if there is an invalid assertion, and the Submit button is clicked/tapped,
 then a dialog appears asking the end-user whether submission should proceed or
 not.

The default is Disable.	
-------------------------	--

▼ Page Actions

Clicking the property's **Additional Dialog** button displays the <u>Page Actions dialog</u>, in which you can select a page event and then define actions to perform when a page event is triggered. See the sections <u>Page Events</u> and <u>Actions</u> for details of how to do this. Page events for which actions have been defined are listed in the property's value field.

Assertion

Sets a condition to be met for the page to be valid. If the assertion is invalid, then the text of the Assertion Message property (see next property below) is displayed in the Assertion Message control. (If there are multiple Assertion Message controls, then all these controls will display the text of the Assertion Message property.)

Click the Assertion property's **XPath** icon to enter an XPath expression that defines the assertion. For example: The XPath expression **LastName** != "" asserts that the node LastName must not be empty. If this node is empty, then the assertion message of the page (defined in the Assertion Message property) is displayed in the page's <u>Assertion Message</u> control.

Note that assertions can also be defined for some controls. So it can happen that there are multiple invalid assertions on a page. If this happens, then the assertion message of the first invalid assertion (in the sequence in which assertions appear on the page) is displayed. Control assertions are evaluated before page assertions, and control assertions are evaluated in the order in which they occur in the design.

Page Design Page Properties 221

Assertion Message

Sets the assertion message to be displayed if the page assertion (see previous property above) is not valid. Double-click inside the value field of the property to edit the assertion message, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text. The assertion message is displayed by the <u>Assertion Message</u> control. For example: If the XPath expression of a page assertion is <u>LastName != ""</u>, then it asserts that the node <u>LastName</u> must not be empty. If this node is empty, then the assertion message of the page is displayed in the <u>Assertion Message</u> control of the page.

Note that assertions can also be defined for some controls. So it can happen that there are multiple invalid assertions on a page. If this happens, then the assertion message of the first invalid assertion (in the sequence in which assertions appear on the page) is displayed. Control assertions are evaluated before page assertions, and control assertions are evaluated in the order in which they occur in the design.

▼ Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field and enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the (color code) text you want

▼ Browser Width

Specifies the page width on browsers, either as a percentage of the screen width or as an absolute pixel value. Select a value from the dropdown list. The default value is calculated automatically by the browser.

Browser CSS Class

Enter the name of the CSS class that you want to associate with this page. This class can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the <u>Project Properties</u>) to assign properties for this control separately.

8.2 Controls

A page design (*screenshot below*) consists of page controls—such as combo boxes, tables, and images—that are laid out and formatted exactly as the end user will see the page. Controls are dragged into the design from the <u>Controls Pane</u>. When a control is selected in the design, its formatting and processing properties are displayed in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and can be edited there. Some controls can have a data source node associated with it that is called a **page source link**. The association between control and page source link is done by dragging the page source link node from the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> onto the control.

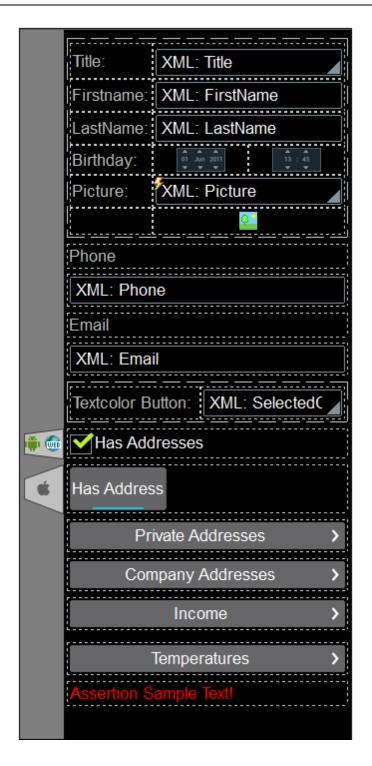
■ Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in Page Design View) and click Delete Page Source Link.
- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the <u>pane's toolbar</u>.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the <u>pane's toolbar</u>.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an external CSS file. Those defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> have priority.

List of controls

Given below is a list of available controls, arranged alphabetically.

- Assertion Message
- Button
- Chart
- Checkbox
- Combo Box
- Date
- DateTime (iOS)
- Edit Field
- Horizontal Line
- Image
- Label
- Radio Button
- Signature Field
- Space
- Switch
- Table
- Time



Context menu

Each control in the page design has a context menu. The following control-related commands are common to most context menus.

▼ Delete Page Source Link

■ Description

This command is enabled for those controls that can be associated with a data source node and for which an association exists. **Delete Page Source Link** deletes the association between control and data source. Note that there is no other way to delete the control's association with a node.

Control Actions

Description

Displays the <u>Control Actions dialog</u>, in which you can set actions for various control events. For a description of available actions for control events and how to set control actions, go to the section, <u>Page Design | Actions</u>.

Enter Text

Description

Enabled for controls in which text can be entered. Rolls out a sub-menu with the following options:

- Directly: To enter static text directly as the text of the control
- XPath: Displays the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog, in which you can enter the XPath expression that selects the text of the control
- XML Node: Refers to the option of displaying the content of an XML node as the
 control's text. Clicking the option displays a hint that a data source node can
 be dragged from the Page Sources Pane onto the control. The dragged-anddropped node will be associated with the control, and the node's content will be
 entered as the text of the control

▼ Localization

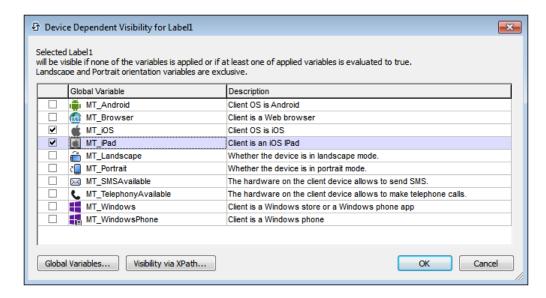
■ <u>Description</u>

Displays the <u>Localization dialog</u>, in which you can define the localization (translation) of strings that appear in various controls of the project. This command has the same effect as the <u>Project | Localization</u> command. For a description of localization, go to the description of the <u>Project | Localization</u> command.

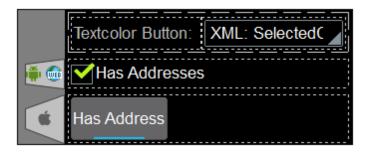
Device Dependent Visibility

Description

Displays the Device Dependent Visibility dialog (*screenshot below*). The dialog contains a list of client-device types. Select the client-device type for which you want the control to be visible, and click **OK**.



If the client-device type has an icon, this icon appears in the design, to the left of the control to which it applies (see screenshot below).



Page Actions

Description

Displays the <u>Page Actions dialog</u>, in which you can set actions for various page events. This command has the same effect as the <u>Page | Page Actions</u> command. For a description of available actions for page events and how to set page actions, go to the description of the <u>Page | Page Actions</u> command.

Actions Overview

Description

Displays the <u>Actions Overview dialog</u> of the currently active page. This command has the same effect as the <u>Page | Actions Overview</u> command. For more information, go to the description of the <u>Page | Actions Overview</u> command.

Assertion Message

The Assertion Message control displays the assertion message of the first invalid assertion of the page. An Assertion is a property of a page and of some—not all—controls. It specifies a certain condition (for example that a node may not be empty). If the Assertion property's condition is not met, the assertion is invalid, and the Assertion Message property associated with that Assertion property is displayed in the Assertion Message control.

An Assertion Message control can be placed anywhere in the design. It will always display the Assertion Message property text that is associated with the first invalid assertion on the page. If there are multiple invalid assertions on a page, then the assertion message of the first invalid assertion (in the sequence in which assertions appear on the page) is displayed. The Assertion Message control should therefore be inserted only once on a page. If multiple Assertion Message controls are placed in the design, they will all display the same assertion message (that of the first invalid assertion).

Assertions and assertion messages work as follows:

- The Assertion property of a control or page sets a condition to be met in order for the assertion to be valid. The assertion's condition is specified with an XPath expression.
- If the assertion is invalid, then the text of the control's Assertion Message property is displayed in the Assertion Message control.

For example: The XPath expression <code>LastName != ""</code> in the <code>Assertion</code> property of a control asserts that the node <code>LastName</code> must not be empty. If this node is empty, then the control's assertion message is displayed in the page at the point where the <code>Assertion Message</code> control is inserted.

■ Notes

- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.

Assertion Message events

There is no event associated with the Assertion Message control.

Assertion Message properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click

inside the value field to edit.

Multiline

Sets multiline input/display on or off (true/false). The default is false.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Text Size

Select a size from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a text size.

▼ Bold Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Italic Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Underline Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: **LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo**. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the <u>Browser Settings dialog</u>) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Button

Buttons can be used to execute an action when the button is clicked. The name of the button can be static text (entered as the value of the <code>Text</code> property; <code>see below</code>) or a dynamic value obtained from a data source node (by dragging the node onto the button). The <code>OnButtonClicked</code> event is associated with the button control. To define an action for this event, click the <code>Additional Dialog</code> button of the <code>Control Action</code> property. This displays the <code>Control Actions dialog</code>, in which you can specify the required action.

■ Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in Page Design View) and click **Delete Page Source Link**.
- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an <u>external CSS file</u>. Those defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> have priority.

Button events

The onButtonClicked event is available. To define actions for the button's onButtonClicked event, right-click the button and, from the context menu that appears, select **Control Actions for OnButtonClicked**. This displays the Actions dialog for button events. For a description of the actions that can be defined for this event, see the Actions section.

▼ OnButtonClicked (OnClick, OnLongClick)

The end user can click the control in one of two ways: a short tap or a longer press. A sequence of different <u>actions</u> can be specified for each type of click. An additional sequence of <u>actions</u> can be performed after those of the end-user click. The additional sequence is defined after the On Long Click event.







 on Click: The action/s to perform when the control is tapped (see screenshot above left).

- on Long click: The action/s to perform when the control is pressed for a longer time than a tap (see screenshot above center).
- Additional actions: The action/s to perform after the On Click or On Long Click
 actions have been executed (see screenshot above right). If no action has been set
 for the On Click or On Long Click events, then the additional action/s are
 performed directly on a click or long-click.

You can combine <u>actions</u> for the different click events, for example, as shown in the screenshot below.



The screenshot above shows that the <code>On Click</code> and <code>On Long Click</code> events each has a sequence of actions defined for it. An additional <code>MessageBox</code> event is defined after the <code>On Long Click</code> event. This <code>MessageBox</code> event will be executed after the <code>On Click</code> and/or <code>On Long Click</code> sequence of actions has completed.

Button properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Text

The Text property takes as its value one of the following:

- A fixed value text string to be displayed in the control
- An XPath expression that retrieves data from a node in a data source and displays this value in the control

Double-click inside the value field to edit, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text. For some controls you can choose between the two methods of entering the property value: right-click the property and select the entry method you want from the context menu (fixed-value or XPath). For other controls, there is only one method of entering the property value.

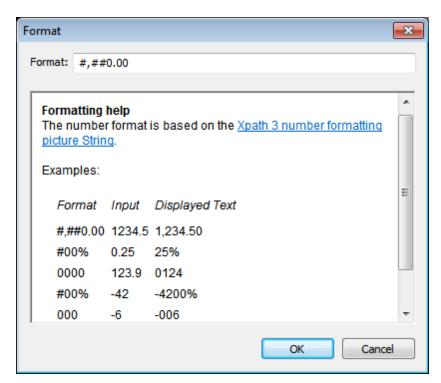
Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the generation of the value of the Text property. If used, then a validation error results.

▼ Multiline

Sets multiline input/display on or off (true/false). The default is false.

Number Format String

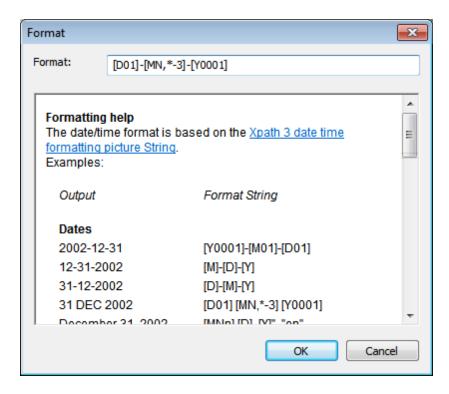
Click the **Additional Dialog** button and enter a number format in the Format dialog that appears (*screenshot below*).



The formatting will be applied to the control's content if the content is numeric, and will be displayed in the solution, not in the design.

▼ Date/Time Format String

Click the **Additional Dialog** button and enter a date, time, or date-time format in the Format dialog that appears (*screenshot below*).



The formatting will be applied to the control's content if the content has the correct lexical form of xs:date (for the Date control), xs:time (for the Time control), or xs:dateTime (for the Date, Time, and DateTime controls). Basic examples are:

xs:date: 2014-12-31xs:time: 23:59:59

xs:dateTime: 2014-12-31T23:59:59

▼ Date/Time Format Language

Select one of the supported languages from the dropdown list of the combo box (EN, DE, ES, JA). The selected language will be used in the date/time formatting that is set in the Date/
Time Format String property (see description above). If the names of months and weekdays are used in the format string, then these will be displayed in the language selected for this property. The default language is English.

▼ Button Look

Adds a predefined icon (instead of text) as the button display. Add an icon by selecting one from the dropdown list of the property's combo box. The default value of the property is no icon. When an icon is added as the display of the button, any previously entered text display is removed. To add a text display (instead of an icon), double-click the button and enter the text you want to display there.

▼ Control Action

Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the control's <u>Actions dialog</u>. You can set actions to perform when a <u>control event</u> is triggered. The control's events are predefined and are each shown in a tab in the right-hand pane of the <u>Actions dialog</u>. A library of actions is displayed in the left-hand pane. You can drag an action from the left-hand pane into an

event's tab and then define the properties of the action. For each event, multiple actions can be set up. They will be executed in the order in which they occur, from top to bottom.

After defining a control's actions, you can access and edit them at any time by clicking the **Additional Dialog** button.

Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to <code>true()</code> or <code>false()</code>. If the expression evaluates to <code>false()</code>—and only if it evaluates to <code>false()</code>—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to <code>true()</code> or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is <code>true()</code>. Double-click inside the value field, or click the <code>XPath</code> button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The <code>visible</code> property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to <code>true()</code>. As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Enabled/Editable

The control is either enabled or disabled, according to whether the value of the property is true (enabled) or false (disabled). The value can be entered directly (by selecting it in the combo box or by double-clicking in the value field and entering the value you want). The value can also be an XPath expression that evaluates to boolean true or false. The default value is true. Typically the XPath expression of the Enabled/Editable property of a control would check the presence or value of a node. If the expression evaluates to true, the control will be enabled.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Text Size

Select a size from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a text size.

▼ Bold Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Italic Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Underline Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the Browser Settings dialog) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Chart

The Chart control enables data from a source data file to be displayed in the form of a chart. The available <u>chart types</u> are: pie charts, bar charts, line graphs, area charts, candlestick charts, and gauge charts. Data for the X-Axis, Y-Axis, and other chart components is selected with XPath expressions. The context node for these XPath expressions is set by dragging it from the source data tree and dropping it onto the chart control in the design.

The chart's display settings within the page are defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>. The settings for chart type, data selection, and appearance are defined in the Chart Configuration dialog. This dialog is accessed by clicking the **Additional Dialog** button of the <u>Chart Settings</u> property, or by double-clicking the chart in the design.

For detailed information about how to configure charts, see the **Charts** section.

Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in Page Design View) and click Delete Page Source Link.
- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an external CSS file. Those defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> have priority.

Chart events

The onchartclicked event is available. To define actions for the chart's onchartclicked event, right-click the chart and, from the context menu that appears, select **Control Actions for OnChartClicked**. This displays the Actions dialog for chart events. For a description of the actions that can be defined for this event, see the Actions section.

▼ OnChartClicked (OnClick, OnLongClick)

The end user can click the control in one of two ways: a short tap or a longer press. A sequence of different <u>actions</u> can be specified for each type of click. An additional sequence of <u>actions</u> can be performed after those of the end-user click. The additional sequence is defined after the On Long Click event.



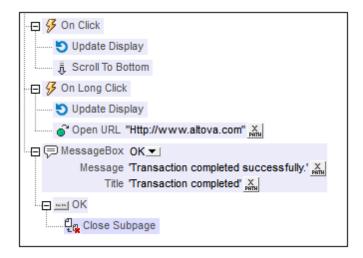




 on Click: The action/s to perform when the control is tapped (see screenshot above left).

- on Long Click: The action/s to perform when the control is pressed for a longer time than a tap (see *screenshot above center*).
- Additional actions: The action/s to perform after the on Click or On Long Click
 actions have been executed (see screenshot above right). If no action has been set
 for the On Click or On Long Click events, then the additional action/s are
 performed directly on a click or long-click.

You can combine <u>actions</u> for the different click events, for example, as shown in the screenshot below.



The screenshot above shows that the <code>On Click</code> and <code>On Long Click</code> events each has a sequence of actions defined for it. An additional <code>MessageBox</code> event is defined after the <code>On Long Click</code> event. This <code>MessageBox</code> event will be executed after the <code>On Click</code> and/or <code>On Long Click</code> sequence of actions has completed.

Chart properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

▼ Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

Chart Settings

Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the Chart Configuration dialog. The settings you make in this dialog will apply to the chart that is currently selected in the design. For a description of how to configure charts, see the section, Charts.

▼ ID

This property must be entered when the chart is placed in a <u>repeating table</u> or <u>repeating row</u> <u>of a dynamic table</u>. The value of the ID property can be any string, but must evaluate to a different ID for each instantiated chart. This can be achieved by assigning a dynamic XPath expression as the value of the property.

Create Before Load

In the combo box, select the value you want: true or false. If true, the chart or Base64 image is created before the page loads. If false, a page sources action must be used to create the chart or image. The default value is true.

Chart Creation Width

Sets the width, in pixels, of the chart to be generated. Click the **Edit XPath** icon and, in the dialog that appears, enter an expression that returns a numeric value. This value will be the width, in pixels, of the chart to be generated.

Chart Creation Height

Sets the height, in pixels, of the chart to be generated. Click the **Edit XPath** icon and, in the dialog that appears, enter an expression that returns a numeric value. This value will be the height, in pixels, of the chart to be generated.

Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to true() or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is true(). Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The visible property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to true(). As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The **SMTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For

these, the default is wrap_content.

▼ Limit Control Height to Canvas

Select one of the allowed values (true or false) in the combo box. In case the control's height exceeds the device height, a value of true restricts the height to that of the device display. Default is true.

Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: **LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo**. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the <u>Browser Settings dialog</u>) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Check Box

Check boxes allow one of two possible values to be entered as the content of a node. In this way the user can be constrained to select one of two specific values. When you insert a check box control, you can specify whether the check box should be to the left or right of the check box text, or in the default system position. Two key properties of the check box control are:

- The text that accompanies the check box. This can be static text (entered as the value of the Text property; see below) or a dynamic value obtained via an XPath expression.
- The values that are to be respectively assigned the checked and unchecked states of the check box. These are assigned with the Checked Values property (see below).

Check boxes have the OnFinishEditing event, which is triggered when the end-user makes a check box selection. To define an action for this event, click the **Additional Dialog** button of the Control Action property. This displays the Control Actions dialog, in which you can specify the required action.

■ Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in Page Design View) and click Delete Page Source Link.
- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- **To copy a control** to another location in the design, press **Ctrl** and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an <u>external CSS file</u>. Those defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> have priority.

Check Box events

The <u>onFinishEditing event</u> is available. For a description of the actions that can be defined for this event, see the <u>Actions section</u>.

Check box properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Text

The Text property takes as its value one of the following:

- A fixed value text string to be displayed in the control
- An XPath expression that retrieves data from a node in a data source and displays this value in the control

Double-click inside the value field to edit, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text. For some controls you can choose between the two methods of entering the property value: right-click the property and select the entry method you want from the context menu (fixed-value or XPath). For other controls, there is only one method of entering the property value.

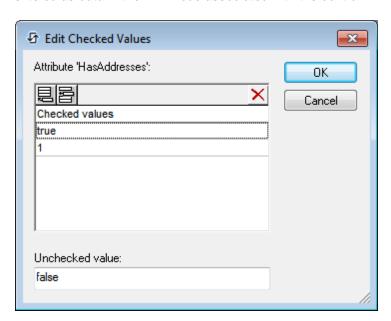
Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the generation of the value of the Text property. If used, then a validation error results.

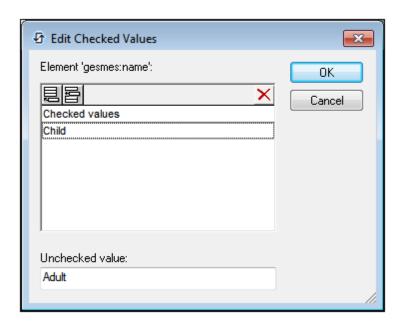
▼ Multiline

Sets multiline input/display on or off (true/false). The default is false.

Checked Values (true/false)

Provides an XML data value for the selected/unselected state of the control. Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the Edit Checked Values dialog (*screenshots below*). Enter a value for the checked (selected) and unchecked (unselected) state. The value corresponding to the control state (selected/unselected) chosen by the end-user will be entered as data in the XML node associated with the control.





▼ Get Value From XPath

The value returned by the XPath expression is displayed in the control. This enables alternative ways to enter display values for certain controls. For example, a combo box could take its display value from either a page source node or the return value of the Get Value From XPath property.

Note: The *MTControlvalue variable is **not** available for the generation of the value of the Get Value From XPath property. If used, then a validation error results.

Auto Correct Value

The control has two states: checked and unchecked, each of which is associated with at least one XML value. These XML values are defined in the Checked Values property.

The Auto Correct Value property has two possible values: true or false. If the property is set to true, XML values are automatically corrected to the values defined for the checked and unchecked states in the Checked Values property. For example, if the checked value has an XML value of child and the unchecked value has an XML value of adult, then, if the control is checked, the XML value will be corrected to child in case something else is entered. If the control is unchecked, the XML value will be adult. If there is more than one XML value assigned to the checked state, then the first XML value is used for the correction. A correction would be necessary, for example, if the control is associated with a node having content that is not a legitimate XML value for the current state of the control. The property's default value is false.

▼ Check Mark Position

Sets the position of the check box relative to the control's text: either to the left or right of the text. The default is the operating system default.

Control Action

Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the control's <u>Actions dialog</u>. You can set

actions to perform when a <u>control event</u> is triggered. The control's events are predefined and are each shown in a tab in the right-hand pane of the <u>Actions dialog</u>. A library of actions is displayed in the left-hand pane. You can drag an action from the left-hand pane into an event's tab and then define the properties of the action. For each event, multiple actions can be set up. They will be executed in the order in which they occur, from top to bottom.

After defining a control's actions, you can access and edit them at any time by clicking the **Additional Dialog** button.

Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to true() or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is true(). Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The visible property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to true(). As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

Enabled/Editable

The control is either enabled or disabled, according to whether the value of the property is true (enabled) or false (disabled). The value can be entered directly (by selecting it in the combo box or by double-clicking in the value field and entering the value you want). The value can also be an XPath expression that evaluates to boolean true or false. The default value is true. Typically the XPath expression of the Enabled/Editable property of a control would check the presence or value of a node. If the expression evaluates to true, the control will be enabled.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- · Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Text Size

Select a size from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a text size.

▼ Bold Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Italic Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Underline Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

▼ Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or

double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the Browser Settings dialog) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Combo Box

The Combo Box control provides a mechanism consisting of two parts:

• Entry text and XML values: The text of combo box entries (the dropdown list that the end user sees), and their corresponding XML values (that go into the data source) are specified with the Combo Box Entry Values property (see below for details).

Associated XML node. A node from the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> is dropped on the combo box. This is the associated XML node (or page source link) which will receive the combo box value that is selected by the end user. In order to use the end-user-selected value elsewhere in the page, the node's content is referenced by either dragging the node onto controls or selecting the node in XPath expressions.

■ Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in Page Design View) and click Delete Page Source Link.
- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the <u>pane's toolbar</u>.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an external CSS file. Those defined in the Styles & Properties Pane have priority.

Combo Box events

The <u>onFinishEditing event</u> is available. For a description of the actions that can be defined for this event, see the <u>Actions section</u>.

Combo box properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

▼ Name

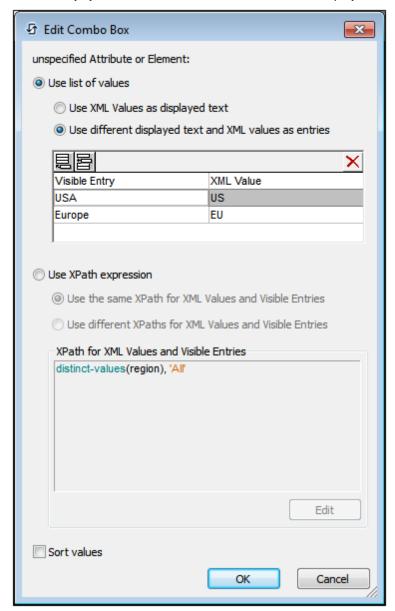
The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Multiline

Sets multiline input/display on or off (true/false). The default is false.

▼ Combo Box Entry Values

Provides XML data values for the items of the dropdown list of the combo box. Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the Edit Combo Box dialog (*screenshot below*). Alternatively, you can double-click the combo box to display the Edit Combo Box dialog.



To define the entries and values for the combo box, do the following:

 Select the method with which you wish to define the entries and values by clicking the appropriate radio button to select values: (i) list of values, or (ii) XPath expressions.

2. If you select *Use List of Values*, you can specify the text of entries that appear in the dropdown list of the combo box and the XML values that these entries map to. You can choose between using (i) the entry text as the XML value, and (ii) text-to-value mappings. You could also use an XPath expression to create the visible entries and XML values. The items in the sequence returned by an XPath expression are used for visible entries and/or XML values. You can specify: (i) that the same XPath expression be used for visible entries and for XML values, or (ii) that different XPath expressions be used for visible entries and for XML values. In the latter case, a one-to-one index mapping between the items of the two sequences determines the correspondence of visible entry to XML value. If the number of items in the two sequences are not equal, an error is reported.

- 3. If you wish to have the items that appear in the drop-down list of the combo box sorted, check the *Sort Values* check box.
- 4. Click **OK** to finish.

Note

- Using an XPath expression to select the items of the combo box drop-down list enables you to create combo boxes with dynamic entries from an XML data source.
- If the items in the drop-down list of the combo box are obtained from an XML data source, they will appear, by default, in document order.

▼ Get Value From XPath

The value returned by the XPath expression is displayed in the control. This enables alternative ways to enter display values for certain controls. For example, a combo box could take its display value from either a page source node or the return value of the <code>Get Value From XPath</code> property.

Note: The *MTControlValue variable is not available for the generation of the value of the Get Value From XPath property. If used, then a validation error results.

Auto Correct Value

Possible values are true or false. If set to true, the display items in the dropdown list items are automatically corrected so that only those items defined in the list are displayed. Any non-defined items will be removed. A non-defined item could enter the list, for example, via the node that is the page source link of the combo box. If the display values are autocorrected, the items of the dropdown list will appear in the order in which they are defined. The property's default value is false.

Control Action

Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the control's <u>Actions dialog</u>. You can set actions to perform when a <u>control event</u> is triggered. The control's events are predefined and are each shown in a tab in the right-hand pane of the <u>Actions dialog</u>. A library of actions is displayed in the left-hand pane. You can drag an action from the left-hand pane into an event's tab and then define the properties of the action. For each event, multiple actions can be set up. They will be executed in the order in which they occur, from top to bottom.

After defining a control's actions, you can access and edit them at any time by clicking the **Additional Dialog** button.

Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to <code>true()</code> or <code>false()</code>. If the expression evaluates to <code>false()</code>—and only if it evaluates to <code>false()</code>—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to <code>true()</code> or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is <code>true()</code>. Double-click inside the value field, or click the <code>XPath</code> button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The <code>Visible</code> property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to <code>true()</code>. As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The **SMTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Enabled/Editable

The control is either enabled or disabled, according to whether the value of the property is true (enabled) or false (disabled). The value can be entered directly (by selecting it in the combo box or by double-clicking in the value field and entering the value you want). The value can also be an XPath expression that evaluates to boolean true or false. The default value is true. Typically the XPath expression of the Enabled/Editable property of a control would check the presence or value of a node. If the expression evaluates to true, the control will be enabled.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Text Size

Select a size from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a text size.

▼ Bold Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Italic Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Underline Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required

text

Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

▼ Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the Browser Settings dialog) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Date

Date controls are used to format dates obtained from a node in a data source. This is useful, for example, if you wish to format dates differently for different regions: 12-31-2014 (US format) and 31-12-2014 (EU format). The formatting is defined in the Date/Time Format String property (see below for details). Note that the source node content must be in the correct lexical format as defined by the XSD specification: YYYYY-MM-DD.

■ Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in Page Design View) and click Delete Page Source Link.
- To reset a style or property (in the Styles & Properties Pane), select the property and click Reset in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an external CSS file. Those defined in the Styles & Properties Pane have priority.

Date events

The <u>onFinishEditing event</u> is available. For a description of the actions that can be defined for this event, see the <u>Actions section</u>.

Date properties

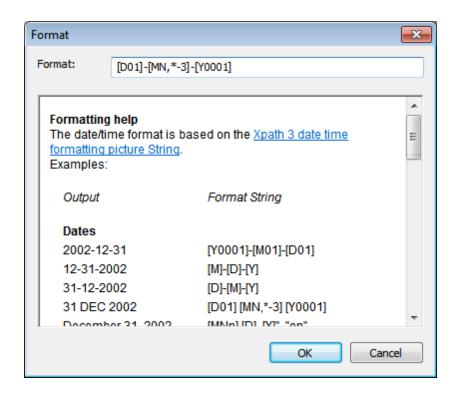
The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Date/Time Format String

Click the **Additional Dialog** button and enter a date, time, or date-time format in the Format dialog that appears (*screenshot below*).



The formatting will be applied to the control's content if the content has the correct lexical form of xs:date (for the Date control), xs:time (for the Time control), or xs:dateTime (for the Date, Time, and DateTime controls). Basic examples are:

xs:date: 2014-12-31xs:time: 23:59:59

• xs:dateTime: 2014-12-31T23:59:59

▼ Date/Time Format Language

Select one of the supported languages from the dropdown list of the combo box (EN, DE, ES, JA). The selected language will be used in the date/time formatting that is set in the Date/
Time Format String property (see description above). If the names of months and weekdays are used in the format string, then these will be displayed in the language selected for this property. The default language is English.

▼ Time Handling

Specifies how to handle the Time part of a value. The three available options are:

- Cut time, which removes the Time part
- Set time to zero, which keeps the Time part, but changes it to 00:00:00
- Keep time, which keeps the Time part

▼ Control Action

Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the control's <u>Actions dialog</u>. You can set actions to perform when a <u>control event</u> is triggered. The control's events are predefined and are each shown in a tab in the right-hand pane of the <u>Actions dialog</u>. A library of actions is displayed in the left-hand pane. You can drag an action from the left-hand pane into an

event's tab and then define the properties of the action. For each event, multiple actions can be set up. They will be executed in the order in which they occur, from top to bottom.

After defining a control's actions, you can access and edit them at any time by clicking the **Additional Dialog** button.

Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to true() or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is true(). Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The visible property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to true(). As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Enabled/Editable

The control is either enabled or disabled, according to whether the value of the property is true (enabled) or false (disabled). The value can be entered directly (by selecting it in the combo box or by double-clicking in the value field and entering the value you want). The value can also be an XPath expression that evaluates to boolean true or false. The default value is true. Typically the XPath expression of the Enabled/Editable property of a control would check the presence or value of a node. If the expression evaluates to true, the control will be enabled.

Assertion

Sets a condition to be met for the control to be valid. If the assertion is invalid, then the text of the Assertion Message property (see below) is displayed in the Assertion Message control. (If there are multiple Assertion Message controls, then all these controls will display the text of the Assertion Message property.) Click the property's **XPath** icon to enter an XPath expression that defines the assertion. For example: The XPath expression LastName

I = "" asserts that the node LastName must not be empty. If this node is empty, then the control's assertion message is displayed in the Assertion Message control of the page.

Note that other controls and the page can also have assertions. If there are multiple invalid assertions on a page, then the assertion message of the first invalid assertion is displayed. Control assertions are evaluated before page assertions, and control assertions are evaluated in the order in which they occur in the design.

▼ Assertion Message

Sets the assertion message to be displayed if the control's assertion is not valid. Double-click inside the value field of the property to edit the assertion message, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text. The assertion message is displayed in the <u>Assertion Message</u> control. For example: If the XPath expression of a control's assertion is **LastName** != "", then it asserts that the node LastName must not be empty. If this node is empty, then the assertion message of the control is displayed in the <u>Assertion Message</u> control of the page.

Note that assertions can also be defined for other controls and the page. So it can happen that there are multiple invalid assertions on a page. If this happens, then the assertion message of the first invalid assertion (in the sequence in which assertions appear on the page) is displayed. Control assertions are evaluated before page assertions, and control assertions are evaluated in the order in which they occur in the design.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Text Size

Select a size from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a text size.

▼ Bold Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Italic Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Underline Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Hint

Provides a textual hint to the end-user. For example, the hint could be about an action that the end-user has to carry out by using the control. Double-click inside the value field of the property to edit the textual hint, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an **XPath** expression to generate the required text.

Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for

example, a table cell or the page

- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: **LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo**. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the <u>Browser Settings dialog</u>) to assign properties specifically for this control.

DateTime (iOS)

DateTime controls are available only on iOS client devices and are used to format dateTimes obtained from a node in a data source. This is useful, for example, if you wish to format dateTimes differently for different regions: 12-31-2014 12:00:00 (US format) and 31-12-2014 12:00:00 (EU format). The formatting is defined in the Date/Time Format String property (see below for details). Note that the source node content must be in the correct lexical format as defined by the XSD specification: YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS. Optional timezone and millisecond parts are allowed.

■ Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in Page Design View) and click Delete Page Source Link.
- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the <u>pane's toolbar</u>.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an <u>external CSS file</u>. Those defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> have priority.

DateTime events

The <u>onFinishEditing event</u> is available. For a description of the actions that can be defined for this event, see the Actions section.

DateTime properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

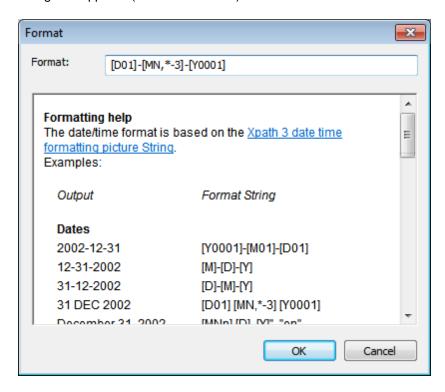
Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Date/Time Format String

Click the Additional Dialog button and enter a date, time, or date-time format in the Format

dialog that appears (screenshot below).



The formatting will be applied to the control's content if the content has the correct lexical form of xs:date (for the Date control), xs:time (for the Time control), or xs:dateTime (for the Date, Time, and DateTime controls). Basic examples are:

xs:date: 2014-12-31xs:time: 23:59:59

xs:dateTime: 2014-12-31T23:59:59

▼ Date/Time Format Language

Select one of the supported languages from the dropdown list of the combo box (EN, DE, ES, JA). The selected language will be used in the date/time formatting that is set in the Date/
Time Format String property (see description above). If the names of months and weekdays are used in the format string, then these will be displayed in the language selected for this property. The default language is English.

▼ Control Action

Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the control's <u>Actions dialog</u>. You can set actions to perform when a <u>control event</u> is triggered. The control's events are predefined and are each shown in a tab in the right-hand pane of the <u>Actions dialog</u>. A library of actions is displayed in the left-hand pane. You can drag an action from the left-hand pane into an event's tab and then define the properties of the action. For each event, multiple actions can be set up. They will be executed in the order in which they occur, from top to bottom.

After defining a control's actions, you can access and edit them at any time by clicking the **Additional Dialog** button.

▼ Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to true() or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is true(). Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The visible property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to true(). As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Enabled/Editable

The control is either enabled or disabled, according to whether the value of the property is true (enabled) or false (disabled). The value can be entered directly (by selecting it in the combo box or by double-clicking in the value field and entering the value you want). The value can also be an XPath expression that evaluates to boolean true or false. The default value is true. Typically the XPath expression of the Enabled/Editable property of a control would check the presence or value of a node. If the expression evaluates to true, the control will be enabled.

Assertion

Sets a condition to be met for the control to be valid. If the assertion is invalid, then the text of the Assertion Message property (see below) is displayed in the Assertion Message control. (If there are multiple Assertion Message controls, then all these controls will display the text of the Assertion Message property.) Click the property's XPath icon to enter an XPath expression that defines the assertion. For example: The XPath expression LastName

1= "" asserts that the node LastName must not be empty. If this node is empty, then the control's assertion message is displayed in the Assertion Message control of the page.

Note that other controls and the page can also have assertions. If there are multiple invalid assertions on a page, then the assertion message of the first invalid assertion is displayed. Control assertions are evaluated before page assertions, and control assertions are evaluated in the order in which they occur in the design.

Assertion Message

Sets the assertion message to be displayed if the control's assertion is not valid. Double-click inside the value field of the property to edit the assertion message, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text. The assertion message is displayed in the <u>Assertion Message</u> control. For example: If the XPath expression of a control's assertion is <u>LastName != ""</u>, then it asserts that the node LastName must not be empty. If this node is empty, then the assertion message of the control is displayed in the <u>Assertion Message</u> control of the page.

Note that assertions can also be defined for other controls and the page. So it can happen that there are multiple invalid assertions on a page. If this happens, then the assertion message of the first invalid assertion (in the sequence in which assertions appear on the page) is displayed. Control assertions are evaluated before page assertions, and control assertions are evaluated in the order in which they occur in the design.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Text Size

Select a size from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a text size.

▼ Bold Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Italic Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Underline Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Hint

Provides a textual hint to the end-user. For example, the hint could be about an action that the end-user has to carry out by using the control. Double-click inside the value field of the property to edit the textual hint, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an **XPath** expression to generate the required text.

▼ Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- *percent value*: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the Browser Settings dialog) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Edit Field

Edit fields can be used to allow input from the end user. If the end-user input is intended to be stored in an XML node, an association must be made in the design with this node (by dropping this node from the data source onto the control). In this case, ensure that the edit field is editable by setting the <code>Enabled/Editable</code> property to <code>true</code>. The value of the associated node is displayed in the edit field. When the end user modifies the edit field, the associated node is updated automatically.

Instead of associating a node with the edit field, the content of the edit field can be defined by an XPath expression in the <code>Text</code> property (see below). If the XPath expression locates an XML node, the effect is the same as associating a node by dropping it on to the control. The XPath expression can also be used to calculate an output and display it in the edit field. In this case the <code>Enabled/Editable</code> property will be set to <code>false</code> automatically, and cannot be edited. It then functions in the same way as a Label control.

■ Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in Page Design View) and click **Delete Page Source Link**.
- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an external CSS file. Those defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> have priority.

Edit Field events

The <u>onTyping event</u> is available. For a description of the actions that can be defined for edit field events, see the <u>Actions section</u>.

Edit Field properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

Keyboard

Sets the end-user keyboard type to activate for data entry. Select one of the following options from the dropdown list of the combo box:

- Text
- Number
- Password
- Email
- URI
- Phone

▼ Text

The Text property takes as its value one of the following:

- A fixed value text string to be displayed in the control
- An XPath expression that retrieves data from a node in a data source and displays this value in the control

Double-click inside the value field to edit, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text. For some controls you can choose between the two methods of entering the property value: right-click the property and select the entry method you want from the context menu (fixed-value or XPath). For other controls, there is only one method of entering the property value.

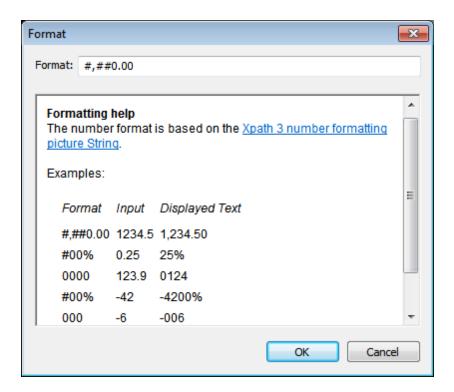
Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the generation of the value of the Text property. If used, then a validation error results.

▼ Multiline

Sets multiline input/display on or off (true/false). The default is false.

Number Format String

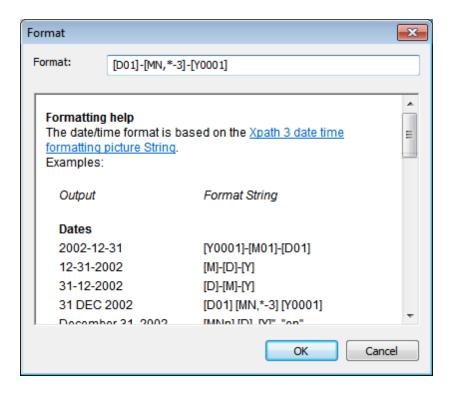
Click the **Additional Dialog** button and enter a number format in the Format dialog that appears (*screenshot below*).



The formatting will be applied to the control's content if the content is numeric, and will be displayed in the solution, not in the design.

▼ Date/Time Format String

Click the **Additional Dialog** button and enter a date, time, or date-time format in the Format dialog that appears (*screenshot below*).



The formatting will be applied to the control's content if the content has the correct lexical form of xs:date (for the Date control), xs:time (for the Time control), or xs:dateTime (for the Date, Time, and DateTime controls). Basic examples are:

xs:date: 2014-12-31xs:time: 23:59:59

• xs:dateTime: 2014-12-31T23:59:59

▼ Date/Time Format Language

Select one of the supported languages from the dropdown list of the combo box (EN, DE, ES, JA). The selected language will be used in the date/time formatting that is set in the Date/
Time Format String property (see description above). If the names of months and weekdays are used in the format string, then these will be displayed in the language selected for this property. The default language is English.

▼ Trigger Control Actions During Typing

Control actions can be triggered as soon as typing starts. For example, the page can be scrolled to bottom when typing starts, or a node can be updated while typing. Property values are true or false. Default is true. For HTML browsers used as client devices, the value is always false.

▼ Control Action

Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the control's <u>Actions dialog</u>. You can set actions to perform when a <u>control event</u> is triggered. The control's events are predefined and are each shown in a tab in the right-hand pane of the <u>Actions dialog</u>. A library of actions is displayed in the left-hand pane. You can drag an action from the left-hand pane into an event's tab and then define the properties of the action. For each event, multiple actions can

be set up. They will be executed in the order in which they occur, from top to bottom.

After defining a control's actions, you can access and edit them at any time by clicking the **Additional Dialog** button.

▼ Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to true() or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is true(). Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The visible property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to true(). As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Enabled/Editable

The control is either enabled or disabled, according to whether the value of the property is true (enabled) or false (disabled). The value can be entered directly (by selecting it in the combo box or by double-clicking in the value field and entering the value you want). The value can also be an XPath expression that evaluates to boolean true or false. The default value is true. Typically the XPath expression of the Enabled/Editable property of a control would check the presence or value of a node. If the expression evaluates to true, the control will be enabled.

Assertion

Sets a condition to be met for the control to be valid. If the assertion is invalid, then the text of the Assertion Message property (see below) is displayed in the Assertion Message control. (If there are multiple Assertion Message controls, then all these controls will display the text of the Assertion Message property.) Click the property's XPath icon to enter an XPath expression that defines the assertion. For example: The XPath expression LastName

1= "" asserts that the node LastName must not be empty. If this node is empty, then the control's assertion message is displayed in the Assertion Message control of the page.

Note that other controls and the page can also have assertions. If there are multiple invalid assertions on a page, then the assertion message of the first invalid assertion is displayed. Control assertions are evaluated before page assertions, and control assertions are evaluated in the order in which they occur in the design.

Assertion Message

Sets the assertion message to be displayed if the control's assertion is not valid. Double-click inside the value field of the property to edit the assertion message, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text. The assertion message is displayed in the <u>Assertion Message</u> control. For example: If the XPath expression of a control's assertion is **LastName != ""**, then it asserts that the node LastName must not be empty. If this node is empty, then the assertion message of the control is displayed in the <u>Assertion Message</u> control of the page.

Note that assertions can also be defined for other controls and the page. So it can happen that there are multiple invalid assertions on a page. If this happens, then the assertion message of the first invalid assertion (in the sequence in which assertions appear on the page) is displayed. Control assertions are evaluated before page assertions, and control assertions are evaluated in the order in which they occur in the design.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Text Size

Select a size from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a text size.

▼ Bold Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Italic Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Underline Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Hint

Provides a textual hint to the end-user. For example, the hint could be about an action that the end-user has to carry out by using the control. Double-click inside the value field of the property to edit the textual hint, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an **XPath** expression to generate the required text.

▼ Text Color Hint

Sets the text color of the hint for the control. This text color will be the color of the text that is defined for the Hint property (see above). You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box

 Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text.

▼ Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the Browser Settings dialog) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Horizontal Line

The Horizontal Line control enables you to add lines that you can style for color and width.

■ Notes

• To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.

- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.

Horizontal Line events

There is no event associated with the Horizontal Line control.

Horizontal Line properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Line Width

Sets the width (thickness) in pixels of the selected horizontal line. Select a width value (in pixels) from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a numeric value. The numeric value is understood to be a pixel value. For this reason, no unit should be specified.

▼ Line Style

Specifies the style of the selected horizontal line. You can select one of the options from the dropdown list of the combo box. The default value is solid.

▼ Line Color

Specifies the color of the selected horizontal line. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a line color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required color code

▼ Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to true() or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is true(). Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The visible property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to true(). As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the Browser Settings dialog) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Image

The Image control inserts an image in the design. The image that is selected for insertion can be an image file referenced by a URL, or it can be a string that is Base64-encoded image data. The Image Source Type property specifies which of the two types the image is: a URL-located file, or a Base64 string. To specify that the image (URL or Base64 string) is taken from a data source node, drop that node onto the image control. The Image control's properties are listed below.

Note: If the image source (URL or Base64 string) is changed during simulation or while the solution runs, then the image must be explicitly reloaded with the <u>Reload action</u>. For example, if a combo box selection changes the selection of an image, a <u>Reload action</u> targeting the image must be defined on the combo box.

■ Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in Page Design View) and click Delete Page Source Link.
- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the <u>pane's toolbar</u>.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an external CSS file. Those defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> have priority.

Image events

The onImageClicked event is available. To define actions for the image's onImageClicked event, right-click the image and, from the context menu that appears, select **Control Actions for OnImageClicked**. This displays the Actions dialog for image events. For a description of the actions that can be defined for this event, see the Actions section.

OnImageClicked (OnClick, OnLongClick)

The end user can click the control in one of two ways: a short tap or a longer press. A sequence of different <u>actions</u> can be specified for each type of click. An additional sequence of <u>actions</u> can be performed after those of the end-user click. The additional sequence is defined after the On Long Click event.



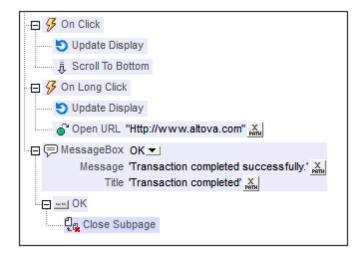




 on Click: The action/s to perform when the control is tapped (see screenshot above left).

- on Long Click: The action/s to perform when the control is pressed for a longer time than a tap (see *screenshot above center*).
- Additional actions: The action/s to perform after the on Click or On Long Click
 actions have been executed (see screenshot above right). If no action has been set
 for the On Click or On Long Click events, then the additional action/s are
 performed directly on a click or long-click.

You can combine <u>actions</u> for the different click events, for example, as shown in the screenshot below.



The screenshot above shows that the <code>On Click</code> and <code>On Long Click</code> events each has a sequence of actions defined for it. An additional <code>MessageBox</code> event is defined after the <code>On Long Click</code> event. This <code>MessageBox</code> event will be executed after the <code>On Click</code> and/or <code>On Long Click</code> sequence of actions has completed.

Image properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

▼ Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Image Source

The value of the Image Source property references an image in one of the following ways:

• The URL of a binary image file (PNG, BMP, etc). The value of the property must be a URL. The URL is selected in the Specify File dialog (see description below).

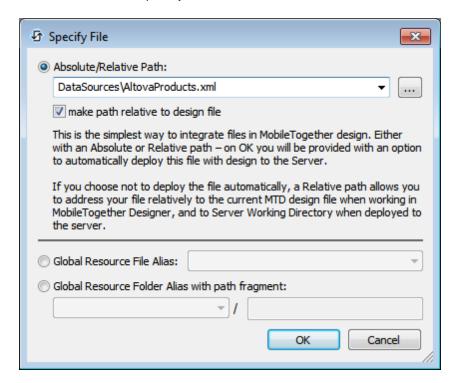
An image file represented as a Base64-encoded string. The value of the property
must be a Base64-encoded string. An XPath expression supplies the string, which
could be entered directly or obtained form an XML node.

The type of image source is provided by the property Image Source Type (see next property below). By default, Image Source Type is set to url. The Image Source property automatically opens the corresponding dialog: Specify File dialog for url (see below), and Edit XPath XQuery Expression dialog for base64 (see Base64-Encoded Images).

Note: If the image source is a URL and the URL is changed during simulation or while the solution runs, then the image must be explicitly reloaded with the <u>Reload action</u>. For example, if a combo box selection changes the selection of an image, a <u>Reload action</u> targeting the image must be defined on the combo box.

■ The Specify File dialog

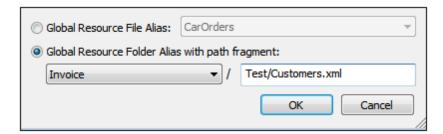
The Specify File dialog enables you to browse for a file or specify the file via a global resource. Select the option you want.



Absolute/Relative Path: You can enter a path or browse for a file. The path can
be relative to the design file, or absolute. If the file is deployed to the server
along with the design file, then the relative/absolute path specified in the dialog
will be used internally (in the server's database) to access the file. If the file is
not deployed, then it must be stored in a directory on the server. In this case:

(i) if a relative path is selected in the Specify File dialog, then, at runtime, this relative path will be resolved on the server with reference to the <u>Working Directory</u> (defined in the MobileTogether Server settings); (ii) if the path in the Specify File dialog is absolute, the file's containing folder on the server must be a descendant of the <u>Working Directory</u>. See the section <u>Location of Project Files</u> for details.

- Global Resource File Alias: Select a file alias from the file aliases available in the combo box. The available file aliases will be those currently defined in the Global Resources Definitions file. Each file alias maps to different file resources according to the currently active configuration in MobileTogether Designer (selected via the command <u>Tools | Active Configuration</u>). See the section Altova Global Resources for details.
- Global Resource Folder Alias with path fragment: Select a folder alias from the folder aliases available in the combo box (see screenshot below).



The available folder aliases will be those currently defined in the Global Resources Definitions file. Each folder alias maps to different folder resources according to the currently active configuration in MobileTogether Designer (selected via the command Tools | Active Configuration). The path fragment specifies the rest of the path to the file resource. See the section Altova Global Resources for details.

▼ Image Source Type

Sets the type of the image that is selected by the Image Source property above. Two type options are available:

- url: a binary image file, such as a PNG or BMP image file
- base64: a base64-encoded string

The default is url.

▼ Username

Sets a user name for user access to the resource. Double-click in the property's value field to edit.

Password

Sets a password for user access to the resource. Double-click in the property's value field to edit.

Create Before Load

In the combo box, select the value you want: true or false. If true, the chart or Base64 image is created before the page loads. If false, a page sources action must be used to create the chart or image. The default value is true.

▼ Embed Image

The property is enabled if Image Source Type is url. It takes either true or false. If true, then the image is embedded in the design file. The binary data of the image file (PNG, BMP, etc) is converted into text-based Base64-encoding. This text is embedded in the design file. The default value of the property is false (the file is not converted and not embedded).

Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to true() or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is true(). Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The visible property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to true(). As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

▼ Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the Browser Settings dialog) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Label

Labels are used to display information. The information displayed could be static, entered by the designer as the <code>Text</code> property of the label. Or it could be dynamic, obtained at runtime from one of the page data sources. To specify dynamic content for the label, either drag the required data node from the Page Sources Pane onto the label, or enter, as the <code>Text</code> property of the label, an XPath expression that retrieves data from nodes or calculates an output.

■ Notes

- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.

Label events

The onLabelClicked event is available. To define actions for the label's onLabelClicked event, right-click the label and, from the context menu that appears, select **Control Actions for OnLabelClicked**. This displays the Actions dialog for label events. For a description of the actions that can be defined for this event, see the <u>Actions section</u>.

▼ OnLabelClicked (OnClick, OnLongClick)

The end user can click the control in one of two ways: a short tap or a longer press. A sequence of different <u>actions</u> can be specified for each type of click. An additional sequence of <u>actions</u> can be performed after those of the end-user click. The additional sequence is defined after the On Long Click event.







- on click: The action/s to perform when the control is tapped (see screenshot above left).
- on Long Click: The action/s to perform when the control is pressed for a longer time than a tap (see screenshot above center).
- Additional actions: The action/s to perform after the On Click or On Long Click
 actions have been executed (see screenshot above right). If no action has been set
 for the On Click or On Long Click events, then the additional action/s are
 performed directly on a click or long-click.

You can combine <u>actions</u> for the different click events, for example, as shown in the screenshot below.



The screenshot above shows that the <code>On Click</code> and <code>On Long Click</code> events each has a sequence of actions defined for it. An additional <code>MessageBox</code> event is defined after the <code>On Long Click</code> event. This <code>MessageBox</code> event will be executed after the <code>On Click</code> and/or <code>On Long Click</code> sequence of actions has completed.

Label properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Text

The Text property takes as its value one of the following:

- A fixed value text string to be displayed in the control
- An XPath expression that retrieves data from a node in a data source and displays this value in the control

Double-click inside the value field to edit, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text. For some controls you can choose between the two methods of entering the property value: right-click the property and select the entry method you want from the context menu (fixed-value or XPath). For other controls, there is only one method of entering the property value.

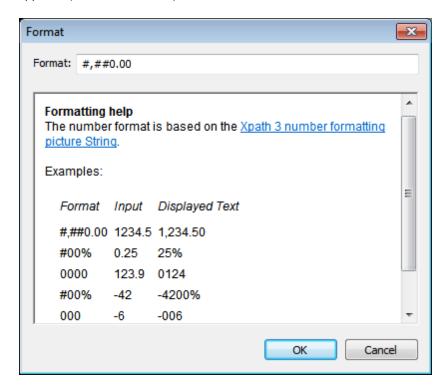
Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the generation of the value of the Text property. If used, then a validation error results.

▼ Multiline

Sets multiline input/display on or off (true/false). The default is false.

▼ Number Format String

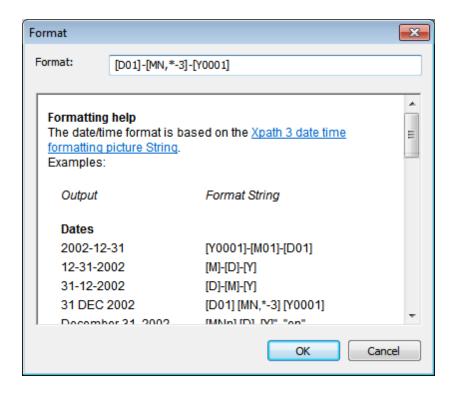
Click the **Additional Dialog** button and enter a number format in the Format dialog that appears (*screenshot below*).



The formatting will be applied to the control's content if the content is numeric, and will be displayed in the solution, not in the design.

▼ Date/Time Format String

Click the **Additional Dialog** button and enter a date, time, or date-time format in the Format dialog that appears (*screenshot below*).



The formatting will be applied to the control's content if the content has the correct lexical form of xs:date (for the Date control), xs:time (for the Time control), or xs:dateTime (for the Date, Time, and DateTime controls). Basic examples are:

xs:date: 2014-12-31xs:time: 23:59:59

xs:dateTime: 2014-12-31T23:59:59

▼ Date/Time Format Language

Select one of the supported languages from the dropdown list of the combo box (EN, DE, ES, JA). The selected language will be used in the date/time formatting that is set in the Date/
Time Format String property (see description above). If the names of months and weekdays are used in the format string, then these will be displayed in the language selected for this property. The default language is English.

▼ Control Action

Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the control's <u>Actions dialog</u>. You can set actions to perform when a <u>control event</u> is triggered. The control's events are predefined and are each shown in a tab in the right-hand pane of the <u>Actions dialog</u>. A library of actions is displayed in the left-hand pane. You can drag an action from the left-hand pane into an event's tab and then define the properties of the action. For each event, multiple actions can be set up. They will be executed in the order in which they occur, from top to bottom.

After defining a control's actions, you can access and edit them at any time by clicking the **Additional Dialog** button.

Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to <code>true()</code> or <code>false()</code>. If the expression evaluates to <code>false()</code>—and only if it evaluates to <code>false()</code>—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to <code>true()</code> or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is <code>true()</code>. Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The <code>Visible</code> property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to <code>true()</code>. As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The **SMTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Enabled/Editable

The control is either enabled or disabled, according to whether the value of the property is true (enabled) or false (disabled). The value can be entered directly (by selecting it in the combo box or by double-clicking in the value field and entering the value you want). The value can also be an XPath expression that evaluates to boolean true or false. The default value is true. Typically the XPath expression of the Enabled/Editable property of a control would check the presence or value of a node. If the expression evaluates to true, the control will be enabled.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Text Size

Select a size from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a text size.

▼ Bold Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Italic Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Underline Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required

text

▼ Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

▼ Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the Browser Settings dialog) to assign properties specifically for this control.

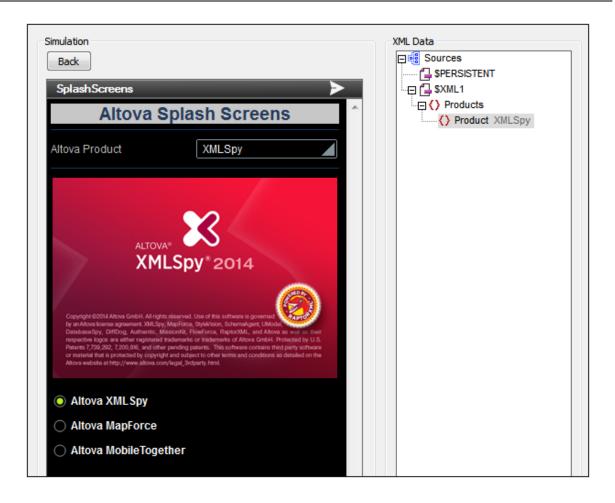
Radio Button

Radio buttons can be used to constrain the user to select one of a set of specific values. Each radio button is associated with one specific value. A set of radio buttons are grouped into a mutually exclusive set by associating all of them with a single data source node. By "mutually exclusive" is meant that the user is constrained to select only one radio button from the set. The value of the radio button that is selected will be entered into the associated data source node. When you insert a radio button control, you can specify whether the radio button should be to the left or right of the button text, or in the default system position.

For example, in the screenshot below, all three radio buttons are associated with one XML data source node: an element called Product. This creates a set of mutually exclusive radio buttons for the Product node. Each radio button is given a value through its Checked Values property. The button text is the value of the button's Text property.



When the solution is run, all three radio buttons are initially displayed empty (see screenshot below). When the user selects a radio button, that button's checked value is passed to the associated node (the Product element; see the XML Data tree in the screenshot below).



Two key properties of the radio button are:

- The text that accompanies the radio box. This can be static text (entered as the value of the Text property; see below) or a dynamic value obtained via an XPath expression.
- The checked value of the radio button is assigned with the Checked Values property (see below).

Radio buttons have the OnFinishEditing event, which is triggered when the end-user selects the radio button. To define an action for this event, click the **Additional Dialog** button of the Control Action property. This displays the Control Actions dialog, in which you can specify the required action.

■ Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), right-

click the control (in Page Design View) and click Delete Page Source Link.

- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an external CSS file. Those defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> have priority.

Radio Button events

The <u>onFinishEditing event</u> is available. For a description of the actions that can be defined for this event, see the Actions section.

Radio button properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Text

The Text property takes as its value one of the following:

- A fixed value text string to be displayed in the control
- An XPath expression that retrieves data from a node in a data source and displays this value in the control

Double-click inside the value field to edit, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text. For some controls you can choose between the two methods of entering the property value: right-click the property and select the entry method you want from the context menu (fixed-value or XPath). For other controls, there is only one method of entering the property value.

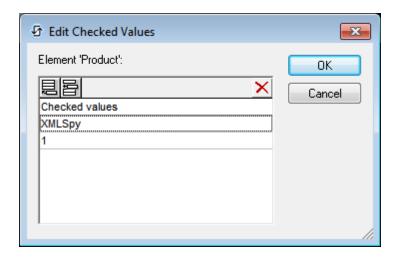
Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the generation of the value of the Text property. If used, then a validation error results.

▼ Multiline

Sets multiline input/display on or off (true/false). The default is false.

Checked Values

Provides an XML data value for the selected state of the control. Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the Edit Checked Values dialog (*screenshots below*). Enter a value for the checked (selected) state. If the radio button is selected by the end-user, the first value of the list will be entered as data in the XML node associated with the control.



▼ Get Value From XPath

The value returned by the XPath expression is displayed in the control. This enables alternative ways to enter display values for certain controls. For example, a combo box could take its display value from either a page source node or the return value of the Get Value From XPath property.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the generation of the value of the Get Value From XPath property. If used, then a validation error results.

Auto Correct Value

The control has two states: checked and unchecked, each of which is associated with at least one XML value. These XML values are defined in the Checked Values property.

The Auto Correct Value property has two possible values: true or false. If the property is set to true, XML values are automatically corrected to the values defined for the checked and unchecked states in the Checked Values property. For example, if the checked value has an XML value of child and the unchecked value has an XML value of adult, then, if the control is checked, the XML value will be corrected to child in case something else is entered. If the control is unchecked, the XML value will be adult. If there is more than one XML value assigned to the checked state, then the first XML value is used for the correction. A correction would be necessary, for example, if the control is associated with a node having content that is not a legitimate XML value for the current state of the control. The property's default value is false.

Check Mark Position

Sets the position of the check box relative to the control's text: either to the left or right of the text. The default is the operating system default.

Control Action

Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the control's <u>Actions dialog</u>. You can set actions to perform when a <u>control event</u> is triggered. The control's events are predefined and are each shown in a tab in the right-hand pane of the <u>Actions dialog</u>. A library of actions is displayed in the left-hand pane. You can drag an action from the left-hand pane into an event's tab and then define the properties of the action. For each event, multiple actions can be set up. They will be executed in the order in which they occur, from top to bottom.

After defining a control's actions, you can access and edit them at any time by clicking the **Additional Dialog** button.

Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to true() or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is true(). Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The visible property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to true(). As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Enabled/Editable

The control is either enabled or disabled, according to whether the value of the property is true (enabled) or false (disabled). The value can be entered directly (by selecting it in the combo box or by double-clicking in the value field and entering the value you want). The value can also be an XPath expression that evaluates to boolean true or false. The default value is true. Typically the XPath expression of the Enabled/Editable property of a control would check the presence or value of a node. If the expression evaluates to true, the control will be enabled.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Text Size

Select a size from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a text size.

▼ Bold Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Italic Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Underline Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

▼ Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the Browser Settings dialog) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Signature Field

The Signature Field control enables the signature of an end user to be stored as a graphic file. This is useful, for example, in courier-business solutions, where signatures are used to acknowledge receipt of a couriered item. As the end user starts drawing his signature in the signature field, the signature is written in Base64 image encoding to a data source node. When the data source is saved, the Base64 image data is saved in it, in the node designated for it.

The signature image has the following default properties. Its background-color is the inverse of the page background-color. The signature itself is the same color as the page background-color. The image width is the smaller of the device's viewport dimensions. The image height is half of its width. How these values are calculated with XPath expressions is shown in the table below, together with the control properties you can use to customize these settings.

Signature property	Default value	Custom value via control property
Signature color	\$MT_PageBackgroundColor	Text Color
Signature background-color	<pre>mt-invert-color (\$MT_PageBackgroundColor)</pre>	Background Color
Signature image width	min (\$MT_CanvasX, \$MT_CanvasY)	Signature Creation Width
Signature image height	min (\$MT_CanvasX, \$MT_CanvasY) div 2	Signature Creation Height

The main settings for the signature field are:

- a page source link, which is the data source node where the signature image data is stored. Drag a data source node onto the control to create/modify the control's page source link. Delete the page source link to clear the association (see *Notes* below).
- the Signature Creation Width and Signature Creation Height properties; these specify the dimensions of the image that will be created
- the Text Color and Background Color properties; these specify the colors of the signature text and its background
- some Save action that saves the signature image data to the data source; till such an action is executed, the data is stored only in the temporary XML tree

■ Notes

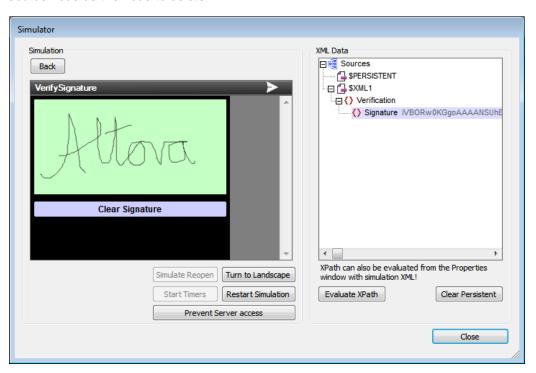
- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in <u>Page Design View</u>) and click **Delete Page Source Link**.
- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.

- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the <u>pane's toolbar</u>.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the Styles & Properties Pane and/or in an external CSS file. Those defined in the Styles & Properties Pane have priority.

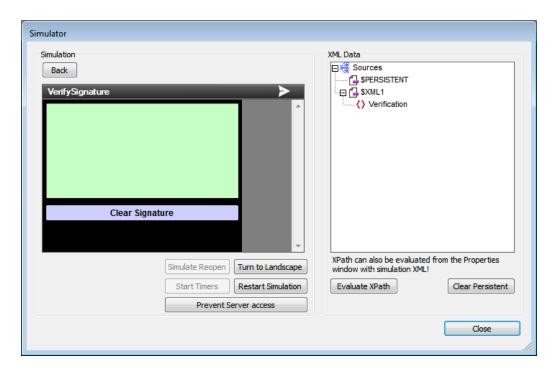
Enabling the end user to edit a signature

The end user's signature is created as an image in a page source node. This being the case, an end user can only add data to a signature drawing that has been started. If the image needs to be edited—for example, if the end user has drawn the signature unsatisfactorily—then the image data must be removed from the node (or the node itself must be deleted), and the signature must be re-drawn. The simplest way to implement this functionality is to create a button control that deletes the node. Do this as follows:

- 1. Create a button control near the signature field control (see screenshot below).
- 2. Add a <u>Delete Node</u> action as the button's <code>onclick</code> event, and set the signature's page source node as the node to delete.



3. Test the button in a simulation. In the screenshot above, notice that the signature is drawn and the image data is saved to the signature node. The screenshot below was taken after the button was clicked. Notice that the node has been deleted and the signature field has therefore been cleared.



4. If a signature is now drawn in the signature field, then the Signature node is re-created with the image data of the new signature.

Note: Alternatively, you can set the button action to update the signature's page source node with the empty string (see the <u>Update Node</u> action). This would delete the image data from the node and therefore clear the signature field, but the node itself would not be deleted.

Signature Field events

There is no event associated with the Signature Filed control.

Signature Field properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression

evaluates to $\mathtt{true}()$ or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is $\mathtt{true}()$. Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The $\mathtt{Visible}$ property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to $\mathtt{true}()$. As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The **SMTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Enabled/Editable

The control is either enabled or disabled, according to whether the value of the property is true (enabled) or false (disabled). The value can be entered directly (by selecting it in the combo box or by double-clicking in the value field and entering the value you want). The value can also be an XPath expression that evaluates to boolean true or false. The default value is true. Typically the XPath expression of the Enabled/Editable property of a control would check the presence or value of a node. If the expression evaluates to true, the control will be enabled.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

Image Anti-Aliasing

Defines whether anti-aliasing is used when the image associated with the control is created. (Anti-aliasing is a technique for removing the jagged edges in images.) The property can take a value of true or false. The default is false. Tip: If image colors are going to be converted subsequently, it is advisable to set the property's value to false. This is because anti-aliasing color information in the original image cannot reliably be converted to suitable anti-aliasing colors in the target color scheme. Note: For web clients, the value of this property is ignored, and anti-aliasing is always in effect.

▼ Signature Creation Width

A number, in pixels, that specifies the width of the signature image. It is the width of the canvas on which the signature is drawn. For example, a value of 400 will assign a width of 400 pixels to the signature image. Note that this is the width of the image that is created, and is not necessarily that of the image rendered on the mobile device. The rendered image

is scaled to the width defined in the control width property. For example, if the signature image has a width of 400 pixels, and the Control width property has a value of 80%, then, on a device that has a width of 1000 pixels, the image will scale up to a width of 800 pixels (80% of the device width).

Signature Creation Height

A number, in pixels, that specifies the height of the signature image. It is the height of the canvas on which the signature is drawn. For example, a value of 200 will assign a height of 200 pixels to the signature image. Note that this is the height of the image that is created; it is not necessarily the height of the image rendered on the mobile device. The height of the rendered image is scaled proportionally to the width defined in the control width property. For example, if the signature image has a height of 300 pixels and a width of 400 pixels, and the control width property has a value of 80%, then, on a device that has a width of 1000 pixels, the image will scale up to a width of 800 pixels (80% of the device width) and to a height of 600 pixels (which maintains the image's aspect ratio).

Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

Control Height

Sets the height of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as high as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as high as the control's content requires.

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum height, while wrap_content creates a minimum height. The default is wrap_content for all controls.

▼ Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Space

The Space control enables you to add vertical space to the design. This is useful if you wish to have precise control over the space between design components.

Notes

- To reset a style or property (in the Styles & Properties Pane), select the property and click Reset in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.

Space events

There is no event associated with the Space control.

Space properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Space Height

Sets the height in pixels of the selected space object. Select a height value (in pixels) from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a numeric value. The numeric value is understood to be a pixel value. For this reason, no unit should be specified.

Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to true() or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is true(). Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The visible property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to true(). As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: **LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo**. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the <u>Browser Settings dialog</u>) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Switch

A switch is associated with a data source node. The end user can choose between two states: selected or unselected. Depending on which state is chosen, a corresponding XML value is entered as content of the associated node. The values corresponding to the respective states (selected or unselected) are defined in the Checked Values (true/false) property (see property description below). A typical use case would be: first, let the end-user's switch selection determine the content of a node; second, let the content of this node determine a page action, such as, whether a control is enabled/editable.

■ Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in Page Design View) and click Delete Page Source Link.
- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an <u>external CSS file</u>. Those defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> have priority.

Switch events

The <u>onFinishEditing event</u> is available. For a description of the actions that can be defined for this event, see the <u>Actions section</u>.

Switch properties

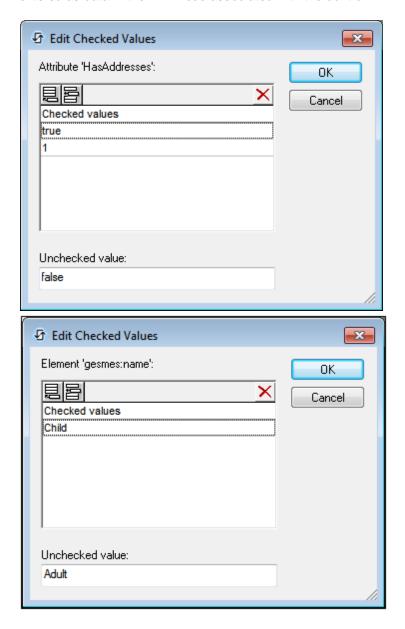
The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

Checked Values (true/false)

Provides an XML data value for the selected/unselected state of the control. Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the Edit Checked Values dialog (*screenshots below*). Enter a value for the checked (selected) and unchecked (unselected) state. The value corresponding to the control state (selected/unselected) chosen by the end-user will be entered as data in the XML node associated with the control.



▼ Get Value From XPath

The value returned by the XPath expression is displayed in the control. This enables alternative ways to enter display values for certain controls. For example, a combo box could take its display value from either a page source node or the return value of the Get Value From XPath property.

Note: The *MTControlValue variable is not available for the generation of the value of the Get Value From XPath property. If used, then a validation error results.

▼ Auto Correct Value

The control has two states: checked and unchecked, each of which is associated with at least one XML value. These XML values are defined in the Checked Values property.

The Auto Correct Value property has two possible values: true or false. If the property is set to true, XML values are automatically corrected to the values defined for the checked and unchecked states in the Checked Values property. For example, if the checked value has an XML value of child and the unchecked value has an XML value of adult, then, if the control is checked, the XML value will be corrected to child in case something else is entered. If the control is unchecked, the XML value will be adult. If there is more than one XML value assigned to the checked state, then the first XML value is used for the correction. A correction would be necessary, for example, if the control is associated with a node having content that is not a legitimate XML value for the current state of the control. The property's default value is false.

Toggle On Text

Sets the text that appears in the control when the control is toggled on. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Toggle Off Text

Sets the text that appears in the control when the control is toggled off. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Control Action

Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the control's <u>Actions dialog</u>. You can set actions to perform when a <u>control event</u> is triggered. The control's events are predefined and are each shown in a tab in the right-hand pane of the <u>Actions dialog</u>. A library of actions is displayed in the left-hand pane. You can drag an action from the left-hand pane into an event's tab and then define the properties of the action. For each event, multiple actions can be set up. They will be executed in the order in which they occur, from top to bottom.

After defining a control's actions, you can access and edit them at any time by clicking the **Additional Dialog** button.

▼ Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to true() or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is true(). Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The visible property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to true(). As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Enabled/Editable

The control is either enabled or disabled, according to whether the value of the property is true (enabled) or false (disabled). The value can be entered directly (by selecting it in the combo box or by double-clicking in the value field and entering the value you want). The value can also be an XPath expression that evaluates to boolean true or false. The default value is true. Typically the XPath expression of the Enabled/Editable property of a control would check the presence or value of a node. If the expression evaluates to true, the control will be enabled.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Text Size

Select a size from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a text size.

▼ Bold Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Italic Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Underline Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum

width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

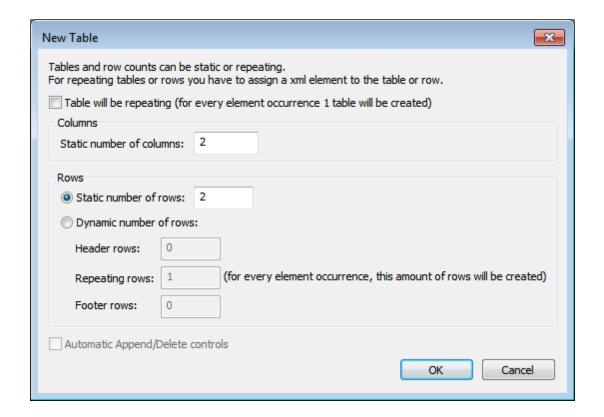
The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the <u>Browser Settings dialog</u>) to assign properties specifically for this control.

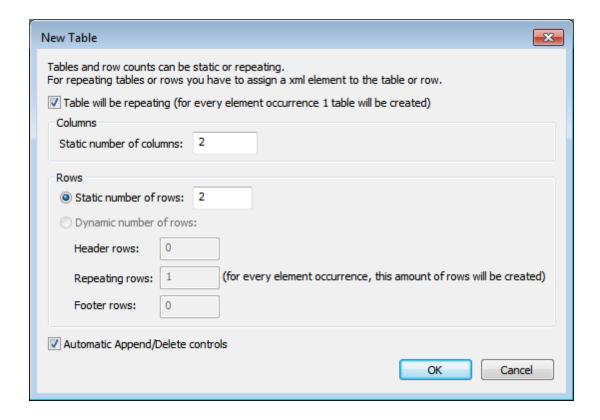
Table

The Table control inserts a <u>static table</u>, <u>repeating table</u>, or <u>dynamic table</u> in the design. On dropping the control in the design, the New Table dialog (*screenshots below*) appears.

If you specify a static number of columns and rows (screenshot below left), a static table is created.

- A <u>repeating table</u> is one in which a new table is created for every occurrence of the
 element that is associated with the table. To create a <u>repeating table</u>, select the <u>Table</u>
 will be repeating check box. Each instance of the element that repeats is created as a
 new table. The number of columns and rows are specified as static numbers (see
 screenshot below right).
- In a <u>dynamic table</u>, it is not the entire table, but a table row group, that repeats. To create a <u>dynamic table</u>, ensure that the *Table will be repeating* check box is unselected, and then select the Dynamic number of rows radio button. Each instance of the element that repeats is created as a user-specified number of rows. The number of columns is fixed (static).





Repeating and dynamic tables can also have Append/Delete controls automatically added. If added, each instance of a repeating element will have a Delete control next to it. This allows the end user to delete this instance of the element. Depending on whether each instance of the repeating element is created as a table (in repeating tables) or a row (in dynamic tables), the Add control enables a new table or row (and hence an instance of the corresponding element) to be added.

The cells of the table (both static and dynamic) can contain the following:

- A nested table (static or dynamic)
- A page control
- A node from a data source

Table formatting properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and in the context menu of the table.

Notes

- To reset a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the property and click **Reset** in the <u>pane's toolbar</u>.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the <u>pane's toolbar</u>.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.

Table events

There is no event associated with the Table control.

Table properties

The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Table Cell

Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

Table Column

▼ Width

Sets the width of the object. Select fill_parent or wrap_content or a percentage value from the dropdown list of the combo box. Percentage values are percentages of the parent object.

▼ Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to $\mathtt{true}()$ or $\mathtt{false}()$. If the expression evaluates to $\mathtt{false}()$ —and only if it evaluates to $\mathtt{false}()$ —is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to $\mathtt{true}()$ or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is $\mathtt{true}()$. Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The $\mathtt{visible}$ property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to $\mathtt{true}()$. As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The smtcontrolvalue variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

Table Row

▼ Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to true() or false(). If the expression evaluates to false()—and only if it evaluates to false()—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to true() or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is true(). Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an

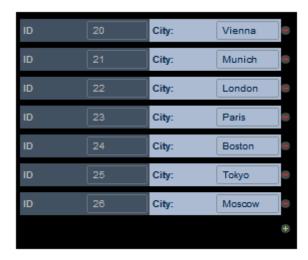
XPath expression. The <code>visible</code> property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to <code>true()</code>. As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

Table Row Group

▼ Automatic Append/Delete Controls

Automatically adds append/delete controls to display structures. The **Append** button in a solution appends another occurrence of the repeating structure. The **Delete** button in a solution is available for each occurrence of a repeating structure, and deletes that occurrence. The screenshot below shows these buttons in the repeating table structure of a solution.



This property defines whether the **Append** and **Delete** buttons are automatically added to the design. The property can have values of true and false. The value can be changed at any time.

▼ Create For Each Item In

Sets the number of times the table repeats to the number of items returned by the property's XPath expression.

The XPath expression can select a repeating node in a data tree. This is useful if you want the table to be generated as many times as a certain node occurs and want to set the number of these repeats dynamically. In this way, if the number of the selected node's occurrences changes, then the number of table repeats is automatically modified. For example, if the property's XPath expression is \$XML1/Office/Department, then the number of times that the table is generated will be equal to the number of \$XML1/Office/Department elements.

The XPath expression can also be unrelated to a data tree. In this event, the table is created once for each item in the returned sequence. For example:

• 9 times for the expression 1 to 9

- 2 times for "John", "Mary"
- 2 times for 45, true()

▼ Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to <code>true()</code> or <code>false()</code>. If the expression evaluates to <code>false()</code>—and only if it evaluates to <code>false()</code>—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to <code>true()</code> or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is <code>true()</code>. Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The <code>visible</code> property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to <code>true()</code>. As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The **SMTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

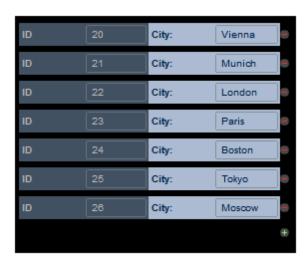
Table

Repeating

Defines whether the table is <u>repeating</u> or <u>static</u>. Its values are true or false. The value of this property is automatically assigned at the time a repeating (=true) or static table (=false) is created. After a table has been created as a particular type (repeating or static), its type can be changed by changing the value of the <u>Repeating</u> property. The <u>Repeating</u> property is not available for <u>dynamic tables</u>.

▼ Automatic Append/Delete Controls

Automatically adds append/delete controls to display structures. The **Append** button in a solution appends another occurrence of the repeating structure. The **Delete** button in a solution is available for each occurrence of a repeating structure, and deletes that occurrence. The screenshot below shows these buttons in the repeating table structure of a solution.



This property defines whether the **Append** and **Delete** buttons are automatically added to the design. The property can have values of true and false. The value can be changed at any time.

Create For Each Item In

Sets the number of times the table repeats to the number of items returned by the property's XPath expression.

The XPath expression can select a repeating node in a data tree. This is useful if you want the table to be generated as many times as a certain node occurs and want to set the number of these repeats dynamically. In this way, if the number of the selected node's occurrences changes, then the number of table repeats is automatically modified. For example, if the property's XPath expression is <code>\$XMLI/Office/Department</code>, then the number of times that the table is generated will be equal to the number of <code>\$XMLI/Office/Department</code> elements.

The XPath expression can also be unrelated to a data tree. In this event, the table is created once for each item in the returned sequence. For example:

- 9 times for the expression 1 to 9
- 2 times for "John", "Mary"
- 2 times for 45, true()

▼ Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to <code>true()</code> or <code>false()</code>. If the expression evaluates to <code>false()</code>—and only if it evaluates to <code>false()</code>—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to <code>true()</code> or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is <code>true()</code>. Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The <code>Visible</code> property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to <code>true()</code>. As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the Browser Settings dialog) to assign properties specifically for this control.

Time

Time controls are used to format times obtained from a node in a data source. This is useful if you wish to format times in a special way. The formatting is defined in the Date/Time Format String property (see below for details). Note that the source node content must be in the correct lexical format as defined by the XSD specification: HH:MM:SS. Optional timezone and millisecond parts are allowed.

■ Notes

- When the control is associated with a data source node (page source link), placing the mouse over the control (in Page Design View) displays the associated node in a popup.
- All page source links in the data source tree are displayed in a bold font. Tree nodes that are not page source links are displayed in normal font.
- Placing the mouse over the page source link in the design tree displays information about the associated control.
- To remove a data-source node association (and therefore the data in the control), rightclick the control (in Page Design View) and click Delete Page Source Link.
- To reset a style or property (in the Styles & Properties Pane), select the property and click Reset in the pane's toolbar.
- To edit the XPath expression of a style or property (in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>), select the style or property, and click **Edit XPath** in the pane's toolbar.
- To copy a control to another location in the design, press Ctrl and drag-and-drop the control to the desired copy location.
- To assign specific properties for a control, define one or more classes for the control (via the Browser CSS Class property), and then assign rules for the class/es in an external CSS file (that you specify in the Browser Settings dialog).
- A control's CSS properties can be defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> and/or in an external CSS file. Those defined in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u> have priority.

Time (control) events

The <u>onFinishEditing event</u> is available. For a description of the actions that can be defined for this event, see the <u>Actions section</u>.

Time properties

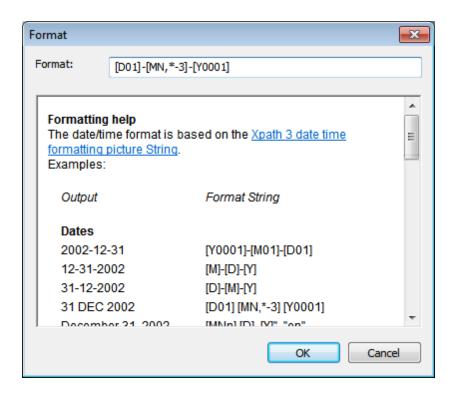
The control's properties are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, and are listed below in the order in which they appear.

Name

The name is used to reference the control from elsewhere in the page or project. Double-click inside the value field to edit.

▼ Date/Time Format String

Click the **Additional Dialog** button and enter a date, time, or date-time format in the Format dialog that appears (*screenshot below*).



The formatting will be applied to the control's content if the content has the correct lexical form of xs:date (for the Date control), xs:time (for the Time control), or xs:dateTime (for the Date, Time, and DateTime controls). Basic examples are:

xs:date: 2014-12-31xs:time: 23:59:59

• xs:dateTime: 2014-12-31T23:59:59

▼ Control Action

Click the **Additional Dialog** button to display the control's <u>Actions dialog</u>. You can set actions to perform when a <u>control event</u> is triggered. The control's events are predefined and are each shown in a tab in the right-hand pane of the <u>Actions dialog</u>. A library of actions is displayed in the left-hand pane. You can drag an action from the left-hand pane into an event's tab and then define the properties of the action. For each event, multiple actions can be set up. They will be executed in the order in which they occur, from top to bottom.

After defining a control's actions, you can access and edit them at any time by clicking the **Additional Dialog** button.

Visible

An XPath expression that should evaluate to <code>true()</code> or <code>false()</code>. If the expression evaluates to <code>false()</code>—and only if it evaluates to <code>false()</code>—is the control not visible. If the expression evaluates to <code>true()</code> or returns some other value, then the control is visible. The default is <code>true()</code>. Double-click inside the value field, or click the **XPath** button, to enter or edit an XPath expression. The <code>Visible</code> property can be used to render an object visible or not depending upon whether an XPath expression evaluates to <code>true()</code>. As a result, the display of an object can be made to be dynamically dependent on the content or structure of data.

Note: The ***MTControlValue** variable is **not** available for the evaluation of the Visible property. If it is used, then a validation error results.

▼ Enabled/Editable

The control is either enabled or disabled, according to whether the value of the property is true (enabled) or false (disabled). The value can be entered directly (by selecting it in the combo box or by double-clicking in the value field and entering the value you want). The value can also be an XPath expression that evaluates to boolean true or false. The default value is true. Typically the XPath expression of the Enabled/Editable property of a control would check the presence or value of a node. If the expression evaluates to true, the control will be enabled.

Assertion

Sets a condition to be met for the control to be valid. If the assertion is invalid, then the text of the Assertion Message property (see below) is displayed in the Assertion Message control. (If there are multiple Assertion Message controls, then all these controls will display the text of the Assertion Message property.) Click the property's XPath icon to enter an XPath expression that defines the assertion. For example: The XPath expression LastName I = "" asserts that the node LastName must not be empty. If this node is empty, then the control's assertion message is displayed in the Assertion Message control of the page.

Note that other controls and the page can also have assertions. If there are multiple invalid assertions on a page, then the assertion message of the first invalid assertion is displayed. Control assertions are evaluated before page assertions, and control assertions are evaluated in the order in which they occur in the design.

Assertion Message

Sets the assertion message to be displayed if the control's assertion is not valid. Double-click inside the value field of the property to edit the assertion message, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text. The assertion message is displayed in the <u>Assertion Message</u> control. For example: If the XPath expression of a control's assertion is <u>LastName != ""</u>, then it asserts that the node LastName must not be empty. If this node is empty, then the assertion message of the control is displayed in the <u>Assertion Message</u> control of the page.

Note that assertions can also be defined for other controls and the page. So it can happen that there are multiple invalid assertions on a page. If this happens, then the assertion message of the first invalid assertion (in the sequence in which assertions appear on the page) is displayed. Control assertions are evaluated before page assertions, and control assertions are evaluated in the order in which they occur in the design.

▼ Text Color

Sets the color of the control's text. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a text color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

Page Design Controls 313

▼ Text Size

Select a size from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a text size.

▼ Bold Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Italic Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Underline Text

Select true or false from the dropdown list of the combo box. Default is false.

▼ Background Color

Sets the background color of the object. You can do one of the following to select the color:

- Click the color palette to select a background color
- Select a color from the dropdown list of the combo box
- Double-click in the value field to enter a color code (for example, #FF0000), or click the XPath toolbar button and enter an XPath expression to generate the required text

▼ Hint

Provides a textual hint to the end-user. For example, the hint could be about an action that the end-user has to carry out by using the control. Double-click inside the value field of the property to edit the textual hint, or click the **XPath** toolbar button and enter an **XPath** expression to generate the required text.

▼ Control Width

Sets the width of the control. Select a value from the property's combo box. The following values are available:

- fill_parent: makes the control as wide as the parent, which could be, for example, a table cell or the page
- wrap_content: makes the control only as wide as the control's content requires.
- percent value: a percentage of the page width; select a value from the dropdown list, or enter a value directly

In effect, fill_parent creates a maximum width, while wrap_content creates a minimum width. The default is fill_parent for all controls except the Image and Chart controls. For these, the default is wrap_content.

▼ Margin

Sets the control's margin offsets relative to the surrounding objects or to the borders of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

314 Page Design Controls

▼ Margin Left

Sets the control's left margin offset relative to the object to the left or to the left border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

Margin Right

Sets the control's right margin offset relative to the object to the right or to the right border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Top

Sets the control's top margin offset relative to the object above it or to the top border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Margin Bottom

Sets the control's bottom margin offset relative to the object below it or to the bottom border of the containing object. Select a value in pixels from the dropdown list of the combo box, or double-click in the value field to enter a pixel length.

▼ Browser CSS Class

The name of one or more CSS classes that you want to associate with this control. Use a space to assign multiple classes: LabelClassOne LabelClassTwo. These classes can then be used in a CSS file (specified in the <u>Browser Settings dialog</u>) to assign properties specifically for this control.

8.3 Events

Events can occur at the page level and the control level. For each event, a range of actions is available. For example, when a page is reloaded, a message can be displayed, or when a button control is clicked, an XML tree node can be updated. This section describes how to work with events and actions, and is organized into the following sub-sections:

- Page Events: describes what page events are and how actions for them can be defined
- Control Events: describes what control events are and how actions for them can be defined

Page Events

Each page in a MobileTogether design has certain predefined **events** associated with it, for each of which actions can be defined:

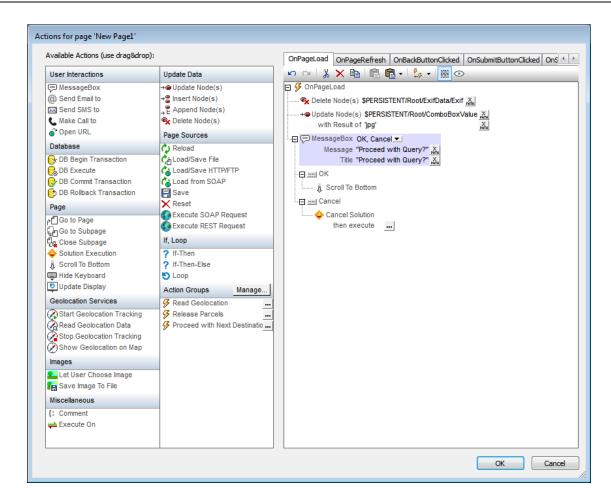
- OnPageLoad: Actions to execute when the page is loaded.
- OnPageRefresh: Click the page refresh option/s for which you want to create actions, and then create the actions under the respective option/s. See the <u>Page Refresh</u> section for details.
- OnBackButtonClicked: Actions to execute when the Back button of the solution is tapped/clicked.
- OnSubmitButtonClicked: Actions to execute when the **Submit** button of the solution is tapped/clicked.
- OnServerConnectionError: Actions to execute when the server cannot be reached. The
 error could occur while making the initial connection, or when the connection is lost. Use
 the MT_ServerConnectionErrorLocation variable to debug such errors. For an overview
 of how this event can be used, see the section Server Connection Errors.

These events are called **page events** (as opposed to <u>control events</u>), and each can have one or more <u>actions</u> (<u>page actions</u>). When a page event is triggered, the page action that is defined for it is carried out. The <code>OnPageLoad</code> and <code>OnPageRefresh</code> events are available for all pages. The **Submit** button appears for all <u>Top Pages</u> if it's not turned off in the <u>Page Properties</u>, so such pages can have an <code>OnSubmitButtonClicked</code> event.

Defining the action to perform when a page event is triggered

The actions to be carried out when a page event is triggered are defined in the <u>Actions dialog</u> (screenshot below). This dialog is accessed in one of the following ways:

- Click Page | Page Actions
- Right-click anywhere in the page, and select Page Actions
- In the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, go to the *Page* section. and click the **Additional Dialog** button of the Page Actions property
- Click <u>Page | Actions Overview</u> to display the <u>Actions Overview dialog</u>. Then click the Additional Dialog button of the page event you want to define



Defining page actions

To define what page action is carried out when a page event is triggered, drag the desired page action from the left-hand pane into the event tab in the right-hand pane. For more information about the Page Actions dialog and on the different types of available page actions, see the section Actions.

Control Events

Most of the controls used in page designs have predefined **events** associated with them (see *table below*). For example a button control has an <code>OnButtonClicked</code> event associated with it. These events are called **control events**, and each can have an <u>action (a control action)</u> defined for it. When a control event is triggered while a MobileTogether solution is being executed, the control action that has been defined for the event is carried out.

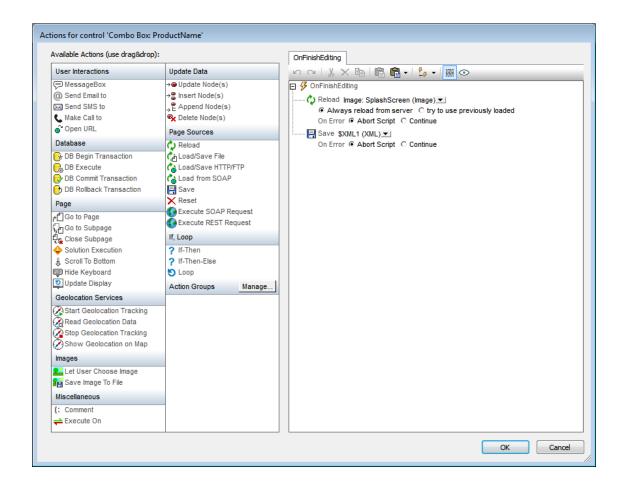
The table below lists controls and their events.

Control	Event
Assertion Message	- none -
Button	OnButtonClicked
Chart	OnChartClicked
Check box	OnFinishEditing
Combo box	OnFinishEditing
Date	OnFinishEditing
DateTime (iOS)	OnFinishEditing
Edit field	OnTyping
Horizontal Line	- none -
Image	OnImageClicked
Label	OnLabelClicked
Radio button	OnFinishEditing
Space	- none -
Switch	OnFinishEditing
Table	- none -
Time	OnFinishEditing

Defining the action to perform when a control event is triggered

The actions to be carried out when a control event is triggered are defined in the <u>Actions dialog</u> (see screenshot below). This dialog is accessed in one of the following ways:

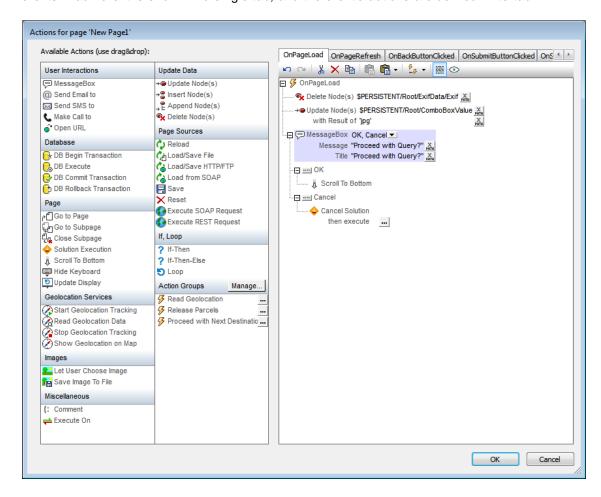
- Right-click the control, and select Control Actions for ...
- In the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, click the **Additional Dialog** button of the Control Action property
- Click <u>Page | Actions Overview</u> to display the <u>Actions Overview dialog</u>. Then click the Additional Dialog button of the control event you want to define.



To define what control action is carried out when a control event is triggered, drag the desired control action from the left-hand pane into the event tab in the right-hand pane. For more information about the <u>Actions dialog</u> and on the different types of available control actions, see the section <u>Actions</u>.

8.4 Actions

Actions can be defined for <u>control events</u> and <u>page events</u>. Actions for both kinds of events are defined in the Actions dialog (see screenshot below). The left-hand pane contains the available actions grouped according to functionality. The right-hand pane contains the page or control events. Each event is shown in a single tab, and the event's actions are defined in its tab.



To define a certain action for the selected event, drag the action from the left-hand pane into the event tab. Alternatively, you can add an action via the <u>Add Action</u> icon of the <u>Event Pane toolbar</u>. If an action requires further definitions—such as selecting an entry from a combo box, or entering an XPath expression (see screenshot above)—then complete these steps.



Add Action icon

You can also define **multiple actions** for an event and add **child actions** to an action. In the screenshot above, for example, there are three actions defined for the OnPageLoad event, and the Cancel option triggers the End Solution action. Click **OK** when you have finished defining the control or page action/s. If there are multiple actions on the same level, then they are performed in the order in which they are defined.

The following keyboard shortcuts are available:

Shortcut	What's selected in the event pane	Result
Ctrl+double-click an action	Main event (e.g OnLabelClicked)	Action added as last action of the event
	Sub-event (e.g OnClick, On LongClick)	None
	Action	Double-clicked action added as next action
Alt+double-click an action	Main event (e.g OnLabelClicked)	Action added as last action of first sub-event
	Sub-event (e.g OnClick, On LongClick)	Action added as last action of sub- event
	Action	None

Action handling

Some actions are executed on the server (generating charts, loading non-embedded files, etc) and some are executed on the client (message boxes, sending an SMS, etc). Therefore, in order to improve performance, the order of actions should be defined so as to minimize switching between server and client for processing.

Disabling an action

You can temporarily disable any individual action that is defined for an event. A disabled action is ignored, and processing continues as if the disabled action is not defined. To disable an action, right-click it in the definition of the event's actions and select **Disable Action**. This command is a toggle command, so selecting it once more will enable the action again.

Event pane toolbar

The Event Pane toolbar (screenshot below) offers the following commands, starting from the left:



- Undo, Redo: Undoes and redoes your Event Pane edits
- Cut, Delete: Deletes the selected item in the Event Pane. Cut additionally puts the selected item on the clipboard
- Copy: Copies the selected item to the clipboard
- Paste, Append Clipboard Contents: Pastes the clipboard contents relative to the selected location
- Add Action: Drops down a list of available actions that can be placed before, after, or as a

child of the selected item in the Events Pane

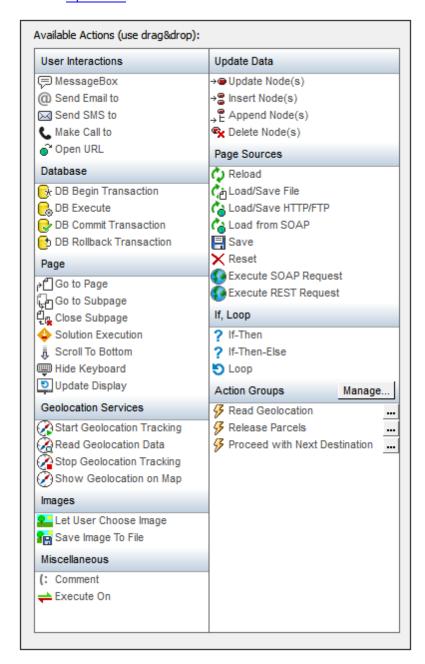
• Show Statements Multiline: Toggles on/off multiline display of statements, such as XPath expressions

• Hide Rarely Used Options: Toggles on/off the display of options that are rarely used

User Interactions

The following actions are available in the User Interactions group of the Actions dialog (*screenshot below*):

- Message Box
- Send Email To
- Send SMS To
- Make Call To
- Open URL

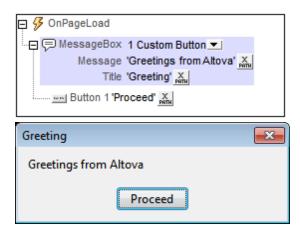


The actions in this group are available for page events and control events. The fastest way to access the Actions dialog (*screenshot above*) is to right-click the page or control and select the

page/control actions command. See also <u>Page Events</u> and <u>Control Events</u>.

Message Box

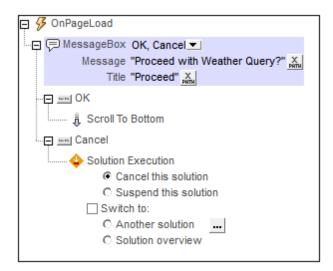
Defines a message box that is displayed when the event is triggered. The combo box enables you to select the buttons that appear in the message box. Predefined buttons are OK, Yes, No, Cancel. You can also define from one to three custom buttons. The text of custom buttons is specified in an XPath expression (for example, in the screenshot below left it is: "Proceed").



The screenshots above show a message box (*right*) and its definition (*left*). The definition is for a message box with a custom button. Notice how the title, message, and button text are defined.

Message boxes with multiple user options

A message box can offer the user multiple options. This is done in the form of multiple buttons, each of which is linked to its own action. For example, in the screenshot below, two buttons, ok and Cancel, are defined by selecting them in the combo box. The buttons are automatically displayed in a hierarchical tree as child objects of MessageBox. Each button can then have actions assigned to them (see screenshot). These actions are carried out when the button is pressed by the user. For example, if the Cancel button defined in the screenshot below is clicked, then the End Solution action is carried out.



Send Email To

Sends an email from the email application on the mobile device or silently via the server to one or more recipients. You can specify the recipients, the subject, and the message of the email body via XPath expressions. Additionally, text and image attachments can be generated. The settings of the Send Email To action are shown in the screenshot below and are described further below.



Note: At the time of writing (late April 2015), links that use the mobiletogether://scheme do not work in Gmail and some other email applications, but they work perfectly in popular clients such as AquaMail, K9, and MailWise. They have been tested in AquaMail and K9, and work correctly in these applications. The mobiletogether://scheme is used for MobileTogether-specific tasks such as opening a MobileTogether solution via the link or updating the server settings on a client device via the link.

Send email from client or server

Select whether the email is to be sent from the email application of the end user's client device or from the server. Compare the screenshot below (email sent from server) with the screenshot at the top of the page (client); the server option has three settings more than the client option: the *As* field, the *From* field, and the *OnError* action.

Client: When the action is executed, it opens an email in the email application. The
email will be filled with the details specified in the action settings (address fields,
subject, body, and attachments). The end user can edit the email and send it, or
close the email without sending it. Whether the email is sent as HTML or text
depends on the client, and cannot be specified in the design.

• Server: If the email is to be sent via the (MobileTogether) server, then MobileTogether Server must be configured to access the ISP's SMTP server. (See the MobileTogether Server documentation for a description of how to do this. Essentially, the ISP's SMTP server address and port, and the sender's email user name and password must be configured in the settings of MobileTogether Server.) When the end user carries out the event that triggers the action, the email is sent silently from the server without any further end-user interaction. Choosing to send the email via the server provides three options more than for sending from the client: the As field, the From field, and the On Error action to perform. The As field specifies whether the email should be sent as HTML or text. The From field is described below. If there is an error when sending the mail from the server, you can specify whether the Send action should be aborted or continued.

▼ To, Cc, Bcc

The email addresses that go into these fields are entered via XPath expressions. They can be (i) entered directly as strings in the XPath expression (as shown in the screenshots above), or (ii) generated from nodes in data sources (see the XPath expression below). If multiple recipients are to be specified in any of these fields, then it is best to use an XPath expression that returns a sequence. It is not advisable to hard-code separators (such as semi-colons or commas) between two email addresses since different email clients use different separators. Here is an example of an XPath expression that uses a node in an XML data source to generate an email address line:

```
if ( $MT_iOS=true() ) then iosGroup/Person/Email else otherGroup/Person/
Email
```

The expression iterates over a sequence of Person/Email nodes, each of which is expected to contain one email address. In the case of both iOS clients and non-iOS clients, multiple recipients are given as a sequence of strings: ("contactl@altova.com",

```
"contact2@altova.com").
```

▼ From

If you choose to send the email via MobileTogether Server, then the *From* setting becomes available. You can specify the sender's email address in this setting. The *From* setting must be filled if the email is sent over an SMTP server that requires a sender's address as mandatory. If the SMTP server does not require this, you can leave the *From* setting empty.

▼ Email body and subject field

The XPath expressions for these two settings (email body and *Subject* field) can either be a string or generate the respective texts from XML data sources.

In the screenshot above, the XPath expression for the *Subject* field is a directly entered string. The XPath expression for the email body returns the text content of the Message element that has its date attribute equal to "2015-04-15".

Attachments

You can attach files and images to emails. You can select one of three options for attachments:

- · No attachments (selected by default)
- · Attachments listed below
- Dynamic attachments

Attachments listed below

This option allows attachments to be created individually. To add a new attachment, click

The screenshot below shows an email with two attachments. To delete an attachment, click its **Delete** icon.

```
C No Attachments  Attachments listed below  Dynamic Attachments

X Filename "MT-NewFeatures.txt"  Content $XML2/Releases/Release[@date="2015-04-15"]/Features  Content type  XML  

X Filename "MobileTogetherLogo.jpg"  Content $XML4/Images/Image[@name="MTLogo"]  Content $XML4/Images/Image[@name="MTLogo"]  Content type Base 64  

Content type
```

Each attachment has the following properties:

• Filename (XPath): The filename can have any extension. The filename serves solely as a representation (in the email) of the attachment; it is not an actual path.

- Content (XPath): You can select an XML tree fragment, a single XML node, the text
 content of one or more nodes, or you can directly enter a string that will be the
 content of the attached file. The content will be parsed according to the selection in
 the (next) Content type property.
- Content type (combo box: XML/Base64): If the content type is XML, then the content is parsed as XML data. If the content type is Base64, then the content is parsed as a Base64 image and an image is generated from the Base64 content (see the second attachment in the screenshot above). Note that the value of the Content property must be readable according to the selection made for the Content type property.

Dynamic attachments

The XPath expression uses the <a href="https://ment.ncbi.nlm.ncbi.

▼ mt-email-attachment

```
mt-email-attachment(Filename as xs:string, Content as node(),
ContentType as xs:string) as array(*)
```

Prepares the XML or Base64 content provided by the Content argument as an email attachment. Whether the content is parsed as XML or as a Base64 image is determined by the ContentType argument, which takes either XML or Base64 as its value. The filename that is associated with the attachment is given by the Filename argument.

Note: The mt-email-attachment is a requirement when using the *Dynamic Attachments* option of the <u>Send Email To</u> action.

Note: Attachments work with Android and iOS clients only.

Examples

```
• mt-email-attachment('MTNewFeatures.txt', $XML2/Releases/
Release[@date='2015-04-15']/Features, 'XML') returns the Features
```

```
    mt-email-attachment('MTLogo.jpg', $XML4/Images/
    Image[@name='MTLogo'], 'Base64') returns an image file
```

Note: Attachments work with Android and iOS clients only.

Adding links to the email body

You can add a hyperlink to the body of an email that is sent in HTML format. This feature

does not work for emails sent as text. The link can target an Internet page or a MobileTogether solution. To add a link to the email body, use the mt-html-anchor function in the XPath expression of the Body option (see screenshot below).

```
On Description Click

On Click

On Long Click

On End Email C from Server

As Firm "sender@altova.com" Long

To "contact.one@altova.com" Long

Cc "contact.two@altova.com", "contact.three@altova.com" Long

Bcc Long

Subject "MobileTogether Clients Available in EN, DE, FR, ES, JA" Long

Body concat($XML3/Messages/Message[@date="2015-04-28"], mt-html-anchor("Unregister from mailing list", "http://www.altova.com")) Long

No Attachments Attachments isted below Dynamic Attachments

On Error Abort Script C Continue
```

The <u>mt-html-anchor</u> function takes two arguments: <u>LinkText</u> and <u>targetURL</u>. It uses these two arguments to create an HTML hyperlink element: LinkText

For example:

```
mt-html-anchor('Unregister from mailing list', 'http://www.altova.com')
```

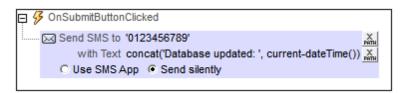
generates the HTML code fragment:

```
<a href="http://www.altova.com'">Unregister from mailing list</a>
```

The example above links to an Internet page. For a description of how to link to a MobileTogether solution, see <u>Hyperlinking-to-Solutions</u>.

Send SMS To

Sends an SMS to a specified number with a specified text. The receiver's number and the SMS text are specified using XPath expressions (see screenshot below). Numbers should not be enclosed in quotes. Numbers of multiple recipients must be separated by a semi-colon. A static global variable named \$MT_SMSAvailable can be used to test whether SMS services are available on the client device. Variable values can be true() or false().



You can choose whether to send the message via the SMS application on the mobile device or silently.

Make Call To

Makes a call to the number specified in the XPath expression of the definition (see screenshot below). Numbers should not be enclosed in quotes. A static global variable named \$MT_TelephonyAvailable can be used to test whether telephony services are available on the client device. Variable values can be true() or false().



Open URL

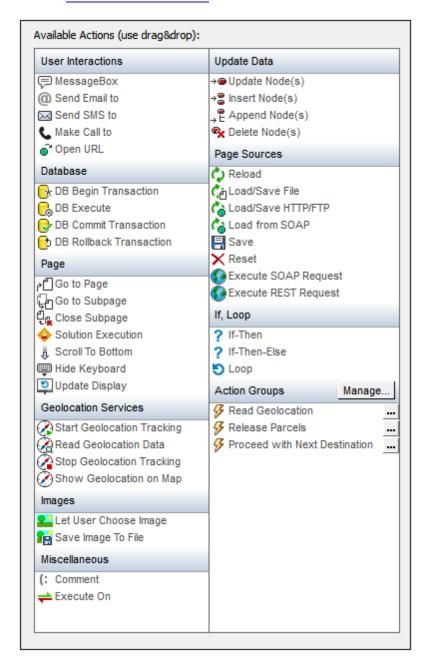
Opens the URL specified in the XPath expression of the Open URL action's definition (see screenshot below).



Database

The following actions are available in the Database group of the Actions dialog (screenshot below):

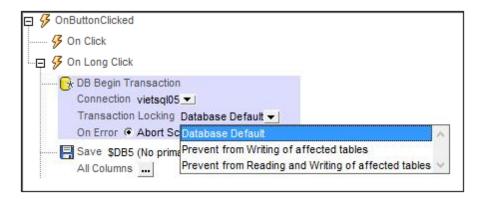
- DB Begin Transaction
- DB Execute
- DB Commit Transaction
- DB Rollback Transaction



The actions in this group are available for page events and control events. The fastest way to access the Actions dialog (*screenshot above*) is to right-click the page or control and select the page/control actions command. See also <u>Page Events</u> and <u>Control Events</u>.

DB Begin Transaction

When the event is triggered the DB Begin Transaction action begins a transaction with the data source selected in the *Connection* combo box. This combo box lists all the data sources of the project, and also offers the option of setting up an additional database connection specifically for use with the DB Begin Transaction action.



The *Transaction Locking* option specifies the level enables you to ensure that data is not corrupted during write actions. The following options are available:

- Database Default: Collects DB-related default settings on the DB, server, and client.
- Prevent from writing of affected tables: The DB will not be written to if it is currently being
 written to via another connection. The Write-transaction will be deferred till the other
 Write-transaction has been completed; otherwise an error message will be displayed.
- Prevent from reading and writing of affected tables: The DB will not be read from or
 written to if it is currently being written to via another connection. The transaction will be
 deferred till the other transaction has been completed, or an error message will be
 displayed.

About DB Transactions

For each DB access that needs a transaction, one is automatically created and closed afterwards. This might not be desirable for some setups. For example, when you have two DB page sources that you want to update atomically together: If both tables are saved successfully, then the transaction is committed, but rolled back otherwise. To accommodate this kind of situation, transactions can be created on a connection basis.

If you <u>begin a transaction</u>, all DB operations belonging to the same DB connection will use this transaction.

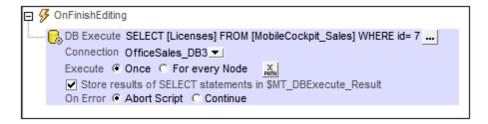
Committing a transaction makes changes visible to the world outside your transaction.

Changes can be rolled back. In this case, even if you have done a Save on your page source, the changes won't be visible after a rollback! Note that any transaction that is not closed (committed or rolled back) when the end of the action tree has been reached will be rolled back automatically! A warning to this effect will be displayed in the Messages window.

It is important to bear in mind that, while the behavior above refers to explicit transaction actions, this behavior also applies to all DB operations that use the same connection as the transaction.

DB Execute

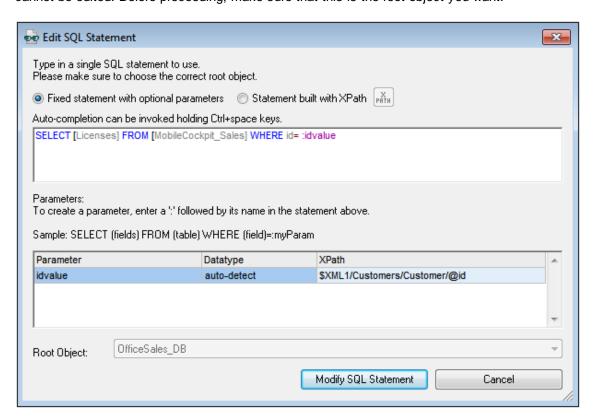
When the event is triggered, the DB Execute action executes the action's SQL statement on the data source selected in the *Connection* combo box. This combo box lists all the data sources of the project, and also offers the option of setting up an additional database connection specifically for use with the DB Execute action. If the *Store results in \$MT_DBExecute_Result* check box is selected, then the results are stored in the §MT_DBExecute_Result variable. This variable can then be used in XPath expressions elsewhere on the page to provide the result of the DB Execute action.



Note: Multiple SELECT statements can be used in the DB Execute action.

The SQL statement

To enter or edit the SQL statement, click the **Additional Dialog** button. This displays the Edit SQL Statement dialog (*screenshot below*). The Root Object at the bottom of the dialog is selected automatically and is based on the selection in the Connection combo box. The *Root Object* field cannot be edited. Before proceeding, make sure that this is the root object you want.



Fixed statement with optional parameters

To enter an SQL statement, select *Fixed statement with optional parameters*, and enter the SQL statement. The use of parameters in the SQL statement provides more flexibility. For example, in the screenshot above, instead of entering a fixed value for the WHERE clause, a parameter name idvalue is used to supply the value of a node in an XML data source. In the first line below, a fixed value is used; in the second line, the parameter idvalue is used.

```
WHERE id= 7
WHERE id= :idvalue
```

To use a parameter, write the parameter name prefixed by a colon (:) in the SQL statement where you want to use it. As soon as you enter the first character after the colon, an entry is created for the parameter in the Parameters pane. Next, in the Parameters pane, enter an XPath expression to provide the value of the parameter. You can enter as many parameters as you like.

Note: In the SQL statement, column and table names are used, since the SQL statement directly queries the DB. In the XPath expression of parameters, however, you must use the names of nodes in the design tree (Row, RowSet, etc), since it is the design tree that is used in the design.

Statement built with XPath/XQuery

You can also use XQuery to build an SQL statement. Select *Statement built with XPath*, and enter the XQuery expression. When the XQuery expression is evaluated it generates the required SQL statement. The advantage of this is that it provides greater flexibility in creating the SQL statement. For example, you can include design tree nodes, other XQuery constructs, and end user input to calculate and generate parts of the SQL statement.

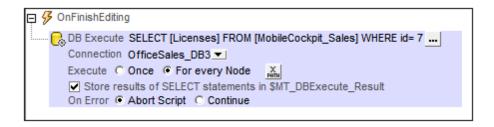
SQL statements built with XPath

You can also build the SQL statement using an XPath expression. This is useful if you wish to use an SQL statement using the specific syntax of a particular kind of DB. The result generated by the XPath expression is used as the SQL statement submitted to the DB.

To build an SQL statement using XPath, select *Statement built with XPath*. In the <u>Edit XPath/</u>XQuery Expression dialog that appears, enter the XPath expression and click **OK**.

Execute once or for every node

The SQL statement can be executed once on the data source, or it can be executed on all the nodes of a custom defined nodeset. If you select the latter option, you need to enter an XPath expression that generates the nodeset. The SQL statement will then be executed for each node in this nodeset. Additionally, you can query the value of the current node of the nodeset by using the variable smt_targetNode. This variable can be used, for example, in the definition of a parameter used in the SQL statement (see "SQL statements with parameters" above).



The \$MT_DBExecute_Result variable

The nodeset or other value returned by (the SQL statement of) the DB Execute action is stored in MobileTogether Designer's built-in variable \$MT_DBExecute_Result. This variable stores the result of the last DB Execute action of the project, and can used in XPath expressions in other locations in the project.

```
OnFinishEditing

DB Execute SELECT [Licenses] FROM [MobileCockpit_Sales] WHERE id= 7 ...

Connection OfficeSales_DB3 ▼

Execute • Once ○ For every Node

V Store results of SELECT statements in $MT_DBExecute_Result

On Error • Abort Script ○ Continue
```

Note that a DB Execute action can return nodesets of the kind $\mathtt{DB/RowSet/Row}$, where \mathtt{Row} elements repeat and there are multiple \mathtt{RowSet} elements. Multiple \mathtt{RowSet} elements are generated when multiple \mathtt{SELECT} statements are used in the DB Execute action.

DB Commit Transaction

When the event is triggered the DB Commit Transaction action commits a transaction to the data source selected in the *Connection* combo box. This combo box lists all the data sources of the project, and also offers the option of setting up an additional database connection specifically for use with the DB Begin Transaction action.



About DB Transactions

For each DB access that needs a transaction, one is automatically created and closed afterwards. This might not be desirable for some setups. For example, when you have two DB page sources that you want to update atomically together: If both tables are saved successfully, then the transaction is committed, but rolled back otherwise. To accommodate this kind of situation, transactions can be created on a connection basis.

If you <u>begin a transaction</u>, all DB operations belonging to the same DB connection will use this transaction.

Committing a transaction makes changes visible to the world outside your transaction.

Changes can be rolled back. In this case, even if you have done a Save on your page source, the changes won't be visible after a rollback! Note that any transaction that is not closed (committed or rolled back) when the end of the action tree has been reached will be rolled back automatically! A warning to this effect will be displayed in the Messages window.

It is important to bear in mind that, while the behavior above refers to explicit transaction actions, this behavior also applies to all DB operations that use the same connection as the transaction.

DB Rollback Transaction

When the event is triggered the DB Rollback Transaction action rolls back a transaction on the data source selected in the *Connection* combo box. This combo box lists all the data sources of the project, and also offers the option of setting up an additional database connection.



About DB Transactions

For each DB access that needs a transaction, one is automatically created and closed afterwards. This might not be desirable for some setups. For example, when you have two DB page sources that you want to update atomically together: If both tables are saved successfully, then the transaction is committed, but rolled back otherwise. To accommodate this kind of situation, transactions can be created on a connection basis.

If you <u>begin a transaction</u>, all DB operations belonging to the same DB connection will use this transaction.

Committing a transaction makes changes visible to the world outside your transaction.

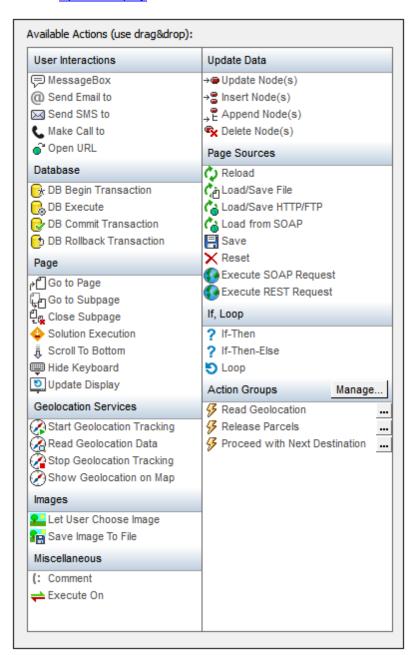
Changes can be rolled back. In this case, even if you have done a Save on your page source, the changes won't be visible after a rollback! Note that any transaction that is not closed (committed or rolled back) when the end of the action tree has been reached will be rolled back automatically! A warning to this effect will be displayed in the Messages window.

It is important to bear in mind that, while the behavior above refers to explicit transaction actions, this behavior also applies to all DB operations that use the same connection as the transaction.

Page

The following actions are available in the Page group of the Actions dialog:

- Go to Page
- Go to Subpage
- Close Subpage
- Solution Execution
- Scroll to Bottom
- Hide Keyboard
- Update Display



The actions in this group are available for page events and control events. The fastest way to

access the Actions dialog (*screenshot above*) is to right-click the page or control and select the page/control actions command. See also <u>Page Events</u> and <u>Control Events</u>.

Go to Page

The Gotopage action goes to the specified page when the event is triggered. The page to go to is selected in the combo box of the event (see screenshot below). If no other page exists in the project, no page will be available for selection in the combo box. In the screenshot below, the Gotopage action is placed below the two sub-events on Click and on Long Click. This defines that the action is triggered when the button is either tapped (clicked briefly) or pressed (clicked for a longer time).



The Load Page Message option (see screenshot above) enables a message to be shown in a progress dialog while the page loads. If you want to display a message, check this option, and then define the message as an XPath expression. If the option is unchecked, no message will be displayed.

Go to Subpage

Goes to the specified sub-page when the event is triggered. The subpage to go to is selected from the *Go to Subpage* combo box (see screenshot below), which lists all the subpages in the project. In the screenshot below, an <code>OnButtonClicked</code> event has been set to go to the *Addresses* subpage.



The Go to Subpage action has the following settings:

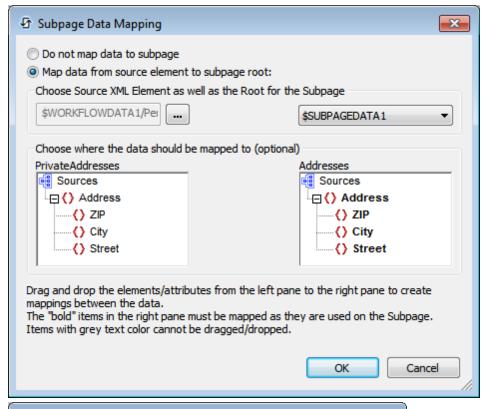
- Source XML: Specifies whether and how subpage data should correspond to data sources in the originating page. This definition is entered in the Subpage Data Mapping dialog, which is accessed by clicking the Additional Dialog button of the Source XML field. See the section "Source XML of subpages" below for a detailed description of this dialog.
- Load Subpage Message: In the event that the subpage is transmitted via a server request: If the check box is selected, this message is shown in a progress dialog while the subpage loads. See screenshot above.
- Close Subpage Message: In the event that the subpage is transmitted via a server request: If the check box is selected, this message is shown in a progress dialog while the subpage closes. See screenshot above.

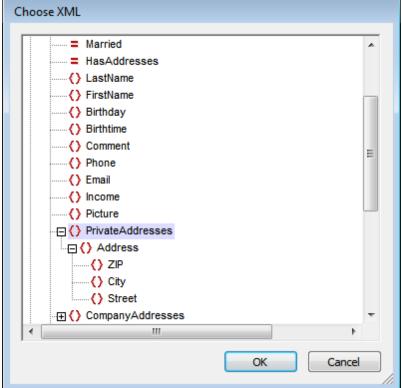
Source XML of subpages

Every subpage must have at least one data source in order for the subpage to be used effectively. Data in subpage sources can be mapped to data in top page sources, or the data in subpage sources can be left unmapped. If mapped, then subpage data is transferred to the mapped nodes of the top page when the subpage is closed. The behavior of the source XML of subpages is defined in the Subpage Data Mapping dialog (screenshot below left). To access this dialog, click the **Additional Dialog** button of the Source XML field of the Go to Subpage action definition (see description above).

The following subpage data handling possibilities are available:

- Subpage data is not mapped. In this case, subpage data sources are handled independently of the subpage-data-mapping mechanism.
- A subpage source is mapped to a top page structure that is exactly the same; even the names of elements and attributes are the same.
- A subpage source is mapped to a top page source that has a different structure and/or different attribute/element names.





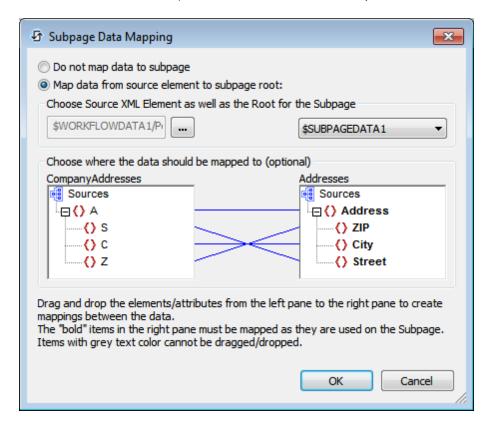
In the Subpage Data Mapping dialog (screenshot above left), the subpage data source is

displayed in the right-hand source tree pane, while the top page data source is displayed in the left-hand source tree pane .

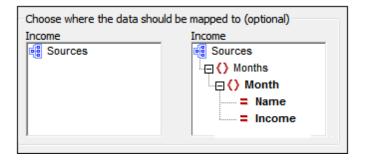
Select the subpage data source from the combo box above the (right-hand) subpage
pane. This combo box lists all the data sources of the subpage. Note that the subpage
name is listed above the subpage pane.

• To select the top page data source to be mapped, first click the **Additional Dialog** button above the (left-hand) top page pane. This displays the Choose XML dialog (screenshot above right), which contains all the data sources of the top page. Select the node that you want to map to the subpage data. In the screenshot above, the PrivateAddresses node has been selected in the Choose XML dialog. As a result, the descendants of PrivateAddresses are displayed in the top page source tree pane and PrivateAddresses, the mapped node, is listed above the pane.

In the case described by the screenshot above, the mapping is automatically done between the two data sources since both XML data structures are identical, right down to the names of elements. In the screenshot below a mapping between elements is constructed by dragging a node from the left-hand pane onto a node in the right-hand pane. This is because the two data structures are not identical (the first element, S, must correspond to the third element, Street).

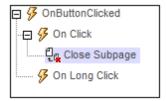


In the case described by the screenshot below, the content of the subpage data node Income/Months/Month is mapped to the top page data node Income (indicated by the title of the pane).



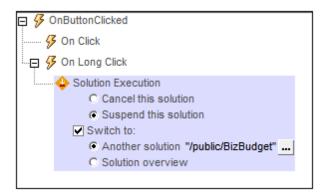
Close Subpage

Closes the active subpage when the event is triggered.



Solution Execution

When the event is triggered, the Solution Execution action provides you with the option to either cancel the solution or leave it suspended (that is, running in the background). In both cases (cancel or suspend), you can do one of the following: (i) switch to another solution, (ii) switch to the Solutions Overview (the *Solutions* page of MobileTogether Client), (iii) do not switch to either a solution or the Solutions Overview. The various possibilities are given in the table below.



Switch to	Cancel solution	Suspend solution
Another solution	Solution is closed without displaying any message, and the specified solution is opened.	The current solution runs "minimized" in the background, and the specified solution is opened.
Solution s Overvie w	Solution is closed without displaying any message, and the display switches to the Solutions Overview page of MobileTogether Client.	The current solution runs "minimized" in the background, and the display switches to the Solutions Overview page of MobileTogether Client.
Uncheck ed	Solution is closed without displaying any message, and the display switches to where it was before the solution was started (see notes below).	The current solution runs "minimized" in the background, and the display switches to where it was before the solution was started (see notes below).

Note the following points:

- Web clients do not support suspended solutions; only the active solution is supported.
- A solution that is suspended (running in the background) is displayed minimized as an
 icon in the *Running* page of the MobileTogether Client application, and can be opened by
 tapping this icon.
- If the solution runs "minimized" in the background, then the solution is paused at that point, and no further solution action is executed. For example, no timers are executed, no geolocations are used. When the solution is re-opened, actions defined for the On Reopen option of the OnPageRefresh event are executed. Also see the project property On Switch to Other Solution.
- The solution to switch to is specified by clicking the Edit XPath Expression button and entering the location of the solution as a string (that is, within quotes). The location must

- be on the same server as the current solution and the location string must be exactly the same as the string that was entered when the <u>target solution was deployed</u>. See *screenshot above*. If the target solution is already running (minimized), then it is opened and continues from where it was when it was switched to its minimized state.
- If the Switch to option is unchecked, the display either: (i) returns to the home screen if the solution was started via its shortcut, or (ii) returns to the Solutions Overview. On iOS, it always returns to the Solutions Overview page.
- Tapping the **Back** button on the top page of a solution running in parallel suspends the solution. (i) On Android, Windows App and Windows: It returns to the home screen if the solution was started via its shortcut; otherwise it returns to the Solutions Overview. In either case, the return action is performed directly, without any end-user input. (ii) On iOS (and in non-parallel solutions): The user is asked whether the solution should be exited or not. If the response is to exit, then the user is returned to the Solutions Overview page.

Scroll to Bottom

Scrolls to the bottom of the active page when the event is triggered.



Hide Keyboard

Hides the keyboard of the mobile device when the event is triggered. Some mobile devices automatically show a keyboard when certain page elements, such as text fields, are present or active on the page. The Hide Keyboard action action is useful if you wish to gain some screen space for the page display on such devices.



Update Display

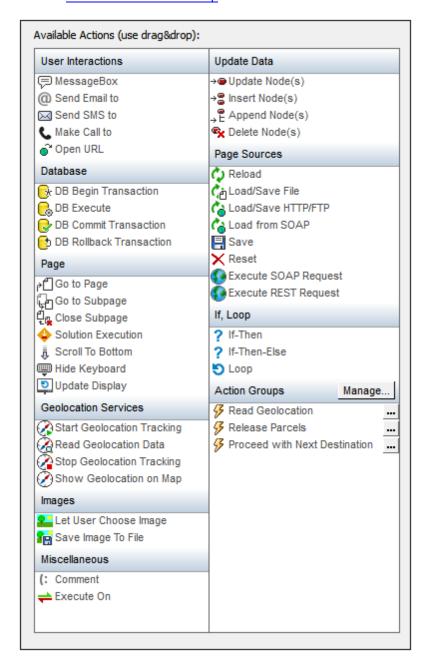
Updates the display with the latest data when the event is triggered. In cases where a sequence of multiple actions are carried out when an action is triggered, the display is updated, by default, after the last action is carried out. The Update Display action enables the display to be updated as the actions for that event are executed. A good example where the Update Display action can be used is in the <u>loop action</u>. If the Update Display action is included within the loop, then the display is updated as the actions in each iteration of the loop are executed.



Geolocation Services

The following action is available in the Geolocation group of the Actions dialog (screenshot below):

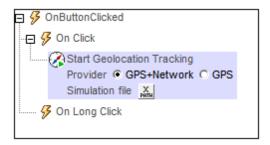
- Start Geolocation Tracking
- Read Geolocation Data
- Stop Geolocation Tracking
- Show Geolocation on Map



The actions in this group are available for page events and control events. The fastest way to access the Actions dialog (*screenshot above*) is to right-click the page or control and select the page/control actions command. See also <u>Page Events</u> and <u>Control Events</u>.

Start Geolocation Tracking

When the event is triggered, the Start Geolocation Tracking action adds a **\$GEOLOCATION** tree to the design and starts tracking the geolocation of the mobile device. A dialog is displayed informing you that the **\$GEOLOCATION** tree has been added. Once tracking of geolocation data starts, it continues till stopped with the **Stop Geolocation Tracking** action or till the solution ends.



Select the geolocation data source that is best suited to the design:

- GPS+Network: If the mobile device can be located with GPS, then GPS is used to provide geolocation data. Otherwise, the cellular network's geolocator mechanism is used. Geolocation from the network is often less accurate than GPS, but this option has the advantage that geolocation information is provided by the network, which acts as a backup information source, if GPS is not available (for example, inside buildings).
- GPS: GPS is used to provide geolocation data. The advantage of using this option is that
 geolocation data will be accurate. The disadvantage is that, if GPS is not available at a
 particular location (for example, inside buildings), then no geolocation data will be
 available.

You can specify the geolocations XML file to use for <u>designer</u> and <u>server</u> simulations. The XPath expression must resolve to a URL that locates the geolocations file. The URL can be absolute, or one that is relative to the design file. If no geolocations file is specified with this action, then the <u>default geolocations file</u> defined in the <u>Geolocation Settings dialog</u> is used.

Read Geolocation Data

When the event is triggered, the Read Geolocation Data action retrieves data from the **SCEOLOCATION** tree, which has two parts: Location and Address (see listings below). The Location element contains the geolocation coordinates. The Address element contains the address equivalent plus other details of the geolocation coordinates as determined by a directory look-up. If no postal address equivalent is available, then this part of the tree will not be filled; other child elements of Address (such as URL) might also not be filled if the relevant data is not available.

```
$GEOLOCATION

<Root>

<Location/>
<Address/>

</Root>
```

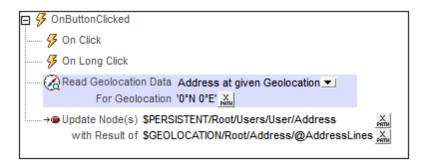
■ Detailed structure of the \$GEOLOCATION tree

```
$GEOLOCATION
<Root>
  <Location</pre>
   AccuracyHorizontal=""
   AccuracyVertical=""
   Altitude=""
   Latitude=""
   Longitude=""
   MagneticHeading=""
   Provider=""
    Speed=""
    Time=""
  />
  <Address
    AddressLines=""
    AdminArea=""
    CountryCode=""
    CountryName=""
   FeatureName=""
    Locality=""
    Phone=""
    PostalCode=""
   Premises=""
    SubAdminArea=""
    SubLocality=""
    SubThoroughfare=""
    Thoroughfare=""
    Url=""
  />
</Root>
```

Geolocation retrieval options

In the dropdown box of the action's setting, you can select one of the following:

- Current Geolocation: Retrieves the Location element's data
- Current Geolocation + Address: Retrieves both the Location and Address elements' data
- Address at Given Geolocation: Returns Address element data that corresponds to the For Geolocation coordinates you enter
- Geolocation at Given Address: Returns the geolocation coordinates of the Address
 element data that is submitted. For the structure of the Address element that is
 submitted, see the listing of the \$GEOLOCATION tree above.



The For Geolocation coordinates are entered as an XPath expression that generates an xs:string. The generated string must have one of the lexical formats described in the Geolocation input string formats section below.

■ Geolocation input string formats:

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to s). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow (") while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue ("").

Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M'S.SS"N/S
 D°M'S.SS"W/E
 Example: 33°55'11.11"N
 22°44'55.25"W

Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/W) is optional +/-D°M's.ss" +/-D°M's.ss"
Example: 33°55'11.11" -22°44'55.25"

• Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
D°M.MM'N/S D°M.MM'W/E

Example: 33°55.55'N 22°44.44'W

Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (n/w) is

```
optional
+/-D°M.MM' +/-D°M.MM'
Example: +33°55.55' -22°44.44'
```

Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D.DDN/S
 D.DDW/E

Example: 33.33N 22.22W

• Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (n/w) is optional

+/-D.DD +/-D.DD <u>Example</u>: 33.33 -22.22

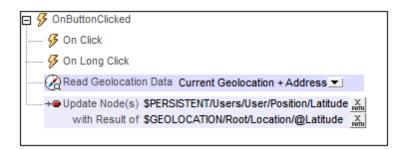
Examples of format-combinations:

```
33.33N -22°44'55.25"
33.33 22°44'55.25"W
33.33 22.45
```

• Geolocation at Given Address: Returns the geolocation of the address submitted in the For Address option. The address is entered as a string, for example: "Address Line 1, Address Line 2". This string is submitted for a geolocation lookup, and the returned geolocation data components are stored in the \$GEOLOCATION tree (see the tree structure listing at the beginning of the section).

Usage

In order to use geolocation data, it must first be retrieved with the Read Geolocation Data action. The screenshot below, for example, shows the Read Geolocation Data action retrieving data for both the Location and Address elements, and then using the Location/@Latitude data to update a node in another tree.



Units and datatypes of retrieved geolocation data

The geolocation data that is retrieved from the different mobile devices is placed in the **\$GEOLOCATION** tree as numbers. The units and dataypes of these numbers are given in the table below.

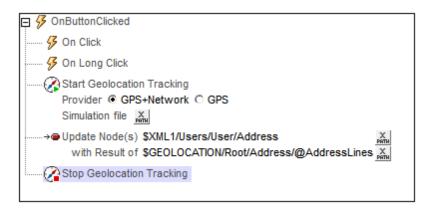
	Android	Web	iOS	Windows Phone	WindowsRT
				1 Hone	

Latitud e	Degrees (as double)	Decimal degrees (as double)	Degrees (as double)	Degrees (as double)	Degrees (as double)
Longitu de	Degrees (as double)	Decimal degrees (as double)	Degrees (as double)	Degrees (as double)	Degrees (as double)
Accurac Y	Meters (as double)	Meters (as double)	Meters (as double)	Meters (as double)	Meters (as double)
Altitud e	Meters above WGS 84 ref ellipsoid	Meters (as double)	Meters (as double)	Meters (as double)	Meters (as double)
Speed	Meters/second (m/s)	Meters/second (as double)	Meters/ second (as double)	Meters/second (as double))	Meters/ second (as double)
Time	UTC time	DOM TimeStamp (unsigned long long)	NSDate (can be converted to TZ)	Int64/ System.Date timeOffset (UTC)	Long long (UTC)

For information about specifying geolocation data for designer and server simulations, see the section Geolocation Settings.

Stop Geolocation Tracking

When the event is triggered, the Stop Geolocation Tracking action stops tracking the geolocation of the mobile device. The tracking would have been started with the <u>Start Geolocation Tracking</u> action (see screenshot below).



Show Geolocation on Map

When the event is triggered, the Show Geolocation on Map action opens the map application of the mobile device, and places a pin and label at the specified geolocation.



The Show Geolocation on Map has the following settings:

- Geolocation: The geolocation to be shown in the map. The coordinates of the geolocation are entered as an XPath expression that generates an xs:string. The generated string must have one of the lexical formats described in the Geolocation input string formats section below.
- Label: The text of the label that is attached to the geolocation shown in the map. The text is entered as an XPath expression that generates an xs:string.
- Zoom: The zoom factor of the map when it is opened in the map application.

■ Geolocation input string formats:

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow (") while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue ("").

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M'S.SS"N/S D°M'S.SS"W/E
 Example: 33°55'11.11"N 22°44'55.25"W
- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/W) is optional +/-D°M's.ss" +/-D°M's.ss"
 Example: 33°55'11.11" -22°44'55.25"
- Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M.MM'N/S D°M.MM'W/E
 Example: 33°55.55'N 22°44.44'W
- Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/W) is

optional

+/-D°M.MM' +/-D°M.MM'

Example: +33°55.55' -22°44.44'

Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)

D.DDN/S D.DDW/E

Example: 33.33N 22.22W

• Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (n/w) is optional

+/-D.DD +/-D.DD

Example: 33.33 -22.22

Examples of format-combinations:

33.33N -22°44'55.25"

33.33 22°44'55.25"W

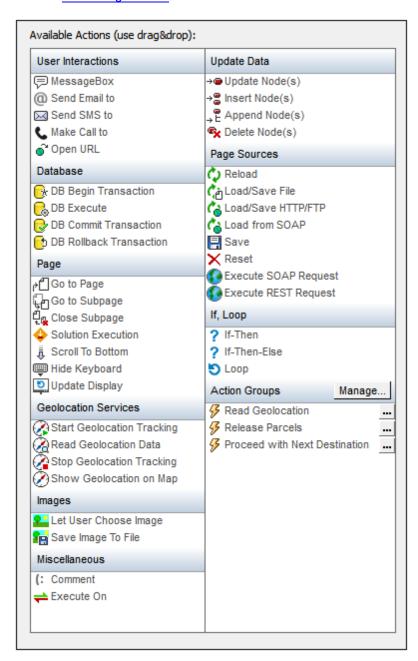
33.33 22.45

For information about specifying geolocation data for designer and server simulations, see the section <u>Geolocation Settings</u>.

Images

The following actions are available in the Images group of the Actions dialog (screenshot below):

- Let User Choose Image
- Save Image to File



The actions in this group are available for page events and control events. The fastest way to access the Actions dialog (*screenshot above*) is to right-click the page or control and select the page/control actions command. See also <u>Page Events</u> and <u>Control Events</u>.

Let User Choose Image

The end user can select an image that can be saved to a node in of the data source tress (see screenshot below). This enables the end user to select images that are automatically saved to a database. An example of a usage scenario would be the reporting of damages for insurance purposes. The user could run the solution, and take a photograph with the mobile device. The image would be directly uploaded to the appropriate database.

```
Target Node . X
  - On OK
      Reload Image1 (Image) 🔻
         O Always reload from server for try to use previously loaded
         On Error @ Abort Script @ Continue
      🏣 Save Image To File
              Source Node . X
                 File Path concat("C:\MobileTogether\UserSelectedImages\", @id, '.', suggested-image-file-extension(. ))
      🗐 🗅 Load from File 🖲 Save to File
                        $XML1 (XML)
                File Path UserSelectedImages.xml ...
                Encoding ...
         On Error @ Abort Script C Continue
  ·🛨 🧲 On Cancel
  · 🛨 🔀 On Error
```

The action has the following properties:

- Image source: Select Gallery to let the user choose an image from the image gallery of the client device. Select Camera to start the camera app of the mobile device and capture the next photo taken by the camera.
- Target Node: A data source node in which to save the image as Base64-encoded data.

The Let User Choose Image action has three conditions:

- On OK: Define actions to perform if the image is correctly imported to target node as
 Base64-encoded data. Typical actions to perform would be: (i) Reload the image control
 that displays the selected image; this updates the display with the selected image; (ii)
 Save Image to File if the image is required to be saved in as a binary image file (as
 opposed to being saved in an XML node as Base64-encoded text); (iii) Load/Save to File
 saves the XML data, including the newly added Base64-encoded image data to the page
 data source.
- On Cancel: If the image selection process is canceled by the user, some actions might be needed to rollback modifications made preparatory to importing the user-selected image.
- On Error: Define actions to take in case the image is not imported correctly into the target node. For example, the user can be informed that the selection has failed, and/or a Troubleshooting page can be opened in a web browser.

For an example of how to use this action, see the section Images Chosen by End User.

Save Image to File

A Base64-encoded image in a data source node can be saved as an image file at a server-side or other external location.

Select the data source node where the Base64-encoded image is located (the *Source Node* property; *see screenshot above*). Then select the location on the server where the file is to be saved (the *File Path* property).

When entering the file path, the Altova XPath extension function suggested-image-file-extension can be used to determine and specify the filetype of the image. Each image is of a particular image format, and this format information is stored within the Base64-encoded image data. The suggested-image-file-extension function returns the extension. Note that entering the wrong filetype as part of the image filename could render the image file unreadable.

The following XPath expression:

```
concat('EmployeePhotos/', @name, @surname, '.', suggested-image-file-
extension(@photo))
```

would evaluate to something like this:

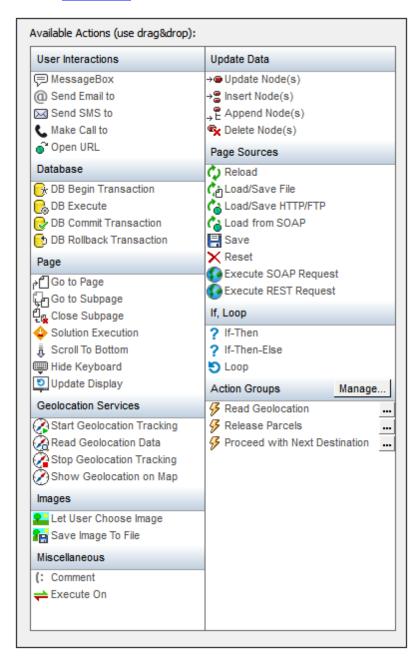
```
'EmployeePhotos/MaxMuster.png
```

For an example of how to use this action, see the section <u>Images Chosen by End User</u>.

Miscellaneous

The following action is available in the Miscellaneous group of the Actions dialog (screenshot below):

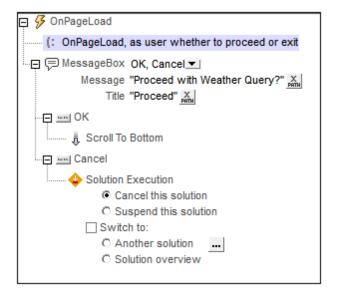
- Comment
- Execute On



The actions in this group are available for page events and control events. The fastest way to access the Actions dialog (*screenshot above*) is to right-click the page or control and select the page/control actions command. See also <u>Page Events</u> and <u>Control Events</u>.

Comment

Comments can be added to the definition of an event's actions (see screenshot below). This is useful for inserting explanations of the different actions in the definition of the event's actions.



Execute On

The Execute On action (see screenshot below) explicitly specifies where the action's sub-actions must be executed: on the server or the client.



The screenshot above displays how the Execute On action is typically used:

- 1. A <u>Let User Choose Image</u> action prompts the user to select an image from a gallery and save the image as Base64 to the current node (which is located, say, with //image/base64).
- 2. If the image is successfully transferred to the current node, the On OK condition uses the Execute On action to transform the user-selected image on the server (with the Altova XPath extension function mt-transform-image) and then update the sibling jpg node. The node is updated on the server, and, when the processing of actions is completed, is transferred to the client.

Transformation on client or server

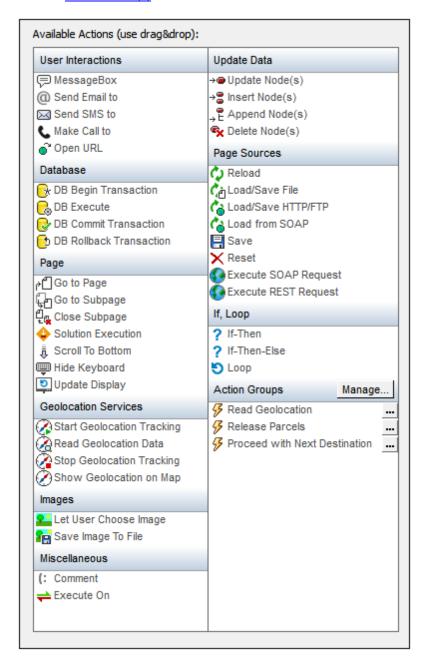
The function mt-transform-image will be executed on the client if not explicitly specified otherwise. This could create memory problems on some clients. When the transformation is started, the image is unpacked from the format of its Base64 encoding to a BMP format, which could be very large. After the transformation is completed, the transformed file is stored back to the original format. The large BMP format could create memory problems on some clients, and you should be aware of this.

To avoid the possibility of memory problems on the client, explicitly specify that the transformation must be carried out on the server. Do this with the Execute On action, specifying that the child actions be performed on the server. All the child actions of this Execute On action will then be carried out on the server. You can use an action such as Update Node to update a node with the result of a transformation. The target node will be updated with the transformed image. MobileTogether automatically transfers the results to the client when action handling is complete or when the workflow switches back to the client.

Update Data

The following actions are available in the Update Data group of the Actions dialog (screenshot below):

- Update Node(s)
- Insert Node(s)
- Append Node(s)
- Delete Node(s)



The actions in this group are available for page events and control events. The fastest way to access the Actions dialog (*screenshot above*) is to right-click the page or control and select the page/control actions command. See also <u>Page Events</u> and <u>Control Events</u>.

Update Node(s)

When the event is triggered, the Update Node(s) action updates one or more specified nodes with the specified value. Both the update node and update value are specified with XPath expressions. In the screenshot below, the @Updated attribute node of the XPath context element is updated with the current date (the result of evaluating the XPath function current-date-no-TZ()).



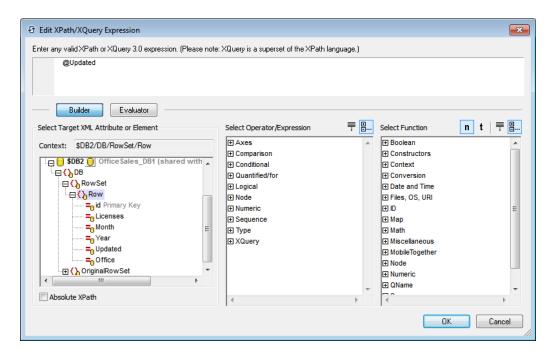
There are a few points to note when specifying the update node/s and update value:

- Importance of context node for relative paths
- The target node for the update can be referenced with the \$MT_TargetNode variable
- If the source node is an element with mixed content (text and elements), then only the
 text content of the mixed-content element is used for the update. The text content of
 descendant elements is ignored.

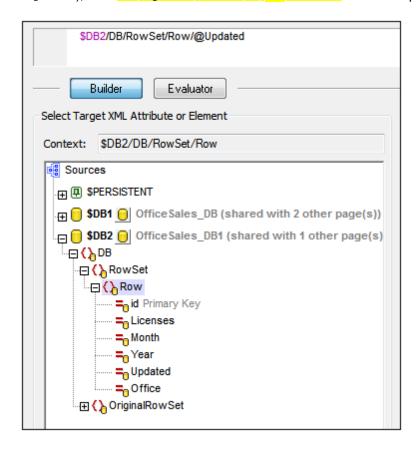
Importance of context node for relative paths

If the node to be updated is specified as a relative path, then only those nodes are updated that are descendants of the context node. To update a descendant node of sibling elements, an absolute locator path will need to be used. This is explained in more detail below.

- In the screenshot below, notice that the context node (indicated in the *Context* field) is the Row element of the DB. The context node is the node within which the control (for which the action is being defined) is located (or with which the control is associated).
- The @Updated attribute that will be updated is therefore the @Updated attribute of that particular Row element. What this means is that when a Row element's control event is triggered, then the @Updated attribute of only that Row element is updated, in this case with the current date.



• If the XPath expression were changed so that it addressed the @Updated node starting from the root node (like this, and as in the screenshot below: \$DB2/DB/RowSet/Row/@Updated), then the @Updated node of all row elements would be updated.



Notice from the screenshot above, that you have access via XPath expressions to all the

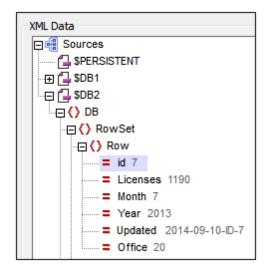
nodes of all data sources.

Referencing the specified target node with \$MT_TargetNode

After a target node for the update is defined, you can reference this node with the variable \$MT_TargetNode. For example:

```
Update Node : @Updated
Update Value: concat(current-date-no-TZ(), '-ID-', $MT_TargetNode/../@id)
```

would give an update value that would have the @id attribute value of the current Row element suffixed to the current date, as in the screenshot below.



Now, if the update nodes were the @Updated attributes of all Row elements, and the XPath expression for the update value were the same as in the previous example:

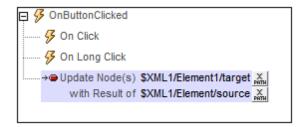
```
Update Node : $DB2/DB/RowSet/Row/@Updated
Update Value: concat(current-date-no-TZ(), '-ID-', $MT_TargetNode/../@id)
```

then the @Updated attribute of each Row element would have a value that would have the @id attribute value of its own Row element suffixed to the current date.

Source elements with mixed content

If an element with mixed content (text and element/s) is located with an XPath locator expression, then the text content of the mixed-content element only is returned. The text content of descendant elements is ignored.

This is best explained with an example of the <u>Update Node(s) action</u>. Consider the <u>Update Node(s) action</u> defined in the screenshot below.



If the XML tree had the following structure and content:

Then the target element would be updated with the text content of the mixed-content element source, while ignoring the content of its child element subsource. The node named target will be updated to <target>AAA</target>.

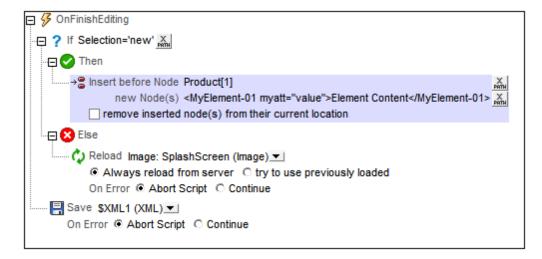
Note: If you wish to include the text content of descendant node/s, use a string function.

Using the XML example above, for instance, the expression string(\$XML1/Element1/source, '') will return "AAABBB".

Note: Charts use the XPath compliant method of serializing: When a mixed-content element is located using an XPath locator expression, then the text content of descendant elements is also serialized.

Insert Node(s)

When the event is triggered, the Insert Node(s) action inserts one or more new nodes before the node/s selected by the XPath expression for the *Insert before Node* setting. The inserted node/s can be a single node, sequence of nodes, or an entire tree fragment. These inserted nodes are constructed using XQuery's XML constructor syntax. All seven XML node kinds can be constructed using this XQuery syntax: elements, attributes, text, document, comment, processing-instruction, and namespace.



Note: The difference between <u>Insert Node(s)</u> and <u>Append Node(s)</u> is that <u>Insert Node(s)</u> adds the node/s before the selected node/s, whereas <u>Append Node(s)</u> adds the node/s as (first or last) child nodes of the selected node/s.

Location of inserted node/s

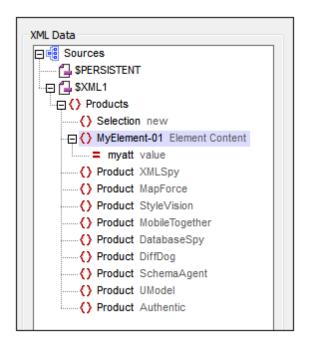
The new node/s are inserted before the node/s returned by the XPath expression for this setting (Insert before Node). In the screenshot above, the new node/s are inserted before the first Product element (selected with the XPath expression Product[1]). The context node is the parent of Product, a node named Products. If the predicate [1] is not used, all the Product children of Products will be returned by the XPath expression, and the new node/s will be inserted before each Product element.

New nodes

New nodes can be entered as direct XML constructors as in the screenshot above:

```
<MyElement-01 myatt="value">Element Content</myElement-01>
```

This inserts the element MyElement-01 before the first Product element, as in the screenshot below.



You can also use an XPath locator expression to insert a node (and all its descendants) from a data source on the page. For example:

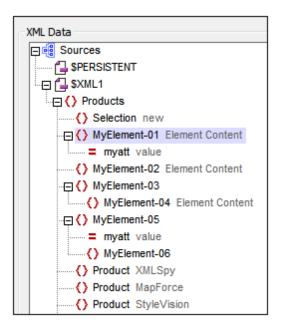
```
$XML2/Row
```

XQuery's computed node constructors can also be used, for example:

```
element MyElement-01 {xs:string("Element Content")}
attribute myatt{"value"}
```

The XPath expression below produces the output shown in the screenshot below, inserted above the first Product element.

```
<MyElement-01 myatt="value">Element Content</MyElement-01>,
element MyElement-02 {"Element Content"},
element MyElement-03 {element MyElement-04 {"Element Content"}},
element MyElement-05{attribute myatt{"value"}, element MyElement-06{}}
```



Removing inserted nodes from their original locations

If the inserted node/s are obtained from one of the project's data sources, you can delete the node/s from their original location by selecting the *Remove inserted node(s) from their current location* check box. If new nodes are constructed directly—that is, without reference to the project's data sources—then selecting this option will have no effect on the data sources.

The \$MT_TargetNode variable

The node in the Insert Node(s) definition that is targeted as the node before which to insert child node/s, is automatically saved in MobileTogether Designer's built-in variable \$MT_TargetNode.
This variable can then be used in the second XPath expression of the definition, as has been done in the screenshot below.

```
☐ Insert before Node Product[1]

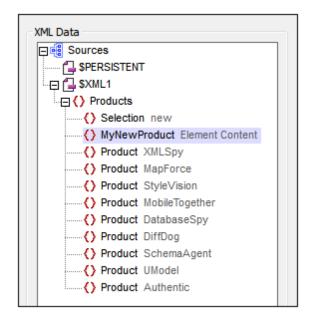
new Node(s) element {concat("MyNew", name($MT_TargetNode))} {"Element Content"}

remove inserted node(s) from their current location
```

The second XPath expression that creates the new node using the same name as the target node (\$MT_TargetNode) as part of the new node's name.

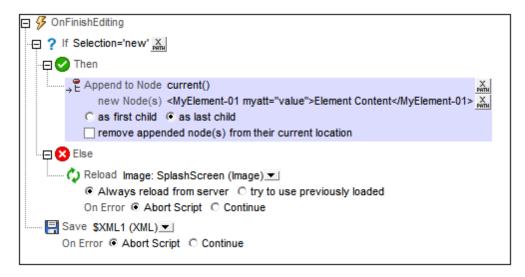
```
element {concat("MyNew", name($MT_TargetNode))} { "Element Content"}
```

The result of the Insert Node(s) action defined above is shown in the screenshot below.



Append Node(s)

When the event is triggered, the Append Node(s) action appends one or more new nodes as a first or last child (set of nodes) of the node/s selected by the XPath expression for the *Append to Node* setting. The appended node/s can be a single node, sequence of nodes, or an entire tree fragment. These appended nodes are constructed using XQuery's XML constructor syntax. All seven XML node kinds can be constructed using this XQuery syntax: elements, attributes, text, document, comment, processing-instruction, and namespace.



Note: The difference between <u>Insert Node(s)</u> and <u>Append Node(s)</u> is that <u>Insert Node(s)</u> adds the node/s before the selected node/s, whereas <u>Append Node(s)</u> adds the node/s as (first or last) child nodes of the selected node/s.

Location of appended node/s

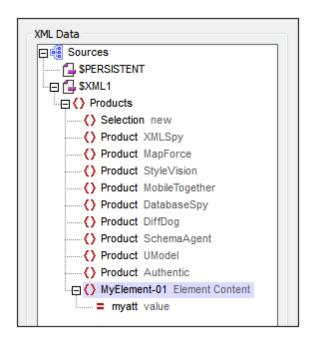
The new node/s are appended as the first or last child node/s of the node/s returned by the XPath expression for this setting (*Append to Node*). In the screenshot above, the new node/s are appended as the last child nodes of the context node, the Products element (selected with the XPath expression current()). To select whether the new node/s should be appended as the first or last child nodes/s, select the appropriate radio button in the action's definition.

New nodes

New nodes can be entered as direct XML constructors as in the screenshot above:

```
<MyElement-01 myatt="value">Element Content/MyElement-01>
```

This appends the element MyElement-01 after the last Product element, as in the screenshot below.



You can also use an XPath locator expression to append a node (and all its descendants) from a data source on the page. For example:

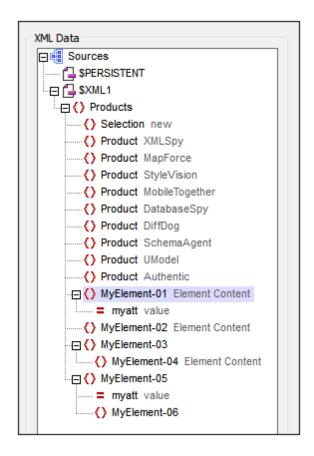
\$XML2/Row

XQuery's computed node constructors can also be used, for example:

```
element MyElement-01 {xs:string("Element Content")}
attribute myatt{"value"}
```

The following XPath expression produces the output shown in the screenshot below, appended as the last child nodes of the Products element, that is, after the last current child node (the last Product node).

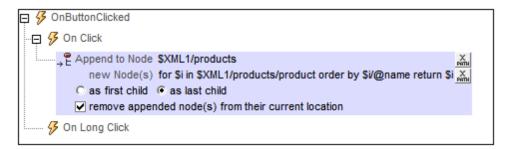
```
<MyElement-01 myatt="value">Element Content</MyElement-01>,
element MyElement-02 {"Element Content"},
element MyElement-03 {element MyElement-04 {"Element Content"}},
element MyElement-05{attribute myatt{"value"}, element MyElement-06{}}
```



Removing appended nodes from their original locations

If the appended node/s are obtained from one of the project's data sources, you can delete the node/s from their original location by selecting the *Remove appended node(s) from their current location* check box. If new nodes are constructed directly—that is, without reference to the project's data sources—then selecting this option will have no effect on the data sources.

A good example of how to use the *Remove appended node(s) from their current location* option is the sorting of nodes. Suppose we have a tree with this structure: \$XML1/products/product/@name. We want to sort the product nodes on the basis of their @name values. We can do this with the Append Node(s) definition shown in the screenshot below.



- We append the new nodes as last child to the \$XML1/products node.
- The new nodes are generated with the XPath expression: for \$i in \$XML1/products/

product order by \$i/@name return \$i. The order by clause sorts the the sequence of product items before iterating over them.

 The Remove appended node(s) from their current location option removes the original unordered product sequence. This leaves us with the ordered sequence that was appended.

The \$MT_TargetNode variable

The node in the Append Node(s) definition that is targeted as the node in which to append child node/s, is automatically saved in MobileTogether Designer's built-in variable SMT_TargetNode.
This variable can then be used in the second XPath expression of the definition, as has been done in the screenshot below.

```
☐ If Selection='new' XX

☐ Then

Then

Append to Node current()

new Node(s) element{concat("MyNew", name($MT_TargetNode/*[last()]))} {"Element Content"} XX

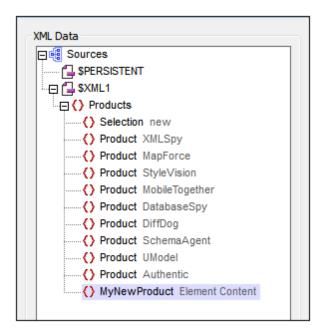
C as first child  as last child

remove appended node(s) from their current location
```

The second XPath expression uses the target node (\$MT_TargetNode) to find the target node's last child element and then uses the name of that child element to build the name of the new element.

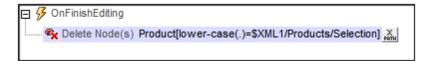
```
element {concat("MyNew", name($MT TargetNode/*[last()]))} { "Element Content"}
```

The result of the Append Node(s) action defined above (when the target node is \$XML1/Products) is shown in the screenshot below.

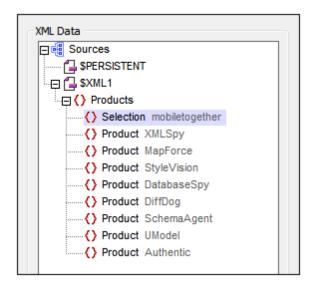


Delete Node(s)

When the event is triggered, the Delete Node(s) action deletes the node/s selected in the action's XPath expression.



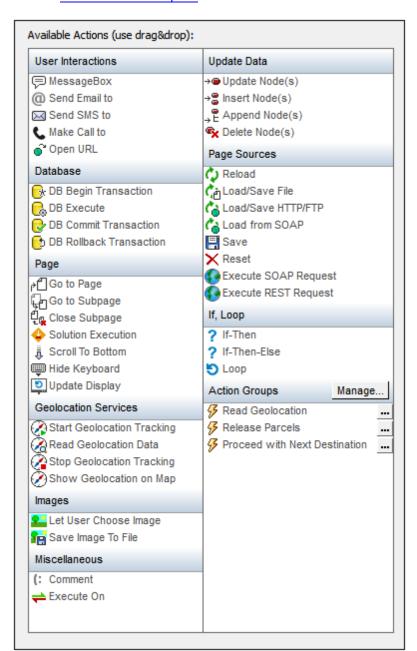
The definition in the screenshot above is for an <code>OnFinishedEditing</code> event of a combo box that updates the <code>\$XMLlProducts/Selection</code> element. The context node is <code>Products</code>. The action deletes the child <code>Product</code> element that has content, which when converted to lowercase matches the (lowercase) content of the <code>Selection</code> element. In the screenshot below, <code>mobiletogether</code> has been selected in the combo box and becomes the value of the <code>Selection</code> element. The <code>Product</code> element containing the text <code>"MobileTogether"</code> has been deleted.



Page Sources

The following actions are available in the Page Sources group of the Actions dialog (screenshot below):

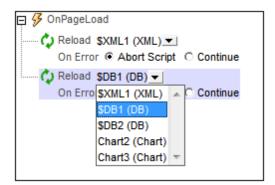
- Reload
- Load/Save File
- Load/Save HTTP/FTP
- Load from SOAP
- Save
- Reset
- Execute SOAP Request
- Execute REST Request



The actions in this group are available for page events and control events. The fastest way to access the Actions dialog (*screenshot above*) is to right-click the page or control and select the page/control actions command. See also Page Events and Control Events.

Reload

Reloads the external resource specified in the action's combo box (see screenshot below). External resources referenced by the project are available as entries in the combo box, and include XML files, charts, and images.



Note the following:

- Notice that the screenshot above contains entries for chart controls. If selected for update, the chart image will be updated when the event is triggered. Image controls can also have their linked images updated with the Update action.
- Updates can also be triggered by control events. This means, for example, that when a
 combo box is edited, the OnFinishEditing event of the combo box can be set to update
 the image linked to an image control. See the Quick Start (Part 1) tutorial for an example
 of this.
- To reload multiple resources when the event is triggered, add multiple Reload actions, as has been done in the screenshot above.

Load/Save File

You can set the action to either: (i) load data from a file, or (ii) save data to a file. To specify whether it is a load action or a save action that is carried out, select the appropriate radio button (see screenshot below).

Load from file

For each LoadFromFile action, you can select one data source from the action's combo box (see screenshot below). You can then specify a file from which to load data for that data source when the event is triggered.

```
OnPageLoad

Color Continue

Source C:\MobileTogether\AltovaProducts.xml
On Error Abort Script Continue

Source Continue

Source Continue

Source Continue

Source Abort Script Continue

Source altova://folder_resource/invoice/eclipse/artifacts.mdb
On Error Abort Script Continue
```

To load data for multiple data sources when the event is triggered, add multiple LoadFromFile actions, as shown in the screenshot above.

Save to file

Saves the data source that is selected in the action's combo box to the XML file specified in the *Target* field (see *screenshot below*). The encoding of the XML file is specified in the *Encoding* field. To save data for multiple data sources, add multiple SaveToFile actions.

```
OnSubmitButtonClicked

Save to File

SXML1 (XML) 

File Path C:\MobileTogether\AltovaProducts.xml ...

Encoding Unicode UTF-8 ...

On Error Abort Script C Continue
```

To save data from multiple data sources when the event is triggered, add multiple <code>SaveToFile</code> actions. To add another <code>SaveToFile</code> action, drag the <code>Load/SaveFile</code> action into the event tab, and set its radio button to the <code>SaveToFile</code> action.

Note: The SaveToFile action cannot be used to save to DBs. For saving to DBs, use the <u>Save</u> action and select one of the page source trees, or use the <u>DBExecute</u> action.

Load/Save HTTP/FTP

You can set the action to either: (i) load data from an HTTP/FTP file, or (ii) save data to a file via HTTP/FTP. To specify whether it is a load action or a save action that is carried out, select the appropriate radio button (see screenshot below).

Load from HTTP/FTP

For each <code>LoadFromHTTP/FTP</code> action, you can select one data source from the available page sources and specify an HTTP/FTP source from which to load data. When the event is triggered, data from the HTTP/FTP source will be loaded into the page data source you have specified. To load data for multiple data sources, add multiple <code>LoadFromHTTP/FTP</code> actions.

```
OnPageLoad

Color Continue

On PageLoad

Color Continue

On PageLoad

Source http://www.altova.com/mobiletogether/abcd/test.xml

On Error Abort Script Continue
```

Save to HTTP/FTP

Saves the data source that is selected in the action's combo box to an XML or HTML file at a target HTTP or FTP location that is specified in the *Target* field of action's definition (see screenshot below). To enter access details of the HTTP/FTP location, click This displays the Edit Web Access Settings dialog for selecting HTTP/FTP sources; here you can enter the file's URL and security settings.

```
OnSubmitButtonClicked

C Load from HTTP/FTP Save to HTTP/FTP

$XML1 (XML) \( \subseteq \)

Destination http://www.altova.com/mobiletogether/abcd/test.xml ...

On Error Abort Script C Continue
```

To save data from multiple data sources or to multiple destinations, add multiple <code>SaveTohttp/ftp</code> actions. To add another <code>SaveTohttp/ftp</code> action, drag the <code>Load/SaveHttp/ftp</code> action into the event tab, and set its radio button to the <code>SaveTohttp/ftp</code> action.

Load from SOAP

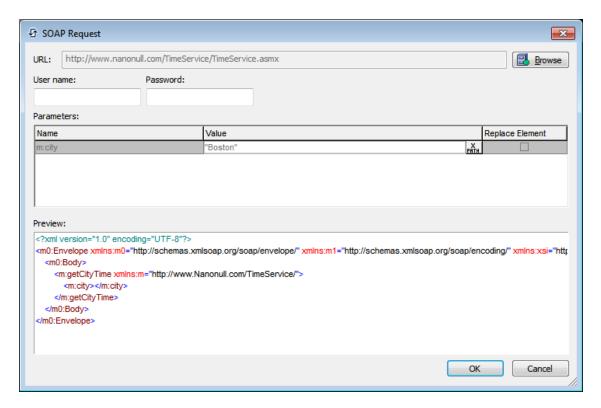
For each LoadFromSOAP action, you can load data from a SOAP request that is generated from a WSDL file. To choose the WSDL file, click the **Additional Settings** button of the *Source* field (see screenshot below).



Choose your WSDL file, and select the SOAP operation you want. The SOAP request is automatically generated from the WSDL file and is displayed in SOAP Request dialog. Click **OK** in the SOAP Request dialog to save this as the SOAP request to use. The action now displays the URL of the web service to which the SOAP request will be sent at runtime (see the Source field in the screenshot below).



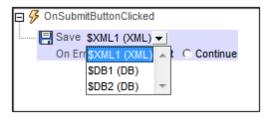
If you wish to change the SOAP request after one has already been defined, click the **Additional Dialog** button of the *Settings* field (*see screenshot above*). This displays the SOAP Request dialog (*screenshot below*). Click the **Browse** button of the *URL* field to choose a WSDL file and restart the process of defining the SOAP request.



To load data from multiple data sources when the event is triggered, add multiple LoadFromSOAP actions.

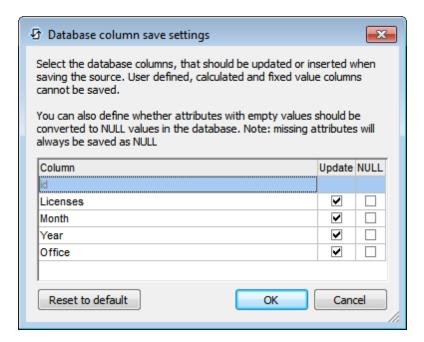
Save

Saves data of the data source that is selected in the action's combo box to the default file of that data source. The data source must be an editable XML file or DB. To save data for multiple data sources, add multiple Save actions. Note that page sources that are read as JSON will also be saved as JSON (not as XML even though the data is presented in the GUI as an XML tree); also see Page Source Options.



If the data source that is being saved is a DB, then, by default, all editable columns are selected for being updated (see *screenshot below*). You can choose to save the modified data only (primary key needed), or all table rows (no primary key needed).



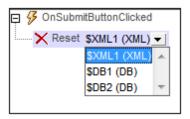


The dialog displays the columns of the data source. Columns that cannot be updated (because they are user-defined, fixed-value, or calculated-value) will not have an *Update* option check box. Deselect the columns you do not want to update. Attributes with empty values can be converted to NULL values in the DB by checking that column's *NULL* check box. Note that missing attributes

will always be saved as \mathtt{NULL} . If you wish to reset the Save settings so that all columns are updated, click **Reset to default**.

Reset

Resets the data source that is selected in the action's combo box to the default values defined in the Page Sources Pane.



Execute SOAP Request

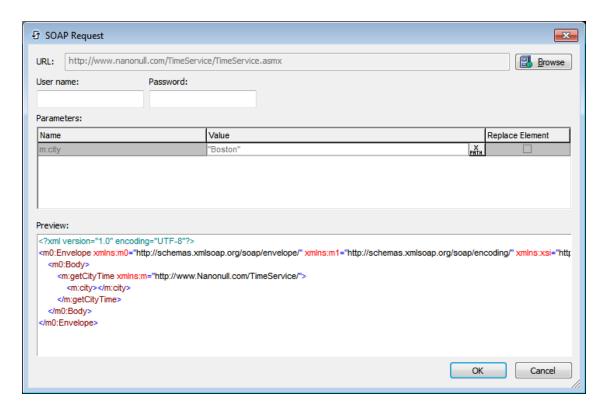
Executes a SOAP request that is generated from a WSDL file. To choose the WSDL file, click the **Additional Settings** button of the *Settings* field (see *screenshot below*).



Choose your WSDL file, and select the SOAP operation you want. The SOAP request is automatically generated from the WSDL file and is displayed in SOAP Request dialog. Click **OK** in the SOAP Request dialog to save this as the SOAP request to execute. The action now displays the URL of the web service to which the SOAP request will be sent at runtime (see the Settings field in the screenshot below). If you wish to store the response to the SOAP request, then check the Store latest result option (see screenshot below). The SOAP response will be saved in the \$MT_HTTPExecute_Result_ variable. You can then use this variable to access the data in the SOAP response at some other location in the design. Note, however, that the \$MT_HTTPExecute_Result_ variable can also be used by other actions, such as the Execute REST Request_ action. So the variable will contain the last result generated by any of the actions that use it.



If you wish to change the SOAP request after one has already been defined, click the **Additional Dialog** button of the *Settings* field (see screenshot above). This displays the SOAP Request dialog (screenshot below).



Click the **Browse** button of the *URL* field to choose a WSDL file and restart the process of defining the SOAP request that you want to execute.

Execute REST Request

Executes a REST request that you define in the <u>RESTful API Request dialog</u>. To define the REST request, click the **Additional Settings** button of the *Settings* field (see screenshot below).



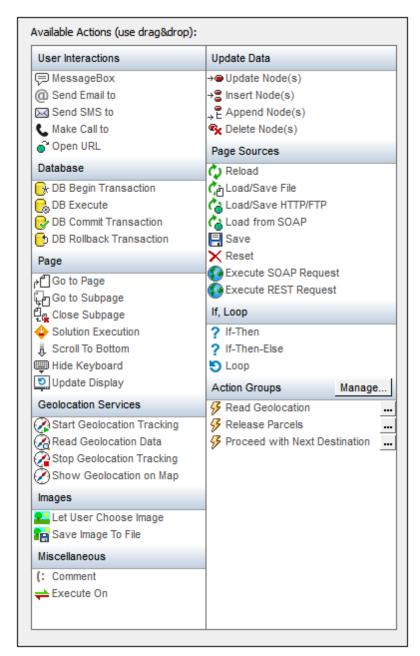
After you have defined the REST request, the URL of the request is displayed in the *Settings* field of the action. The request will be executed at runtime. If you wish to store the result of the request in the https://www.mtmtpsecute_result variable, check the *Store latest result* option (see screenshot above). You can then use the httpsecute_result variable to access the result elsewhere in the design. Note, however, that this variable can also be used by other actions, such as the Execute_scale Request action. So the variable will contain the last result generated by any of the actions that use it.

If you wish to change the REST request after one has already been defined, click the **Additional Dialog** button of the *Settings* field (*see screenshot above*). This displays the <u>RESTful API Request dialog</u>, in which you you can define the new request.

If, Loop

The following actions are available in the If, Loop group of the Actions dialog (screenshot below):

- If-Then
- If-Then-Else
- Loop



The actions in this group are available for page events and control events. The fastest way to access the Actions dialog (*screenshot above*) is to right-click the page or control and select the page/control actions command. See also <u>Page Events</u> and <u>Control Events</u>.

If-Then

Sets the action to be carried out if the ${\tt IF}$ condition evaluates to ${\tt true}.$ The action to be carried out is dropped as a child of the ${\tt THEN}$ clause.



The condition in the definition above tests whether the current element has an attribute called company that has a value of Altova. If true, the Altova website URL is opened.

If-Then-Else

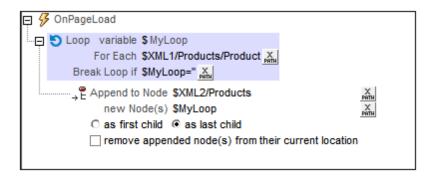
Sets the actions to be carried out for both the true and false evaluations of the IF condition. The action to be carried out for a true evaluation is dropped as a child of the THEN clause. The action to be carried out for a false evaluation is dropped as a child of the ELSE clause.



The condition in the definition above tests whether the current element has an attribute called company that has a value of Altova. If true, the Altova website URL is opened. If false, the solution is exited.

Loop

The Loop action (see screenshot below) iterates over a sequence of items that you define using the For Each and Break Loop If settings. Within the loop you can then define a set of actions to perform during every iteration. For example, in the screenshot below, for each iteration, an Append to Node action is carried out.



The sequence over which the loop iterates is defined by the XPath expressions of the *For Each* and *Break Loop If* settings. The key points to note are given below.

- For Each: Can be a sequence named in the XPath expression (for example: 1 to 7) or one obtained from an XML tree (for example: \$XML1/Products/Product selects a sequence of all Product elements in the \$XML1 tree; see screenshot above). The For Each setting can be specified with or without the Break Loop If setting. If there is no Break Loop If setting, then the loop is exited when all iterations have been completed.
- Loop variable: The loop variable is the variable that holds the item of the sequence that is currently being iterated over. The loop variable is identified by a name, which you enter by first double-clicking after the sign and then typing the name. In the screenshot above, the loop variable is named Myloop. It is referenced like any other XPath variable, that is, with a sign before its name (smyloop). The variable will be in scope within the loop; this means that you cannot reference the variable in an XPath expression that is outside the loop. In the screenshot above, the loop variable is referenced in the New Node setting of the Append to Node action. This is a valid reference since the Append to Node action has been created within the loop; the variable is therefore in scope at this point. (It is also referenced in the Break Loop If setting.)
- Break Loop If: This XPath expression is evaluated before each iteration. If the expression evaluates to true(), then the loop is exited. In the screenshot above, the XPath expression \$MyLoop='' specifies that the loop will be exited when the content of the \$MyLoop variable is evaluated as being empty. This will happen when the first empty Product element is encountered and placed in the MyLoop variable.
- Important: Modifications to the sequence being iterated are not allowed while the loop is being executed. In the screenshot above, the new nodes that are added with the Appendto Node action are added to another XML tree (\$XML2). The sequence being iterated is in the \$XML1 tree, and cannot be modified. However, there is an elegant way to modify the sequence being iterated over, which is entirely consistent with XPath logic: Instead of iterating directly over the nodes, iterate over a number sequence that is tied to the node sequence. For example, instead of iterating over the sequence of Product nodes in the screenshot example above, we can iterate over a range of numbers that is tied to the node sequence. The XPath expression of the For Each setting can be changed from \$XML1/Products/Product to for \$i in 1 to count(\$XML1/Products/Product) return \$i. It is a sequence of numbers that is now being iterated over. As a result, Product nodes are free to be modified within the loop. The current Product node within

the loop can be accessed with the XPath expression: \$XML1/Products/Product[\$i].

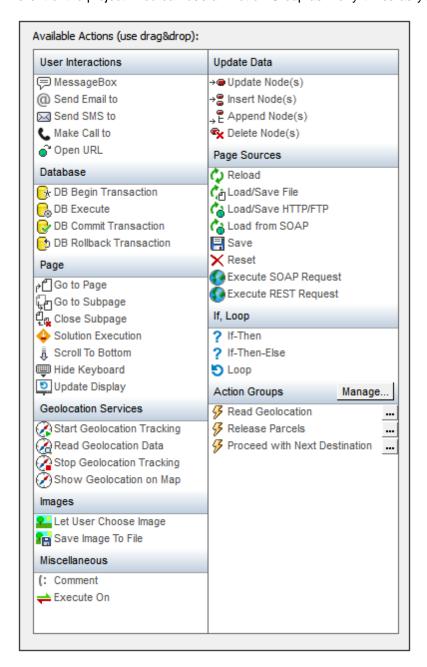
The actions defined in the screenshot above create a duplicate tree fragment. When the page is loaded, the Loop action iterates over the \$XML1/Products/Product elements. During each iteration, the current Product node is stored in the MyLoop variable. This Product node (in the \$MyLoop variable) is then added as the last child of the \$XML2/Products node. The loop continues till the last Product element has been copied from \$XML1/Products to \$XML2/Products. See screenshot below.



Action Groups

An Action Group defines a sequence of actions to execute. If the same sequence of actions has to be executed at various points in the workflow, then it is more efficient to create an Action Group that contains this sequence of actions and then execute this Action Group at the various workflow points.

An Action Group is created for the entire project. You can create as many Action Groups as you like. After an Action Group has been created, it is available for use on any page event or control event of the project. You can use an Action Group as many times as you like across events.



This section describes how to create and edit Action Groups and how to use Action Groups.

Creating and Editing Action Groups

An Action Group is created for an entire project and is available for use by all page events and control events of the project. The process for creating and editing Action Groups is as follows:

- Open the Manage Group Actions dialog to create an (empty) Action Group
- In the editor pane of an Actions dialog, create the contents of the Action Group
- You can edit an Action Group by double-clicking the Action Group entry in the Actions dialog
- You can delete an Action Group in the Manage Group Actions dialog

How to do all this is described in detail below.

Accessing the Manage Group Actions dialog

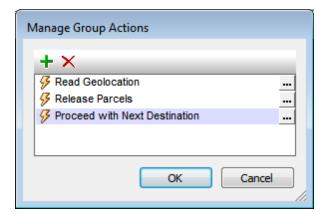
To access the Manage Group Actions dialog, open an Actions dialog and click Manage in the Action Groups pane (see screenshot below). The Actions dialog is available for control events and page events. It can also be accessed via the menu command Project | Action Groups.



The Manage Group Actions dialog is described below.

The Manage Group Actions dialog

In the Manage Group Actions dialog (screenshot below), you can add and delete Action Groups.



Adding an Action Group

Click Add in the toolbar of the dialog. A new Action Group with a default name is added to the list

in the Manage Group Actions dialog (see screenshot above). Double-click the Action Group's name to edit the name, and then click **OK**. The new Action Group is added to the list of groups in the Action Groups pane of the Actions dialog. You can now create the contents of the Action Group (see description below).

Deleting an Action Group

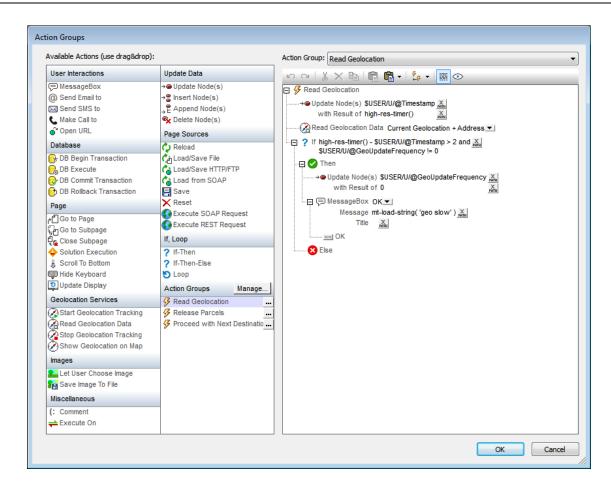
Select the Action Group you want to delete, then click **Delete** in the toolbar of the dialog (see screenshot above).

Creating and editing the contents of Action Groups

To edit the content of an Action Group, click the **Edit** button located to the right of the Action Group entry (*see screenshot below*). Alternatively, you can double-click the Action Group entry.



This opens the Action Group in the editor pane of the dialog (see screenshot below). To edit the contents of an Action Group in the editor pane, drag and drop actions and action groups from the Available Actions pane on the left. Click **OK** to finish. The Action Group you have edited is available for use.



Using Action Groups

An Action Group is used like any other action. Drag and drop it into the definition of an event's actions. All the actions in the Action Group will be carried out when the event is triggered. In the screenshot below, for example, an Action Group is executed within the Then clause of an If-Then action. (See the Execute Action Group action, highlighted in yellow.)



Note that the Execute Action Group action has a combo box that enables you to select any of the Action Groups defined in the project. You can click the action's **Edit** button to edit the currently selected Action Group.

8.5 Tables

Tables can be <u>static</u>, <u>repeating</u>, or <u>dynamic</u>. Static tables are useful for presenting data in neatly ordered rows and columns. Repeating and dynamic tables can be used to accurately display and modify the structure of database rows or repeating XML structures. A <u>repeating table</u> creates a new table for every occurrence of the element that is associated with the table. In a <u>dynamic</u> table, on the other hand, it is not the entire table, but a table row group, that repeats.

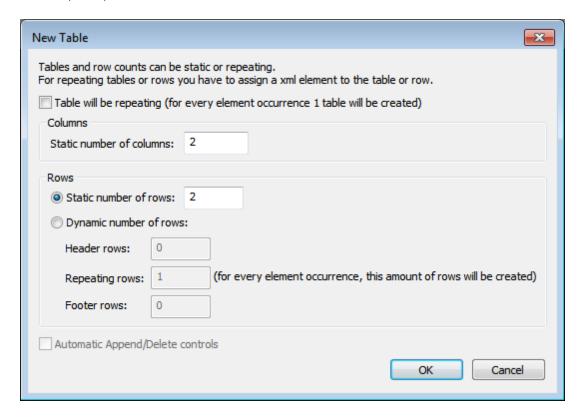
All three types of table are added to the design by dropping the <u>Table control</u> in the design. The type of table is specified at the time the table is dropped into the design. The internal structure of the table can be modified at any subsequent time. Properties for the entire table and for individual columns, rows, and cells are specified by selecting the table component concerned and assigning it properties in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>.

This section describes how to use different types of tables, and it is organized as follows:

- Static Tables
- Repeating Tables
- Dynamic Tables
- Table Properties
- Table Context Menu

Static Tables

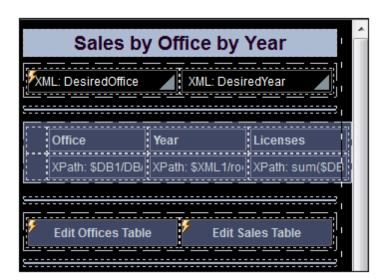
Static tables are useful for presenting data in neatly ordered rows and columns. A table is defined as a static table at the time when the <u>Table control</u> is dropped into the design. In the New Table dialog that appears when the control is dropped in the design (*screenshot below*), specify a static number of columns and a static number of rows, as shown in the screenshot below. On clicking **OK**, a static table with the specified number of columns and rows is inserted. You can now add content to the cells of the table and specify style properties for the table and for individual columns, rows, and cells.



The cells of a static table can contain the following:

- A nested table (static or dynamic)
- A page control (with or without a link to a data source node)

Cell content is typically a <u>page control</u>. The screenshot below shows three static tables in a design.



All the cells in these tables, except two cells, contain one control each.

- The two cells of the first table contain <u>combo boxes</u>.
- The second table contains two empty cells (used for spacing) and six cells with one Label control each.
- The third table contains two <u>buttons</u>. (The lightning symbols on some controls indicate that the controls have <u>actions</u> defined for them.)

Table restructuring commands are available in the <u>context menu of the table</u>. <u>Table formatting properties</u> are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>.

Repeating Tables

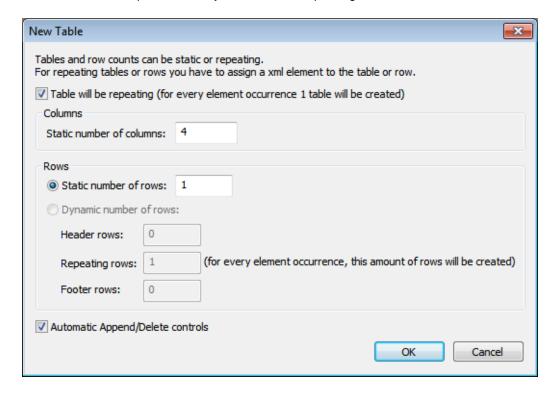
Repeating tables can be used: (i) to accurately display the structure of database rows or repeating XML structures, and (ii) to allow the end user to conveniently edit content and add or delete entire DB rows or XML structures. A single DB row, or a single instance of the XML element that repeats, is associated with one table of the repeating table structure. A <u>repeating table</u> is different than a <u>dynamic table</u> in that in a repeating table it is the **entire table** that is associated with a repeating structure from a data source, whereas in a dynamic table it is a **table row group** within a table that is associated with the repeating data structure.

A table is defined as a repeating table at the time when the <u>Table control</u> is dropped into the design. To change a static table to a repeating table after the table has been created, change its Repeating property to true.

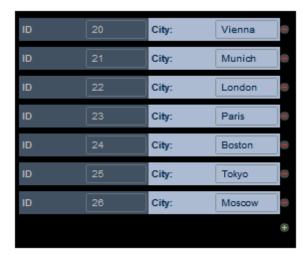
Creating a repeating table

Set up a repeating table as follows:

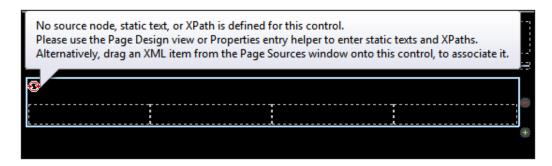
1. In the New Table dialog that appears when the Table control is dropped in the design (*screenshot below*), check *Table will be repeating* to make the table repeating. Note that it is the table that repeats for every instance of a repeating data row.



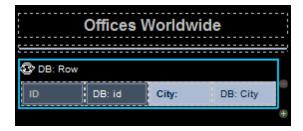
- 2. Specify the number of static columns and rows that the repeating table will have. You can subsequently add columns and rows to the repeating table via the <u>table's context menu</u>.
- 3. Specify whether automatic Append/Delete controls are to be added. If added, each repeating table in the solution will have a **Delete** button and the entire repeating table structure will have an **Append** button to append a repeating table to the structure (see the screenshot of a simulated solution below).



4. On clicking **OK** in the New Table dialog, the table is added to the design. The repeating table must now be associated with the repeating element from the data source (see screenshot below).



- 5. Associate a repeating element with the repeating table by dragging and dropping the element from the Page Sources Pane into the table.
- 6. You can now add content to the cells of the table. Cell content can be a nested table (static or dynamic), or a page control (with or without a link to a data source node), or even page source nodes. When a page source node is dropped into a cell, the data in that cell will be editable. In the screenshot below, four controls have been added (from left to right): a label, edit field, label, and edit field.



This dynamic table produces the following repeating structure in the MobileTogether solution.

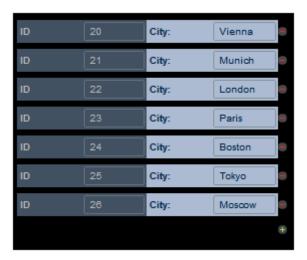


Table restructuring commands are available in the <u>context menu of the table</u>. <u>Table formatting properties</u> are available in the <u>Styles & Properties</u> Pane.

Dynamic Tables

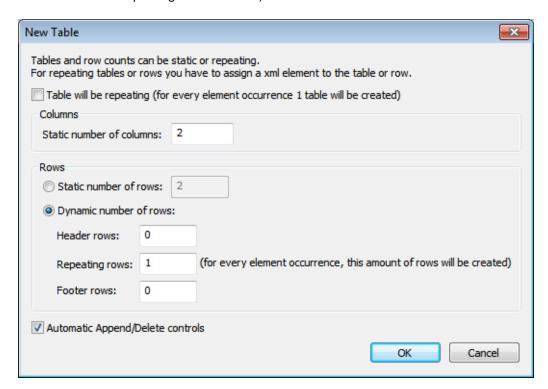
Dynamic tables can be used: (i) to accurately display the structure of database rows or repeating XML structures, and (ii) to allow the end user to conveniently edit content and add or delete entire DB rows or XML structures. A single DB row, or a single instance of the XML element that repeats, is associated with one table row group within a table. A <u>dynamic table</u> is different than a <u>repeating table</u> in that in a dynamic table it is a **table row group** within a table that is associated with a repeating structure from a data source, whereas in a repeating table it is the **entire table** that is associated with the repeating data structure.

A table is defined as a dynamic table at the time when the <u>Table control</u> is dropped into the design. To convert a repeating table to a dynamic table, right-click the table row to convert, then select **Dynamic or Repeating Table | Convert this Row to Repeating Row**.

Creating a dynamic table

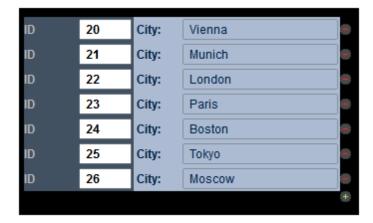
Set up a dynamic table as follows:

In the New Table dialog that appears when the control is dropped (screenshot below),
make sure that Table will be repeating is unchecked. Then select Dynamic number of
rows. This will create a table that contains a table row group that is dynamic (and will be
associated with a repeating data structure).

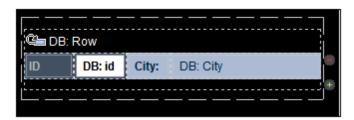


- 2. Specify the number of columns and rows that the dynamic table will have. You can also specify that the dynamic row group should have a header and/or footer.
- 3. Specify whether automatic Append/Delete controls are to be added. If added, each repeating row in the solution will have a **Delete** button and the table row group will have an **Append** button to append a table row (see the screenshot of a simulated solution

below).



- 4. On clicking **OK** in the New Table dialog, the table is added to the design. The repeating table row group must now be associated with the repeating element from the data source. Associate a repeating element with the repeating table by dragging and dropping the element from the Page Sources Pane into the table.
- 5. You can now add content to the cells of the table. Cell content can be a nested table (static or dynamic), or a page control (with or without a link to a data source node), or even page source nodes. When a page source node is dropped into a cell, the data in that cell will be editable. In the screenshot below, four controls have been added (from left to right): a label, edit field, label, and edit field.



This dynamic table produces the following repeating structure in the MobileTogether solution.

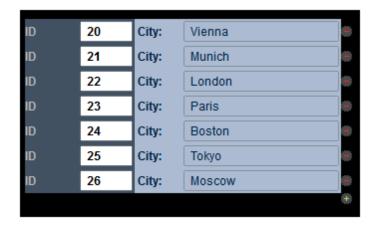
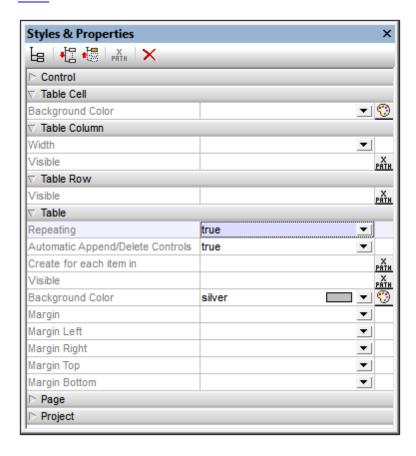
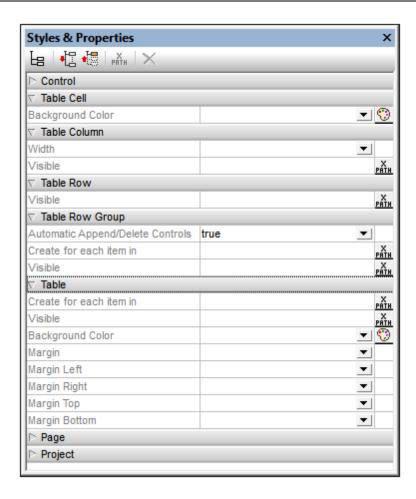


Table restructuring commands are available in the <u>context menu of the table</u>. <u>Table formatting properties</u> are available in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>.

Table Properties

Certain properties can be set for a table's cells, columns, and rows, as well as for the entire table. The screenshot below left shows the properties of <u>static tables</u> and <u>repeating tables</u>; the screenshot below right shows the properties of <u>dynamic tables</u>. Dynamic tables have an additional set of *Table Row Group* properties. All these properties are described in the section <u>Controls</u> | <u>Table</u>.





Property: Repeating

The Repeating property defines whether the table is <u>repeating</u> or <u>static</u>. Its values are true or false. The value of this property is automatically assigned at the time a repeating or static table is created. A <u>repeating table</u> has a <u>Repeating</u> property of true, while a <u>static table</u> has a <u>Repeating</u> property of false. After a table has been created as a particular type (repeating or static), its type can be changed by changing the value of the table's <u>Repeating</u> property.

The Repeating property is not available for dynamic tables.

Property: Create for each item in

The create for each item in property is available for tables (repeating tables) and for table row groups (dynamic tables). It specifies the number of times the repeating table or repeating table row group is re-created. This number is equal to the number of items in the sequence returned by the property's XPath expression. The expression can return two types of sequence:

 Nodes from a data source tree. This is an alternative to associating a repeating table (or table row group) with a data source node—an association made by dragging and dropping

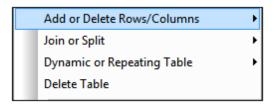
the node onto the table. An XPath expression of this kind also allows more flexibility in the node selection. For example, the XPath expression \$xml1/Offices/Office[@location='US'] returns a sequence of Office nodes that have an attribute of @location='US'. The US filter cannot be applied by using the alternative method of dropping the Office node onto the table. However, this filter can be achieved with the Create for each item in property.

• Items unrelated to the data source tree. For example, in the month October 2014, the expression 1 to subsequence(age-details(xs:date("2014-01-01")), 2, 1) returns a nine-item sequence, namely, the integers from 1 to 9, which is the number of months that have elapsed between 01 January 2014 and a day in October 2014. This is because the basic XPath expression is 1 to x. And x (according to the subsequence function) is the single second item of the three-item sequence returned by the age-details function. This latter function returns the "age" of the current day (in our month of October 2014) relative to the input date (01 January 2014) in terms of the three-item sequence years, months, days (which in this case will be 0 years, 9 months and XX days). The second item of the three-item sequence is the number of months in the age, which is 9. Since the returned sequence contains nine items (the range between from 1 to 9), the table will be created nine times.

Note: If you wish to preview the results of XPath expressions, run MobileTogether Designer's built-in simulator (**Project | Simulate Workflow**), and, in the Simulator dialog that appears, click **Evaluate XPath** and then **Evaluator**.

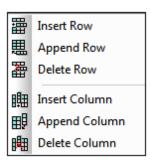
Table Context Menu

The context menu of both <u>static tables</u> and <u>dynamic tables</u> has the same commands (*see screenshot below*). These commands allow the structure of the table to be modified after the table has been created.



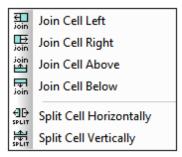
Add or Delete Rows/Columns

Hovering over the command displays a submenu (*screenshot below*) with commands that allow you to insert/append rows/columns relative to the currently selected cell. The currently selected row/column can also be deleted.



Join or Split

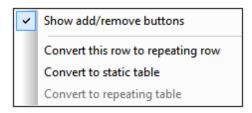
Hovering over the command displays a submenu (*screenshot below*) with commands that allow you to join the currently selected cell with an adjacent cell. The currently selected cell can also be split horizontally or vertically.



Page Design Tables 421

Dynamic or Repeating Table

Hovering over the command displays a submenu (*screenshot below*) with commands that allow you to convert the table to another type (<u>static</u>, <u>repeating</u>, <u>dynamic</u>). You can also specify that Append/Delete controls are added automatically.



Delete Table

Deletes the selected table.

8.6 Images

Images can be added to the design by both the designer and the end-user, and images can be added via an URL or can be stored as Base64-encoded text in XML files. The basis of image functionality is provided by the Image control, which positions the image in the design and defines the basic properties of the image. Key mechanisms and usage are described in the sub-sections of this section.

- <u>Image Source</u> is the property of the <u>Image control</u> that selects the image to display. This
 section describes the two types of image sources that can be used: (i) image files
 located by URL, and (ii) images as Base64-encoded strings.
- Base64-Encoded Images describes how to use Base64-encoded images in your design.
- Exchangeable Image File Format (Exif) is a format for storing image metadata with an image. This section shows how individual pieces of Exif data can be retrieved and used in a design.
- Images Chosen by the End User explains the mechanism with which the end user of a
 MobileTogether solution can select images that will be stored in a database. These
 images can be stored as image files or as Base64-encoded strings.
- <u>Transforming Images</u> describes how to transform Base64 images (for example, resizing or rotating an image) and the issues related to transforming (loss of Exif data and memory issues on the client).
- Images in Databases lists the ways in which images can be stored in databases.

These mechanisms are enabled by powerful <u>Image actions</u> and <u>image-related Altova XPath</u> extension functions.

Image Source

The following types of image sources can be used in page designs:

• Binary image files of common formats, such as PNG, BMP, JPG. Images that have binary file sources reference the URL of the image file.

Base64-encoded strings, which are text encodings of images. Images that have Base64-encoded images access the Base64-encoded string via an XPath expression. The XPath expression typically returns a node containing the Base64 string. MobileTogether reads the Base64 string and generates the encoded image from the string.

Inserting an image in the design

To insert an image in the design, do the following:

- 1. Drop an Image control into the design.
- 2. In the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>, set the image property <u>Image Source Type</u> to either url or base64, to match the type of the image being inserted. The default setting of this property is url.
- 3. Specify the image in the <u>Image source</u> property. If an image file is being referenced, specify the URL. If a Base64-encoded image is being referenced, use the <u>Image source</u> property's XPath expression either to supply the Base64 string directly or to supply the XML node containing the Base64 string. Note that, for both source types (url or base64), there are two alternative ways of specifying the property's value: (i) With the <u>Image source</u> property selected, click the XPath toolbar button of the <u>Page Sources Pane</u>, and enter an XPath expression that evaluates to the URL or the Base64 string; (ii) Drop an XML node containing the URL or Base64 string from the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> onto the <u>Image control</u>.

Note: Every time an image source is changed (for example, by a user selection), a Reload action for the image (unless it is a Base64 image) is required in order to display the new image.

Inserting image files via URL

Insert the image file by browsing for it or selecting a global resource. For details, see the <u>Image</u> <u>source</u> property. For an example of inserting images via a URL, see the <u>QuickStart Tutorial</u>.

Embedding URL-sourced images in the design file

If an image is sourced via a URL (and not as a Base64-encoded image), the image can be embedded in the design file. Use the <u>Embed Image property of the Image control</u>. If this property is set to true, the image is converted to Base64-encoding and embedded in the design file.

Inserting Base64-encoded images

When an image is encoded as Base64 text, it can be stored as the text content of an XML element node. As a result it is easier to transport, and its metadata can be easily parsed and retrieved. In the listing below, the Base64-encoded image is the content of the cpng> element.

```
<images><png>iVBORw0KGgoAAAANSUhEU...</png></images>
```

To insert a Base64-encoded image, the XPath expression of the <u>Image source</u> property must resolve to the image's Base64-encoded text string. You can also drop an XML node that contains the image's Base64-encoded text string from the <u>Page Sources Pane</u> onto the <u>Image control</u>.

See the next section, <u>Base64-Encoded Images</u>, for an example of how to use Base64-encoded images.

Base64-Encoded Images

```
<images><png>iVBORwOKGgoAAAANSUhEU...</png></images>
```

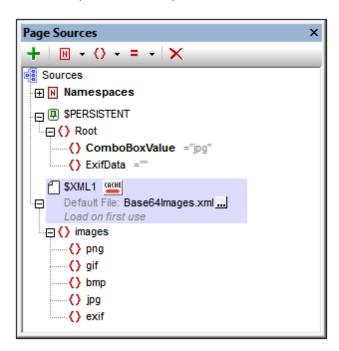
To insert a Base64-encoded image, the XPath expression of the Image Source property must resolve to the image's Base64-encoded text string. You can also drop an XML node that contains the image's Base64-encoded string from the Page Sources Pane onto the Image control. The example below explains how Base64 images can be used in designs.

Note: Unlike with other image formats, a Base64 image source does **not** need to be reloaded when the image source is changed (for example, by a user selection).

Example file: Base64Images.mtd

The design file Base64Images.mtd is located in your (My) Documents MobileTogether folder: MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\. You can open this file in MobileTogether Designer, run it in the simulator (F5), and look through the design definitions.

The design file uses Base64-encoded images that are stored in the XML file Base64Images.xml (also located in the Tutorials folder). The structure of the XML file is shown in the screenshot below. The images element has five child elements, each of which has an image of a different format stored as a Base64 text string. The \$PERSISTENT tree is used to save temporary user selections (ComboBoxValue) and the Exif data of the selected image, if such data exists.



The design (*screenshot below*) has a label for the page title, and two tables. The first table contains a combo box and an image. The second table contains a label and an edit field.



What we want to do is to select an image type in the combo box (see simulator screenshot below). The combo box selection is used to select the Base64 image (from the XML file) to display.



Here are the important points to note:

- The OnPageLoad event initializes the PERSISTENT/ComboBoxValue node with a value of ipg.
- The combo box is associated with the node \$PERSISTENT/ComboBoxValue (done by dropping the node from the Page Sources Pane onto the combo box). This association means that the current value of the node is displayed in the combo box, and that the combo box selection automatically updates the node.
- The dropdown list of the combo box is created with a simple list of values.
- The <u>Image Source Type</u> property of the Image control is set to base64.
- The Tmage source property of the Image control is set to the following XPath expression: \$XML1/images/element()[local-name() eq \$PERSISTENT/Root/ComboBoxValue]. This selects the child element of the images element that has a name that is equal to the content of the node \$PERSISTENT/ComboBoxValue. In short, we select the Base64-encoded image element in the XML file that has a name that matches the content of the \$PERSISTENT/ComboBoxValue node.
- So, when the end user selects an item in the combo box, that item's value is entered in the node <code>\$PERSISTENT/ComboBoxValue</code>. The value in this node is then used to select the correct Base64 image element in the XML file. For example, if <code>png</code> is selected in the combo box, then <code>png</code> is entered as the value of the <code>\$PERSISTENT/ComboBoxValue</code> node. The XPath expression of the Image Source property then selects the <code>png</code> element of the XML file and displays its contents (the Base64-encoded PNG image) as the image.

• There is one important action still left. Every time a new value is selected in the combo box, we must specify that the image is <u>reloaded</u>. Every time the image is reloaded, it reads the value in \$PERSISTENT/ComboBoxValue, and retrieves the corresponding image from the XML file.

• In the second table, the type of the image is obtained from the Base64-encoded text string by using the Altova XPath extension function suggested-image-file-extension. This function takes a string (the Base64 image) as its argument and retrieves the file-extension information from the string. If no file-extension information is available in the Base64 string, then the empty string is returned. The XPath expression used is:

```
for $k
in suggested-image-file-extension($XML1/images/element()[local-name() eq
$PERSISTENT/Root/ComboBoxValue])
return if ($k != '') then $k else "Data not available"
```

The expression creates a variable (\$\&\) that holds the file extension returned by the **suggested-image-file-extension** function. If the variable is non-empty, then its content is displayed; otherwise, an appropriate message is displayed.

The next section, <u>Exchangeable Image File Format (Exif)</u>, describes the remaining part of the design, which deals with Exif data.

Exchangeable Image File Format (Exif)

Exchangeable image file format (Exif) is a standard that specifies the image formats used by some digital cameras and smartphone cameras. The metadata tags of the Exif standard hold a broad range of information ranging from the image's date-time and geolocation to camera settings and image composition details. When an Exif image is converted to Base64-encoding, the metadata in the image is also converted to Base64, and is available for retrieval.

Note: Not all digital cameras or smartphone cameras provide Exif data.

MobileTogether Designer's Exif functionality

MobileTogether Designer provides the following Exif-related functionality:

- The <u>Let User Choose Image action</u> provides an option that starts the camera application
 on the end user's client device. The photo that is taken is saved in an XML node as a
 Base64-encoded image. If the camera application uses the Exif format, then Exif
 metadata is also saved in the Base64-encoded image. This data is available for
 immediate retrieval from the XML node.
- An Altova XPath extension function called image-exif-data takes a Base64 string as its argument and returns all the Exif metadata contained in the string as attribute-value pairs. (See the description of the image-exif-data function for details.)
- An Altova XPath extension function called suggested-image-file-extension takes a Base64 string as its argument, parses the Exif metadata or alternative metadata for image filetype, and returns an image file extension (such as jpg, png, bmp). This is useful for automatically detecting the correct image format and saving the file with an appropriate file extension.
- The <u>Save Image to File action</u> enables a Base64-encoded image to be saved in a binary image format (such as jpg, png, bmp). Exif data is saved in the Base64-encoded text.

The example below explains how Exif data can be retrieved from a Base64-encoded image, and how this data can be used in a solution.

Note: Exif data will be lost if the image is resized or rotated.

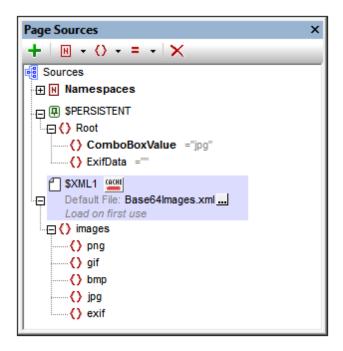
Example file: Base64Images.mtd

The design file Base64Images.mtd is located in your (My) Documents MobileTogether folder: MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\. You can open this file in MobileTogether Designer, run it in the simulator (F5), and look through the design definitions. The design's default file contains one image with Exif metadata.

Basic design

The design file uses Base64-encoded images that are stored in the XML file Base64Images.xml (also located in the Tutorials folder). The structure of the XML file is shown in the screenshot below. The images element has six child elements, each of which

has an image of a different format stored as a Base64 text string. It contains one image with Exif metadata (the exif element). The \$PERSISTENT tree is used to save temporary user selections (ComboBoxValue) and Exif metadata (ExifData).



The top part of the design (*screenshot below*) has a label for the page title, and two tables. The design of this part of the page is described in the previous section, <u>Base64-Encoded Images</u>. The objective is to allow the end user to select an image type in the combo box. This selection determines which Base64-encoded image in the XML file is selected for display in the cell to the right-of the combo box.

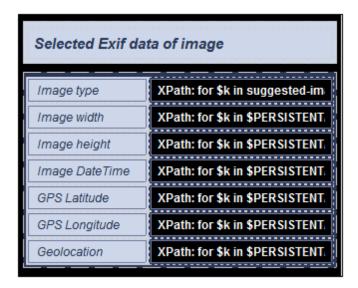


If the user selects the <code>exif</code> item in the combo box, then the Base64-encoded image in the <code>exif</code> element of the XML file is displayed. Exif metadata is displayed in two tables ("Selected Exif data of image" and "Exif metadata of the selected image"; see simulator screenshot below). In the simulator, if you expand the <code>\$PERSISTENT</code> tree in the XML Data pane (see screenshot below), you will see the Exif data that has been retrieved from the Base64 string. The design of the two Exif data display tables is described below. See the previous section, <code>Base64-Encoded Images</code>, for a detailed description of other parts of the design.



■ Selected Exif data of image

- Selected Exif data is presented in a static table consisting of two columns and multiple rows (screenshot below).
- The first column contains labels; the second column contains edit boxes, each having an XPath expression that returns one piece of Exif metadata.



• The *Image type* information is obtained from the Base64-encoded text string by using the Altova XPath extension function suggested-image-file-extension. This function takes a string (the Base64 image) as its argument and retrieves the file-extension information from the string. If no file-extension information is available in the Base64 string, then the function returns the empty string. The XPath expression used is:

```
for $k in suggested-image-file-extension($XML1/images/element()
[local-name() eq $PERSISTENT/Root/ComboBoxValue])
return if ($k != '') then $k else "Data not available"
```

The expression provides alternative return strings depending on whether the function returns a non-empty string or an empty string. If a non-empty string is returned, then the string is displayed; if an empty string is returned, an appropriate message is displayed.

• All the other XPath expressions in the table (besides the first row) use the Altova XPath extension function image-exif-data to obtain one piece of Exif metadata.
This function takes a string (the Base64 image) as its argument and returns an element node (named Exif) with attributes holding the Exif metadata. Each attribute-value pair corresponds to one Exif metadata tag. In the expression below, the function image-exif-data returns the Exif element with multiple attributes. The metadata information we want to obtain with this expression is the width of the image. This information is stored in the @PixelXDimension attribute node of the Exif element.

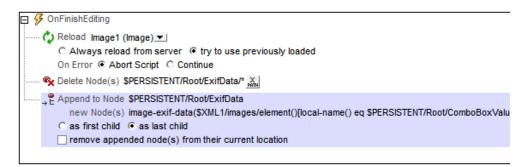
```
for $k in $PERSISTENT/Root/ExifData/Exif
return if ($k/@PixelXDimension !='') then $k/@PixelXDimension else
"Data not available"
```

The expression checks whether the <code>Exif/@PixelXDimension</code> node is non-empty or empty. If it is non-empty, then the string is displayed; otherwise, an appropriate message is displayed.

- For more information about the <u>image-exif-data</u> function, see its description in the Altova extension functions section.
- Note the last *Geolocation* value in the table. It is obtained via an Altova-created

Exif/@Geolocation attribute.

• The <code>\$PERSISTENT/Root/ExifData</code> node is populated with the Exif data by appending a child node to it that contains the result of the <code>image-exif-data</code> function. This is done by specifying an Append Node action on the combo box that selects which image to display (see screenshot below). The action is triggered by the <code>OnFinishEditing</code> event of the combo box.

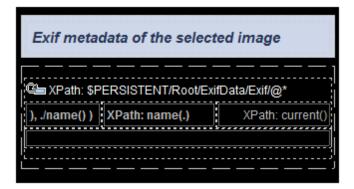


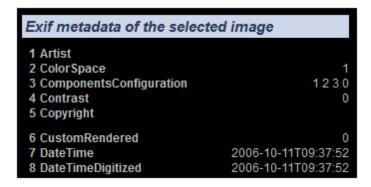
Note the following points:

- (i) The XPath locator expression in the <u>Append Node action</u> locates the node in the XML file that has the same name as the string in <code>\$PERSISTENT/Root/ComboBoxValue</code>.
- (ii) The \$PERSISTENT/Root/ExifData node is deleted before the Exif data (in the Exif node) is appended to ExifData.
- (iii) A page action has been set to delete the Exif node in the \$PERSISTENT tree. This prevents a possible incongruence between the initial image (jpg) and old Exif data in the ExifData node.

■ All Exif data of image

- A table with a repeating row (screenshot of design below left; simulator view below right) is used to display all the attribute-value pairs returned by the image-exifdata function.
- The repeating row is specified with an XPath expression that selects all the attributes of the Exif element node returned by the image-exif-data function:
 \$PERSISTENT/Root/ExifData/Exif/@*.





- The table's first column contains the index position of the current attribute: indexof(../@*/name(), ./name())
- The second column contains the name of the current attribute: name(.)
- The third column contains the value of the current attribute: current()
- Not all images contain the same Exif metadata. In some cases, some metadata
 may be absent; in other cases, additional metadata might be present; in still other
 cases, metadata might be tagged with non-standard, vendor-specific tags.
 Consequently, knowing what metadata is available and under what attribute names
 is important. Only with this information can specific attribute values to be retrieved.
- If we know the names of the attributes that are returned, we can access its value by using the image-exif-data function like this: image-exif-data(Base64String)/
 @WantedAttribute. Note that the function returns the Exif element.

■ Populating the \$PERSISTENT tree with Exif data

- It can be useful to see all the attribute-value pairs returned by the image-exif-data
 function. In order to display attribute-value pairs, we can store this output conveniently in the temporary \$PERSISTENT tree.
- In our example design, the <code>\$PERSISTENT/Root/ExifData</code> node is populated with the Exif data by appending a child node to the <code>ExifData</code> node that contains the result of the <code>image-exif-data</code> function.
- This is done by specifying an <u>Append Node action</u> on the combo box that selects which image to display (see screenshot below). The <u>Append Node action</u> is triggered by the OnFinishEditing event of the combo box.



• The XPath locator expression in the Append Node action locates the node in the XML file that has the same name as the string in Persistent/Root/ComboBoxValue.

• The \$PERSISTENT/Root/ExifData node is deleted before the Exif data returned by the image-exif-data function is appended to the ExifData node.

• If we know the names of the attributes that are returned, we can access the value of any attribute by using the image-exif-data function like this: image-exif-data(Base64String)/@WantedAttribute. Note that the function returns the Exif element.

Images Chosen by End User

The <u>Let User Choose Image action</u> enables a solution to be designed in which the end user can choose an image to save to a data source. The image that the end user selects could be one that already exists in an image gallery (folder) or a photo that the user takes with the mobile device's camera application. In the second case, the <u>Let User Choose Image action</u> automatically opens the camera application and saves the image that the user takes to the designated data source node. In both cases (gallery and camera), the image is added to the XML node as a Base64-encoded image.

A second action, <u>Save Image to File</u>, saves an image in a data source node to an image file (with the appropriate image file extension).

The example file <code>userselectedImages.mtd</code> has a design that enables the end user to select an image from a gallery on the mobile device. This image is automatically saved to an XML node in the data source as a Base64-encoded string. The Base64-encoded image is then also automatically saved as an image file to a location selected by the designer (and defined in the design).

Note: If an image is displayed in the design, then, every time the image source is changed (for example, by a user selection), a <u>Reload action</u> for the image is required in order to display the new image in the design.

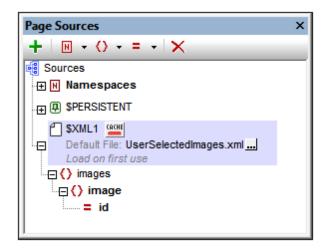
Example file: UserSelectedImages.mtd

The design file <code>Userselectedmages.mtd</code> is located in your (<u>My) Documents</u> MobileTogether folder: <code>MobileTogetherDesignerExamples\Tutorials\</code>. You can open this file in MobileTogether Designer, run it in the simulator (**F5**), and look through the design definitions. You will also need to do the following:

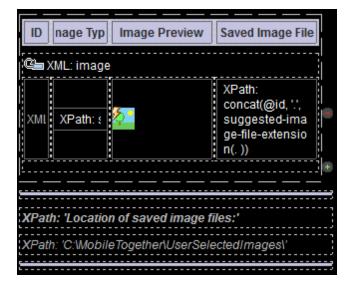
- Create the folder C:\MobileTogether\UserSelectedImages since this is the folder that is defined in the design as the location where user selected images are saved.
 Alternatively, you can define some other save location for the Save Image to File action of the OnImageClicked event.
- On the MobileTogether Server settings page, set the Server Side Solution's Working Directory to be an ancestor directory of the design's default file,

 UserSelectedImages.xml. This ensures that the default file is updated when the Save to File action of the OnImageClicked event is triggered. Since the Working Directory will be the base of all files referenced by the design, we suggest you set the Working Directory to C:\MobileTogether, and save the default file here. In this way, both the image folder and the default file folder are relative to the same base URI of C:\MobileTogether.

The design has a single data source, an XML file called <code>UserSelectedImages.xml</code> (also located in the <code>Tutorials</code> folder). The structure of the XML document is shown in the screenshot below. The <code>images</code> element can have multiple <code>image</code> child elements. Each <code>image</code> element has an <code>id</code> attribute, and the <code>image</code> element's content will be the Base64-encoding of the image selected by the user. Every new image selected by a user is created in an automatically appended <code>image</code> element.



The design (screenshot below left) consists of a label that displays the page title and a dynamic table. The dynamic table has a header row and a repeating row that is associated with the node \$XML1/images/image. This means that the row repeats for every image element. Put another way, every image element is created in it own row. The screenshot below right shows the solution being run in a simulator. A description of the design is given below.



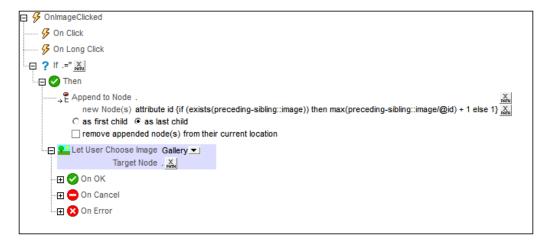


Note the following points about the design:

- The dynamic table has **Add/Remove** buttons (added via the table's context menu). This enables the user to add a new image-row and to delete any image-row.
- Each image-row has four columns: *ID*; *Image Type*; *Image Preview*, and (the name of the) *Saved Image File*.
- When a new image-row is added, a placeholder for the image is created and can be clicked (see screenshot above right).
- When the image placeholder is clicked, an @id attribute is added to the image element.
- The value of the @id attribute is calculated to always be one more than the largest existing image ID. This ensures the uniqueness of each ID value. If no preceding image element exists, then the added image will be the first image element and a a value of 1 is assigned to the element's @id attribute. The XPath expression is defined with the image element as the context node: attribute id {if (exists(preceding-sibling::image/@id) + 1 else 1}.
- The ID column has a <u>Label control</u> that is associated with the \$XML1/images/image/@id node. This association (created by dropping the node onto the control) has the effect of displaying the value of the @id attribute of the current image element in the ID cell of the current row.
- The Image Type column has an <u>Edit Field control</u> with an XPath expression that retrieves filetype information from Base64 text strings. The XPath expression submits the current node (the current image element) as the argument of the function <u>suggested-image-file-extension</u>. The function parses the Base64-encoded string for filetype information, and returns the file extension as a string.
- The Image Preview column contains the Image Preview column contains the Image Control. The control has the Image Control. The property set to base64 and the Image Control to the XPath expression Image Control. The current Image Control source Type Setting determines that the content of the image element will be read as a Base64 text (and not as a URL).
- The <u>Image control</u> has a number of action defined for its OnImageClicked event. These
 are described in detail below.
- The fourth column, Saved Image File, gives the name of the image file that is saved to disk. It uses the Altova XPath extension function suggested-image-file-extension to provide the image file extension.

Actions of the OnImageClicked event

• The OnImageClicked event of the <u>Image control</u> has been assigned the actions shown in the screenshot below.



- The If condition specifies that if the current node (the image element) is empty, then, when the image is clicked, a new id attribute is created and appended as a child to the currently empty image element. (The empty image element was added when the user added a table row (see the Simulator screenshot further above).) The id attribute is assigned a calculated value via the XPath expression: if (exists(preceding-sibling::image)) then max(preceding-sibling::image/@id) + 1 else 1. This expression returns a value that is always one more than the largest existing image ID, thus ensuring the uniqueness of each ID value. If no image is present, then the newly added image is assigned an ID value of 1.
- The Let User Choose Image action specifies that the image must be chosen from a folder on the mobile device (*Gallery*). This will allow the user to browse for an image when the image is clicked. The target node of the action is the location where the Base64-encoded image will be stored. In our example, the target node is the current node, which is the Image element.
- The <u>Let User Choose Image action</u> has three conditions: On OK, On Cancel, and On Error, all of which are described separately below.

On OK: Reload Image + Save Image to File + Save to File

• The on ox condition defines three actions to carry out if the image is successfully imported to the designated data source node (see screenshot below): (i) a Reload action for the image; (ii) a Save Image to File action that saves the image from the data source node to an image file; (iii) a Load/Save to File action which saves the data in the source tree (on client/server) to the data source file.

```
Reload Image1 (Image) 
Reload Image1 (Image) 
Always reload from server 
try to use previously loaded 
On Error 
Abort Script 
Continue

Save Image To File

Source Node . 
File Path concat("C:\MobileTogether\UserSelectedImages\", @id, '', suggested-image-file-extension(. )) 
File Path UserSelectedImages.xml 
File Path UserSelectedImages.xml 
Encoding ...

On Error 
Abort Script 
Continue
```

- A <u>Reload action</u> is set for the <u>Image control</u>. This will cause the image specified in the <u>Image Source</u> property of the <u>Image control</u> to be reloaded. Since the value of the <u>Image Source</u> property is set to the current node, and since the current node is the <u>Image</u> element which is the target node of the user-selected image, the image preview cell for the current row will be reloaded with the user's image.
- The <u>Save Image to File action</u> (screenshot below) saves the image from the data source node to an image file. The <u>Source Node</u> has been set to the current node (which is the image element). The binary image file will be generated from the Base64 data in this node.

- The File Path setting specifies the location where the binary image file will be saved. The XPath expression generates strings such as C:\MobileTogether\UserSelectedImages \1.png. The Altova extension XPath function suggested-image-file-extension provides the file extension.
- The <u>Load/Save to File action</u> saves the data in the data source tree on the server to the specified data source file.

On Cancel: Delete Node

If the user decides to cancel the image-selection process, the <code>@id</code> node is deleted with the <code>Delete Node(s)</code> action. Remember: The <code>@id</code> node was created when the image-selection process was started (by clicking the image placeholder; see the "Example File" section above).



On Error: MessageBox + Delete Node

If there is an error while importing the image as Base64 data to the designated XML node, the

actions defined for the <code>On Error</code> condition are executed. An error message is displayed and the <code>@id</code> node is deleted. The <code>@id</code> node was created when the image-selection process was started (see the "Example File" section above).



Transforming Images

A <u>Base64-encoded image</u> can be transformed (resized, rotated, and modified for quality/filesize) with the Altova XPath extension function <u>mt-transform-image</u>:

mt-transform-image(Base64Image as Base64BinaryString, Size as item()+, Rotation
as xs:integer, Quality as xs:integer) as Base64BinaryString

The function takes a Base64-encoded image as its first argument and returns a transformed Base64-encoded image. The second, third, and fourth arguments are the image parameters that are transformed: size, rotation, and quality. For a detailed description of the function and usage examples, see the section XPath/XQuery Functions: Image-Related.

Note the following points:

- The input image for the transformation is a Base64-encoded image—not an image file.
- Any Exif data in the Base64-encoding will be lost in the transformed image.
- If the transformation is done on the client, there could be memory issues on the client. See note below.

Transformation on client or server

The function mt-transform-image will be executed on the client if not explicitly specified otherwise. This could create memory problems on some clients. When the transformation is started, the image is unpacked from the format of its Base64 encoding to a BMP format, which could be very large. After the transformation is completed, the transformed file is stored back to the original format. The large BMP format could create memory problems on some clients, and you should be aware of this.

To avoid the possibility of memory problems on the client, explicitly specify that the transformation must be carried out on the server. Do this with the Execute On action, specifying that the child actions be performed on the server. All the child actions of this Execute On action will then be carried out on the server. You can use an action such as Update Node to update a node with the result of a transformation. The target node will be updated with the transformed image. MobileTogether automatically transfers the results to the client when action handling is complete or when the workflow switches back to the client.

Images in Databases

Images in databases can be stored in Base64 format, which is a text format into which binary data can be encoded.

8.7 Charts

Charts provide a graphical representation of data in the source document. A chart is set up by defining XPath expressions to specify a sequence of items for each axis of the chart. MobileTogether Designer then automatically generates the chart. The table below shows the types of charts that can be created, and the kind of data items that are required for each of the chart's axes.

Chart type	X-Axis (Category)	Y-Axis (Value)	Number of Series (on Z-Axis)
Pie Charts (2D, 3D)	Text	Numeric	1
Bar Charts Ungrouped (2D, 3D)	Text	Numeric	1
Bar Charts Grouped (2D, 3D)	Text	Numeric	> 1
Category Line Graphs	Text	Numeric	1 line = 1 series
Value Line Graphs	Numeric	Numeric	1 line = 1 series
Area and Stacked Area Charts	Text	Numeric	1 area = 1 series
Candlestick Charts	Text	Numeric	3 or 4
Gauge	_	Numeric	1
Overlay Charts	Text	Numeric	= 1 or > 1 per chart

This section is organized as follows:

- Chart Data Selection explains how to select data for the different axes
- Chart Settings and Appearance describes how to define the properties of charts

Creating and Configuring Charts

This section:

- Creating a chart
- The context node
- The Chart Configuration dialog
- Editing chart settings and data selection

Creating a chart

To insert a chart in the design, drag the <u>Chart control</u> from the <u>Controls Pane</u> to the location in the design where you wish to insert the chart.

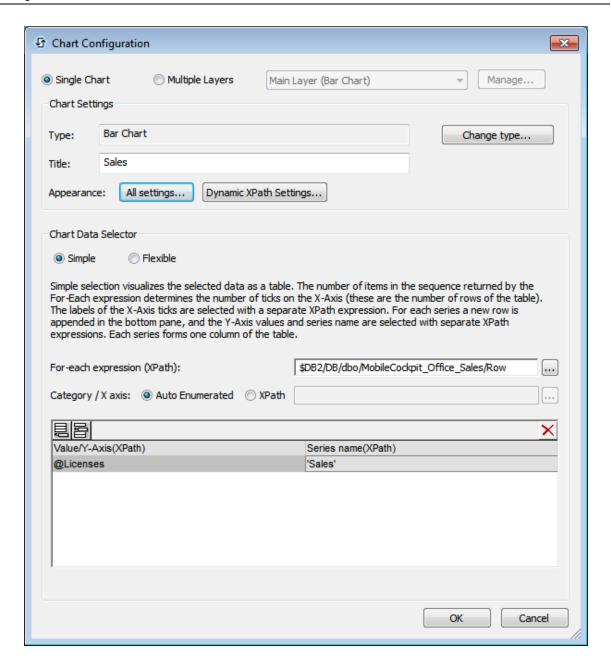
The context node

Drag an XML node from the Page Sources Pane onto the chart in the design to make this XML node the context node of the chart's XPath expressions. You can change the chart's context node at any time by dragging a new XML node onto the chart. It is important to be aware of the chart's context node because this context node is the starting point of path locators in XPath expressions.

The Chart Configuration dialog

A chart can be configured in the Chart Configuration dialog (*screenshot below*) at the time that the chart is created. Configuring a chart involves: (i) specifying <u>data selection for the charts's axes</u>, and (ii) defining the <u>chart's properties</u>. These settings can be edited at any later time. After assigning an XML context node to the chart, do either of the following to bring up the Chart Configuration dialog:

- Double-click the chart
- Select the chart in the design, then click the Edit XPath button of the *Chart Settings* property in the <u>Styles & Properties Pane</u>



The Chart Configuration dialog has three parts:

- <u>Single or Multiple layers</u>: Multiple layers can be selected to create overlay charts, in which multiple charts can be presented, one overlaid upon the other in a sequence of layers
- <u>Chart Settings</u>: To select the chart type and define the appearance of the chart
- <u>Chart Data Selection</u>: To select the data for the various axes of the chart using either the simple option or flexible option

Editing chart settings and data selection

If you wish to change chart settings or a chart's data selection after a chart has been created, right-click the chart in the design and select **Edit Chart Settings**. This pops up the Chart Configuration dialog (*screenshot above*) of that chart. You can edit the chart's settings or data selection in the dialog, then click **OK** to finish.

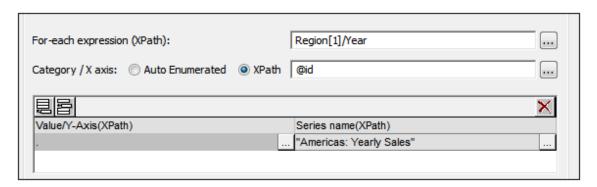
Chart Data Selection

This topic contains simple examples to illustrate how chart data selection works.

```
■ XML file used in chart examples: YearlySales.xml
   <ChartType>Pie Chart 2D</ChartType>
         <Region id="Americas">
               <Year id="2005">30000</Year>
               <Year id="2006">90000</year>
               <Year id="2007">120000
               <Year id="2008">180000</year>
               <Year id="2009">140000</year>
               <Year id="2010">100000</year>
         </Region>
         <Region id="Europe">
               <Year id="2005">50000</year>
               <Year id="2006">60000</year>
               <Year id="2007">80000</year>
               <Year id="2008">100000</Year>
               <Year id="2009">95000
               <Year id="2010">80000</year>
         </Region>
         <Region id="Asia">
               <Year id="2005">10000</year>
               <Year id="2006">25000</year>
               <Year id="2007">70000</year>
               <Year id="2008">110000</year>
               <Year id="2009">125000</year>
               <Year id="2010">150000
         </Region>
   </Data>
```

Chart data selection with four XPath expressions

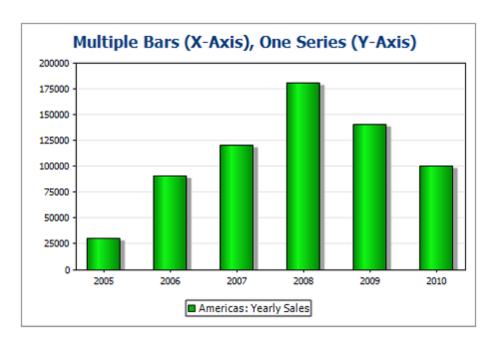
The screenshot below shows the <u>Chart Configuration dialog</u>, at the bottom of which is the Chart Data Selector pane with fields for entering the four XPath expressions for data selection.



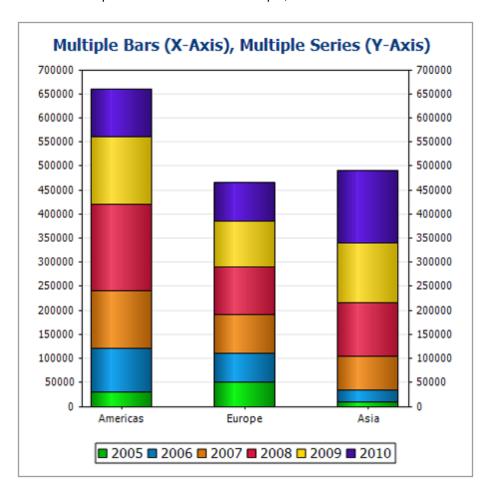
The four XPath expressions in the Chart Data Selector pane work together and do the following:

XPath	Description
For-Each	 Sets the context for the other three XPath expressions Sets the number of items in the returned sequence as the number of ticks on the X-Axis. In the case of the screenshot above, the Region[1]/Year expression returns six node items; so there will be six ticks on the X-Axis (see screenshot below).
X-Axis	 The items in the returned sequence provide the label text for the corresponding ticks on the X-Axis. In the example shown above, the @id expression returns the id attribute value of each Year element. These values become the labels of the corresponding ticks (see screenshot below). Since we have specified that this will be a bar chart, bars are drawn at the ticks.
Y-Axis	 The Y-Axis can display multiple series, each of which is defined in one row of the Y-Axis table. Each series is defined by two XPath expressions: one for the series value, the other for the series name. In our example, the self::node() XPath expression (indicated by its abbreviated form of a period) selects the current node, which is the Year element that is the context node. So, for each Year element (represented by a bar on the X-Axis), the Year element's content will be read as the Y-Axis value of that year, and therefore plotted as the height of the bar (see screenshot below). The screenshot further below shows a chart with multiple series on the Y-Axis.
Series name	This expression provides the legend text for the series. In our example, the legend text (which appears at the bottom of the chart, screenshot below) is obtained from an XPath expression that is a text string (see screenshot above).

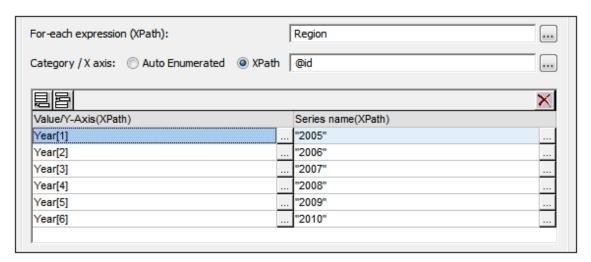
A bar chart that is generated for the data selection shown in the screenshot above and the XML data in YearlySales.xml looks like the chart in the screenshot below.



The screenshot above shows a bar chart with a single series, while that below is of a stacked bar chart with multiple series. In the latter example, the value of each series is stacked on to the bar.



The XPath expressions of this chart are shown in the screenshot below.



Note: Pie charts and gauge charts have a single nominal series, which requires no name. So if a series name is entered in the data selection, it is ignored. For ungrouped bar charts, however, the name of the single series, if present, is used for the legend. For gauge charts, in addition to any Series Name entry being ignored, the X-Axis data selection is also ignored; only the Y-Axis selection is used for gauge charts.

Chart Data Selection: Simple

This section:

- Introduction
- The context node
- Data selection for the X and Y axes
- If the For-Each expression returns items that are not nodes

Introduction

In the Chart Data Selector pane of the <u>Chart Configuration dialog</u>, the Simple option enables the data selection to be visualized as a table. We use the XML document that is listed below to explain the visualization.

```
■ XML file used in chart examples: YearlySales.xml
   <ChartType>Pie Chart 2D</ChartType>
         <Region id="Americas">
               <Year id="2005">30000</year>
               <Year id="2006">90000
               <Year id="2007">120000
               <Year id="2008">180000</Year>
               <Year id="2009">140000</year>
               <Year id="2010">100000</year>
         </Region>
         <Region id="Europe">
               <Year id="2005">50000</year>
               <Year id="2006">60000</year>
               <Year id="2007">80000</year>
               <Year id="2008">100000
               <Year id="2009">95000
               <Year id="2010">80000</year>
         </Region>
         <Region id="Asia">
               <Year id="2005">10000</year>
               <Year id="2006">25000</year>
               <Year id="2007">70000</Year>
               <Year id="2008">110000</year>
               <Year id="2009">125000</year>
               <Year id="2010">150000</Year>
         </Region>
   </Data>
```

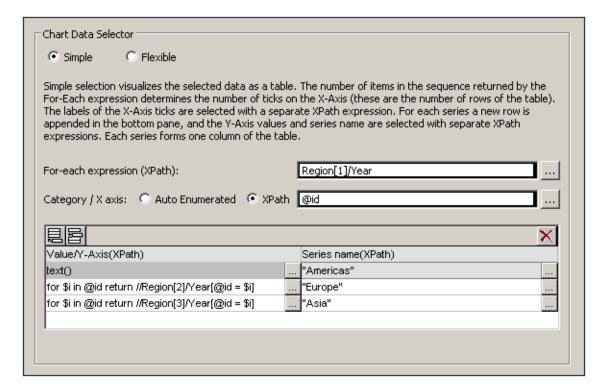
The context node

In the design, drag an XML node from the Page Sources Pane to make this node the context

node of the chart's XPath expressions. You can change the chart's context node by dragging a new XML node onto the chart. It is important to be aware of the chart's context node, since this context node is the starting point of path locators in XPath expressions.

Selecting data for the X and Y axes

In the Chart Data Selector pane (*screenshot below*) we make the data selection as shown in the screenshot. Since the chart has been inserted within the Data node, the context node for the For-Each expression is the Data node.



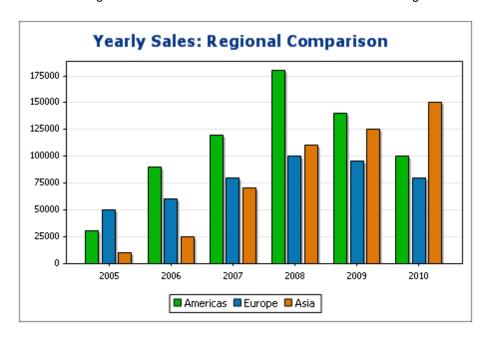
The chart data table can be visualized as the table below. What happens is that for each Region[1]/Year element a row is created and the X-Axis and Y-Axis XPath expressions are evaluated within the respective Region[1]/Year element's context.

For-Each XPath	X-Axis	Y-Axis for Series		
		Americas	Europe	Asia
Region[1]/Year[1]	@id	text()	XPath-1	XPath-2
Region[1]/Year[2]	@id	text()	XPath-1	XPath-2
Region[1]/Year[3]	@id	text()	XPath-1	XPath-2
Region[1]/Year[4]	@id	text()	XPath-1	XPath-2
Region[1]/Year[5]	@id	text()	XPath-1	XPath-2
Region[1]/Year[6]	@id	text()	XPath-1	XPath-2

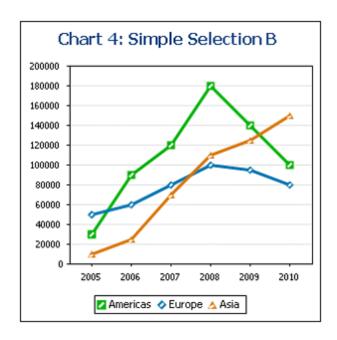
• The For-Each expression Region[1]/Year returns six nodes (which become the rows of the table). The number of items in the sequence returned by the For-Each expression

- determines the **number of ticks** on the X-Axis.
- The XPath expression for the X-Axis returns the @id attribute value of each Region[1]/ Year element. These values will be the labels of the X-Axis ticks. If there are more labels than ticks then extra ticks will be generated so that all labels are plotted. If there are fewer labels than ticks, then the latter ticks (for which no corresponding labels exist) will be unlabeled. The Auto-Enumerated option generates a sequence of integers starting with 1, and assigns each integer sequentially to an X-Axis tick.
- The XPath expression for the Americas series (text()) returns the content of each of the Region[1]/Year elements. This expression could also have been one similar to that for the Europe and Asia series (explained below)—as long as it efficiently returns the values we want.
- The XPath expression for the Europe series is: for \$i in @id return //Region[2]/Year[@id=\$i]. This expression does the following: (i) looks for the current Region[1]/Year/@id attribute value, (ii) returns the content of the Region[2]/Year element that has the same @id value as the @id value of the current Region[1]/Year element.
- The XPath expression for the Asia series works in a similar way to the XPath expression for the Europe series.

The bar chart generated with this data selection would look something like this:

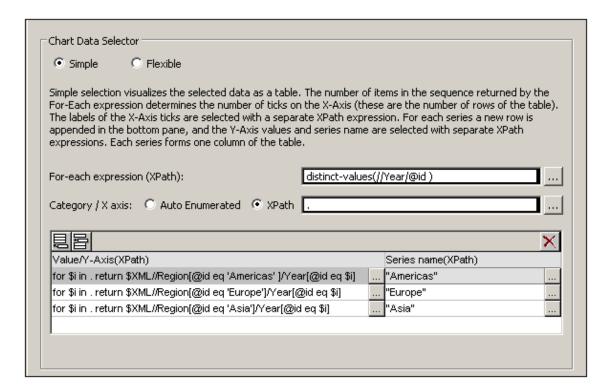


The line graph chart for this data selection would look like this:



If the For-Each expression returns items that are not nodes

Since the number of X-Axis ticks is primarily dependent on the number of items returned by the For-Each XPath expression, the XPath expression in the screenshot below (distinct-values(//Year/@id)), which returns the six unique year values, will also generate six ticks on the X-Axis. The items returned by the sequence, however, are atomic values, not nodes. Consequently, although they can be used as context items, they cannot be used as context nodes for locating nodes in the XML tree. They can, however, be used to locate nodes on the basis of the equality of values—which is how we will use them.



In the data selection shown in the screenshot above, note the following:

- The X-Axis and Y-Axis data selections use the atomic values returned by the For-Each expression, respectively, as direct output and as filter test values.
- Location steps in XPath expressions start at the document node (the \$XML in \$XML//Region...). This is necessary because the atomic values provide no locational context.

The chart data table would evaluate to the following:

For-Each	X-Axis	Y-Axis for Series			
XPath		Americas	Europe	Asia	
2005	2005	XPath-1	XPath-2	XPath-3	
2006	2006	XPath-1	XPath-2	XPath-3	
2007	2007	XPath-1	XPath-2	XPath-3	
2008	2008	XPath-1	XPath-2	XPath-3	
2009	2009	XPath-1	XPath-2	XPath-3	
2010	2010	XPath-1	XPath-2	XPath-3	

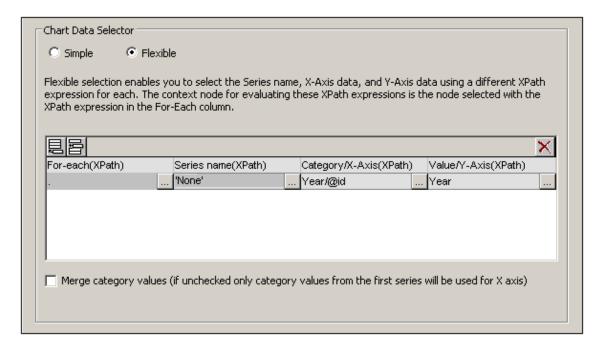
Chart Data Selection: Flexible

This section:

- About flexible chart data selection
- One row, one series
- Three rows, three series, category values not merged
- Three rows, three series, category values merged
- One row, three series
- Rules for chart data selection

About flexible chart data selection

In the Chart Data Selector pane (*screenshot below*) of the <u>Chart Configuration dialog</u>, the Flexible option enables the Series Axis (Z-Axis), X-Axis, and Y-Axis data to be selected freely using XPath expressions. The XPath expression for an axis returns the sequence of items that are to be plotted on that axis. These sequences (of items) for the axes are then collated to generate the chart.



Note the following points:

- A series refers to a series of values plotted for a set of X-Axis (Category Axis) ticks. A second series would plot a second set of values on the same X-Axis ticks. For example, if the X-Axis represented the years 2008, 2009, and 2010, and the Y-Axis represented sales turnover, then Series 1 could represent America (sales in America for those three years) while Series 2 could represent Europe (sales in Europe for those three years). If this data were selected for a bar chart, then for each year (2008, 2009, 2010) on the X-Axis, there would be two bars (America and Europe), one for each series. In the case of pie charts and single-bar charts, only one series is possible. See the chart type table for more information about each chart type.
- Each row in the Chart Data Selector pane represents a series.

• The chart's XPath context node is defined by dropping a node from the Page Source Pane onto the chart control in the design.

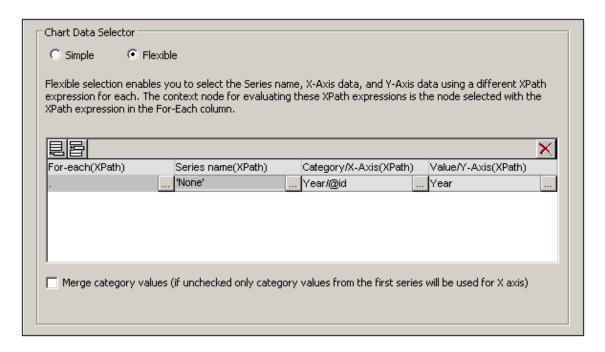
 The XPath expression in the For-Each column provides the context for the evaluation of each of the other three XPath expressions. The For-Each XPath expression is itself evaluated in the context of the node in the design within which it was inserted.

The following examples illustrate important points to consider when selecting data for the axes. They reference the XML document listed below.

```
■ XML file used in chart examples: YearlySales.xml
   <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
   <Data xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"</pre>
         xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="YearlySales.xsd">
          <ChartType>Pie Chart 2D</ChartType>
          <Region id="Americas">
                 <Year id="2005">30000</year>
                 <Year id="2006">90000</year>
                 <Year id="2007">120000</year>
                 <Year id="2008">180000</year>
                 <Year id="2009">140000</Year>
                 <Year id="2010">100000
          </Region>
          <Region id="Europe">
                 <Year id="2005">50000</Year>
                 <Year id="2006">60000</year>
                 <Year id="2007">80000</year>
                 <Year id="2008">100000</Year>
                 <Year id="2009">95000</year>
                 <Year id="2010">80000</Year>
          </Region>
          <Region id="Asia">
                 <Year id="2005">10000</year>
                 <Year id="2006">25000</year>
                 <Year id="2007">70000</year>
                 <Year id="2008">110000</year>
                 <Year id="2009">125000</year>
                 <Year id="2010">150000
          </Region>
   </Data>
```

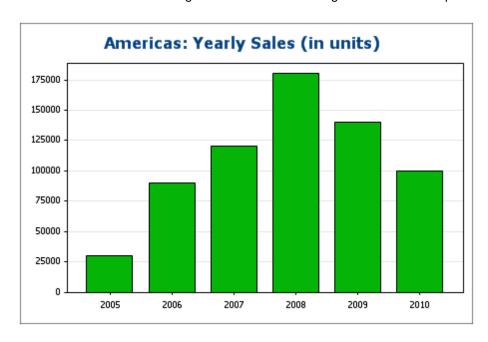
One row, one series

Say we wish to generate a 2D bar chart for each Region element (there are three such elements: for the Americas, Europe, and Asia). Let us create the chart in the design by dropping the chart control at the desired location in the design. We create the Region element node as the chart's XPath context node by dropping it onto the chart control. The context node of the For-Each XPath expressions in the Chart Data Selector will therefore be the Region element.



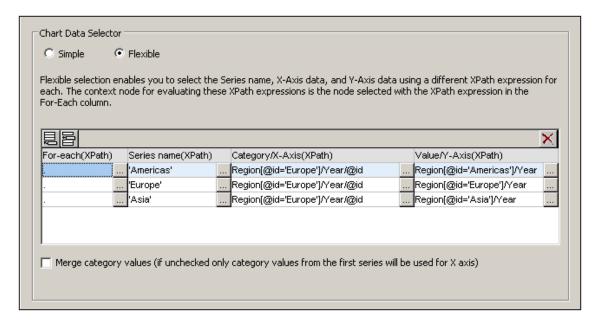
In the chart data selection shown in the screenshot above, the For-Each expression returns the current node (which is the Region element), so the Region element will be the context node for all the other three XPath expressions (series, X-Axis, and Y-Axis). Since there is only one series in this chart, we do not need a series name and so we leave this column blank. The X-Axis selection returns six values. Six will therefore be the number of ticks on the X-Axis and the six items of the sequence will be the respective labels of the X-Axis ticks. The Y-Axis selection also returns six items, each of which is plotted on the Y-Axis for its corresponding X-Axis tick. Since the chart was created within the Region element, a chart will be created for each of the three Region elements. For each chart, that particular Region element's descendant nodes will be used.





Three rows, three series, category values not merged

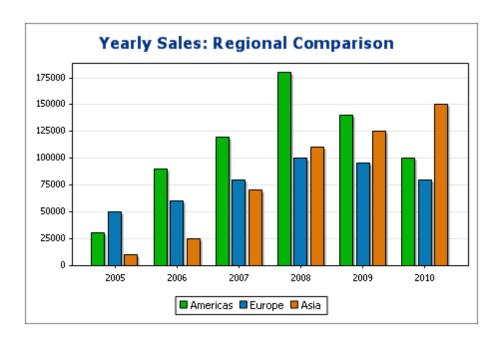
To create multiple series, additional rows can be added to the chart data selection, as shown in the screenshot below.



The important points to note about the data selection above are:

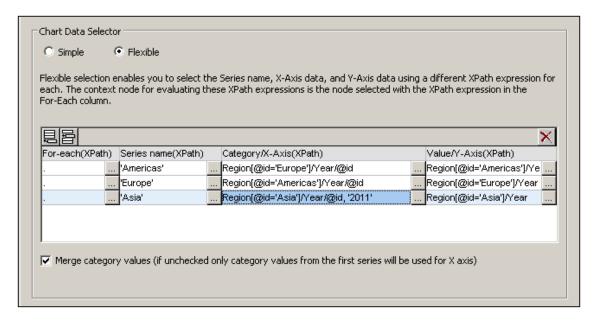
- Each row defines a series and all rows have the Data element as its context node (since the chart has the Data node as its XPath context node).
- The first row is set to define the Americas series and is given a string expression as its series name. The X-Axis values are selected using the Year/@id values of the Europe region (it doesn't matter which region is selected since all have the same Year/@id values). The Y-Axis values of the first (Americas) series are selected for the Americas region using a predicate filter.
- The second and third series follow the same pattern as the first series. Note, however, that the X-Axis selection for each series is identical. But since the *Merge Category Values* check box is not checked, the second and third expressions are ignored. (Even if the values were merged, it would not make a difference because the values of each series are identical; only new distinct values would be added to the category values.)

The chart generated with the data selection above would look something like this:

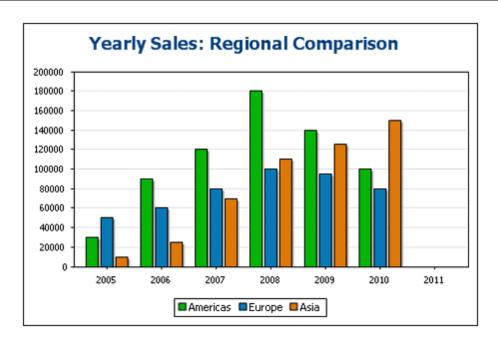


Three rows, three series, category values merged

The data selection in this example (see screenshot below) is different from the previous example in three respects: (i) the X-Axis selection for the third series has an extra item (2011) added to the series, and (ii) the Merge Category Values check box has been checked, and (iii) the Y-Axis tick interval has been manually set to 20000.

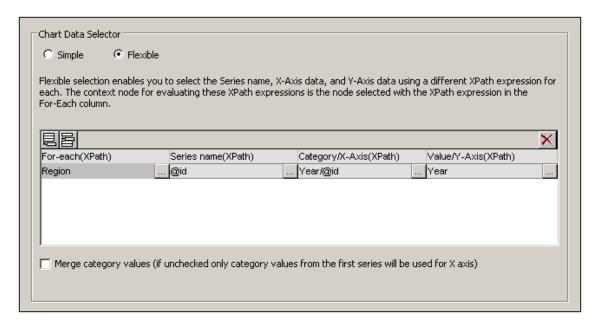


The effect of this change is to add one new item (2011) to the X-Axis result sequence. The chart would look something like this:

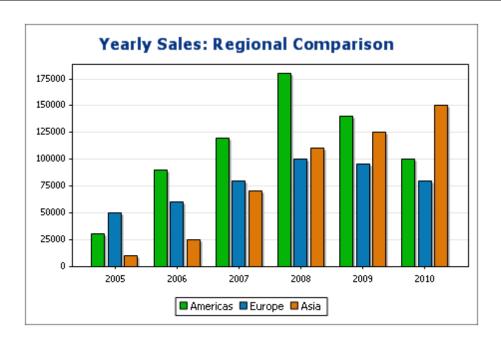


One row, three series

The chart in this example has the Data node (see XML document above) as its XPath context node. Only one row is used for data selection, but it generates three series. This is because the XPath expression in the For-Each column returns a sequence of three items, thus implicitly creating three series.



For each series, the series name, X-Axis, and Y-Axis selections will correspond to the different regions because each series has a different Region element as its context node. The chart for this data selection will look something like this:



Rules for chart data selection

The following points should be noted when using the Chart Data Selector to select data for the various chart axes:

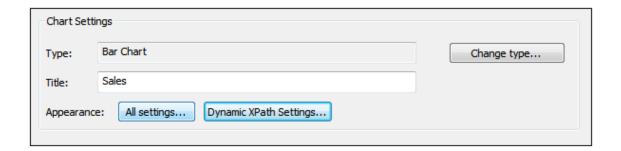
- 1. The number of bars (or pie chart slices, etc) is equal to the number of items in the larger of the X-Axis or Y-Axis sequences of a single data row selection. So if the X-Axis (which gives labels) has five items and the Y-Axis (which gives values) has six items, then six bars will be plotted with the last one being unlabeled. If the X-Axis has six items and the Y-Axis five items, then six bars will be plotted with the last one being labeled but having a value of zero.
- 2. The number of series is equal to the cumulative number of items in all the sequences returned by expressions in the For-Each column.
- 3. The name of a series is selected with the XPath expression of the Z-Axis (or Series Name Axis). If, in a data selection row, this XPath expression is left empty, then a no-name series is created. Also if the XPath expression returns a sequence with a lesser number of items than the number of series, then some series will have no name.

Chart Settings and Appearance

Chart settings are organized as follows:

• <u>Basic Chart Settings</u>, which enable you to select the type of chart and its title. Basic chart settings are defined in the Chart Settings pane of the Chart Configuration dialog (see screenshot below).

- <u>Advanced Chart Settings</u>, which enable you to change the appearance of a chart (its title, legend, colors, fonts, etc). Advanced settings are defined in the <u>Change Appearance</u> <u>dialog</u>. To access this dialog, click **All Settings** in the Chart Configuration dialog (see screenshot below).
- <u>Dynamic XPath Settings</u>, which can be accessed by clicking **Dynamic XPath Settings** in the Chart Settings pane (*see screenshot below*).



Basic Chart Settings

This section:

- Setting the chart type
- List of chart types
- Other basic settings

Setting the chart type

The most basic chart setting is the chart type. To select the chart type, click **Change Type** in the <u>Chart Settings pane</u> of the Chart Configuration dialog.



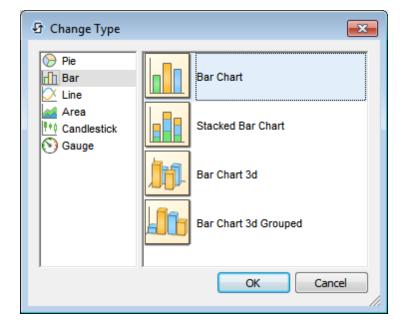


Chart types

The various types of charts that are available are listed below. In the <u>Change Type dialog</u> (screenshot above), select the chart type you want and click **OK**.

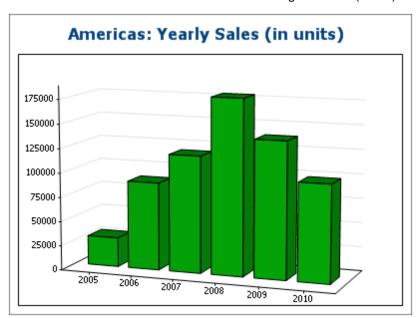
▼ Pie charts

In pie charts, one column/axis provides the values, another column/axis provides labels for these values. The labeling column/axis can take non-numeric values.

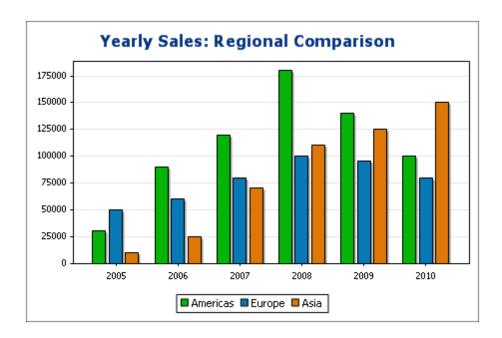


▼ Bar charts

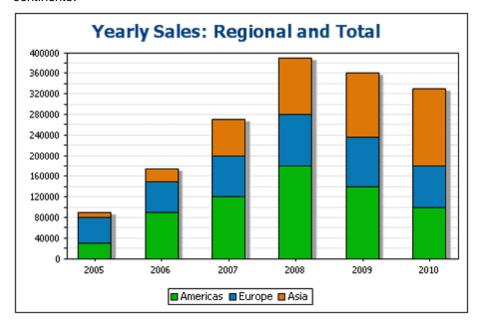
Bar charts can have two sets of values used along two axes (below).



They can also use three sets of values, as in the example below: (i) continent, (ii) year, (iii) sales volume. Bar charts can be displayed in 2D (*below*) or 3D (*above*).

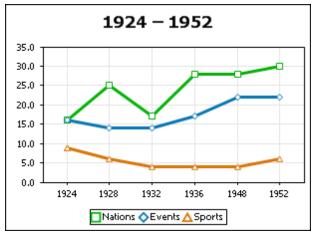


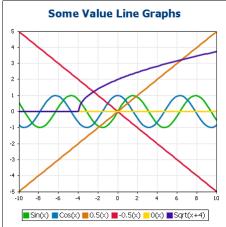
A three-axis bar chart can also be stacked if you need to show totals. Compare the stacked chart below with the chart above. The stacked chart shows the total of sales on all continents.



Line charts

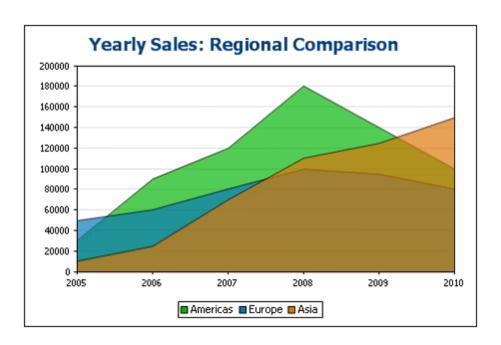
The difference between a line chart (*below left*) and a value line chart (*below right*) is that value line charts only take numerical values for the X-axis. If you need to display line charts with text values on the X-axis, use line charts.





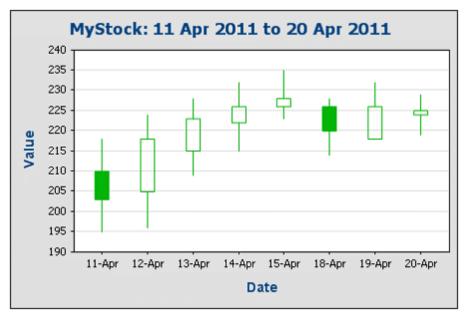
Area charts

Area charts are a variation of line charts, in which the areas below the lines are also colored. Note that area charts can also be stacked (see bar graphs above).



Candlestick charts

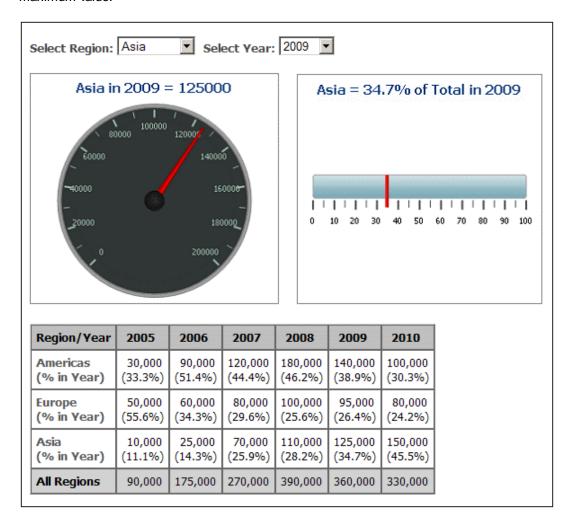
A candlestick chart can be used to depict price movements of securities, commodities, currencies, etc over a period of time. The chart indicates not only how prices developed over time, but also the daily close, high, low, and (optionally) open. The Y-axis takes three or four series (close, high, low, and (optionally) open). The screenshot below shows a four-series candlestick chart.



Gauge charts

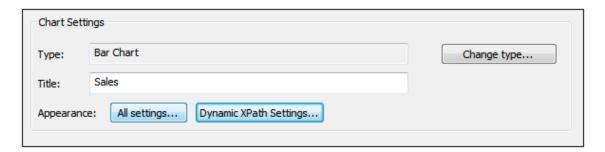
Gauge charts are used to illustrate a single value and show its relation to a minimum and a

maximum value.



Other basic settings

In the Chart Settings pane, you can also set the title of the chart (see screenshot below).



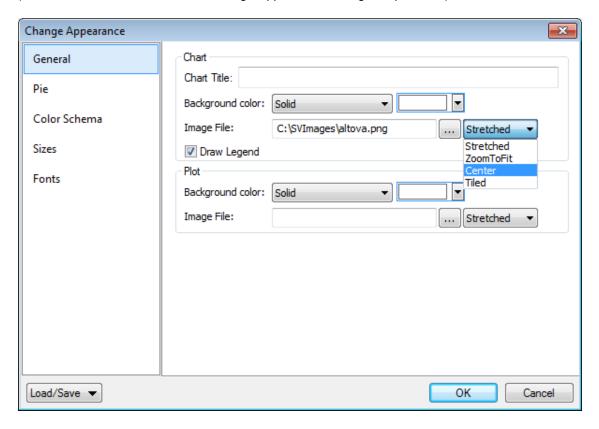
Advanced Chart Settings

This section:

- Accessing the advanced settings
- Overview of advanced settings
- Loading, saving, resetting chart settings

Accessing the advanced settings

To access a chart's advanced settings do the following: Click <u>All Settings</u> in the Chart Configuration dialog. This displays the Change Appearance dialog for that particular chart type (the screenshot below shows the Change Appearance dialog of a pie chart).



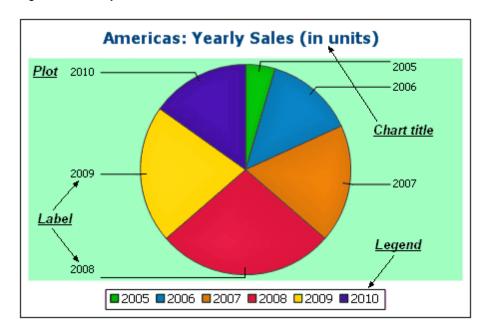
Overview of advanced settings

The advanced settings are organized into tabs that are common to all chart types and those that are specific to a single chart type.

Common chart settings

General

The chart title (see screenshot below) is the same as the basic setting (see above) and can be edited as an advanced setting also. Other settings in this dialog are the background color of the chart and the plot. In the screenshot below, the plot has been given a pale green background color. An image file can also be set as the background image of the chart and/or the plot. This image can be stretched to cover the entire area of the chart or plot; zoomed to fit so that the zoom matches one of the two dimensions (of chart/plot); centered; or tiled. The legend is the key to the color codes in the chart, and it can be turned on or off.



Color scheme

Four predefined color schemes are available plus a user-defined color scheme. You can modify any of the color schemes by adding colors to and/or deleting colors from a scheme. The color scheme selected in this tab will be used in the chart.

▼ Sizes

Sizes of various aspects of the chart can be set, either as pixels or as a percentage ratio.

▼ Font

The font properties of the chart title and of legends and labels can be specified in this tab. Sizes can be set as a percentage of the chart size or absolutely as points.

▼ Load/Save button

Settings can be saved to an XML file and can be loaded from an XML file having the correct structure. To see the structure, save the settings of a chart and then open the XML file. Clicking this button also gives you the option of resetting chart settings to the default.

Type-specific chart settings

Pie charts

Settings for: (i) the angle from which the first slice should be drawn; (ii) the direction in which slices should be drawn; (iii) the outline color; (iv) whether the colors receive highlights (in 3D pie charts: whether dropshadows and transparency are used); (v) whether labels should be drawn; and (vi) whether values and percentages should be added to labels and how many decimal places should be added to the percentages.

▼ Bar charts

Settings for: (General) Drawing the X and Y axes exchanged generates a horizontal bar chart; (Bar) Bar outlines and dropshadows (dropshadows in 2D bar charts only); (X-Axis) Label and color of the x-axis, and vertical gridlines; (Y-Axis) Label and color of the y-axis, horizontal gridlines, the range of values to be displayed, and the tick marks on the y-axis; (Z-Axis, 3D only) Label and color of the z-axis; (3D) the vertical tilt, horizontal rotation, and the width of the view.

Line graphs

Settings for: (General) Drawing the X and Y axes exchanged; (Line) including the plot points or not; (X-Axis) Label and color of the x-axis, and vertical gridlines; (Y-Axis) Label and color of the y-axis, horizontal gridlines, the range of values to be displayed, and the tick marks on the y-axis.

Gauge charts

Settings for: (i) the angle at which the gauge starts and the angular sweep of the scale; (ii) the range of the values displayed; (iii) the interval and color of major and minor ticks; (iv) colors of the dial, the needle, and the border.

Area charts

The transparency of areas can be set as a value from 0 (no transparency) to 255 (maximum transparency). In the case of non-stacked area charts transparency makes parts of areas that lie under other areas visible to the viewer. Outlines for the areas can also be specified.

Candlestick charts

The fill color can be specified for the two situations: (i) when the closing value is greater than the opening value, and (ii) when the opening value is greater than the closing value. In the latter case, the Series color is also available as an option. The Series color is specified in the Color Schema tab of the Change Appearance dialog.

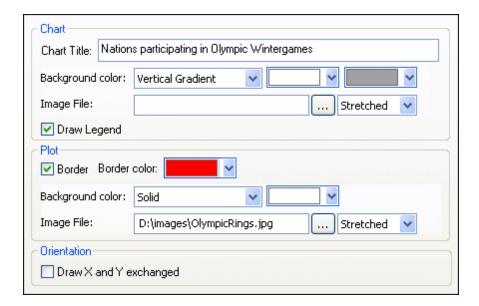
Loading, saving, resetting chart settings

Chart settings that are different from the default settings can be saved in an XML file. These settings can subsequently loaded as the settings of a chart, which can help you save time and effort. The **Load/Save** button (see first screenshot in this section) provides the following options when clicked:

- Set to default: Rejects changes made to the settings, and restores the default settings to all settings sections.
- Load from file: Enables settings to be imported that have been previously saved in an XML file (see next command). The command displays the **Open** dialog, in which you enter the location of the required file.
- Save to file: Opens the Save As dialog box. You can specify an XML file in which to save the settings. This file lists those settings that are different from the default settings.

General

The General section of the **Change Appearance** dialog box lets you define the title of the chart, add or remove a legend, and define background pictures and colors and—for bar, line, area, and candlestick charts—orientation of the chart.



Chart

Enter a descriptive title for your chart into the Chart Title field and select a background color for the entire chart from the drop-down list. You can choose a solid background, vertical gradient, or horizontal gradient and define start and end colors for the gradient, if applicable. In addition, or instead of a colored background, you can also define a background image and choose one of the available display options from the drop-down list:

Stretched: the image will be stretched to the height and width of the chart

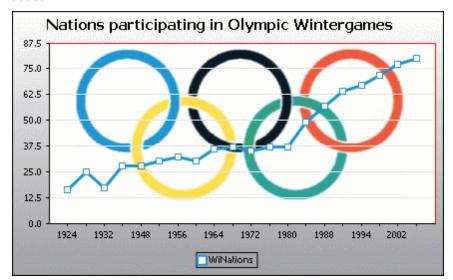
 Zoom to Fit: the image will be fit into the frame of the chart and the aspect ratio of the image will be maintained

- Center: the image will be displayed in its original size in the center of the chart
- Tiled: if the image is smaller than the chart, duplicates of the image will be displayed to fill the background area

The Draw Legend check box is activated by default, clear the check box if you do not want to display a legend in your chart.

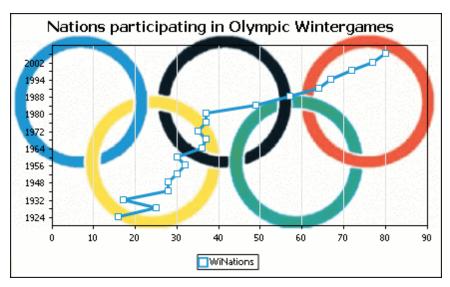
Plot

The Plot is the area where the actual data of the chart is displayed. You can draw a border around the plot and specify a different background color and/or image for the plot area. In the screenshot below, the background color of the chart has been changed to gray (vertical gradient) whereas the plot is still white, a red border has been drawn around it, and a background image has been added.



Orientation

If you have a small series of large values it may be convenient to swap the X and Y axis for a better illustration. Note that in the screenshot below also the background color of the plot has been set to "Transparent" and the background image has been applied to the chart.



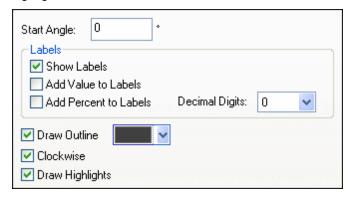
Note that this option is not available for pie and gauge charts.

Type-Related Features

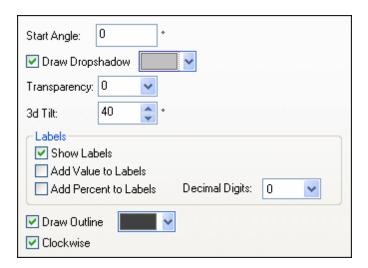
For each of the chart types, and even for the various sub-types, the **Change Appearance** dialog box provides a section where you can define the type-related features of the chart.

Pie chart

Most settings are the same for the 2d and 3d versions. In 2d pie charts, you can additionally draw highlights.



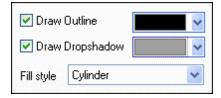
In 3d pie charts, you can display drop shadows, add transparency and define the 3d tilt.



The Start Angle value defines where the first row of the selected column will be displayed in the chart. An angle of 0 degrees corresponds to 12 o'clock on a watch.

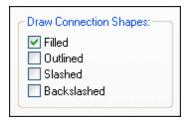
You can show labels in addition to, or instead of, the legend, add values and/or percentage to the labels, and define for the percentage values the number of decimal digits to be displayed. The color that you can select next to the <code>Draw Outline</code> check box is used for the optional border drawn around the chart and the individual pie segments. The <code>Clockwise</code> check box allows you to specify whether the rows should be listed clockwise or counter-clockwise. In 3d pie charts, you can draw a drop shadow and define its color, add transparency to the chart, and define the 3d tilt. In 2d charts, the <code>Draw Highlights</code> option adds additional structure to the chart.

Bar chart



For bar charts, you can add an outline to the bars and define its color. In 2d bar charts, you can also draw a drop shadow and define its color (this option is not available for 3d bar charts). By default, the shape of the bars resembles a cylinder, however you can also choose "Vertical Gradient" or "Solid" from the Fill style drop-down list.

Line chart



To draw connection shapes that mark the values in line charts, you need to activate at least one check box in the Draw Connection Shapes group box. You can use five different shapes to mark a series: square, rhomb, triangle, inverted triangle, and circle. If there are more than five series in your chart you can combine the connection shapes by selecting more than one option in the Draw Connection Shapes group box. In the screenshot below, both Filled and Slashed have been selected and the Slashed type is used for the sixth series and beyond.

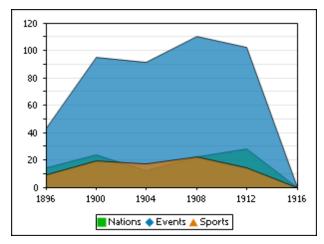


Connection shapes are available for both line charts and value line charts.

Area chart



Among the properties that you can change for area charts is transparency; this way you can prevent that one series is hidden by another series in the chart. In addition, you can add an outline to the individual data areas and define its color (see screenshot below).

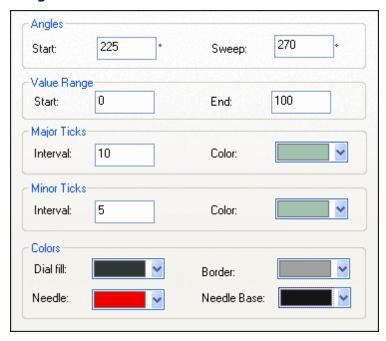


Candlestick chart



If both opening and closing value are defined as series, you can choose the colors and whether or not the candle should be filled if the closing value is greater that the opening value.

Gauge chart



The Start value in the Angles group box defines the position of the 0 mark and the Sweep value is the angle that is used for display. In the Value Range group box you can define the minimum and maximum values to be displayed. Tick marks are displayed with (major ticks) or without (minor ticks) the corresponding value; you can define separate colors for them. In the Colors group box you can define colors for the dial fill, needle, needle base (hides the first part of the needle in the center of the chart), and the border that surrounds the chart.

Colors

Depending on the chart type you have selected, MobileTogether Designer provides two different sections for the definition of colors to be used in charts:

- Color Schema for pie, bar, line, area, and candlestick charts
- Color Range for gauge charts

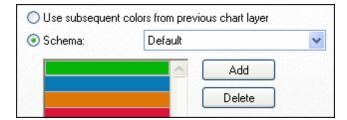
Color Schema

The Color Schema section of the **Change Appearance** dialog box provides four predefined color schemas (i.e., default, grayscale, colorful, and pastel) that can be customized; in addition you can also define your own color schema from scratch.



The top color will be used for the first series, then the second color and so on. You can change the order or the colors by selecting a color and dragging it to its new positions with the mouse. To add a new or delete an unwanted color, click the corresponding button. In candlestick charts, only the first color will be used.

If you have appended one or several layers of overlay charts to a Charts window, the Color Schema section of the **Change Appearance** dialog box contains the additional radio button Use subsequent colors from previous chart layer which is activated by default.



When the radio button is activated, the color schema from the previous layer will be used and you cannot choose a separate color schema for the overlay. The series of the active layer will be displayed using subsequent colors from the color schema of the previous layer. This way, all series of the Charts window have different colors and can therefore be distinguished more easily.

You can break this link on any additional layer that you add and choose a different color schema that then can also be re-used in subsequent layers.

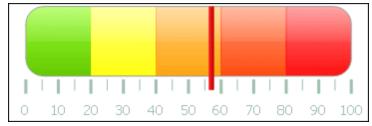
Color Range

In gauge charts, you can customize the appearance of the gauge by applying colors to certain value ranges.



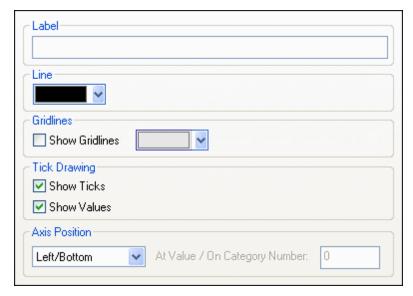
The definition shown in the screenshot above will appear in the gauge charts as follows:



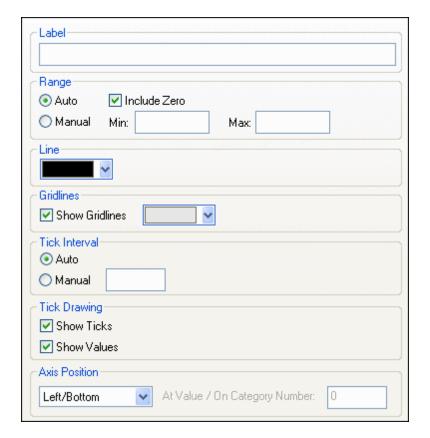


X-Axis

In the X-axis section of the **Change Appearance** dialog box, you can enter a label for the axis, and define colors for the axis and the grid lines (if displayed). You can also define whether or not you want to display tick marks and axis values. This section is the same for all bar, line, area, and candlestick charts.



In Value Line Charts however, you can also define the value range, and define at what interval tick marks should be displayed.



Label

The text entered into the Label field will be printed below the axis as a description of the X-axis.

Range

By default, the Auto radio button is selected in the Range group box. If you want to display a fragment of the chart in greater detail, activate the Manual radio button and enter minimum and maximum values into the respective fields.

If the column that is used for the X-axis does not include zero, you can deactivate the Include zero check box and the X-axis will start with the minimum value that is available in the series.

Line

The axis is displayed in the color that you choose from the Line drop-down-list. You can use one of the preselected colors, or click the **Other color...** button to choose a standard color or define a custom color. Click the **Select...** button on the Custom tab and use the pipette to pick a color that is displayed somewhere on your screen.

Grid lines

If the ${\tt Show}$ ${\tt Grid}$ lines check box is activated, you can choose a color from the corresponding drop-down list box.

Tick Interval

If you are not satisfied with the default tick marks, you can activate the Manual radio button in the Tick Interval group box and enter the difference between the individual tick marks into the corresponding field.

Tick Drawing

You can switch the display of tick marks on the axis and/or axis values on or off.

Axis Position

From the drop-down list, you can choose the position where the axis is to be displayed. When selecting "At Value / On Category Number", you can also position the axis anywhere within the plot.

Y-Axis

In the Y-axis section of the **Change Appearance** dialog box, you can enter a label for the axis, define colors for the axis and the grid lines (if displayed), define the value range, and decide if and where tick marks should be displayed and whether or not you want to show the axis values. This section is the same for all bar and line charts.



Label

The text entered into the Label field will be printed to the left of the axis as a description of the Y-axis.

Range

By default, the Auto radio button is selected in the Range group box. If you want to display a fragment of the chart in greater detail, activate the Manual radio button and enter minimum and maximum values into the respective fields.

If the column that is used for the X-axis does not include zero, you can deactivate the Include zero check box and the X-axis will start with the minimum value that is available in the series.

Line

The axis is displayed in the color that you choose from the Line drop-down-list. You can use one of the preselected colors, or click the **Other color...** button to choose a standard color or define a custom color. Click the **Select...** button on the Custom tab and use the pipette to pick a color that is displayed somewhere on your screen.

Grid lines

If the Show Grid lines check box is activated, you can choose a color from the corresponding drop-down list box.

Tick Interval

If you are not satisfied with the default tick marks, you can activate the Manual radio button in the Tick Interval group box and enter the difference between the individual tick marks into the corresponding field.

Tick Drawing

You can switch the display of tick marks on the axis and/or axis values on or off.

Axis Position

From the drop-down list, you can choose the position where the axis is to be displayed. When selecting "At Value / On Category Number", you can also position the axis anywhere within the plot.

Z-Axis

In the Z-axis section of the **Change Appearance** dialog box, you can enter a label for the axis, define colors for the axis, and decide whether or not you want to show tick marks on the axis. This section is the same for all 3d bar charts (Bar Chart 3d and Bar Chart 3d Grouped).



Label

The text entered into the Label field will be printed to the right of the axis as a description of the Z-axis.

Line

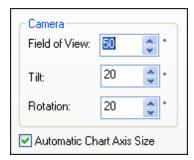
The axis is displayed in the color that you choose from the Line drop-down-list. You can use one of the preselected colors, or click the **Other color...** button to choose a standard color or define a custom color. Click the **Select...** button on the Custom tab and use the pipette to pick a color that is displayed somewhere on your screen.

Tick Drawing

You can switch the display of tick marks on the axis on or off.

3D Angles

In 3d bar charts you can customize the 3d appearance of the chart in the 3d Angles section of the **Change Appearance** dialog box.



The Tilt value determines the rotation around the X-axis, whereas the Rotation value defines the rotation around the Y-axis. You can automatically adapt the size of the chart axis to the Chart window width by activating the corresponding check box.

If the Automatic Chart Axis Size check box is activated, MobileTogether Designer will automatically calculate the optimum size of the X-axis as well as the Y-axis for the current Chart window size. The width and height of the chart will change dynamically when you resize the Chart window.

Sizes

In the Sizes section of the **Change Appearance** dialog box, you can define different margins as well as the size of axis and gauge ticks. Note that not all the properties listed below are available for all chart types.

General

Outside margin

Title to Plot

Legend to Plot

Space between the plot and the edge of the Chart window.

Space between the chart title and the upper edge of the plot.

Space between the lower edge of the plot and the legend.

Pie

Plot to Label In pie charts, the space between the most left and right edge of the pie and

its labels.

Pie Height In 3d pie charts, the height of the pie.

Pie Drop Shadow In 3d pie charts, the length of the shadow (if it is activated in the Pie

section).

X-Axis

X-Axis to Axis Label In bar and line charts, the space between the X-axis and its label.

X-Axis to Plot In 2d bar charts and line charts, the space between the X-axis and the

plot.

X-Axis Tick Size In bar and line charts, the length of the ticks on the X-axis.

Y-Axis

Y-Axis to Axis Label In bar and line charts, the space between the Y-axis and its label.
Y-Axis to Plot In 2d bar and line charts, the space between the Y-axis and the plot.

Y-Axis Tick Size In bar and line charts, the length of the ticks on the Y-axis.

Z-Axis

Z-Axis to Axis Label In 3d bar charts, the space between the Z-axis and its label. Z-Axis Tick Size In 3d bar charts, the length of the ticks on the Z-axis.

Line Drawing

> Connection Shape In line charts, the size of the squares that mark the values in the chart. Size

3d Axis Sizes

Manual X-Axis Size In 3d bar charts, defines the relation between the length of the X-axis and of Base

the Chart window size. Please note that the Automatic Chart Axis Size check box in the 3d Angles section must be deactivated, otherwise

the size will still be calculated automatically.

of Base

Manual Y-Axis Size In 3d bar charts, defines the relation between the length of the Y-axis and the Chart window size. Please note that the Automatic Chart Axis Size check box in the 3d section must be deactivated, otherwise the size will still be calculated automatically.

Z-Axis Series Margin In 3d bar charts, the distance on the Z-axis between the individual series.

Gauge

Border Width In round gauge charts, the width of the border around the gauge.

Gauge Ticks

Border to Tick In round gauge charts, the space between the inner edge of the border and

the ticks that mark the values. Distance

Major Tick Length In round gauge charts, the length of the major ticks (i.e., ticks that show a

label).

Major Tick Width In round gauge charts, the width of the major ticks (i.e., ticks that show a

label).

Minor Tick Length In round gauge charts, the length of ticks that do not have a value

displayed.

Minor Tick Width In round gauge charts, the width of ticks that do not have a value

displayed.

Gauge Needle

Needle Length In round gauge charts, the length of the needle. (Note that the percentage

> is calculated from the diameter of the gauge, so if you choose a value greater that 50%, the needle will point to somewhere outside the gauge!) In round gauge charts, the width of the needle at the center of the gauge.

Needle Width at

Base

Needle Base Radius In round gauge charts, the radius of the base that covers the center of the

gauge.

Gauge Color Range

Border to Color Range Distance Color Range Width In round gauge charts, the space between the inner edge of the border and

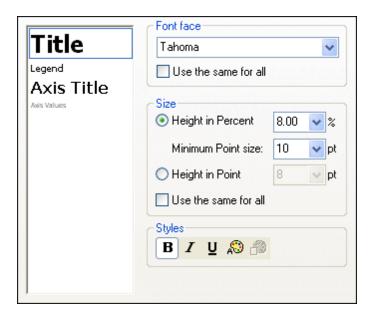
the outer edge of the color range.

In round gauge charts, the width of the customizable color range. (Note

that the percentage is calculated from the diameter of the gauge!)

Fonts

The Fonts section of the **Change Appearance** dialog box lets you configure fonts for objects in the Chart window.



Font settings

You can choose the font face, size, and style for the individual elements displayed in the Chart window. You can define the size as a percentage of the chart size and define a minimum size in points, or specify an absolute value (in points). To apply the same font and/or size to all text elements, activate the respective Use the same for all check box.

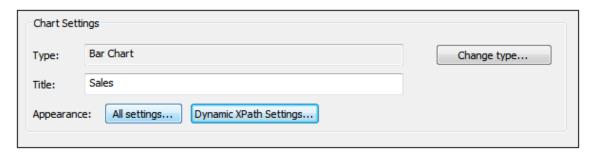
The element names in the list box are defined as follows:

- **Title**: The name of a chart
- **Legend**: The key to the colors used in the chart
- Labels: The designation of the pies of a pie chart
- Axis Title: The name of the X, Y, and Z axis in a bar or line chart
- Axis Values: The units displayed on an axis in a bar or line chart
- Tick Values: The units displayed on a gauge chart

Dynamic XPath Settings

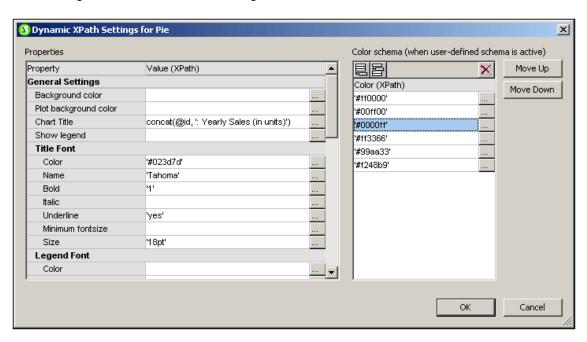
Dynamic XPath Settings are very useful if you wish to use dynamic data from the XML document in the settings of the chart. For example, the title of a chart about a Region element might need to have data about that Region element (such as its name) in the title of the chart. If there are several Region elements, any one of which will be used at a time for the chart, then the data for the chart title can only be obtained dynamically via an XPath expression. The Dynamic XPath Settings dialog enables such data to be accessed via XPath expressions.

To access the chart's Dynamic XPath Settings dialog, click **Dynamic XPath Settings** in the Chart Settings pane of the Chart Configuration dialog (see screenshot below).



Dynamic XPath Settings

The Dynamic XPath Settings dialog (*screenshot below*) is accessed by clicking the **Dynamic** XPath Settings button in the Chart Settings pane of the Chart Configuration dialog. A number of chart settings can be entered in this dialog.



Note the following points:

All entries in this dialog are evaluated as XPath expressions, so string literals must be

- enclosed in quotes. For example: 'Tahoma', '1', '18pt', and '#FF3366'.
- On hovering over a setting or its value, a tooltip appears giving information about enumerations and formats.
- Dynamic XPath settings have precedence over settings made in the Chart Configuration dialog or Change Appearance dialog. For example, a chart title made as a dynamic XPath setting has precedence over one set in the Chart Configuration dialog.
- The colors of the color schema will be used when the user-defined color schema is selected in the Change Appearance dialog as the color schema to use. Colors are set in the RGB hexadecimal format: #RRGGBB. So an XPath expression to specify the color red would be: '#FF0000'.

8.8 Hyperlinking to Solutions

You can create hyperlinks to solutions in the following ways:

- Via the Open URL action of page or control events
- In an email that the end-user sends

If the URL of the hyperlink does not contain a query string, then the solution is opened at its start page. If the URL does contain a query string, then the solution is opened in accordance with the logic of the solution and the query string. As examples of the two types of URLs (without and with a query string), think about the URL of a search engine such as Google.

- This URL, without a query string, opens the Google start page: https://www.google.com/
- This URL contains a query string that queries the Google search engine for "Altova MobileTogether" (everything after the question mark is the query string). The URL directly opens a page containing the results of the search (and not the start page of Google): https://www.google.com/search?q=Altova+MobileTogether&ie=utf-8&oe=utf-8&gws_rd=cr&ei=3YAaVdDDA4SYsgGOm4A4

Note: At the time of writing (late April 2015), hyperlinks to MobileTogether solutions do not work in Gmail and some other email applications, but they work perfectly in popular clients such as AquaMail, K9, and MailWise. They have been tested in AquaMail and K9 and work correctly in these applications.

Linking to a solution from a design component

A design component can be linked to a solution via the component's <u>Open URL</u> action. For example, if a button is clicked, the button's <u>Open URL</u> action can specify that a solution is opened.

Create a solution link as follows:

- 1. For the event on which you wish to specify the solution link, create an Open URL action (see screenshot below).
- 2. Create an XPath expression that uses the mt-run-solution-url function to generate the URL of the solution. The function is described below.



▼ mt-run-solution-url

mt-run-solution-url(ServerAddress? as xs:string, SolutionName? as xs:string,
InputParameters? as xs:string) as xs:string?

Generates the URL of a solution from the three submitted arguments:

 ServerAddress: Takes the name or IP address of the MobileTogether Server on which the solution that you want to run is deployed

- SolutionName: Takes the deployed path of the solution on the server. For
 example: /public/MySolution (which would point to the MySolution.mtd file in
 the /Public container)
- InputParameters: Takes the function mt-run-solution-url-parameters as its input. The argument of the function is a sequence of string values that provide the values of the query's parameters. The mt-run-solution-url-parameters function returns a string containing the parameters (names and values) of the URL's query string, correctly encoded and percent-escaped according to the rules for encoding URL query strings. The parameter names in the result string are automatically generated by the function (they are: in1, in2 ... inN), and each is assigned a value from the string items of the function's argument, with names and values being paired in index order. (Additionally, the InputParameters argument can be provided as a string that is already encoded for the query string part of a URL (see fourth example below).)

The mt-run-solution-url function therefore creates a URL, with or without query parameters, that accesses a solution on a MobileTogether Server. The query parameters are passed to the solution when the solution is opened via the URL. The values of these parameters can be accessed in other design components by using the MT_InputParameters global variable.

Examples

- mt-run-solution-url('100.00.000.1', '/public/MyDesign', '') returns a URL that points to the MyDesign solution on the server with the IP address 100.00.000.1. The URL has no query parameters.
- mt-run-solution-url('', '/public/MyDesign', '') returns a URL that points to the MyDesign solution on the current server. The URL has no query parameters.
- mt-run-solution-url('', '', mt-run-solution-url-parameters(('2015', 'USA', 'true'))) returns a URL that points to the current solution on the current server. The argument of the mt-run-solution-url-parameters function is a sequence of string values that will be the values of the query's parameters. The first string will be the value of the first parameter, the second string will be the value of the second parameter, and so on. The mt-run-solution-url-parameters function returns a string that is correctly encoded and percent-escaped according to the rules for encoding URL query strings.
- mt-run-solution-url('', '', 'in1=value1&in2=value2*3FAndMoreValue2')
 returns a URL that points to the current solution on the current server. The
 InputParameters argument is submitted as a string already encoded as a URL
 query string.

Note the following points:

- If the first argument, ServerAddress, is the empty string, then the current server is
 used.
- The first ServerAddress argument is used to look up server information stored on the client. The port number, user name, and user password that are associated with the server name are then used to connect to the server. So if a URL is generated with a server name that is not recognized by the client, then the URL will not work.
- If the second argument, SolutionName, is the empty string, then the current solution is used.
- The second argument, SolutionName: (i) generates the deployed path (on the

- server) if the solution is run on the server, but (ii) generates a file path for simulations.
- The third argument, InputParameters, uses another MobileTogether-specific XPath extension function called mt-run-solution-url-parameters to generate and encode the query's parameter-value pairs. Do not confuse the mt-run-solution-url-parameters function (which encodes the query parameters) with the mt-run-solution-url function (which generates the whole URL).

Using hyperlink query parameter values in other design components

When a solution is opened by triggering a hyperlink that is associated with a control event or page event, any parameter values in the hyperlink's URL are passed to the solution and can then be used in other design components in the target solution. The values are stored as a sequence of string values in the \$MT_InputParameters global variable of the target solution. The order of the string values in the \$MT_InputParameters sequence is the same as that in the sequence submitted to the mt-run-solution-url-parameters function for generating the URL's query parameters. Since the order of string values in the \$MT_InputParameters is therefore known to you, each string can be accessed in XPath expressions by using position predicates. For example: \$MT_InputParameters[1] returns the first string value in the sequence, and \$MT_InputParameters[2] returns the second string value.

Linking to a solution from an email that the end-user sends

The <u>Send Email To</u> action enables emails to be sent from the client and server. If an email is sent as HTML, you can add a hyperlink to the body of the email. The link can open a MobileTogether solution. To add a link to the email body, use the <u>mt-html-anchor</u> function in the XPath expression of the *Body* option (see screenshot below).

```
Send Email C from Client form Server

As form Time C Text

From "sender@altova.com" 

To "contact.one@altova.com" 

Cc "contact.two@altova.com" 

Bcc 

Subject "MobileTogether Clients Available in EN, DE, FR, ES, JA" 

Body concat($XML3/Messages/Messages@date="2015-04-15"], mt-html-anchor("Unregister from mailing list", mt-run-solution-url((", "/public/unregister", ")))) 

No Attachments C Attachments listed below C Dynamic Attachments

On Error Abort Script C Continue
```

The <u>mt-html-anchor</u> function takes two arguments: <u>LinkText</u> and <u>TargetURL</u>. It uses these two arguments to create an HTML hyperlink element: LinkText

For example:

```
mt-html-anchor('Unregister from mailing list', mt-run-solution-url('', '/
public/unregister', ''))
```

generates an HTML code fragment of the following pattern:

Unregister from mailing list

The <u>mt-run-solution-url</u> function generates the URL that links to the solution (using the mobiletogether://scheme), and this URL is stored as the value of the hyperlink's href attribute.

Note: When a link is created with the mt-run-solution-url function, it is created with the mobiletogether:// scheme (and not the http://scheme), which enables a solution to be opened from the email applications of mobile devices. However, if the email is opened on a web client, the link to open the solution must use the http://scheme. In this case, therefore, the http://link must be manually created; the mt-run-solution-url function should not be used in this case.

Note: For web clients, a link can be created that goes directly to a solution on the server, for example, http://localhost:8085/run?d=/public/BizBudget. If the solution's container on the server has been configured to allow anonymous access, then the end user will not need to log in to the server, but can use the solution directly. For information about setting access levels on the server, see the MobileTogether Server user manual.

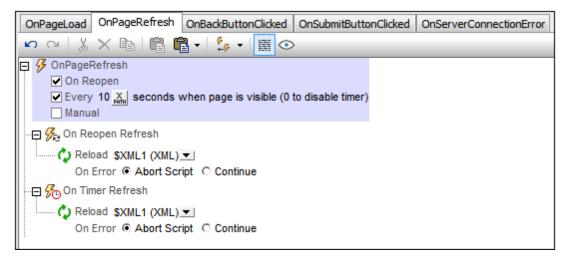
Page Design Page Refresh 493

8.9 Page Refresh

The onPageRefresh event is a page event that you can define. The event can be defined to occur in one or more of the following cases (also see screenshot below). For each case, you can specify a set of actions to perform.

- On Reopen: Whenever the page is reopened. Note that the actions defined for this option
 are also triggered when a solution that was paused (and is running in the background) is
 reopened. (See the project property <u>On Switch to Other Solution</u> and the
 SolutionExecution action.)
- Every X seconds: The number of seconds to the next refresh. The time can be specified in an XPath expression. The default is 10 seconds.
- On manual refresh: If enabled, the solution will display a Refresh button at the top of the page (a circle with two arrows). When the end user clicks this button, a page refresh is carried out.

When you select an option, a node for that option appears in the tree (*On Reopen Refresh, On Timer Refresh, On Manual Refresh*). You can define actions for one or more of these options on their respective nodes (see *screenshot below*).



In the screenshot above, the page has been set to refresh in two situations: (i) every time the page is reopened, and (ii) every 10 seconds. In both cases, the same Reload action has been defined. This means that the Reload action is carried out every 10 seconds *and* every time the page is reopened.

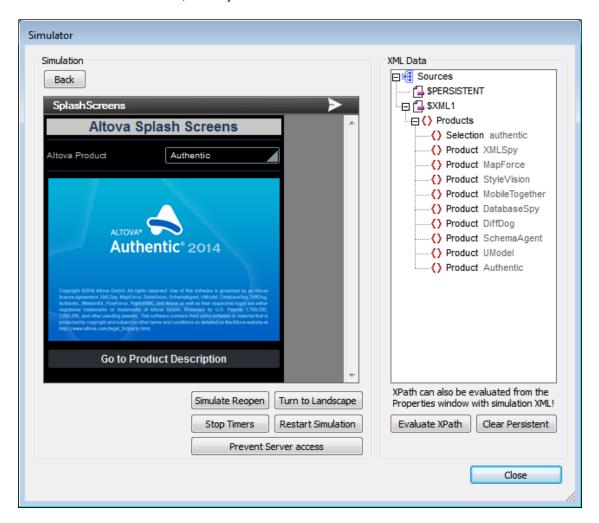
Simulating page refreshes

In the Simulator (screenshot below), you can influence page refreshes in the following ways:

- If a page refresh is defined on page reopens, then the **Simulate Reopen** button in the Simulator is enabled. Click it to simulate a page reopen.
- If a time-based page refresh is defined, then the **Stop Timers** button in the Simulator is enabled. When the simulation starts, the page is automatically refreshed every x seconds, where x is the number of seconds you specified for the refresh. If you wish to stop the time-based page-refresh in the Simulator, click **Stop Timers**. This is useful if

494 Page Design Page Refresh

you wish to look at the progress of the simulation more carefully and without the page being constantly refreshing. When the timers are stopped, the button changes into a **Start Timers** button, which you can click to re-start timers.



Page Design Server Connection Errors 495

8.10 Server Connection Errors

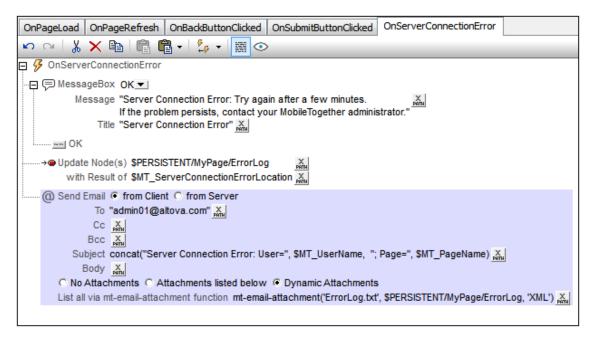
A server connection error could occur while making the initial connection, or when the connection is lost. For the event that such an error occurs, you can define:

- a suitable error message to the end user (client device), and
- the subsequent actions to take.

You can also simulate a connection error in the Simulator.

Defining what to do when there is a connection error

You can define what actions to execute when there is a server connection error. These actions are defined for each page: in the tab of the <u>page event OnServerConnectionError</u>. The actions you define would typically include a message to the end user and a procedure for the workflow to follow. The screenshot below shows a sequence of actions that could be performed.



The screenshot above defines a sequence of three actions to perform:

1. Send an error message to the client (screenshot below).



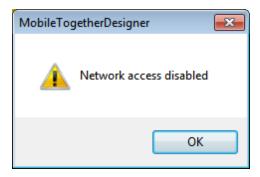
2. Use the MT_ServerConnectionErrorLocation variable to save the the action stack that

496 Page Design Server Connection Errors

triggered the <u>OnServerConnectionError</u> page event. (The variable should be used for debugging purposes; see <u>MT_ServerConnectionErrorLocation</u> for details.) Alternatively to the MT_ServerConnectionErrorLocation variable, you can use the <u>Update Node</u> action to write your own error codes into a node that you specially create for this purpose.

3. Send an email to the administrator (from the client) with the error information as an attachment.

Note: If no action is defined in the tab of the <code>OnServerConnectionError</code> page event, then a generic *Network access disabled* message is sent to the mobile device (*screenshot below*):

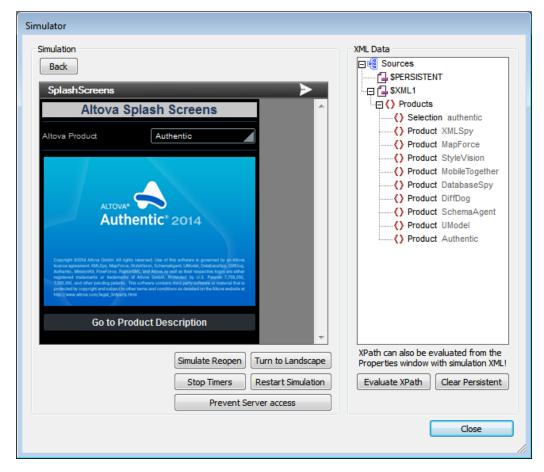


Simulating a server connection error (for testing)

You can use <u>simulations in MobileTogether Designer</u> and <u>simulations on the Server</u> to test the behavior of a solution. Do this as follows:

1. Start the simulation (for example, with F5). The simulator starts (screenshot below).

Page Design Server Connection Errors 497



- 2. Click **Prevent Server Access**. Server access will be disabled, and the button will toggle into an **Enable Server Access** button.
- 3. Carry out an action that calls for a server connection. Since access is disabled, the actions defined in the OnServerConnectionError page event are triggered.
- 4. To enable server access again, click **Enable Server Access** in the simulator.

Chapter 9

XPath/XQuery: Expressions, Functions, Variables

9 XPath/XQuery: Expressions, Functions, Variables

This section is organized into the following sections:

- XPath/XQuery Expressions and Functions
- Global Variables

For a description of functions in Altova's general XPath extension function library, see the section Altova Extension Functions. (These extension functions work with all Altova products, including MobileTogether.)

9.1 XPath/XQuery Expressions and Functions

This section groups together the XPath/XQuery functionality of MobileTogether Designer: the Edit XPath/XQueryExpression dialog, and the extension functions and user-defined functions that MobileTogether Designer makes available to each project.

- Edit XPath/XQuery Expression Dialog
- MobileTogether Extension Functions
- User-Defined XPath/XQuery Functions
- FAQ about XPath/XQuery

Edit XPath/XQuery Expression Dialog

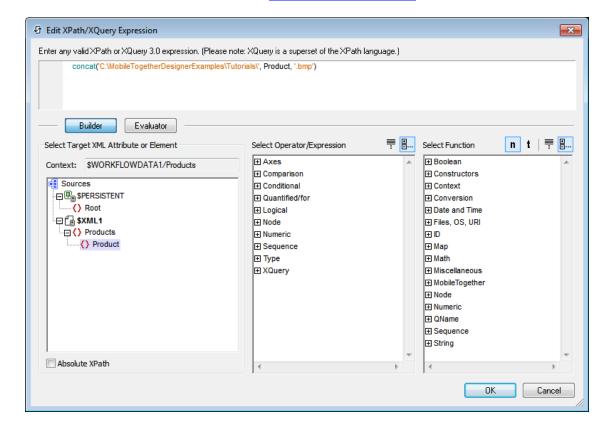
The **Edit XPath Expression** dialog (*screenshot below*) is used to create and edit XPath expressions for a range of MobileTogether features. For example, file paths in many dialogs can be composed with XPath expressions; this allows the dynamic composition of file paths, and enables paths to be based on node content in any page source.

The Edit XPath Expression dialog provides a tree of XML data sources and a library of XPath/XQuery 3.1 operators and functions (see screenshot below), and thus supports the building of valid XPath/XQuery 3.1 expressions. The dialog has two modes: (i) Builder mode, for creating XPath expressions, and (ii) Evaluator mode for checking the result of the XPath expression being currently edited. You can switch between the two modes by clicking the respective buttons (**Builder** and **Evaluator**).

Click **OK** when you have completed editing the XPath expression.

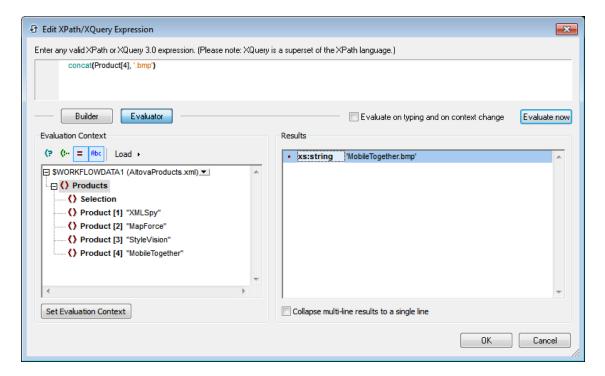
Builder mode

In Builder mode, you can build XPath expressions quickly and correctly by either (i) entering the XPath expression in the Expression text box via the keyboard, or (ii) using the entry helpers of Builder mode to insert nodes, operators, and functions by double-clicking them in their respective lists (see screenshot below). When an expression that has been entered in the Expression text box contains errors, the expression is underlined in red, thus alerting you to the problem. Builder mode is described in detail in the section, XPath Expression Builder.



Evaluator mode

In Evaluator mode, you can see, in the *Results* pane on the right-hand side of the dialog (see screenshot below), the results of evaluating the currently entered XPath expression. The *Evaluation Context* pane shows the structure and contents of the currently assigned Working XML document. The Edit XPath Expression dialog's Evaluator mode is described in detail in the section, XPath Expression Evaluator.

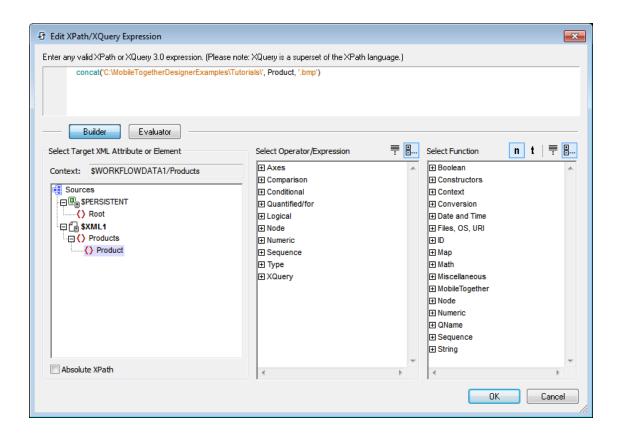


XPath/XQuery Expression Builder

When the **Builder** button in the Edit XPath Expression dialog is clicked (see screenshot below), entry helper panes to help you build an XPath expression become visible. Double-click an entry in any of these entry helpers to enter it at the current cursor point in the XPath expression.

There are three entry helper panes:

- A schema tree for entering element and attribute nodes in the XPath expression. If the
 Absolute XPath check box is unchecked, then the location path to the selected node is
 entered relative to the context node (the node in the design within which the XPath
 expression is being built). An absolute XPath expression starts at the document root.
 Absolute paths are used for the selected node if the Absolute XPath check box is
 checked.
- An entry helper pane for: (i) axes (ancestor::, parent::, etc), (ii) operators (for example eq and div), and (iii) expressions (for # in # return #, etc). This pane displays the axes, operators, and expressions either listed alphabetically or grouped by functional category. Select the option you want by clicking the appropriate icon above the pane.
- An entry helper with the functions of the active XPath version either listed alphabetically or grouped by functional category. Select the option you want by clicking the appropriate icon above the pane. The n and t buttons above the pane display the arguments of functions, respectively as names and datatypes.

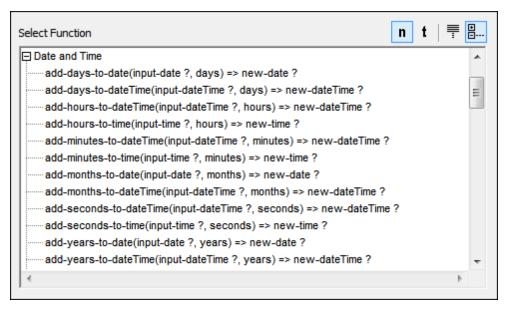


schema tree.

Building XPath expressions

The Edit XPath Expression dialog helps you to build XPath expressions in the following ways.

- Context node and schema tree
 The Context text box in the Select Target XML Attribute or Element pane immediately shows you the context node. In the schema tree below the Context text box, you can see where the context node occurs and quickly build the XPath expression by referring to the
- Inserting a node from the target XML tree
 In the Select Target XML Attribute or Element pane, the structure of the target XML
 document is displayed. Double-click a node in the schema tree to insert that node in the
 XPath expression. If the Absolute XPath check box is not checked, the selected node
 will be inserted with a location path expression that is relative to the context node. For
 example, in the screenshot above, the Product element, which is a child of the Products
 element (the context node), has been inserted with a location path that is relative to the
 context node (that is, as Product). If the Absolute XPath check box were checked, the
 Product node would be inserted as \$XML1/Products/Product.
- Inserting XPath axes, operators and expressions
 The Select Operator/Expression pane lists the XPath axes (ancestor::, parent::, etc),
 operators (for example, eq and div), and expressions (for # in # return #, etc). The
 display can be toggled between an alphabetical listing and a hierarchical listing (which
 groups the items according to functionality). To insert an axis or operator in the XPath
 expression, double-click the required item. Placing the mouse cursor over an axis/
 operator/expression displays a brief description of that item.
- Inserting XPath functions
 - The *Select Function* pane lists XPath functions alphabetically or grouped according to functionality (click the respective icon at the top of the pane to switch between the two arrangements). Each function is listed with its signature. If a function has more than one signature, that function is listed as many times as the number of signatures. Arguments in a signature are separated by commas, and each argument can have an occurrence indicator (? indicates a sequence of zero or one items of the specified type; * indicates a sequence of zero or more items of the specified type; + indicates a sequence of one or more items of the specified type). The arguments can be displayed as names or as datatypes. Select the nor button above the pane to toggle between the two display options. Each function also specifies the return type of that function. For example: => date? indicates that the expected return datatype is a sequence of zero or one date item. Placing the mouse cursor over a function displays a brief description of the function.



To insert a function in the XPath expression, double-click the required function.

Note: The XPath default namespace is used for all XPath/XQuery functions, including extension functions and user-defined functions.

Intelligent editing during direct text entry

If you type an expression directly in the *Expression* text box, a list of options that are available at that point are displayed in a popup (see screenshot below).



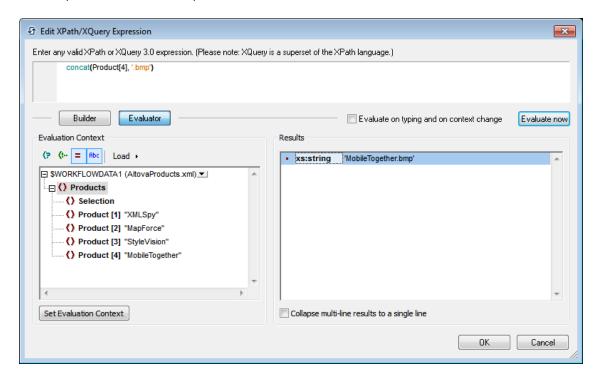
These include:

- elements (such as presswatch in the screenshot above),
- descendant nodes (presswatch/selection in the screenshot above),
- XPath functions (fn:upper-case above) and XPath axes (ancestor-or-self above)
- a list of the <u>global variables</u> defined for the project (displayed when a standarder is entered in the expression)
- a list of the <u>custom strings</u> defined in the Localization dialog (displayed when the <u>mt-load-string</u> function is entered in the expression; see the description of <u>mt-load-string</u>)

Go up and down the list of options using the **Up** and **Down** keys, and press **Enter** if you wish to select an option and enter it in the expression.

XPath/XQuery Expression Evaluator

Clicking the **Evaluator** button in the Edit XPath Expression dialog switches the dialog to Evaluator mode (see screenshot below). The dialog in this mode has two panes: the *Evaluation Context* pane and the *Results* pane.



The XPath expression and its evaluation

The XPath expression in the XPath Expression text box can be edited, and the expression can be evaluated. The results of the evaluation are displayed in the Results pane. In the screenshot above, for example, the result of evaluating the XPath expression <code>concat(Product[4], '.bmp')</code> is displayed as the string <code>MobileTogether.bmp</code> (because <code>MobileTogether</code> is the content of the fourth <code>Product</code> element).

Note: The XPath default namespace is used for all XPath/XQuery functions, including extension functions and user-defined functions.

Using Builder mode and switching to Evaluator mode for the results

If you wish to use entry helpers to build the XPath expression, you can switch to Builder mode (by clicking the **Builder** button), build the expression in Builder mode, then switch to Evaluator mode to see the results of the evaluation.

When is the XPath expression evaluated?

Evaluation is carried out in two mutually exclusive situations:

- Evaluate on typing: If this check box is selected, the XPath expression is evaluated: (i) with every keystroke used to edit the expression, and (ii) when the mode is switched from Builder mode to Evaluator mode.
- Evaluate now: This button is enabled when the Evaluate on Typing option is not checked. Click it to evaluate the expression.

The Evaluation Context pane

The *Evaluation Context* pane shows the structure and contents of the data sources. Nodes in document trees can be expanded or collapsed by clicking the respective icons of individual nodes. You can load an XML file structure by clicking **Load** and browsing for the file you want.

The icons above the pane display or hide the following XML syntactic constructs: (i) processing instructions, (ii) comments, (iii) attributes, (iv) text nodes. You can therefore see the entire XML document structure, together with the text contents of nodes, but you can also hide certain constructs if you wish to reduce clutter in the pane.

Changing the context node for evaluation purposes

You can change the context node of the XPath expression by clicking the node in the document tree that you want as the new context node and then selecting **Set Evaluation Context**. If the *Evaluate on Typing or on Context Change* option is checked, then the result will appear immediately in the Results pane.

This feature is useful for checking results with different context nodes. Note, however, that the actual context node for the expression will be the context node within which the current design component is being created. At runtime, the actual context node will be used, not the context node used in the Evaluator.

MobileTogether Extension Functions

The following XPath extension functions, created specifically for use in MobileTogether designs, can be used in XPath expressions anywhere in the design. The XPath default namespace is used for calls to these extension functions.

Note: For a description of functions in Altova's general XPath extension function library, see the section <u>Altova Extension Functions</u>. (The general extension functions work with all Altova products, including MobileTogether.)

▼ mt-reload-dateTime

Description

Returns the time at which the page-source was reloaded. If not loaded then an empty sequence is returned.

Usage

mt-reload-dateTime(\$XML1)

▼ mt-cache-update-dateTime

Description

Returns the time when the page-source cache was updated. If the page source is not cached then an empty sequence is returned.

Usage

mt-cache-update-dateTime(\$XML1)

▼ mt-change-image-colors

```
mt-change-image-colors(Base64Image as xs:base64Binary, SourceColors as
xs:string+, TargetColors as xs:string+, Quality as xs:integer) as
xs:base64Binary
```

The function takes a Base64-encoded image as its first argument, changes those image colors that are submitted as the SourceColors argument into the corresponding TargetColors, and returns the transformed image as a Base64-encoded image.

- Base64Image must be text encoded in base64Binary. A node that returns such text
 can e submitted.
- SourceColors and TargetColors must be sequences with one or more string items. The number of items in both sequences must be the same.
- Quality is an integer from 1 to 100. It specifies the quality level, with 100 being highest quality.

■ Examples

- mt-change-image-colors(Base64ImageNode, ('#000000'), ('#666666'), 90) returns a Base64 image with black (#000000) turned to gray (#666666)
- mt-change-image-colors(xs:base64Binary(Base64ImageNode), ('#000000', '#FF0000'), ('#666666', 'blue'), 90) returns a Base64 image with black (#000000) changed to gray (#6666666) and red (#FF0000) changed to blue

▼ mt-db-any-changed-fields

Description

Returns true if the row element contains new, modified or deleted columns. Returns false if the fields are unmodified. The function tests whether there was any modification to the specified DB row.

Usage

mt-db-any-changed-fields(\$DB1/DB/RowSet/Row[3])

▼ mt-db-any-changed-rows

Description

Returns true if the \$DB variable (which represents a DB source) has new, modified or deleted rows. Returns false if the DB unmodified. The function tests whether there was any modification to the DB.

Usage

mt-db-any-changed-rows(\$DB1)

▼ mt-db-deleted-original-fields

Description

Returns field attributes from the original Row element:

- For new rows: no field attributes. If the function is called for a new row, it returns an empty list.
- For modified rows: deleted field attributes. If the function is called for a modified row, it returns those fields from the corresponding OriginalRow element that are not listed under the Row element.
- For deleted original rows: all field attributes. If the function is called for an
 OriginalRow (one for which the corresponding Row element was deleted), it returns
 all fields.

Usage

mt-db-deleted-original-fields(\$DB1/DB/RowSet/Row[1])

▼ mt-db-deleted-original-rows

Description

Returns all <code>OriginalRow</code> elements for which no <code>Row</code> element exists. The function can be used to determine the modifications to data that was read from the database. Note that this will only work if <code>OriginalRowSet</code> was enabled on the page source!

Usage

mt-db-deleted-original-rows(\$DB1)

▼ mt-db-modified-fields

Description

Returns modified field attributes of the specified Row element:

- For new rows: all field attributes. If the function is called for a new row, it returns all fields.
- For deleted original rows: all field attributes. If the function is called for an OriginalRow (one for which the corresponding Row element was deleted), it returns all fields.

For modified rows: the modified field attributes. If the function is called for a modified
row, it returns those fields that have a different value from the one stored in the
corresponding OriginalRow element.

Usage

mt-db-modified-fields(\$DB1/DB/RowSet/Row[3])

▼ mt-db-modified-rows

Description

Returns a list of the attributes of all the Row elements that were modified. The function can be used to determine the modifications to data read from the DB. Note that this will only work if OriginalRowSet was enabled on the page source!

Usage

mt-db-modified-rows(\$DB1)

▼ mt-db-new-fields

Description

Returns new field attributes of the specified Row element:

- For new rows: all field attributes. If the function is called for a new row, it returns all fields.
- For modified rows: the new field attributes. If the function is called for a modified row, it returns those fields that are not listed for the corresponding OriginalRow element.
- For original rows: an empty list. If the function is called for an OriginalRow element (one for which the corresponding Row element was deleted), it returns an empty list.

Usage

mt-db-new-fields(\$DB1/DB/RowSet/Row[1])

▼ mt-db-new-rows

Description

Returns a list of new Row elements, that is, the Row elements that are listed under the RowSet element but not under the OriginalRowSet element. The function can be used to determine modifications to data that was read from the DB. Note that this will only work if OriginalRowSet was enabled on the page source!

Usage

mt-db-new-rows(\$DB1)

▼ mt-email-attachment

mt-email-attachment(Filename as xs:string, Content as node(), ContentType as
xs:string) as array(*)

Prepares the XML or Base64 content provided by the Content argument as an email attachment. Whether the content is parsed as XML or as a Base64 image is determined by the ContentType argument, which takes either XML or Base64 as its value. The filename that is associated with the attachment is given by the Filename argument.

Note: The mt-email-attachment is a requirement when using the *Dynamic Attachments*

option of the **Send Email To** action.

Note: Attachments work with Android and iOS clients only.

■ Examples

```
    mt-email-attachment('MTNewFeatures.txt', $XML2/Releases/
    Release[@date='2015-04-15']/Features, 'XML') returns the Features node
    mt-email-attachment('MTLogo.jpg', $XML4/Images/Image[@name='MTLogo'],
    'Base64') returns an image file
```

▼ mt-external-error-code

Description

Returns the error code of the last DB, Load, or Save action. Returns the native error code of the OS or database, such as 404 when a web page cannot be found.

<u>Usage</u>

```
mt-external-error-code()
```

▼ mt-external-error-text

Description

Returns the error text of the last DB action, or Load or Save action. The error text is the text that is provided along with the returned error code.

Usage

```
mt-external-error-text()
```

▼ mt-format-number

```
mt-format-number(Number as xs:numeric, PictureString as xs:string) as
xs:string
```

Takes a number as the first argument, formats it according to the second (PictureString) argument, and returns the formatted number as a string. This is useful for formatting difficult-to-read numbers into a format that is more reader-friendly. The picture string can also contain characters, such as currency symbols, and so can also be used to insert characters in the formatted output. If you wish to insert a zero at a digit position when no digit exists in the input number at that position, then use a zero in that digit position of the picture string (see examples below). If you do not wish to force a zero (or other character), use the hash symbol (#).

Digits before the decimal separator are never foreshortened. The decimal part of a number (to the right of the decimal separator) as well as the units digit (first digit to the left of the decimal separator) are rounded off if the picture string of the decimal part is shorter than the number of decimal places in the input number.

Note: The grouping separator and decimal separator in the formatted output on the mobile device will be those of the language being used on the mobile device.

■ Examples

```
mt-format-number(12.3, '$#0.00') returns $12.30
mt-format-number(12.3, '$00.00') returns $12.30
mt-format-number(12.3, '$0,000.00') returns $0,012.30
mt-format-number(12.3, '$#,000.00') returns $012.30
```

```
mt-format-number(1234.5, '$#,##0.00') returns $1,234.50
mt-format-number(1234.5, '$#0.00') returns $1234.50
mt-format-number(123.4, '$0') returns $123
mt-format-number(1234.5, '$0') returns $1235
mt-format-number(1234.54, '$0.0') returns $1234.5
mt-format-number(1234.55, '$0.0') returns $1234.6
```

▼ mt-has-server-access

Description

Returns true if server access is possible, false otherwise. The function checks whether a connection to MobileTogether Server can be established within the number of seconds specified by the TimeoutSeconds argument of the function.

Usage

mt-has-serveraccess(TimeoutSeconds as integer)

▼ mt-html-anchor

Description

The <u>mt-html-anchor</u> function takes two arguments: <u>LinkText</u> and <u>TargetURL</u>. It uses these two arguments to create an HTML hyperlink element: LinkText a>. The link can be inserted in emails that are sent as HTML by using the <u>Send Email To</u> action. The link can open a an Internet page or a MobileTogether solution. To add a link to the email body, use the <u>mt-html-anchor</u> function in the XPath expression of the *Body* option (see screenshot below).

```
    Osend Email ○ from Client ⓒ from Server
    As ⓒ HTML ○ Text
    From "sender@altova.com" 
    To "contact.one@altova.com" 
    Co "contact.two@altova.com" 
    Bcc 
    Subject "MobileTogether Clients Available in EN, DE, FR, ES, JA" 
    Body concat($XML3/Messages/Message[@date="2015-04-15"], mt-html-anchor("Unregister from mailing list", mt-run-solution-url((", '/public/unregister', ")))) 
    ON Attachments ○ Attachments listed below ○ Dynamic Attachments

On Error ⓒ Abort Script ○ Continue
```

Examples

```
    mt-html-anchor('Unregister from mailing list', 'http://www.altova.com/unregister.html')) returns <a href="http://www.altova.com/unregister.html">Unregister from mailing list</a>
    mt-html-anchor('Unregister from mailing list', mt-run-solution-url('', '/public/unregister', '')) returns <a href="LinkTo-unregister.mtd">Unregister from mailing list</a>
```

▼ mt-invert-color

```
mt-invert-color(Color as xs:string) as xs:string
```

The argument Color is the RGB color code (in hexadecimal format). For example "#00FFFF". Each color component (R, G, and B) in the code is inverted, and the new color code is returned.

Examples

```
mt-invert-color('#000000') returns '#FFFFFF'
mt-invert-color('#00FFFF') returns '#FF0000'
mt-invert-color('#AA0000') returns '#55FFFF'
mt-invert-color('#AA33BB') returns '#55CC44'
mt-invert-color('#34A6D2') returns '#CB592D'
```

mt-load-string

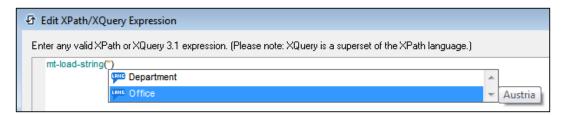
Description

Returns the <u>custom string</u> identified by the <u>StringName</u> argument. Each <u>custom string</u> is part of a pool of strings that are defined in the <u>Localization dialog</u>. Each <u>StringName</u> is associated, in the string pool, with multiple localized strings. The language of the localized string that is selected is the same as the language of the mobile device or <u>simulation</u> <u>language</u>.

Usage

mt-load-string('StringName')

When the mt-load-string function is being entered in the <u>Edit XPath/XQuery Expression</u> <u>dialog</u>, all available custom strings are displayed in a popup (see screenshot below). To display this popup, place the cursor inside the delimiting apostrophes or quotes of 'StringName', and click **Ctrl+Spacebar**.



Cycle through the list by using the **Up** and **Down** keyboard buttons. The value of the selected <u>custom string</u> is displayed to the right of the popup (see screenshot above). The localization language of the displayed value is that of the <u>simulation language</u> that is currently selected in MobileTogether Designer. To enter the name of a <u>custom string</u> in the XPath expression, select the string, or cycle through the <u>custom string</u> list to the string you want and press **Enter**.

▼ mt-localized-string-name

```
mt-localized-string-name(Text as xs:string) as xs:string*
mt-localized-string-name(Text as xs:string, Lang as xs:string) as xs:string*
```

The function takes as its (first) argument a text-string value in the default language or a localized language and returns the name of the control or string that has the submitted text-string value as its text value. See <u>Localization</u> and <u>Project | Localization</u> for more information. The function has two signatures. In the second signature, the language of the text-string is the second argument (Lang). The Lang argument should match the name of a localized language. If Lang is specified, then the strings of that localized language only are searched for a text-string that matches the text-string submitted in the Text argument.

Examples

```
    mt-localized-string-name('City') returns 'CityButton'
    mt-localized-string-name('Stadt', 'DE') returns 'CityButton'
    mt-localized-string-name('Stadt') returns 'CityButton'
    mt-localized-string-name('Stadt', 'ES') returns ''
    mt-localized-string-name('Stadt', 'German') returns ''
    mt-localized-string-name('Ciudad', 'ES') returns 'CityButton'
```

The examples above are for a string on a Button control that is named CityButton. The default language of the string is English and it has been localized for languages named DE and ES.

▼ mt-refresh-userroles (deprecated)

Description

Loads the currently available user roles from the server. The function updates the user roles from the server that can be queried via the global variable MT_UserRoles.

Usage

mt-refresh-userroles()

▼ mt-run-appstoreapp-url

```
mt-run-appstoreapp-url(Scheme? as xs:string, Host? as xs:string,
InputParameters? as xs:string) as xs:string?
```

Generates the URL of a MobileTogether AppStore App from the three submitted arguments. The URL will start the app from a hyperlink (that would typically be sent in an email). The hyperlink's target URL must have the format: <url-scheme>://<url-host>. The scheme information will be stored in the app's manifest file. It indicates to the device that this app should be used to open URLs that start with this scheme. If a link having a URL with this scheme is tapped, then the device will open this AppStore App. See the section AppStore Apps for details.

- scheme: The unique scheme name that is associated with the app. The scheme is assigned when the app's program code is generated (in <u>Screen 1 of the Generate</u> <u>Program Code Wizard</u>).
- Host: The unique host name that is associated with the app. The host is assigned when the app's program code is generated (in <u>Screen 1 of the Generate Program</u> Code Wizard).
- InputParameters: Takes the function mt-run-solution-url-parameters as its input. The argument of the function is a sequence of string values that provide the values of the query's parameters. The mt-run-solution-url-parameters function returns a string containing the parameters (names and values) of the URL's query string, correctly encoded and percent-escaped according to the rules for encoding URL query strings. The parameter names in the result string are automatically generated by the function (they are: in1, in2 ... inN), and each is assigned a value from the string items of the function's argument, with names and values being paired in index order. (Additionally, the InputParameters argument can be provided as a string that is already encoded for the query string part of a URL (see second example below).)

The mt-run-appstoreapp-url function therefore creates a URL, with or without query parameters, that opens a MobileTogether AppStore App. The query parameters are passed

to the app when the app is opened via the URL. The values of these parameters can be accessed in other design components by using the \$MT_InputParameters global variable.

Examples

- mt-run-appstoreapp-url('myappscheme', 'myfirstapp', '') returns the URL myappscheme://myfirstapp. On a mobile device, the URL will open the AppStore app that is identified by that scheme and host. The URL has no query parameters.
- mt-run-solution-url('myappscheme', 'myfirstapp', 'inl=value1&in2=value2%3FAndMoreValue2') returns the URL myappscheme:// myfirstapp. On a mobile device, the URL will open the AppStore app that is identified by that scheme and host. The InputParameters argument is submitted as a string already encoded as a URL guery string.

▼ mt-run-solution-url

mt-run-solution-url(ServerAddress? as xs:string, SolutionName? as xs:string,
InputParameters? as xs:string) as xs:string?

Generates the URL of a solution from the three submitted arguments:

- ServerAddress: Takes the name or IP address of the MobileTogether Server on which the solution that you want to run is deployed
- SolutionName: Takes the deployed path of the solution on the server. For example: /public/MySolution (which would point to the MySolution.mtd file in the /Public container)
- InputParameters: Takes the function mt-run-solution-url-parameters as its input. The argument of the function is a sequence of string values that provide the values of the query's parameters. The mt-run-solution-url-parameters function returns a string containing the parameters (names and values) of the URL's query string, correctly encoded and percent-escaped according to the rules for encoding URL query strings. The parameter names in the result string are automatically generated by the function (they are: in1, in2 ... inN), and each is assigned a value from the string items of the function's argument, with names and values being paired in index order. (Additionally, the InputParameters argument can be provided as a string that is already encoded for the query string part of a URL (see fourth example below).)

The mt-run-solution-url function therefore creates a URL, with or without query parameters, that accesses a solution on a MobileTogether Server. The query parameters are passed to the solution when the solution is opened via the URL. The values of these parameters can be accessed in other design components by using the SMT_InputParameters global variable.

■ Examples

- mt-run-solution-url('100.00.000.1', '/public/MyDesign', '') returns a URL that points to the MyDesign solution on the server with the IP address 100.00.000.1. The URL has no query parameters.
- mt-run-solution-url('', '/public/MyDesign', '') returns a URL that points to the MyDesign solution on the current server. The URL has no query parameters.
- mt-run-solution-url('', '', mt-run-solution-url-parameters(('2015', 'USA', 'true'))) returns a URL that points to the current solution on the current server. The argument of the mt-run-solution-url-parameters function is a

sequence of string values that will be the values of the query's parameters. The first string will be the value of the first parameter, the second string will be the value of the second parameter, and so on. The mt-run-solution-url-parameters function returns a string that is correctly encoded and percent-escaped according to the rules for encoding URL query strings.

mt-run-solution-url('', '', 'in1=value1&in2=value2*3FAndMoreValue2')
returns a URL that points to the current solution on the current server. The
InputParameters argument is submitted as a string already encoded as a URL
query string.

Note the following points:

- If the first argument, ServerAddress, is the empty string, then the current server is
 used.
- The first ServerAddress argument is used to look up server information stored on the client. The port number, user name, and user password that are associated with the server name are then used to connect to the server. So if a URL is generated with a server name that is not recognized by the client, then the URL will not work.
- If the second argument, SolutionName, is the empty string, then the current solution is used.
- The second argument, SolutionName: (i) generates the deployed path (on the server) if the solution is run on the server, but (ii) generates a file path for simulations.
- The third argument, InputParameters, uses another MobileTogether-specific XPath extension function called mt-run-solution-url-parameters to generate and encode the query's parameter-value pairs. Do not confuse the mt-run-solution-url-parameters function (which encodes the query parameters) with the mt-run-solution-url function (which generates the whole URL).

▼ mt-run-solution-url-parameters

mt-run-solution-url-parameters((Parameters* as xs:string) as xs:string? The mt-run-solution-url-parameters function is intended for use as the third argument of the mt-run-solution-url function. The argument of the mt-run-solution-url-parameters function is a sequence of string values. These are the parameter values of the query string that will be generated by the mt-run-solution-url function. The mt-run-solution-url-parameters function returns a string containing the parameters (names and values) of the URL's query string, correctly encoded and percent-escaped according to the rules for encoding URL query strings. The parameter names in the result string are automatically generated by the function (they are: in1, in2 ... inN), and each is assigned a value from the string items of the function's argument, with names and values being paired in index order.

Note: If the Parameters string contains double quotes, change these to single quotes. This is required because MobileTogether uses double quotes to build the parameters string. You can use the XPath replace function to change double quotes to single quotes: replace(<string>, '"', "'").

The values of these parameters can be accessed in other design components by using the \$MT_InputParameters global variable.

■ Example

mt-run-solution-url-parameters(('2015', 'USA', 'true')) returns
 '&in1=2015&in2=USA&in3=true'

mt-server-config-url

mt-server-config-url(ServerSettings as map) as xs:string?

The mt-server-config-url function takes a map as its argument and returns a string that is a URL. When the URL is sent as a link to client devices, and the link is tapped, then server settings on the client are automatically updated. The URL will look something like this: mobiletogether://mt/change-settings?settings=<json encoded settings>

The JSON-encoded server settings that are contained in the URL are provided by the ServerSettings argument of the mt-server-config-url function. The ServerSettings map is shown below. For an example of how to use this function, open and test the example file ClientConfiguration.mtd in the MobileTogetherExamples/SimpleApps folder.

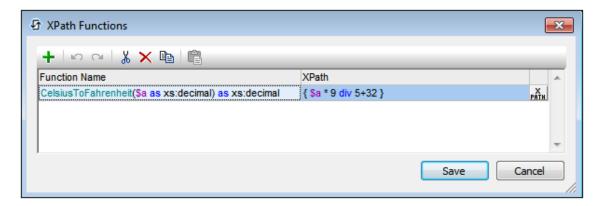
```
mt-server-config-url(
  map{
    "DelOthSrv": false(),
                           (: whether existing server list should be
deleted before import :)
                           (: whether the details view should be used or
    "DetView": true(),
the grid :)
    "Refresh": true(),
                           (: refresh solutions on start :)
    "RetToSln": true(),
                           (: Windows clients only :)
    "ActSrvURL": "",
                           (: the first server with this URL gets the
active one :)
    "Servers": array{
       map{
         "Name": "",
         "URL": "",
                           (: if DelOthSrv is false then this property is
used as key to merge the new settings with the existing ones :)
         "LoginProvider": map{
             "NameSuffix": "",
             "NamePrefix": "",
                             },
         "Port": "",
         "User": "",
         "StorePW": true(),
         "Password": "",
         "SSL": false()
          }
                             (: , map {...} to add another server :)
                     }
     }
```

▼ mt-transform-image

See the description of this function in the <u>Image-related Functions</u> section of the Altova Extension Functions.

User-Defined XPath/XQuery Functions

You can create your own custom-made XPath/XQuery functions for individual projects, which you can then use in all XPath expressions in the project. The access point for creating and managing these user-defined functions is the XPath Functions dialog, accessed with the command, Project XPath Functions dialog (screenshot below) lists all the user-defined XPath functions in the project. You can add and delete functions using the corresponding icons in the toolbar of the dialog. To edit the definition of a function, click the function's Edit XPath Expression button.

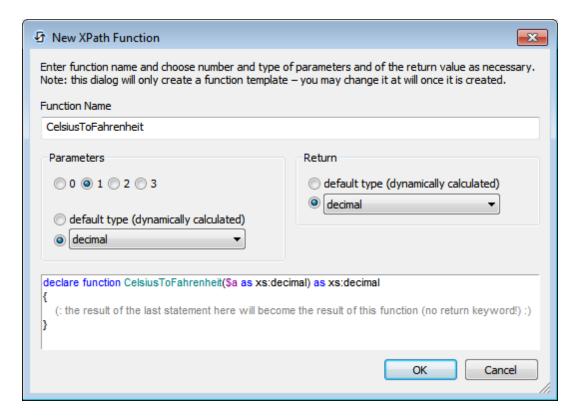


The function list can be ordered by function name. Do this by clicking the header of the Function Name column. Each click cycles the ordering through the following ordering sequence: (i) ascending, (ii) descending, (iii) dialog order. The order in the dialog can be modified by dragging-and-dropping functions to other positions in the list. Note that, if you order the list in ascending/descending order and then move a function to a different position in the list, the newly created order becomes the new dialog order.

Add a new user-defined XPath function

Adding a new user-defined function involves two steps: (i) declaring the function, and (ii) defining the function.

To add a new function, do the following, click **Add** in the toolbar of the dialog (see screenshot above). This displays the New XPath Function dialog (screenshot below).



In this dialog, you can declare the name of the function, specify the number of function parameters (arguments) and their types, and specify the return type of the function. In the screenshot above we have declared a function to convert a decimal number from Celsius to Fahrenheit. The function takes one parameter, which is the input Celsius value as a decimal. It will output a decimal value, the Fahrenheit temperature. What the function does is defined in the next step. After declaring the function (*screenshot above*), click **OK**. This displays the Edit Function dialog (*screenshot below*), which contains the template of the newly declared function and in which you can now define the function.

Enter the definition of the function within the braces. In the definition shown in the screenshot above, \$a is the input parameter. Click **OK**. when done. The function will be added to the list of

user-defined functions in the XPath Functions dialog and can be used in all XPath expressions in the project.

Note: User-defined XPath functions do not need to be placed in a separate namespace. Consequently, no namespace prefix is needed when defining or calling a user-defined function. The XPath default namespace is used for all XPath/XQuery functions, including extension functions and <u>user-defined functions</u>. In order to avoid ambiguities involving built-in functions, we recommend that you capitalize user-defined functions.

FAQ about XPath/XQuery

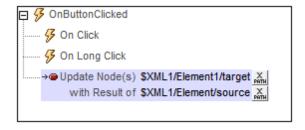
▼ I have an XPath expression inside the repeating row of a table. Should I use an absolute or relative XPath expression to target a child attribute?

If your XPath expression is inside the repeating row of a table, then the element corresponding to the row of the table is the context node, say, Row.

- If you use an absolute path, for example \$XML/Row/@id, then the XPath expression will return a sequence of the @id values of all Row elements. If you are using an operation that expects one atomic value, the operation will generate an error.
- If you use a relative path, for example @id, then, since for every repeating row, you have a context \$XML/Row, the XPath expression will correctly return the single atomic value of the one @id attribute of the current Row element.
- ▼ I have an XPath expression that locates a mixed-content element (text and element). Instead of getting the text value of the located element and its descendants (as mandated by XPath), I get the text content of the located element only. Why?

If an element with mixed content (text and element/s) is located with an XPath locator expression, then the text content of the mixed-content element only is returned. The text content of descendant elements is ignored.

This is best explained with an example of the <u>Update Node(s) action</u>. Consider the <u>Update Node(s) action</u>. Consider the <u>Update Node(s) action</u>.



If the XML tree had the following structure and content:

Then the target element would be updated with the text content of the mixed-content element source, while ignoring the content of its child element subsource. The node named target will be updated to <target>AAA</target>.

Note: If you wish to include the text content of descendant node/s, use a string

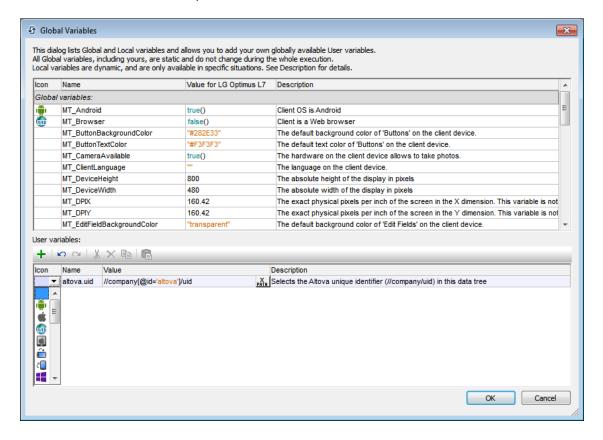
function. Using the XML example above, for instance, the expression string(\$XML1/Element1/source, '') will return "AAABBB".

Note: Charts use the XPath compliant method of serializing: When a mixed-content element is located using an XPath locator expression, then the text content of descendant elements is also serialized.

9.2 Global Variables

Global variables contain information about the client mobile device. For example, there is one variable to indicate the device's type, another to indicate its dimensions, and yet another to indicate the device's current orientation (landscape or portrait), and so on. The values of all these variables are obtained at run-time from the client device as part of standard mobile communication procedures. Variables can then be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. As a result, processing can be specified that is conditional upon a device's inherent static properties (such as size) or its changeable dynamic properties (such as orientation).

MobileTogether Designer has a standard library of global variables, which is displayed in the Global Variables dialog (**Project | Global Variables**, *screenshot below*). In this dialog, you can also define custom variables for use throughout the project. The values of customized user variables are set with XPath expressions.



The Global Variables dialog (screenshot above) displays three types of variables:

- <u>Static-value variables</u>: These variables contain values that do not change during the execution of the project. Notice that the header of the *Value* column indicates the mobile device that has been selected in the <u>Device Selector combo box</u>. The values of variables vary with the client device. For example, the variable smt_android has a value of true() when the mobile device being used is an Android.
- <u>Dynamic-value variables</u>: These variables contain device-related and project-related values
 that can change during execution. For example, the \$MT_ControlNode variable has
 different values according to which node is the current node at a given time during project

execution.

• <u>User variables</u>: In addition to the standard library of global variables, you can add your own global variables (called *User Variables* in the dialog) in the lower pane of the dialog. You use XPath expressions to give a user variable a value.

Note: When defining a user variable, do not use a \$ symbol in the name of the variable. When you use any global variable in an XPath expression, however, you must, as usual, use the \$ symbol. For example:

concat('http://www.', \$company, '.com')

Static Global Variables

Static-value variables are called *Global Variables* in the <u>Global Variables dialog</u>. They are variables that contain static information about the mobile device, such as the device's type and dimensions. Values of static variables do not change during the execution of the project. They are displayed in the <u>Global Variables</u> dialog (<u>Project | Global Variables</u>). In the dialog, the header of the <u>Value</u> column displays the mobile device that is selected in the <u>Device Selector combo box</u>. For example, the variable sml_android has a value of true() when the mobile device being used is an Android device. (Device information is sent by the device as part of standard mobile communication procedures.)

Variables that indicate the mobile-device type

Description

These are a set of variables (see table below) that indicate the device type. They can be used to specify actions that are conditional on the device type. For example: if (\$MT_ios=true())
then 'http://www.apple.com/' else 'http://www.altova.com'. Information about the client device is sent by the device. If the solution runs on a particular device, then the corresponding global variable (see table below) is set to true(); all the other variables in the group are set to false(). All these variables can then be used in XPath/XQuery expressions.

MT_Android	true() false()
MT_Browser	true() false()
MT_ios	true() false()
MT_iPad	true() false()
MT_Windows	true() false()
MT_WindowsPhone	true() false()

Variables that indicate the device's communications capability

Description

These variables indicate whether SMS and telephony services are available on the mobile device, and can be used to make checks before initiating <u>SMS or call actions</u>. Information about the communications capability is received from the client device. Values can be true() or false().

MT_SMSAvailable	true() false()
MT_TelephonyAvailable	true() false()

▼ Variables that indicate the availability of device features

Description

These variables indicate whether a camera application and geolocation tracking are available on the mobile device. They can be used to make checks before initiating image-taking or gelolocation-related actions. Information about the feature availability is received from the

client device. Values can be true() or false().

MT_CameraAvailable	true() false()
MT_GeolocationAvailable	true() false()

Variables that contain the device's dimensions and resolution

Description

The device's absolute height and width values are held by these variables as pixel values. The resolution is in terms of dpi (pixels per inch), in the X and Y dimensions. Resolution is not set on iOS devices, so \$MT_DPIX and \$MT_DPIY for iOS devices are empty.

MT_DeviceHeight	Length value in pixels
MT_DeviceWidth	Length value in pixels
MT_DPIX	Horizontal pixel density in pixels per inch
MT_DPIY	Vertical pixel density in pixels per inch

▼ Variables that contain default colors of device elements

Description

Pages and some page controls have different default colors on different devices. Knowing the default colors is useful for designing the look of the page. For example, a label's background color can be set conditionally according to what the default label text color on the device is:

if (\$MT_LabelTextColor = '#000000') then '#FFFFFF' else '#000000'. The default colors are received from the client device and are hexadecimal values, e.g: #336699 and #ffaaff.

MT ButtonBackgroundColor	Background color of buttons; Hex values, e.g: #ffaaff
MT_ButtonTextColor	Text color of buttons; Hex values, e.g: #336699
MT_EditFieldBackgroundColor	Background color of edit fields; Hex values, e.g. #ffaaff
MT_EditFieldTextColor	Text color of edit fields; Hex values, e.g: #336699
MT_LabelBackgroundColor	Background color of labels; Hex values, e.g: #ffaaff
MT_LabelTextColor	Text color of labels; Hex values, e.g: #336699
MT_PageBackgroundColor	Background color of pages; Hex values, e.g: #ffaaff

▼ Miscellaneous

■ MT_ClientLanguage

The language on the client device.

MT_InputParameters

Parameter values are passed to the solution when the solution is started. These values are stored in the MT_InputParameters variable. Currently, parameter values are passed to the solution when a hyperlink to the solution is clicked. If the hyperlink's URL has a query string that contains parameter values, then these are passed to the solution when the link is clicked and the solution is started. The MT_InputParameters variable holds parameter values as a sequence of string-value items. To retrieve a single parameter value, you must know that parameter's index position in the sequence. You can then use this position in an XPath locator expression, for example: \$MT_InputParameters[1]. For more information about hyperlinking and the MT_InputParameters variable, see Hyperlinking to Solutions.

MT_SimulationMode

Indicates, using the values listed in the table below, the kind of simulation that is currently running. The empty option indicates that the solution is running in an actual end-user scenario, and not in a simulation. \$MT_SimulationMode is useful, for example, if you want to provide conditional processing depending on what kind of simulation (or actual use) is currently running. See the section Simulation for more information.

"designer"	Simulation runs directly in designer	
"designer-server"	Simulation with a standalone server	
"designer-client"	Simulation is a trial run on client	
пп	Server to client/browser, run by end user	

MT UserName

The name with which to log in to MobileTogether Server.

Dynamic Local Variables

Dynamic-value variables are called *Local Variables* in the <u>Global Variables dialog</u>. They contain device-related and project-related information that can change during project execution. For example, the device orientation variables will change according to how the end user is currently holding the device (see the description of the device orientation variables below).

The variables that contain information about the current control (see below) are particularly useful because they can be used to refer to different aspects of the control and the node being currently processed. Being able to identify the current control and node enables conditional processing. For example, the *MT_ControlNode* variable can be used to test which node is the current node at a given time during project execution, and locate another node on this basis. The *MT_ControlValue* variable holds the content of the node associated with the current control.

▼ Variables that indicate device orientation

Description

The values of MT_Portrait and MT_Landscape can be true() or false() and can change during the course of project execution. They can be used to specify page or control properties according to device orientation.

MT_Portrait	true() false()
MT_Landscape	true() false()

▼ Variables that indicate the device's viewport dimensions

Description

These variables provide, respectively, the width (X dimension) and height (Y dimension) of the device's viewport. The values are pixel values and will necessarily be less than the device's width and height dimensions.

MT_CanvasX	Length value in pixels
MT_CanvasY	Length value in pixels

Variables that contain information about the current control

Description

These variables contain information related to the current control and its associated data source node (the source node of the control). The values of these variables change during execution according to which control is being currently processed. For example, the smt_controlNode variable has different values as the associated node changes as the current control changes. (Note that some controls, such as the space and horizontal line controls, do not have page source links, while others, like the chart control, will not have an XML value as the content of its associated node.)

These variables are useful for changing a control's properties based on the control's values.

For example, a \$MT_ControlValue variable can be used to change a label's background color to red in case an error is encountered: if (\$MT_ControlValue = 'NaN') then '#FF0000' else '#FFFFFF'.

MT_ControlKind	String value
MT_ControlName	String value
MT_ControlNode	XML node that is the control's source node
MT_ControlValue	Value of the control's page-source-link node
MT_ControlValueBeforeChange	Previous value of the control's page-source-link node, before the control or node is edited

Note: The **\$MTControlvalue** variable is **not** available for the generation of the values of the Visible, Get Value From XPath, and Text properties of <u>controls</u>. If used for the values of these properties, then a validation error results.

Miscellaneous

■ MT_DBExecute_Result

The XML result of the last executed <u>DB Execute action</u>. Note that any kind of SQL statement can be used in the <u>DB Execute action</u>. So executing the action could obtain various kinds of result XML data, including, for example, data from the DB, boolean values, or computational results.

MT_FirstPageLoad

Set to true() if this is the first time the <u>page</u> is loaded during the current workflow execution.

■ MT_HTTPExecute_Result

The XML result of the last executed <u>HTTP execute action</u> (includes SOAP and REST actions).

MT_PageName

The <u>name of the page</u>.

■ MT_ServerConnectionErrorLocation

This variable is a sequence of strings that contains the action stack that triggered the OnServerConnectionError event. Since action names can change from release to release, this variable should be used only for debugging.

MT_TargetNode

This variable identifies the target node of an <u>Update Node(s)</u>, <u>Insert Node(s)</u>, or <u>Append Node(s)</u> action. It can be used to generate update values and new node properties according to what the target node is. See the descriptions of the respective actions for examples of how the variable can be used. \$MT_TargetNode can also be used with the

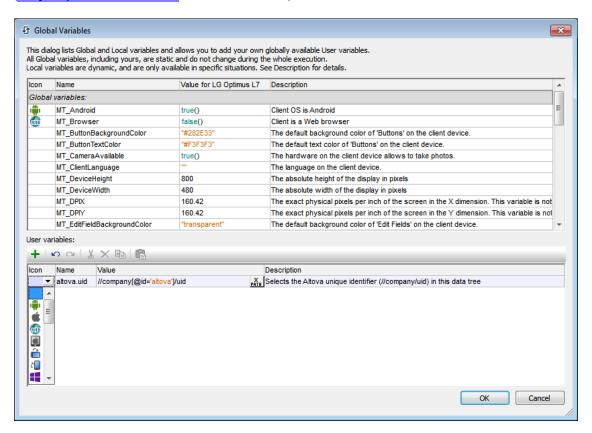
DB Execute action and the **Ensure Exists on Load (XPath)** command.

■ MT_UserRoles

The roles of the currently logged in user. The roles are those that are assigned to the user by the MobileTogether Server administrator, and are obtained from MobileTogether Server.

User Variables

User Variables are variables that you define in the lower pane of the Global Variables dialog (**Project | Global Variables**, *screenshot below*).



To add a user variable, in the lower pane, do the following:

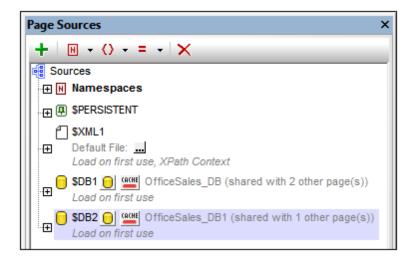
- Click the Append or Insert icons (located in the pane's toolbar) to add a new entry to the liet
- 2. Enter the name of your new variable (in the *Name* column, and without a \$ symbol) and give the variable a description (*Description* column). See screenshot above.
- 3. Click in the *Value* field to bring up the <u>Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog</u>, and enter the XPath expression that determines the value of the variable.
- 4. Select an icon to help identify the new variable as belonging to a particular group.
- 5. Click **OK** to finish. The variable is added as a global variable, and can be used in programming contexts.

Chapter 10

Databases

10 Databases

You can use databases (DBs) as data sources of MobileTogether designs. This allows data from DBs to be displayed in MobileTogether solutions. It also allows end users to edit data in DBs from their mobile devices. You can use multiple editable DB data sources. Data in these DB sources can then be retrieved, edited, and saved using a variety of mechanisms, including XQuery expressions.



This section

This section is organized as follows:

- DBs as Data Sources
- Connecting to a DB
- Selecting DB Objects as Data Sources
- Editing DB Data
- Saving Data to the DB
- The DB Execute Action
- Displaying DB Data
- Database Query

See the database tutorial, <u>Database-And-Charts</u>, for a detailed description of a MobileTogether design which uses multiple data sources that can be edited in the MobileTogether Client solution. Also see the <u>video demos of database use</u>.

Database support

The following databases are supported. The available root object for each database is also listed. While Altova endeavors to support other databases, successful connection and data processing have only been tested with the databases listed below. If your Altova application is a 64-bit version, ensure that you have access to the 64-bit database drivers needed for the specific

Databases 537

database you are connecting to.

Database	Root Object	Notes
Firebird 2.5.4	database	
IBM DB2 8.x, 9.1, 9.5, 9.7, 10.1, 10.5	schema	
IBM DB2 for i 6.1, 7.1	schema	Logical files are supported and shown as views.
IBM Informix 11.70	database	
Microsoft Access 2003, 2007, 2010, 2013	database	
Microsoft SQL Server 2005, 2008, 2012, 2014	database	
MySQL 5.0, 5.1, 5.5, 5.6	database	
Oracle 9i, 10g, 11g, 12c	schema	
PostgreSQL 8.0, 8.1, 8.2, 8.3, 9.0.10, 9.1.6, 9.2.1, 9.4	database	
SQLite 3.x	database	SQLite connections are supported as native, direct connections to the SQLite database file. No separate drivers are required.
Sybase ASE15	database	

For connecting to a SQLite DB, use MobileTogether Designer's Connection Wizard.

Note

On Linux and Mac OS X servers, the only database connections supported are JDBC.

10.1 DBs as Data Sources

This section:

- About DB data sources
- Tree structure of the DB data source
- Switching data sources
- About OriginalRowSet
- Primary Keys in MobileTogether Designer

About DB data sources

Any number of DB data sources can be added to the design of a page and then used within it. Whether a DB data source is editable or not is defined at the time the data source is added. Specify a DB data source to be uneditable if its data is required only for presentation. Make the data source editable if you want to allow clients to modify DB data.



When a DB source is added, a data tree is generated (see screenshot below and the section <u>Tree structure below</u>). Each DB table row corresponds to a Row element; the table's columns are added as attributes of the Row element. If the data source is used on multiple pages, then a single tree structure can be shared across all instances of the data source. The option to share a tree structure is available each time a data source is added that is used on another page. When a shared structure is modified, you are offered the option of modifying the shared data source in its multiple instances across pages; alternatively, the shared data source is modified only in the instance in which it is modified.

```
OfficeSales_DB1 (shared with 1 other page(s))

RowSet

() Row

id (Read Only, Primary Key) ="(: calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us :)

let $all := $DB2/DB/RowSet/Row/@id

let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))

let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1

return $id"

Clicenses

Month

Year

Office

OriginalRowSet
```

Switching data sources

After you have created a design that uses a DB as a data source, you can switch the data source to another DB that has the same structure and continue to use the original design. To switch the DBs of a data source, right-click the \$DB root node of the tree, select **Choose DB Data Source**, and continue with the DB connection process.

Two DBs are considered to have the same structure if the they have the same table names, same column names, and same column definitions. If the new structure is different in any way, although the connection to the DB will be made, the data source will not be updated with data from the new DB. If the DB switch is aborted, then the data source will continue to use the original DB.

Note: If the DBs involved in the switch have different case-sensitivities, then you will have to modify SQL statements, XPath expressions, and any other constructs that use the non-matching names.

Tree structure of the DB data source

Every DB data source has the following structure:

The nodes in the tree can be addressed using XPath expressions. If a node is set as the XPath context node for the page (via the node's context menu), then XPath expressions can be built

relative to the XPath context node. Otherwise nodes ca be addressed using absolute paths starting at the root node: \$DBX/DB/RowSet/Row/MyAttribute.

You can also use XQuery expressions to retrieve or manipulate data in the DB tree. See the section on primary keys below for an example.

About OriginalRowSet

In order for data to be edited and saved, the tree of the page source must also include an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, which is a copy of the <code>RowSet</code> element. The original data is saved in the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, while edited data is saved in the <code>RowSet</code> element. When the page source is saved, the difference between the two trees, <code>OriginalRowSet</code> and <code>RowSet</code>, is calculated, and the data source is updated on the basis of the difference. If the modification is successful, then the modified data is copied to <code>OriginalRowSet</code> so that <code>OriginalRowSet</code> contains the newly saved DB data, and the modification process can be repeated.

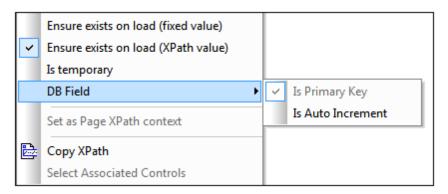
To create an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> for a page source, right-click the root node of the page source and toggle on the command <code>Create OriginalRowSet</code>.

The **Create OriginalRowSet** command is enabled for database type (\$DB) root nodes. It is a toggle command that creates/removes an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> data structure that contains the original data of the page source. User modified data is saved in the main structure created from the data source. When modified data is saved back to the DB, the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> structure is modified to contain the data newly saved to the DB. Till the time modified data is saved to the DB, the original DB data is retained in the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> structure. This ensures that the original DB data is still available in the tree.

Primary keys in MobileTogether Designer

Primary keys in DBs typically are auto-incrementing. When this is the case and a new row is added to a table, the primary key column of the added row is automatically incremented. In MobileTogether Designer, when a table is retrieved the primary key and auto-increment information is automatically retrieved and displayed in the Page Sources Pane (see screenshot below).

If auto-retrieval of this information was not successful, the context menu of tree nodes contains toggle commands that enable you to correctly annotate nodes (see screenshot below).



If the primary key column is not auto-incrementing, new primary key values for appended rows must be automatically generated using an XQuery expression. This is because primary key columns cannot be edited. The XQuery expression is inserted by using the primary-key node's context menu command, **Ensure Exists before Page Load (XPath Value)**. In the example below, a new value is generated for the primary key <code>@id</code> by using the following XQuery expression:

```
let $all := $DB1/DB/RowSet/Row/@id
let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))
let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1
return $id
```

```
OfficeSales_DB (shared with 2 other page(s))

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)

In the sale if (calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us:)
```

10.2 Connecting to a Database

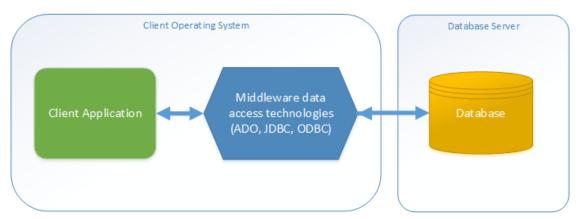
A database typically resides on a database server (either local or remote) which does not necessarily use the same operating system as the application that connects to it and consumes data. For example, while MobileTogether Designer runs on a Windows operating system, the database from which you want to access data (for example, MySQL) might run on a Linux machine.

MobileTogether Designer uses a database connection mechanism which relies on the data connection interfaces and database drivers that are already available on your operating system or released periodically by the major database vendors. In the constantly evolving landscape of database technologies, this approach caters for better cross-platform flexibility and interoperability. More specifically, MobileTogether Designer can access any of the major database types through the following data access technologies:

- ADO (Microsoft® ActiveX® Data Objects), which, in its turn, uses an underlying OLE DB (Object Linking and Embedding, Database) provider
- JDBC (Java Database Connectivity)
- ODBC (Open Database Connectivity)

Direct native connections to SQLite databases are also supported. To connect to a SQLite database, no additional drivers are required to be installed on your system.

The following diagram illustrates a simplified, generic representation of the typical data exchange between a client application such as MobileTogether Designer and a database.



Typical data exchange between a client application and a database server

Whether you should use ADO, ODBC or JDBC as a data connection interface largely depends on your existing software infrastructure. You will typically choose the data access technology and the database driver which integrates tighter (preferably natively) with the database system to which you want to connect. For example, to connect to a Microsoft Access 2013 database, you would build an ADO connection string that uses a native provider such as the Microsoft Office Access Database Engine OLE DB Provider. To connect to Oracle, on the other hand, you may want to download and install the latest JDBC or ODBC drivers from the Oracle website.

While drivers for Windows products (such as Microsoft Access or SQL Server) may already be available on your Windows operating system, they may not be available for other database types. Major database vendors routinely release publicly available database client software and drivers

which provide cross-platform access to the respective database through any combination of OLE DB, ODBC, or JDBC. In addition to this, several third party drivers may be available for any of the above technologies. In most cases, there is more than one way to connect to the required database from your operating system, and, consequently, from MobileTogether Designer. The available features, performance parameters, and the known issues will typically vary based on the data access technology or drivers used.

This section contains the following topics:

- Starting the Database Connection Wizard
- Database Drivers Overview
- Setting up an ADO Connection
- Setting up an ODBC Connection
- Setting up a JDBC Connection
- Using a Connection from Global Resources
- Examples

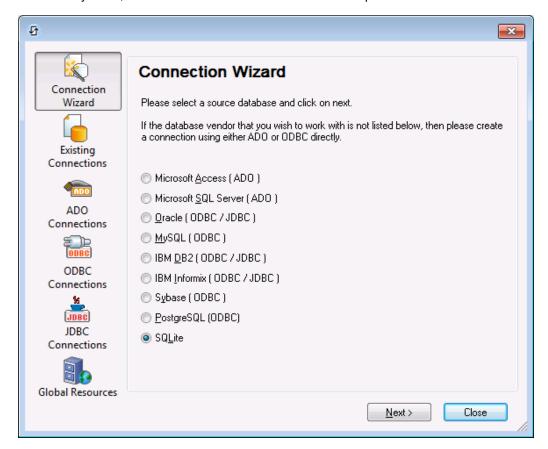
Starting the Database Connection Wizard

Whenever you take an action that requires a database connection, a wizard appears that guides you through the steps required to set up the connection.

Before you go through the wizard steps, be aware that for some database types it is necessary to install and configure separately several database prerequisites, such as a database driver or database client software. These are normally provided by the respective database vendors, and include documentation tailored to your specific Windows version. For a list of database drivers grouped by database type, see Database Drivers Overview.

To start the database connection wizard:

- In the Page Sources Pane (of Page Design View), click the Add Source button and select New DB Structure.
- In DB Query View, click the **Quick Connect** button at the top left of the view.



After you select a database type and click **Next**, the on-screen instructions will depend on the database kind, technology (ADO, ODBC, JDBC) and driver used.

For examples applicable to each database type, see the <u>Examples</u> section. For instructions applicable to each database access technology, refer to the following topics:

Setting up an ADO Connection

- Setting up an ODBC Connection Setting up a JDBC Connection

Database Drivers Overview

The following table lists common database drivers you can use to connect to a particular database through a particular data access technology. Note that this list does not aim to be either exhaustive or prescriptive; you can use other native or third party alternatives in addition to the drivers shown below.

Even though a number of database drivers are available by default on your Windows operating system, you may still want or need to download an alternative driver. For some databases, the latest driver supplied by the database vendor is likely to perform better than the driver that shipped with the operating system.

With some exceptions, most database vendors provide database client software which normally includes any required database drivers, or provide you with an option during installation to select the drivers and components you wish to install. Database client software typically consists of administration and configuration utilities used to simplify database administration and connectivity, as well as documentation on how to install and configure the database client and any of its components.

Configuring the database client correctly is crucial for establishing a successful connection to the database. If you have not installed your database client software yet, it is strongly recommended to read carefully the installation and configuration instructions of the database client, since they typically vary for each database version and for each Windows version.

Database	ODBC	JDBC	ADO
Firebird	Firebird ODBC driver (http:// www.firebirdsql.org/en/ odbc-driver/)	Firebird JDBC driver (http:// www.firebirdsql.org/en/ idbc-driver/)	
IBM DB2	IBM DB2 ODBC Driver	IBM Data Server Driver for JDBC and SQLJ	IBM OLE DB Provider for DB2
IBM DB2 for i	iSeries Access ODBC Driver	IBM Toolbox for Java JDBC Driver	 IBM DB2 for i5/OS IBMDA400 OLE DB Provider IBM DB2 for i5/OS IBMDARLA OLE DB Provider IBM DB2 for i5/OS IBM DB2 for i5/OS IBMDASQL OLE DB Provider
IBM Informix	IBM Informix ODBC Driver	IBM Informix JDBC Driver	IBM Informix OLE DB Provider
Microsoft Access	Microsoft Access Driver		 Microsoft Jet OLE DB Provider Microsoft Access Database Engine OLE DB Provider
Microsoft	SQL Server Native	Microsoft JDBC Driver	Microsoft OLE DB

Database	ODBC	JDBC	ADO
SQL Server	Client	for SQL Server (http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/data/aa937724.aspx)	Provider for SQL Server • SQL Server Native Client
MySQL	Connector/ODBC (http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/connector/odbc/)	Connector/J (http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/connector/j/)	
Oracle	Microsoft ODBC for Oracle Oracle ODBC Driver (typically installed during the installation of your Oracle database client)	JDBC Thin Driver JDBC Oracle Call Interface (OCI) Driver These drivers are typically installed during the installation of your Oracle database client. Connect through the OCI Driver (not the Thin Driver) if you are using the Oracle XML DB component.	Microsoft OLE DB Provider for Oracle
PostgreSQ L	psqlODBC (https://odbc.postgresql.org/)	Postgre JDBC Driver (https:// jdbc.postgresql.org/ download.html)	
Sybase	Sybase ASE ODBC Driver	jConnect™ for JDBC	Sybase ASE OLE DB Provider

^{*} The drivers highlighted in bold are Microsoft-supplied. If not already available on Windows system, they can be downloaded from the official Microsoft website.

To understand the capabilities and limitations of each data access technology with respect to each database type, refer to the documentation of that particular database product and also test the connection against your specific environment. To avoid common connectivity issues, consider the following general notes and recommendations:

- Since 32-bit and 64-bit drivers may not be compatible, make sure to install and configure
 the driver version applicable to your Altova application. For example, if you are using a 32bit Altova application on a 64-bit operating system, set up your database connection
 using the 32-bit driver version.
- The latest driver versions may provide features not available in older editions.
- When setting up an ODBC data source, it is generally recommended to create the data source name (DSN) as *System DSN* instead of *User DSN*.
- When setting up a JDBC data source, ensure that JRE (Java Runtime Environment) is installed and that the CLASSPATH environment variable of the operating system is configured.
- For the support details and known issues applicable to Microsoft-supplied database drivers, refer to the MSDN documentation.
- · For the installation instructions and support details of any drivers or database client

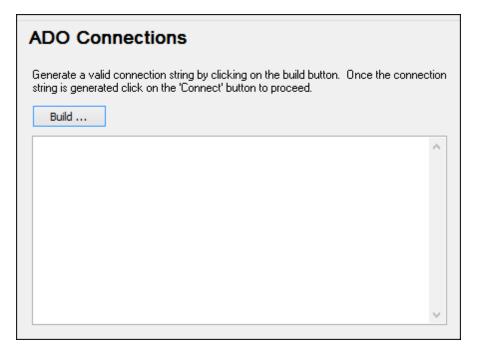
software that you install from a database vendor, check the documentation provided with the installation package. Whether you are using an official or third party database driver, the most comprehensive information and the configuration procedures applicable to that specific driver on your specific operating system is normally part of the driver installation package.

Setting up an ADO Connection

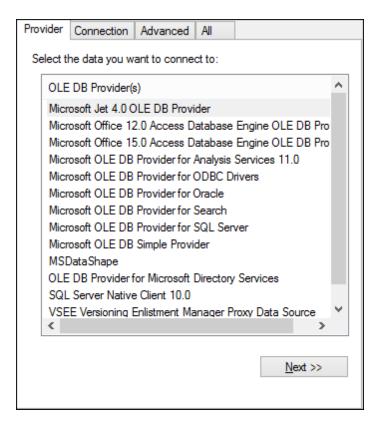
Microsoft ActiveX Data Objects (ADO) is a data access technology that enables you to connect to a variety of data sources through OLE DB. OLE DB is an alternative interface to ODBC or JDBC; it provides uniform access to data in a COM (Component Object Model) environment. ADO is the typical choice for connecting to Microsoft native databases such as Microsoft Access or SQL Server, although you can also use it for other data sources.

To set up an ADO connection:

- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click ADO Connections.



3. Click Build.



4. Select the data provider through which you want to connect. The table below lists a few common scenarios.

To connect to this database	Use this provider
Microsoft Access	Microsoft Office Access Database Engine OLE DB Provider
	When connecting to Microsoft Access 2003, you can also use the Microsoft Jet OLE DB Provider .
SQL Server	SQL Server Native Client Microsoft OLE DB Provider for SQL Server
Other database	Select the provider applicable to your database.
	If an OLE DB provider to your database is not available, install the required driver from the database vendor (see Database Drivers Overview). Alternatively, set up an ODBC or JDBC connection.
	If the operating system has an ODBC driver to the required database, you can also use the Microsoft OLE DB Provider for ODBC Drivers.

5. Click **Next** and complete the wizard.

The subsequent wizard steps are specific to the provider you chose. For SQL Server, you will need to provide or select the host name of the database server, as well as the database username and password. For Microsoft Access, you will be asked to browse for or provide the path to the database file.

The complete list of initialization properties (connection parameters) is available in the **All** tab of the connection dialog box—these properties vary depending on the chosen provider. The following sections provide guidance on configuring the basic initialization properties for Microsoft Access and SQL Server databases:

- Setting up the SQL Server Data Link Properties
- Setting up the Microsoft Access Data Link Properties

Connecting to an Existing Microsoft Access Database

This approach is suitable when you want to connect to a Microsoft Access database which is not password-protected. If the database is password-protected, set up the database password as shown in Connecting to Microsoft Access (ADO).

To connect to an existing Microsoft Access database:

- 1. Run the database connection wizard (see Starting the Database Connection Wizard).
- 2. Select Microsoft Access (ADO), and then click Next.



- 3. Select Use an existing MS Access database.
- 4. Browse for the database file, or enter the path to it (either relative or absolute) .
- 5. Click Connect.

Creating a New Microsoft Access Database

You can create a new Microsoft Access database file and connect to it, as an alternative to connecting to an existing database file. The database file created by MobileTogether Designer is empty. To create the required database structure, use Microsoft Access or a tool such as DatabaseSpy (http://www.altova.com/databasespy.html).

To create a new Microsoft Access database:

- 1. Run the database connection wizard (see Starting the Database Connection Wizard).
- 2. Select Microsoft Access (ADO), and then click Next.



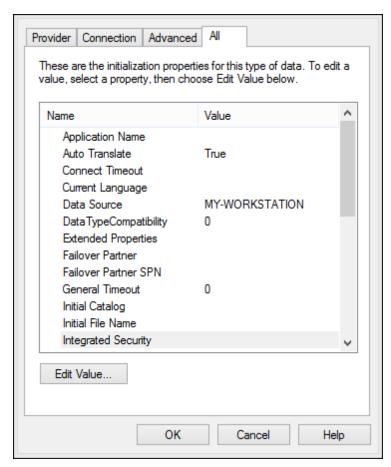
Select Create a new MS Access database, and then enter the path (either relative or absolute) of the database file to be created (for example, c:\users\public \products.mdb). Alternatively, click Browse to select a folder, type the name of the database file in the "File name" text box (for example, products.mdb), and click Save.

Notes

- Make sure that you have write permissions to the folder where you want to create the database file.
- Microsoft Access 2007 or later must be installed on your computer if you intend to create the file in .accdb format. If you are creating the file in .mdb format, there is no such requirement.
- 4. Click Connect.

Setting up the SQL Server Data Link Properties

When you connect to a Microsoft SQL Server database through ADO (see <u>Setting up an ADO Connection</u>), ensure that the following data link properties are configured correctly in the **All** tab of the Data Link Properties dialog box.

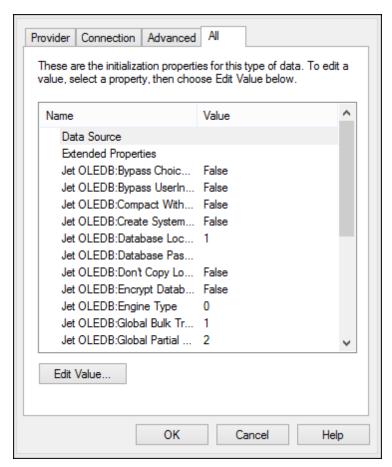


Data Link Properties dialog box

Property	Notes
Integrated Security	If you selected the SQL Server Native Client data provider on the Provider tab, set this property to a space character.
Persist Security Info	Set this property to True .

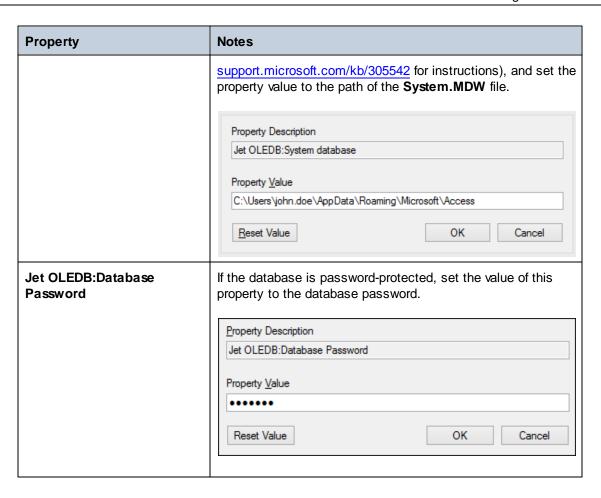
Setting up the Microsoft Access Data Link Properties

When you connect to a Microsoft Access database through ADO (see <u>Setting up an ADO Connection</u>), ensure that the following properties are configured correctly in the **All** tab of the Data Link Properties dialog box.



Data Link Properties dialog box

Property	Notes	
Data Source	This property stores the path to the Microsoft Access database file. To avoid database connectivity issues, it is recommended to use the UNC (Universal Naming Convention) path format, for example:	
	\\anyserver\share\$\filepath	
Jet OLEDB:System Database	This property stores the path to the workgroup information file. You may need to explicitly set the value of this property before you can connect to a Microsoft Access database. If you cannot connect due to a "workgroup information file"	
	error, locate the workgroup information file (System.MDW) applicable to your user profile (see http://	



Setting up an ODBC Connection

ODBC (Open Database Connectivity) is a widely used data access technology that enables you to connect to a database from MobileTogether Designer. It can be used either as primary means to connect to a database, or as an alternative to OLE DB- or JDBC-driven connections.

To connect to a database through ODBC, first you need to create an ODBC data source name (DSN) on the operating system. This step is not required if the DSN has already been created, perhaps by another user of the operating system. The DSN represents a uniform way to describe the database connection to any ODBC-aware client application on the operating system, including MobileTogether Designer. DSNs can be of the following types:

- System DSN
- User DSN
- File DSN

A *System* data source is accessible by all users with privileges on the operating system. A *User* data source is available to the user who created it. Finally, if you create a *File DSN*, the data source will be created as a file with the .dsn extension which you can share with other users, provided that they have installed the drivers used by the data source.

Any DSNs already available on your machine are listed by the database connection dialog box when you click **ODBC connections** on the ODBC connections dialog box.



ODBC Connections dialog box

If a DSN to the required database is not available, the MobileTogether Designer database connection wizard will assist you to create it; however, you can also create it directly on your Windows operating system. In either case, before you proceed, ensure that the ODBC driver

applicable for your database is in the list of ODBC drivers available to the operating system (see Viewing the Available ODBC Drivers).

To connect by using a new DSN:

- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. On the database connection dialog box, click **ODBC Connections**.
- 3. Select a data source type (User DSN, System DSN, File DSN).

To create a System DSN, you need administrative rights on the operating system.

- 4. Click Add 😎.
- 5. Select a driver, and then click **User DSN** or **System DSN** (depending on the type of the DSN you want to create). If the driver applicable to your database is not listed, download it from the database vendor and install it (see <u>Database Drivers Overview</u>).
- 6. On the dialog box that pops up, fill in any driver specific connection information to complete the setup.

For the connection to be successful, you will need to provide the host name (or IP address) of the database server, as well as the database username and password. There may be other optional connection parameters—these parameters vary between database providers. For detailed information about the parameters specific to each connection method, consult the documentation of the driver provider. Once created, the DSN becomes available in the list of data source names. This enables you to reuse the database connection details any time you want to connect to the database. Note that User DSNs are added to the list of User DSNs whereas System DSNs are added to the list of System DSNs.

To connect by using an existing DSN:

- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click ODBC Connections.
- 3. Choose the type of the existing data source (User DSN, System DSN, File DSN).
- 4. Click the existing DSN record, and then click **Connect**.

To build a connection string based on an existing .dsn file:

- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click ODBC Connections.
- 3. Select Build a connection string, and then click Build.
- 4. If you want to build the connection string using a File DSN, click the **File Data Source** tab. Otherwise, click the **Machine Data Source** tab. (System DSNs and User DSNs are known as "Machine" data sources.)
- 5. Select the required .dsn file, and then click **OK**.

To connect by using a prepared connection string:

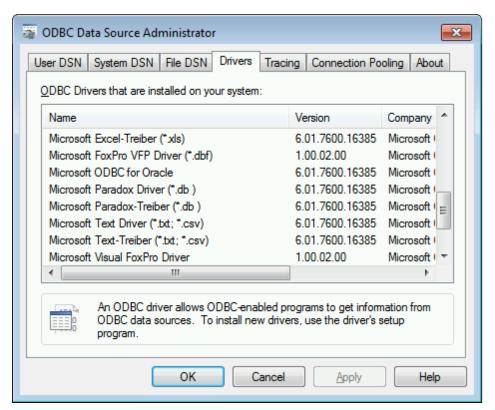
- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click ODBC Connections.
- 3. Select Build a connection string.
- 4. Paste the connection string into the provided box, and then click **Connect**.

Viewing the Available ODBC Drivers

You can view the ODBC drivers available on your operating system in the ODBC Data Source Administrator. You can access the ODBC Data Source Administrator (**Odbcad32.exe**) from the Windows Control Panel, under **Administrative Tools**. On 64-bit operating systems, there are two versions of this executable:

- The 32-bit version of the Odbcad32.exe file is located in the C:\Windows\SysWoW64
 directory (assuming that C: is your system drive).
- The 64-bit version of the Odbcad32.exe file is located in the C:\Windows\System32 directory.

Any installed 32-bit database drivers are visible in the 32-bit version of ODBC Data Source Administrator, while 64-bit drivers—in the 64-bit version. Therefore, ensure that you check the database drivers from the relevant version of ODBC Data Source Administrator.



ODBC Data Source Administrator

If the driver to your target database does not exist in the list, or if you want to add an alternative driver, you will need to download it from the database vendor (see Database Drivers Overview). Once the ODBC driver is available on your system, you are ready to create ODBC connections with it (see Setting up an ODBC Connection).

Setting up a JDBC Connection

JDBC (Java Database Connectivity) is a database access interface which is part of the Java software platform from Oracle. JDBC connections are generally more resource-intensive than ODBC connections but may provide features not available through ODBC. It is generally recommended to use a JDBC connection if you are using database features not available through an ODBC connector, for example, support for the XML DB technology in Oracle databases.

Prerequisites:

- JRE (Java Runtime Environment) or Java Development Kit (JDK) must be installed. If you
 have not installed it already, check the official Java website for the download package and
 installation instructions.
- The JDBC drivers from the database vendor must be installed. If you are connecting to an
 Oracle database, note that some Oracle drivers are specific to certain JRE versions and
 may require additional components and configuration. The documentation of your Oracle
 product (for example, the "Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference")
 includes detailed instructions about the configuration procedure for each JDBC driver.
- The operating system's PATH environment variable must include the path to the bin directory of the JRE or JDK installation directory, for example C:\Program Files (x86) \Java\jre1.8.0_51\bin.
- The CLASSPATH environment variable must include the path to the JDBC driver on your Windows operating system. When you install some database clients, the installer may configure this variable automatically. The documentation of the JDBC driver will typically include step-by-step instructions on setting the CLASSPATH variable (see also Configuring the CLASSPATH).

To set up a JDBC connection:

- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click JDBC Connections.
- 3. Do one of the following:
 - a. Select a JDBC driver from the Driver list. This list contains any JDBC drivers configured through the CLASSPATH environment variable (see Configuring the CLASSPATH).
 - b. Enter a Java class name.
- 4. Enter the username and password to the database in the corresponding boxes.
- 5. In the Database URL text box, enter the JDBC connection string in the format specific to your database type (see the JDBC connection formats below).
- 6. Click Connect.

JDBC connection formats

The following table describes the syntax of JDBC connection strings for common database types.

Database	JDBC Connection Format
Firebird	<pre>jdbc:firebirdsql://<host>[:<port>]/<database alias="" or="" path=""></database></port></host></pre>
IBM DB2	jdbc:db2://hostName:port/databaseName

Database	JDBC Connection Format
IBM Informix	jdbc:informix-sqli://hostName:port/ databaseName:INFORMIXSERVER=myserver
Microsoft SQL Server	jdbc:sqlserver://hostName:port;databaseName=name
MySQL	jdbc:mysql://hostName:port/databaseName
Oracle	jdbc:oracle:thin:@//hostName:port:databaseName
Oracle XML DB	jdbc:oracle:oci:@//hostName:port:databaseName
PostgreSQL	jdbc:postgresql://hostName:port/databaseName
Sybase	jdbc:sybase:Tds:hostName:port/databaseName

Note: Syntax variations to the formats listed above are also possible (for example, the database URL may exclude the port or may include the username and password to the database). Check the documentation of the database vendor for further details.

Configuring the CLASSPATH

The CLASSPATH environment variable is used by the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) to locate Java classes and other resource files on your operating system. When you connect to a database through JDBC, this variable must be configured to include the path to the JDBC driver on your operating system, and, in some cases, the path to additional library files specific to the database type you are using.

The following table lists sample file paths that must be typically included in the CLASSPATH variable. Importantly, you may need to adjust this information based on the location of the JDBC driver on your system, the JDBC driver name, as well as the JRE version present on your operating system. To avoid connectivity problems, check the installation instructions and any preinstallation or post-installation configuration steps applicable to the JDBC driver installed on your operating system.

Database	Sample CLASSPATH entries
Firebird	C:\Program Files\Firebird\Jaybird-2.2.8-JDK_1.8\jaybird-full-2.2.8.jar
IBM DB2	<pre>C:\Program Files (x86)\IBM\SQLLIB\java\db2jcc.jar;C: \Program Files (x86)\IBM\SQLLIB\java \db2jcc_license_cu.jar;</pre>
IBM Informix	<pre>C:\Informix_JDBC_Driver\lib\ifxjdbc.jar;</pre>
Microsoft SQL Server	C:\Program Files\Microsoft JDBC Driver 4.0 for SQL Server\sqljdbc_4.0\enu\sqljdbc.jar
MySQL	mysql-connector-java-version-bin.jar;
Oracle	<pre>ORACLE_HOME\jdbc\lib\ojdbc6.jar;</pre>
Oracle (with XML DB)	<pre>ORACLE_HOME\jdbc\lib\ojdbc6.jar;ORACLE_HOME\LIB \xmlparserv2.jar;ORACLE_HOME\RDBMS\jlib\xdb.jar;</pre>
PostgreSQL	<pre><installation directory="">\postgresql.jar</installation></pre>
Sybase	C:\sybase\jConnect-7_0\classes\jconn4.jar

- Changing the CLASSPATH variable may affect the behavior of Java applications on your machine. To understand possible implications before you proceed, refer to the Java documentation.
- Environment variables can be user or system. To change system environment variables, you need administrative rights on the operating system.
- After you change the environment variable, restart any running programs for settings to take effect. Alternatively, log off or restart your operating system.

To configure the CLASSPATH on Windows 7:

- 1. Open the **Start** menu and right-click **Computer**.
- 2. Click Properties.

- 3. Click Advanced system settings.
- 4. In the Advanced tab, click Environment Variables,
- 5. Locate the CLASSPATH variable under user or system environment variables, and then click Edit. If the CLASSPATH variable does not exist, click **New** to create it.
- 6. Edit the variable value to include the path on your operating system where the JDBC driver is located. To separate the JDBC driver path from other paths that may already be in the CLASSPATH variable, use the semi-colon separator (;).

To configure the CLASSPATH on Windows 8:

- 1. Right-click the Windows Start button, and then click **System**.
- 2. Click Advanced System Settings.
- 3. Click Environment Variables.
- 4. Locate the CLASSPATH variable under user or system environment variables, and then click **Edit**. If the CLASSPATH variable does not exist, click **New** to create it.
- 5. Edit the variable value to include the path on your operating system where the JDBC driver is located. To separate the JDBC driver path from other paths that may already be in the CLASSPATH variable, use the semi-colon separator (;).

Setting up a SQLite Connection

SQLite (http://www.sqlite.org) is a file-based, self-contained database type, which makes it ideal in scenarios where portability and ease of configuration is important. Since SQLite databases are natively supported by MobileTogether Designer, you do not need to install any drivers to connect to them.

Connecting to an Existing SQLite Database

To connect to an existing SQLite database:

- 1. Run the database connection wizard (see Starting the Database Connection Wizard).
- 2. Select **SQLite**, and then click **Next**.



- 3. Select **Use an existing SQLite database**, and then browse for the SQLite database file, or enter the path (either relative or absolute) to the database. The **Connect** button becomes enabled once you enter the path to a SQLite database file.
- 4. Click Connect.

Creating a New SQLite Database

You can create a new SQLite database file and connect to it, as an alternative to connecting to an existing database file. The database file created by MobileTogether Designer is empty; use queries or scripts to create the required database structure and populate it with data.

To create a new SQLite database:

- 1. Run the database connection wizard (see Starting the Database Connection Wizard).
- 2. Select **SQLite**, and then click **Next**.



Select Create a new SQLite database, and then enter the path (either relative or absolute) of the database file to be created (for example, c:\users\public \products.sqlite). Alternatively, click Browse to select a folder, type the name of the database file in the "File name" text box (for example, products.sqlite), and click Save.

Make sure that you have write permissions to the folder where you want to create the database file.

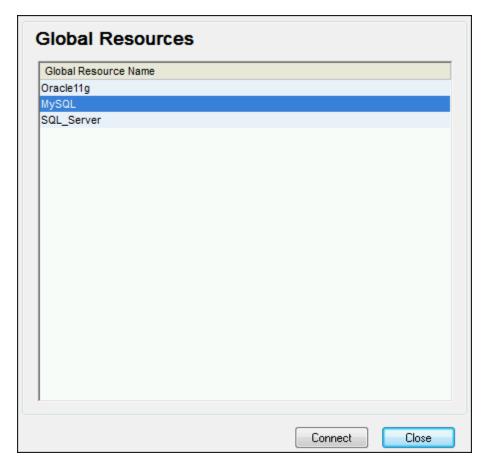
4. Click Connect.

Using a Connection from Global Resources

If you have previously configured a database connection to be available as a global resource, you can reuse the connection at any time (even across different Altova applications).

To use a database connection from Global Resources:

- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click **Global Resources**. Any database connections available as global resources are listed.



3. Select the database connection record, and click **Connect**.

Tip: To get additional information about each global resource, move the mouse cursor over the global resource.

Examples

This section includes sample procedures for connecting to a database from MobileTogether Designer. Note that your Windows machine, the network environment, and the database client or server software is likely to have a configuration that is not exactly the same as the one presented in the following examples.

Note: For most database types, it is possible to connect using more than one data access technology (ADO, ODBC, JDBC) or driver. The performance of the database connection, as well as its features and limitations will depend on the selected driver, database client software (if applicable), and any additional connectivity parameters that you may have configured outside MobileTogether Designer.

This section includes the following topics:

- Connecting to IBM DB2 (ODBC)
- Connecting to IBM DB2 for i (ODBC)
- Connecting to IBM Informix (JDBC)
- Connecting to Microsoft Access (ADO)
- Connecting to Microsoft SQL Server (ADO)
- Connecting to Microsoft SQL Server (ODBC)
- Connecting to MySQL (ODBC)
- Connecting to Oracle (ODBC)
- Connecting to PostgreSQL (ODBC)
- Connecting to Sybase (JDBC)

Connecting to Firebird (ODBC)

This topic provides sample instructions for connecting to a Firebird 2.5.4 database running on a Linux server.

Prerequisites:

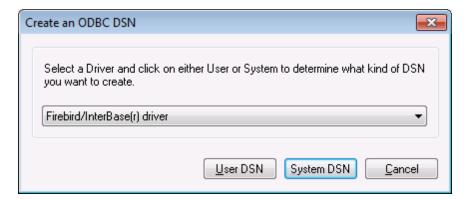
- The Firebird database server is configured to accept TCP/IP connections from clients.
- The Firebird ODBC driver must be installed on your operating system. This example uses
 the Firebird ODBC driver version 2.0.3.154 downloaded from the Firebird website (http://www.firebirdsql.org/).
- The Firebird client must be installed on your operating system. Note that there is no standalone installer available for the Firebird 2.5.4 client; the client is part of the Firebird server installation package. You can download the Firebird server installation package from the Firebird website (http://www.firebirdsql.org/), look for "Windows executable installer for full Superclassic/Classic or Superserver". To install only the client files, choose "Minimum client install no server, no tools" when going through the wizard steps.

Important:

- The platform of both the Firebird ODBC driver and client (32-bit or 64-bit) must correspond to that of MobileTogether Designer.
- The version of the Firebird client must correspond to the version of Firebird server to which you are connecting.
- You have the following database connection details: server host name or IP address, database path (or alias) on the server, user name, and password.

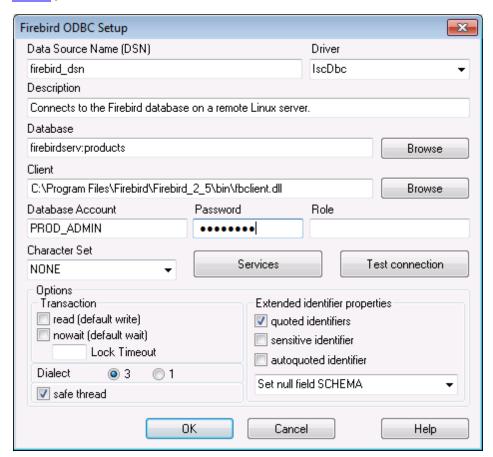
To connect to Firebird via ODBC:

- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click ODBC Connections.
- 3. Select **User DSN** (or **System DSN**, if you have administrative privileges), and then click **Add** .



4. Select the Firebird driver, and then click User DSN (or System DSN, depending on what you selected in the previous step). If the Firebird driver is not available in the list, make sure that it is installed on your operating system (see also Viewing the Available ODBC

Drivers).



5. Enter the database connection details as follows:

Data Source Name (DSN)	Enter a descriptive name for the data source you are creating.
Database	Enter the server host name or IP address, followed by a colon, followed by the database alias (or path). In this example, the host name is firebirdserv, and the database alias is products, as follows:
	firebirdserv:products
	Using a database alias assumes that, on the server side, the database administrator has configured the alias products to point to the actual Firebird (.fdb) database file on the server (see the Firebird documentation for more details).
	You can also use the server IP address instead of the host name, and a path instead of an alias; therefore, any of the following sample connection strings are valid:
	firebirdserver:/var/Firebird/databases/

	butterflies.fdb 127.0.0.1:D:\Misc\Lenders.fdb
	If the database is on the local Windows machine, click Browse and select the Firebird (.fdb) database file directly.
Client	Enter the path to the fbclient.dll file. By default, this is the bin subdirectory of the Firebird installation directory.
Database Account	Enter the database user name supplied by the database administrator (in this example, PROD_ADMIN).
Password	Enter the database password supplied by the database administrator.

6. Click OK.

Connecting to Firebird (JDBC)

This topic provides sample instructions for connecting to a Firebird database server through JDBC.

Prerequisites:

- Java Runtime Environment (JRE) or Java Development Kit (JDK) must be installed on your operating system.
- The operating system's PATH environment variable must include the path to the bin directory of the JRE or JDK installation directory, for example C:\Program Files (x86)\Java\jre1.8.0_51\bin.
- The Firebird JDBC driver must be installed on your operating system. This example uses Jaybird 2.2.8 downloaded from the Firebird website (http://www.firebirdsql.org/).
- The operating system's CLASSPATH environment variable must include the path to the
 Jaybird driver, for example C:\jdbc\firebird\jaybird-full-2.2.8.jar. See also Configuring
 the CLASSPATH.
- You have the following database connection details: host, database path or alias, username, and password.

To connect to Sybase through JDBC:

- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click JDBC Connections.
- 3. In the Driver box, select **org.firebirdsql.jdbc.FBDriver**. If the entry is not available, check if the CLASSPATH and PATH environment variables are set correctly (see the prerequisites above).



- 4. Enter the username and password to the database in the corresponding text boxes.
- 5. Enter the connection string to the database server in the Database URL text box, by replacing the highlighted values with the ones applicable to your database server.

```
jdbc:firebirdsql://<host>[:<port>]/<database path or alias>
```

6. Click Connect.

Connecting to IBM DB2 (ODBC)

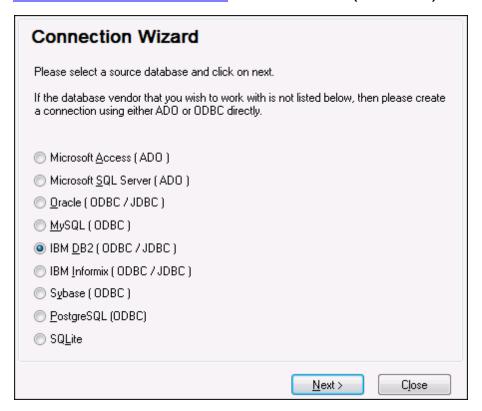
This topic provides sample instructions for connecting to an IBM DB2 database through ODBC.

Prerequisites:

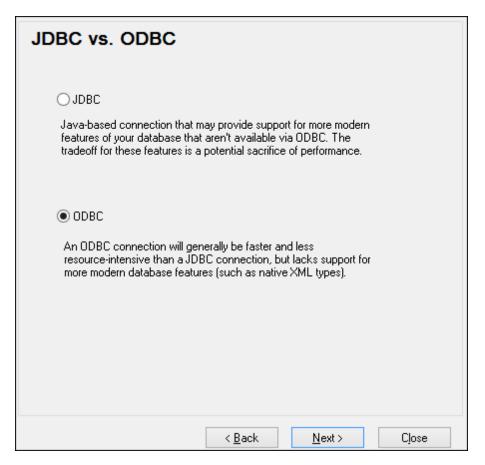
- IBM Data Server Client must be installed and configured on your operating system (this
 example uses IBM Data Server Client 9.7). For installation instructions, check the
 documentation supplied with your IBM DB2 software. After installing the IBM Data Server
 Client, check if the ODBC drivers are available on your machine (see <u>Viewing the</u>
 Available ODBC Drivers).
- Create a database alias. There are several ways to do this:
 - From IBM DB2 Configuration Assistant
 - o From IBM DB2 Command Line Processor
 - o From the ODBC data source wizard (for this case, the instructions are shown below)
- You have the following database connection details: host, database, port, username, and password.

To connect to IBM DB2:

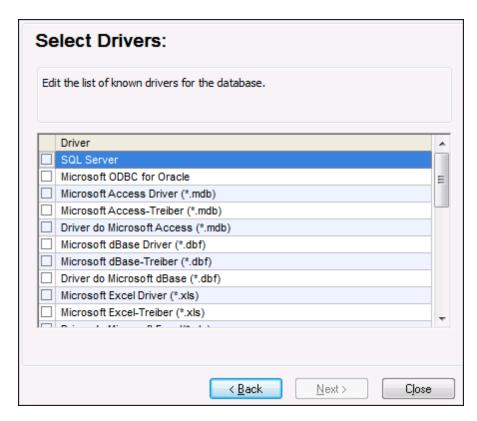
1. Start the database connection wizard and select IBM DB2 (ODBC/JDBC).



2. Click Next.



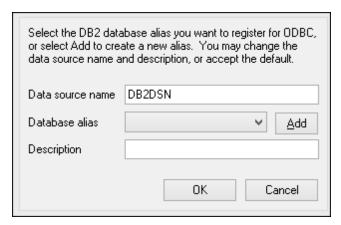
 Select ODBC, and click Next. If prompted to edit the list of known drivers for the database, select the database drivers applicable to IBM DB2 (see <u>Prerequisites</u>), and click Next.



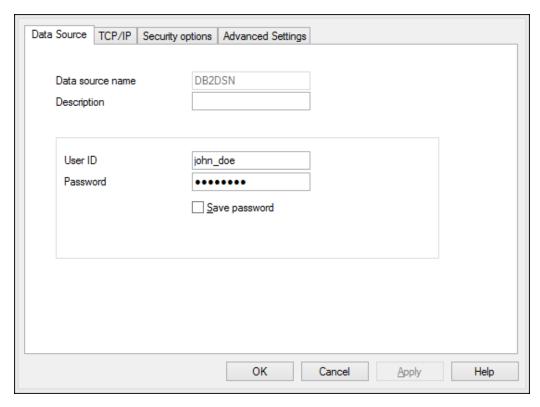
4. Select the IBM DB2 driver from the list, and then click **Connect**. (To edit the list of available drivers, click **Edit Drivers**, and then check or uncheck the IBM DB2 drivers you wish to add or remove, respectively.)



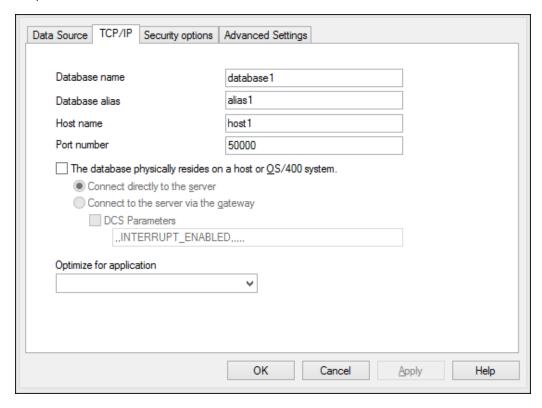
5. Enter a data source name (in this example, **DB2DSN**), and then click **Add**.



6. On the **Data Source** tab, enter the user name and password to the database.



7. On the **TCP/IP** tab, enter the database name, a name for the alias, the host name and the port number, and then click OK.



8. Enter again the username and password, and then click **OK**.

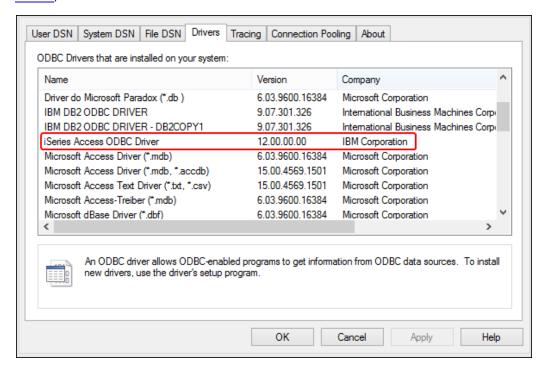


Connecting to IBM DB2 for i (ODBC)

This topic provides sample instructions for connecting to an *IBM DB2 for i* database through ODBC.

Prerequisites:

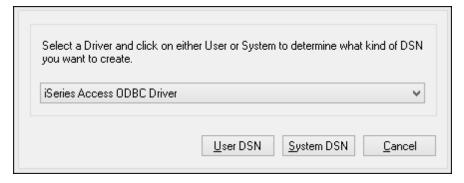
• IBM System i Access for Windows must be installed on your operating system (this example uses IBM System i Access for Windows V6R1M0). For installation instructions, check the documentation supplied with your IBM DB2 for i software. After installation, check if the ODBC driver is available on your machine (see Viewing the Available ODBC Drivers).



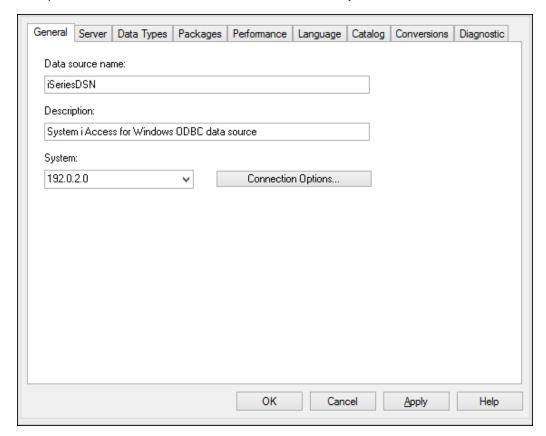
- You have the following database connection details: the I.P. address of the database server, database user name, and password.
- Run System i Navigator and follow the wizard to create a new connection. When
 prompted to specify a system, enter the I.P. address of the database server. After
 creating the connection, it is recommended to verify it (click on the connection, and
 select File > Diagnostics > Verify Connection). If you get connectivity errors, contact
 the database server administrator.

To connect to IBM DB2 for i:

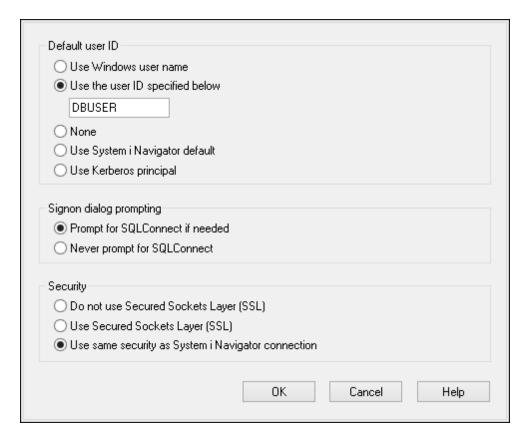
- Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click ODBC connections.
- Click User DSN (alternatively, click System DSN, or File DSN, in which case the subsequent instructions will be similar).
- 4. Click Add 😍 .
- 5. Select the **iSeries Access ODBC Driver** from the list, and click **User DSN** (or **System DSN**, if applicable).



6. Enter a data source name and select the connection from the System combo box. In this example, the data source name is **iSeriesDSN** and the System is **192.0.2.0**.



7. Click **Connection Options**, select **Use the User ID specified below** and enter the name of the database user (in this example, **DBUSER**).



- 8. Click **OK**. The new data source becomes available in the list of DSNs.
- 9. Click Connect.
- 10. Enter the user name and password to the database when prompted, and then click **OK**.

Connecting to IBM Informix (JDBC)

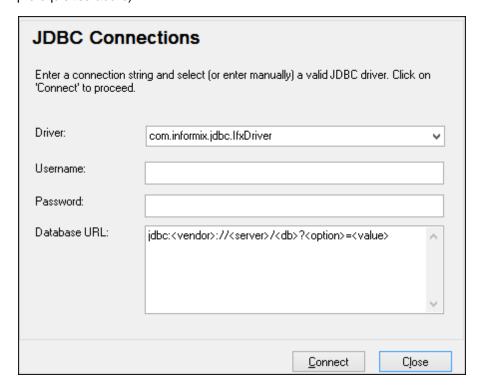
This topic provides sample instructions for connecting to an IBM Informix database server through JDBC.

Prerequisites:

- Java Runtime Environment (JRE) must be installed on your operating system.
- The JDBC driver must be installed on your operating system (in this example, IBM Informix JDBC driver version 3.70 is used). For the driver's installation instructions, see the documentation accompanying the driver or the "IBM Informix JDBC Driver Programmer's Guide").
- The operating system's CLASSPATH environment variable includes the path where the
 Informix JDBC driver (ifxjdbc.jar) was installed. In this example, the Informix JDBC driver
 is installed in the directory C:\Informix_JDBC_Driver, and the value of CLASSPATH
 variable is C:\Informix_JDBC_Driver\lib\ifxjdbc.jar. For more information, see
 Configuring the CLASSPATH.
- You have the following database connection details: host, name of the Informix server, database, port, username, and password.

To connect to IBM Informix through JDBC:

- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click JDBC Connections.
- Select the Informix JDBC driver from the list of available JDBC drivers (in this example, com.informix.jdbc.lfxDriver). If the list does not contain an Informix driver, it is either not installed correctly, or not included in the CLASSPATH variable (see the list of prerequisites above).



4. Enter the username and password to the database in the corresponding text boxes.

5. Enter the connection string to the database server in the Database URL text box, by replacing the highlighted values with the ones applicable to your database server.

```
jdbc:informix-sqli://hostName:port/
databaseName:INFORMIXSERVER=myserver;
```

6. Click Connect.

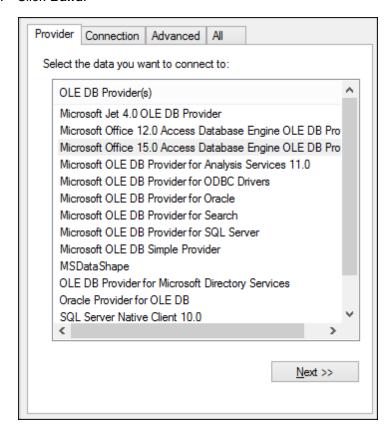
Connecting to Microsoft Access (ADO)

A simple way to connect to a Microsoft Access database is to follow the wizard and browse for the database file, as shown in <u>Connecting to an Existing Microsoft Access Database</u>. An alternative approach is to set up an ADO connection explicitly, as shown in this topic. This approach is useful if your database is password-protected.

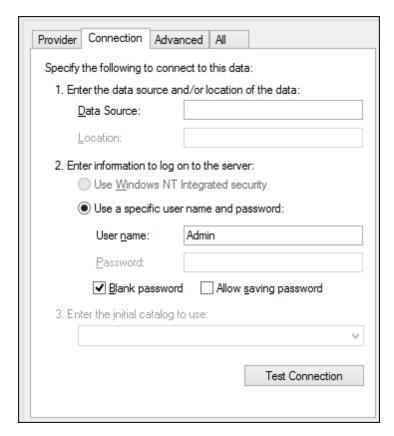
It is also possible to connect to Microsoft Access through an ODBC connection, but there are some limitations in this scenario, so it is best to avoid it.

To connect to a password-protected Microsoft Access database:

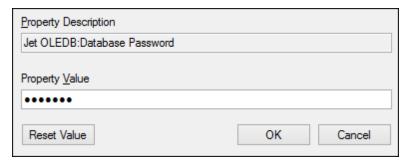
- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click ADO Connections.
- 3. Click Build.



 Select the Microsoft Office 15.0 Access Database Engine OLE DB Provider, and then click Next.



- 5. In the Data Source box, enter the path to the Microsoft Access file. Because the file is on the local network share U:\Departments\Finance\Reports\Revenue.accdb, we will convert it to UNC format, and namely \\server1\\dfs\Departments\Finance\Reports \\Revenue.accdb, where server1 is the name of the server and dfs is the name of the network share.
- 6. On the **All** tab, double click the **Jet OLEDB:Database Password** property and enter the database password as property value.

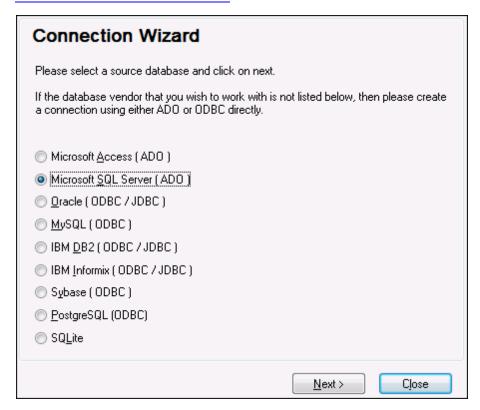


Note: If you are still unable to connect, locate the workgroup information file (System.MDW) applicable to your user profile (see http://support.microsoft.com/kb/305542 for instructions), and set the value of the Jet OLEDB: System database property to the path of the System.MDW file.

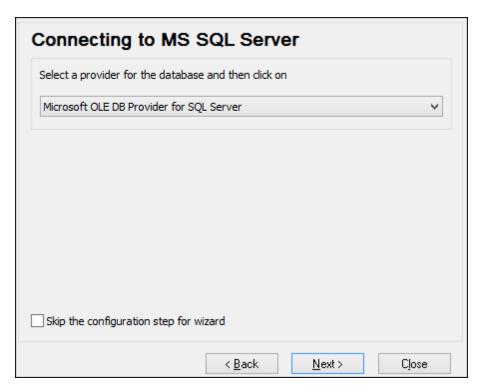
Connecting to Microsoft SQL Server (ADO)

To connect to SQL Server using the Microsoft OLE DB Provider:

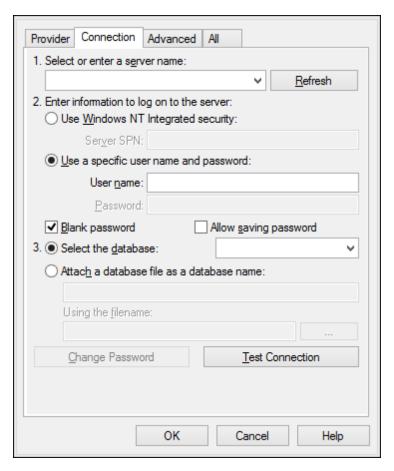
Start the database connection wizard.



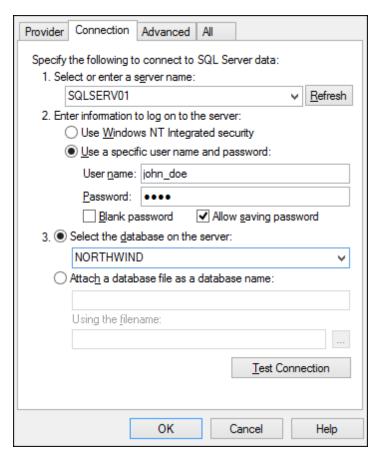
2. Select **Microsoft SQL Server (ADO)**, and then click **Next**. The list of available ADO drivers is displayed.



3. Select Microsoft OLE DB Provider for SQL Server, and then click Next.



- 4. Select or enter the name of the database server (in this example, **SQLSERV01**). To view the list of all servers on the network, expand the drop-down list.
- 5. If the database server was configured to allow connections from users authenticated on the Windows domain, select **Use Windows NT integrated security**. Otherwise, select **Use a specific user name and password**, and type them in the relevant boxes.
- Select the database to which you are connecting (in this example, NORTHWIND).
- 7. To test the connection at this time, click **Test Connection**. This is an optional, recommended step.
- 8. Do one of the following:
 - a. Select the Allow saving password check box.
 - b. On the All tab, change the value of the Persist Security Info property to True.

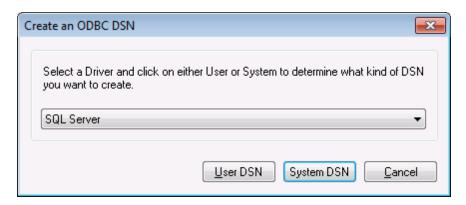


9. Click OK.

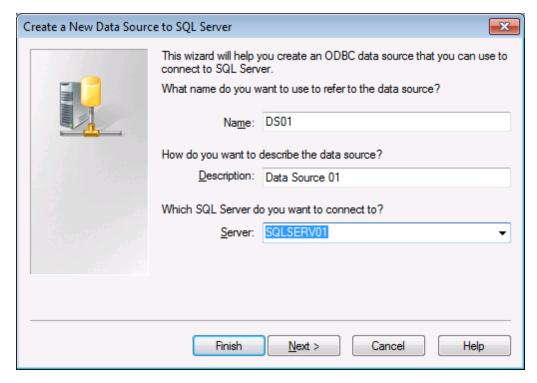
Connecting to Microsoft SQL Server (ODBC)

To connect to SQL Server using ODBC:

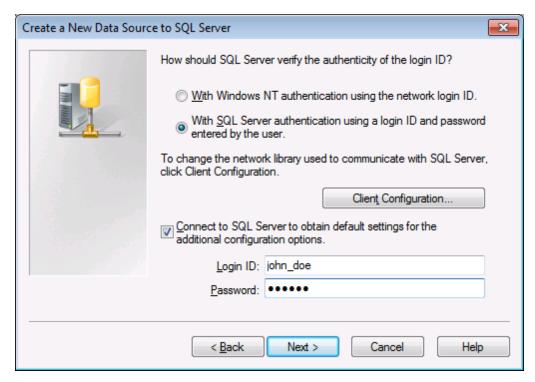
- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click ODBC Connections.
- 3. Select **User DSN** (or **System DSN**, if you have administrative privileges), and then click **Add** .



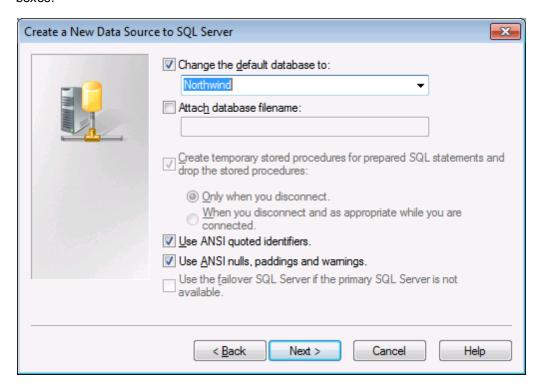
 Select SQL Server (or SQL Server Native Client, if available), and then click User DSN (or System DSN if you are creating a System DSN).



5. Enter a name and description to identify this connection, and then select from the list the SQL Server to which you are connecting (**SQLSERV01** in this example).



 If the database server was configured to allow connections from users authenticated on the Windows domain, select With Windows NT authentication. Otherwise, select With SQL Server authentication... and type the user name and password in the relevant boxes.



7. Select the name of the database to which you are connecting (in this example,

Northwind).

8. Click Finish.

Connecting to MySQL (ODBC)

This topic provides sample instructions for connecting to a MySQL database server from a Windows machine through the ODBC driver. The MySQL ODBC driver is not available on Windows, so it must be downloaded and installed separately. This example uses MySQL ODBC driver version 5.3.4 downloaded from the official website (see also Database Drivers Overview).

Prerequisites:

- MySQL ODBC driver must be installed on your operating system (for installation instructions, check the documentation supplied with the driver).
- You have the following database connection details: host, database, port, username, and password.

To connect to MySQL via ODBC:

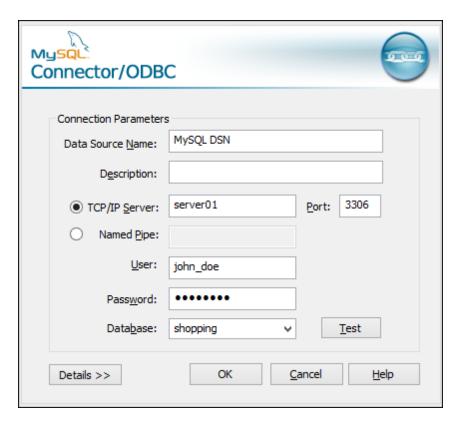
1. Start the database connection wizard.



2. Select MySQL (ODBC), and then click Next.



- Select Create a new Data Source Name (DSN) with the driver, and select a MySQL driver. If no MySQL driver is available in the list, click Edit Drivers, and select any available MySQL drivers (the list contains all ODBC drivers installed on your operating system).
- 4. Click Connect.



- 5. In the Data Source Name box, enter a descriptive name that will help you identify this ODBC data source in future.
- 6. Fill in the database connection credentials (TCP/IP Server, User, Password), select a database, and then click **OK**.

Note: If the database server is remote, it must be configured by the server administrator to accept remote connections from your machine's IP address. Also, if you click **Details>>**, there are several additional parameters available for configuration. Check the driver's documentation before changing their default values.

Connecting to Oracle (ODBC)

This example illustrates a common scenario where you connect from MobileTogether Designer to an Oracle database server on a network machine, through an Oracle database client installed on the local operating system.

The example includes instructions for setting up an ODBC data source (DSN) using the database connection wizard in MobileTogether Designer. If you have already created a DSN, or if you prefer to create it directly from ODBC Data Source administrator in Windows, you can do so, and then select it when prompted by the wizard. For more information about ODBC data sources, see Setting up an ODBC Connection.

Prerequisites:

- The Oracle database client (which includes the ODBC Oracle driver) must be installed
 and configured on your operating system. For instructions on how to install and configure
 an Oracle database client, refer to the documentation supplied with your Oracle software.
- The **tnsnames.ora** file located in Oracle home directory contains an entry that describes the database connection parameters, in a format similar to this:

```
ORCL =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS_LIST =
          (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = server01)(PORT = 1521))
  )
  (CONNECT_DATA =
     (SID = orcl)
     (SERVER = DEDICATED)
  )
}
```

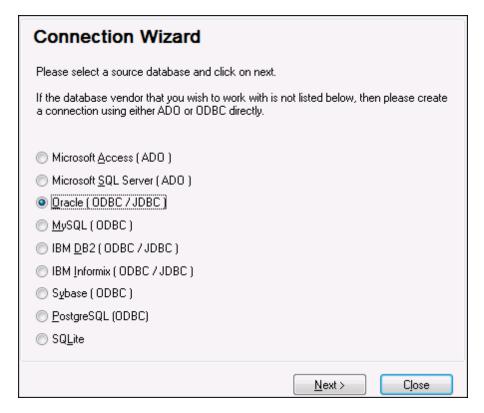
The path to the **tnsnames.ora** file depends on the location where Oracle home directory was installed. For Oracle database client 11.2.0, the default Oracle home directory path could be as follows:

```
C:\app\username\product\11.2.0\client_1\network\admin\tnsnames.ora
```

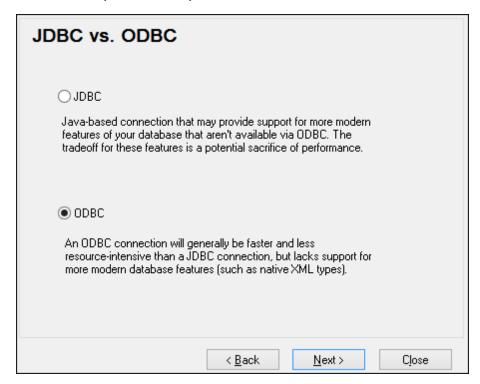
You can add new entries to the **tnsnames.ora** file either by pasting the connection details and saving the file, or by running the Oracle *Net Configuration Assistant* wizard (if available).

To connect to Oracle using ODBC:

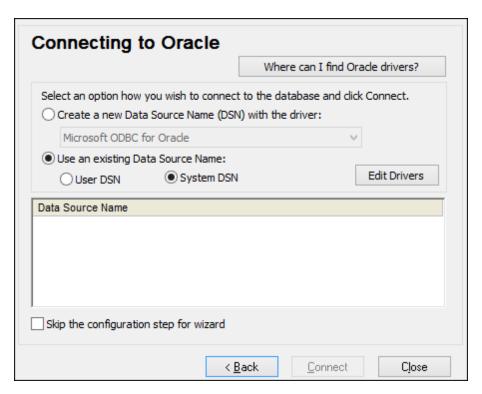
1. Start the database connection wizard.



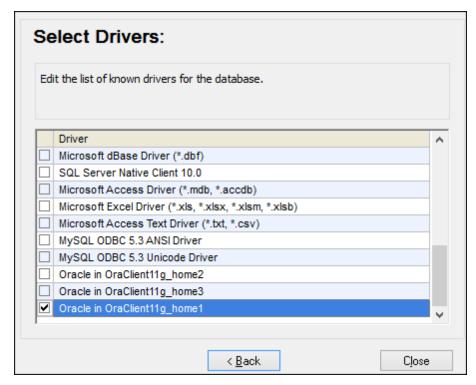
2. Select Oracle (ODBC / JDBC), and then click Next.



3. Select ODBC.

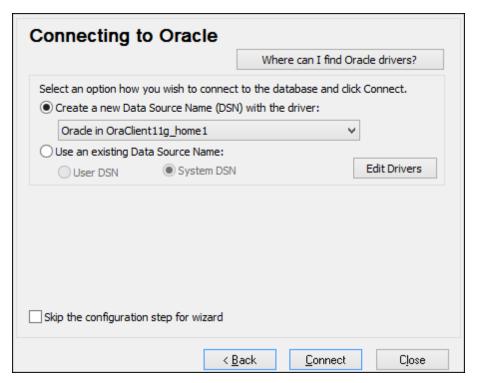


4. Click Edit Drivers.



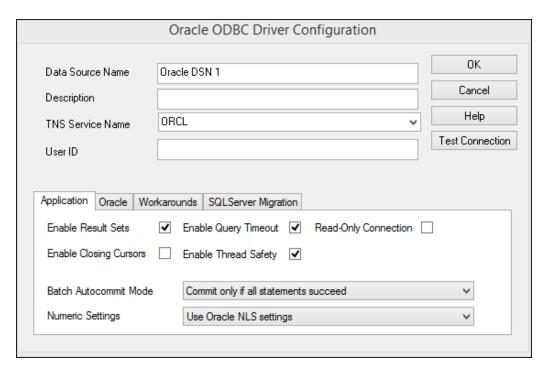
5. Select the Oracle drivers you wish to use (in this example, **Oracle in OraClient11g_home1**). The list displays the Oracle drivers available on your system after installation of Oracle client.

- 6. Click Back.
- 7. Select **Create a new data source name (DSN) with the driver**, and then select the Oracle driver chosen in step 4.

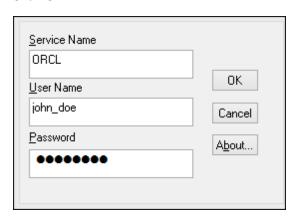


Avoid using the Microsoft-supplied driver called **Microsoft ODBC for Oracle** driver. Microsoft recommends using the ODBC driver provided by Oracle (see http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms714756%28v=vs.85%29.aspx)

8. Click Connect.



- 9. In the Data Source Name text box, enter a name to identify the data source (in this example, **Oracle DSN 1**).
- 10. In the TNS Service Name box, enter the connection name as it is defined in the **tnsnames.ora** file (see prerequisites). In this example, the connection name is **ORCL**.
- 11. Click **OK**.



12. Enter the username and password to the database, and then click OK.

Connecting to PostgreSQL (ODBC)

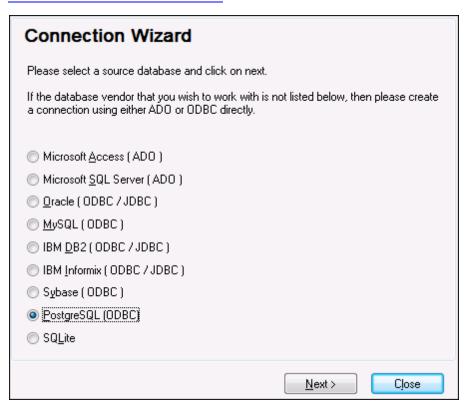
This topic provides sample instructions for connecting to a PostgreSQL database server from a Windows machine through the ODBC driver. The PostgreSQL ODBC driver is not available on Windows, so it must be downloaded and installed separately. This example uses the psqlODBC driver (version 09_03_300-1) downloaded from the official website (see also Database Drivers Overview).

Prerequisites:

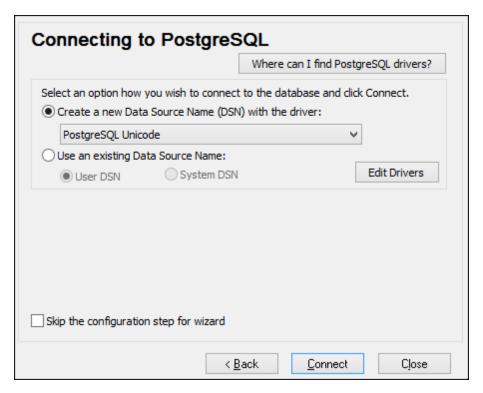
- psqlODBC driver must be installed on your operating system (for installation instructions, check the documentation supplied with the driver).
- You have the following database connection details: server, port, database, user name, and password.

To connect to PostgreSQL using ODBC:

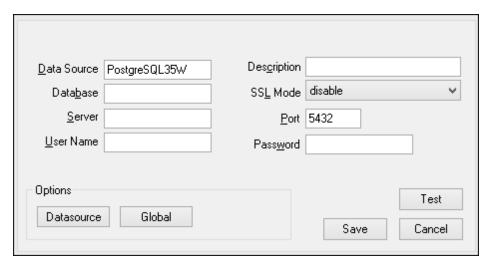
Start the database connection wizard.



2. Select PostgreSQL (ODBC), and then click Next.



- Select Create a new Data Source Name (DSN) with the driver, and select the PostgreSQL driver. If no PostgreSQL driver is available in the list, click Edit Drivers, and select any available PostgreSQL drivers (the list contains all ODBC drivers installed on your operating system).
- 4. Click Connect.



5. Fill in the database connection credentials (Database, Server, Port, User Name, Password), and then click **OK**.

Connecting to Sybase (JDBC)

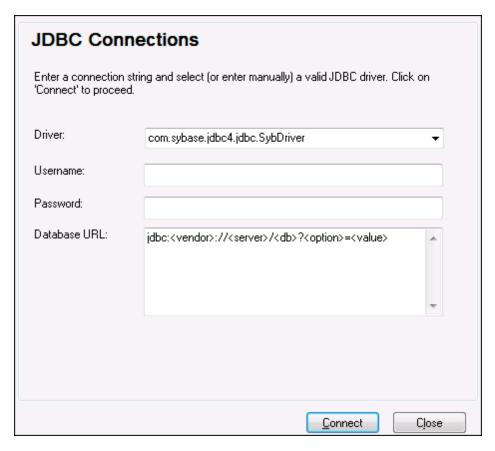
This topic provides sample instructions for connecting to a Sybase database server through JDBC.

Prerequisites:

- Java Runtime Environment (JRE) must be installed on your operating system.
- Sybase *jConnect* component must be installed on your operating system (in this example, *jConnect 7.0* is used, installed as part of the *Sybase Adaptive Server Enterprise PC Client* installation). For the installation instructions of the database client, refer to Sybase documentation.
- The operating system's CLASSPATH environment variable includes the path where the Sybase JDBC driver was installed. In this example, the JDBC driver is installed in the directory C:\Sybase, and the value of CLASSPATH variable was configured to include the path C:\sybase\jConnect-7_0\classes\jconn4.jar. For more information, see Configuring the CLASSPATH.
- You have the following database connection details: host, port, database name, username, and password.

To connect to Sybase through JDBC:

- 1. Start the database connection wizard.
- 2. Click JDBC Connections.
- Select the Sybase JDBC driver from the list of available JDBC drivers (in this example, com.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybDriver). If the list does not contain a Sybase driver, it is either not installed correctly, or not included in the CLASSPATH variable (see the list of prerequisites above).



- 4. Enter the username and password to the database in the corresponding text boxes.
- 5. Enter the connection string to the database server in the Database URL text box, by replacing the highlighted values with the ones applicable to your database server.

jdbc:sybase:Tds:hostName:port/databaseName

6. Click Connect.

10.3 Database Connections on Linux and Mac

If you have licensed any of the following Altova server products—MobileTogether Server, MapForce Server, or StyleVision Server, a common scenario is to design MobileTogether designs, MapForce mappings, or StyleVision transformations on a Windows desktop machine, and then deploy them to a server machine (either Windows, Linux, or Mac) to automate their execution.

In this documentation, the term "server execution files" is used to denote the following file types:

- MapForce Server execution files (.mfx)
- MobileTogether design files (.mtd)
- StyleVision transformations (.sps) packaged as Portable XML Forms (.pxf).

The following scenarios are possible when deploying server execution files:

- "Design and execute on Windows". In this scenario, you design the MobileTogether
 designs, MapForce mappings, or StyleVision transformations on Windows, and then run
 their corresponding server execution files on a Windows system as well (which can either
 be the same Windows machine, or a remote Windows server).
- 2. "Design on Windows, execute on Linux or Mac". In this scenario, you design all of the above files on Windows, and then deploy their corresponding server execution files to Linux and Mac for execution.

In the "Design and execute on Windows" scenario, the selection of available database technologies and drivers comprises any of ADO, ODBC, JDBC, as well as SQLite connections (see <u>Database Drivers Overview</u>).

In the "Design on Windows, execute on Linux or Mac" scenario, ADO and ODBC connections are not supported. In this scenario, you can use direct SQLite connections (see SQLite connections) and JDBC connections (see JDBC connections).

When you deploy server execution files to a server, databases are not included in the deployed package (this also applies to file-based databases such as SQLite and Microsoft Access), so a connection to them must be set up on the deployment server as well. In other words, the same database configuration must be in place both on the operating system where you design and on the server to which you deploy the files.

In general, the scenario in which you deploy server execution files to a different operating system is slightly more complex, since it requires that the same database configuration exist on both machines. To bypass complexity while designing locally and deploying remotely, consider using the Global Resources feature available in MapForce, MobileTogether Designer, and StyleVision.

For example, you can define two different Global Resource configurations to connect to the same database: one which would specify the connection settings using the Windows-style path conventions, and another one—using Linux-style path conventions. You could then use the first connection to test your files during the design phase, and the second connection to run the execution file on the Linux server.

SQLite connections on Linux and Mac

There is no need to separately install SQLite on Linux and Mac since support for it is integrated into Altova server products as well. Therefore, if your server execution files include calls to a SQLite database, you will be able to run them without having to install SQLite first. You need to ensure, however, that the server execution files use the correct path to the database file on the Linux or Mac machine. That is, before running the server execution files on the Linux or Mac server, make sure that the SQLite database file is referenced through a path which is POSIX (Portable Operating System Interface) compliant. This assumes that no Windows-style drive letters are used in the path, and directories are delimited by the forward slash character (/). For example, the path /usr/local/mydatabase.db is POSIX compliant, while the path c:\sqlite \mydatabase.db isn't.

JDBC connections on Linux and Mac

To set up a JDBC connection on Linux or Mac:

- 1. Download the JDBC driver supplied by the database vendor and install it on the operating system. Make sure to select the 32-bit version if your operating system runs on 32-bit, and the 64-bit version if your operating system runs on 64-bit.
- 2. Set the environment variables to the location where the JDBC driver is installed. Typically, you will need to set the CLASSPATH variable, and possibly a few others. To find out which specific environment variables must be configured, check the documentation supplied with the JDBC driver.

Note: On Mac OS, the system expects any installed JDBC libraries to be in the /Library/Java/ Extensions directory. Therefore, it is recommended that you unpack the JDBC driver to this location; otherwise, you will need to configure the system to look for the JDBC library at the path where you installed the JDBC driver.

Oracle Connections on Mac OS X Yosemite

On Mac OS X Yosemite, you can connect to an Oracle database through the **Oracle Database Instant Client**. Note that, if you have a Mac OS with a Java version prior to Java 8, you can also connect through the **JDBC Thin for All Platforms** library, in which case you may disregard the instructions in this topic.

You can download the Oracle Instant Client from the Oracle official download page. Note that there are several Instant Client packages available on the Oracle download page. Make sure to select a package with Oracle Call Interface (OCI) support, (for example, Instant Client Basic). Also, make sure to select the 32-bit version if your operating system runs on 32-bit, and the 64-bit version if your operating system runs on 64-bit.

Once you have downloaded and unpacked the Oracle Instant Client, edit the property list (.plist) file shipped with the installer so that the following environment variables point to the location of the corresponding driver paths, for example:

Variable	Sample Value
CLASSPATH	/opt/oracle/instantclient_11_2/ojdbc6.jar:/opt/oracle/instantclient_11_2/ojdbc5.jar
TNS_ADMIN	/opt/oracle/NETWORK_ADMIN
ORACLE_HOME	/opt/oracle/instantclient_11_2
DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH	/opt/oracle/instantclient_11_2
PATH	<pre>\$PATH:/opt/oracle/instantclient_11_2</pre>

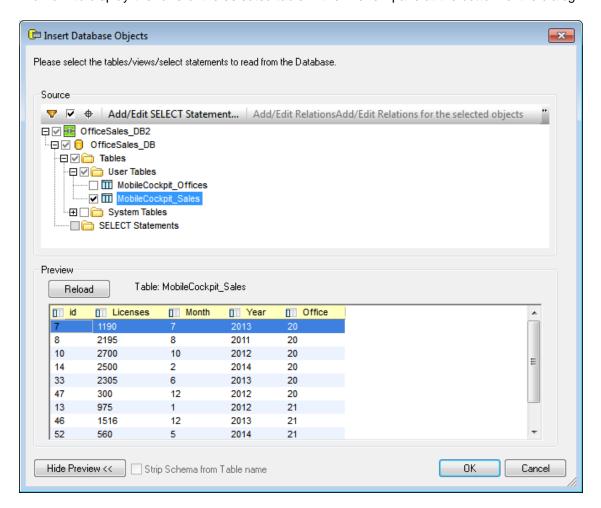
Note: Edit the sample values above to fit the paths where Oracle Instant Client files are installed on your operating system.

10.4 Selecting DB Objects as Data Sources

After connecting to a DB, the Insert Database Objects dialog (*screenshot below*) is displayed. In this dialog, you can select the DB objects you wish to add as a data source, either by selecting a table or by using a SELECT statement.

Selecting a table as a data sources

In the screenshot below, the MobileCockpit_Sales table has been selected. Click **Show Preview** to display the rows of the selected table in the Preview pane at the bottom of the dialog.



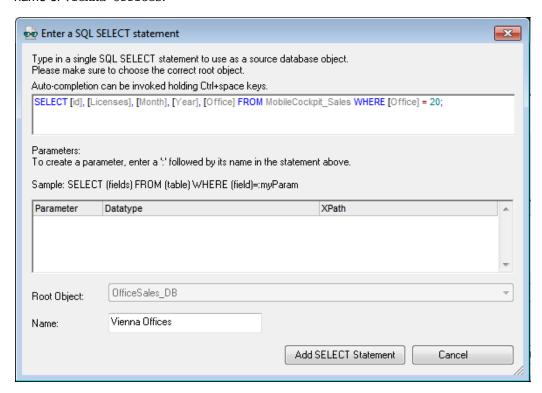
Note: Only one table can be selected at a time as a data source.

Using a SELECT statement

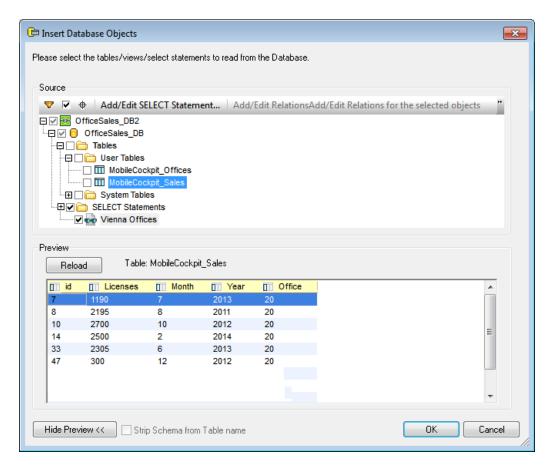
To select the data source by using a SELECT statement, do the following:

In the Insert Database Objects dialog (screenshot above), click Add/Edit SELECT

- **Statement**. This displays the Enter a SQL SELECT Statement dialog (*screenshot below*).
- 2. Enter the SELECT statement you want and give the statement a name. In the screenshot below, we select, with the WHERE clause, rows that have id=20. We give the statement a name of Vienna Offices.



- 3. Click **Add SELECT Statement** to add the statement. The SELECT statement appears in the Source pane (see screenshot below).
- 4. Click **Show Preview** to display the rows of the selected table in the Preview pane



5. Click **OK** to add the data source to the page sources.

10.5 Editing DB Data

This section:

- About OriginalRowSet
- Editing DB data in tables and other controls
- Updating, inserting, appending, and deleting nodes
- The DB Execute action and \$MT_DBExecute_Result variable
- Primary Keys in MobileTogether Designer

About OriginalRowSet

In order for data to be edited and saved, the tree of the page source must also include an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, which is a copy of the <code>RowSet</code> element. The original data is saved in the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, while edited data is saved in the <code>RowSet</code> element. When the page source is saved, the difference between the two trees, <code>OriginalRowSet</code> and <code>RowSet</code>, is calculated, and the data source is updated on the basis of the difference. If the modification is successful, then the modified data is copied to <code>OriginalRowSet</code> so that <code>OriginalRowSet</code> contains the newly saved DB data, and the modification process can be repeated.

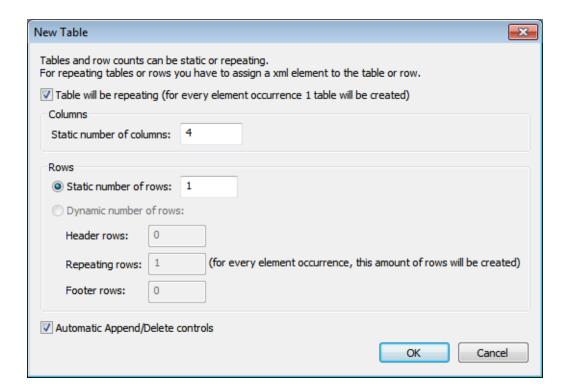
To create an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> for a page source, right-click the root node of the page source and toggle on the command <code>Create OriginalRowSet</code>.

The **Create OriginalRowSet** command is enabled for database type (\$DB) root nodes. It is a toggle command that creates/removes an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> data structure that contains the original data of the page source. User modified data is saved in the main structure created from the data source. When modified data is saved back to the DB, the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> structure is modified to contain the data newly saved to the DB. Till the time modified data is saved to the DB, the original DB data is retained in the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> structure. This ensures that the original DB data is still available in the tree.

Editing DB data that is in tables and in other controls

To create a control in which DB data can be edited, do the following:

- Use a control that is editable by the end user, such as a combo box or edit field. A label control, for instance, is not editable. If a table is used to generate repeating rows, add the editable controls within the cells of the table. See the sections Edit Offices Table in the Database-And-Charts tutorial for an example of how to do this. Also see the description of how to work with tables.
- On the control, create a page source link to the data source node that is to be edited. Do
 this by dragging the data source node onto the control.
- If you use a table with repeating rows, use the option to automatically include Append/ Delete controls when the table is created (see screenshot below).



Updating, inserting, appending, and deleting nodes

The <u>Update Data actions</u> enable nodes in DBs to be edited when a page or control event is triggered.

- <u>Update Node(s)</u>: Updates one or more nodes, such as DB column, with value/s generated or obtained by the action's XPath expression.
- Insert Node(s): Inserts one or more nodes, such as DB rows, before a node selected by the action's XPath expression. The structure and contents of the inserted node can also be defined.
- Append Node(s): Appends one or more nodes, such as DB rows, as the first or last child
 of a node selected by the action's XPath expression. The structure and contents of the
 appended node can also be defined.
- <u>Delete Node(s)</u>: Deletes one or more nodes, such as a DB rows, specified by the action's XPath expression.

Note: These actions are carried out on local data tree. The modified data tree must still be saved back to the DB for the end user modifications to be passed to the DB.

The DB Execute action and \$MT DBExecute Result variable

The <u>DB Execute action</u> enables you to <u>use powerful SQL statements</u>, including INSERT, APPEND, UPDATE, and DELETE, to modify a DB. It is different from the <u>actions listed in the previous section</u> in one important way: The modifications created by DB Execute's SQL statements are immediately saved to the DB. In the case of the <u>actions listed in the previous section</u> a <u>Save</u> mechanism must be used to save the modifications to the DB.

After the <u>DB Execute action</u> executes an SQL statement, it stores the result in a variable named smt_dbexecute_Result. This variable can then be used in XPath expressions anywhere within the project. Consequently, structures and data from one DB can be selected (optionally based on parameters), then held in storage, modified, and inserted at other locations.

Primary keys in MobileTogether Designer

Primary keys in DBs typically are auto-incrementing. When this is the case and a new row is added to a table, the primary key column of the added row is automatically incremented. In MobileTogether Designer, when a table is retrieved the primary key and auto-increment information is automatically retrieved and displayed in the Page Sources Pane (see screenshot below).

```
SDB1 OfficeSales_DB (shared with 2 other page(s))

RowSet

Row

id (Read Only, Primary Key) ="(: calculate a new unique id as the db doesn't generate one for us :)

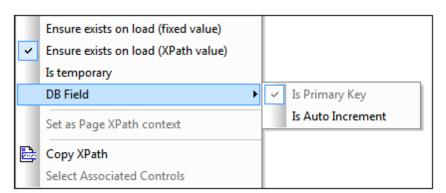
let $all := $DB1/DB/RowSet/Row/@id

let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))

let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1

return $id"
```

If auto-retrieval of this information was not successful, the context menu of tree nodes contains toggle commands that enable you to correctly annotate nodes (see screenshot below).



If the primary key column is not auto-incrementing, new primary key values for appended rows must be automatically generated using an XQuery expression. This is because primary key columns cannot be edited. The XQuery expression is inserted by using the primary-key node's context menu command, **Ensure Exists before Page Load (XPath Value)**. In the example below, a new value is generated for the primary key <code>@id</code> by using the following XQuery expression:

```
let $all := $DB1/DB/RowSet/Row/@id
let $ids := remove($all, index-of($all, ""))
let $id := if (empty($ids)) then 1 else max($ids) + 1
return $id
```

10.6 Saving Data to the DB

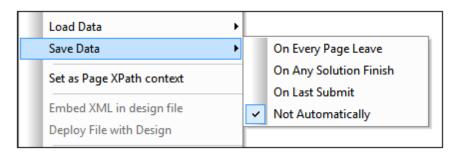
This section:

- Saving on the basis of solution progress
- The Save action
- The DB Execute action
- Filtering the columns to save
- About OriginalRowSet
- Committing Transactions

Saving on the basis of solution progress

The context menu of a \$DB root node has a **Save Data** command (*screenshot below*) which enables the data source represented by the root node to be saved at different points during the progress of the solution. The options are described below. If the default option, *Not Automatically*, is selected, then data is saved only when the *Save* action of an event is triggered.

The **Save Data** command rolls out a sub-menu with the following mutually exclusive options (only one can be selected):



- On Every Page Leave: Data in the tree is saved every time a page containing that tree is exited.
- On Any Solution Finish: Data in the tree is saved when the solution is exited, no matter at
 what point or how the solution is exited.
- On Last Submit: Data in the tree is saved when the workflow progresses as designed, from first page to last page, and when the last Submit button is tapped. If this option is selected and the solution is exited before the last Submit button is tapped, then data in the tree will not be saved.
- Not Automatically: The tree will not automatically be saved. You must use the <u>Save</u>, <u>Save</u> to <u>File</u>, or <u>Save to HTTP/FTP</u> actions to save data.

The default is *Not Automatically*.

The Save action

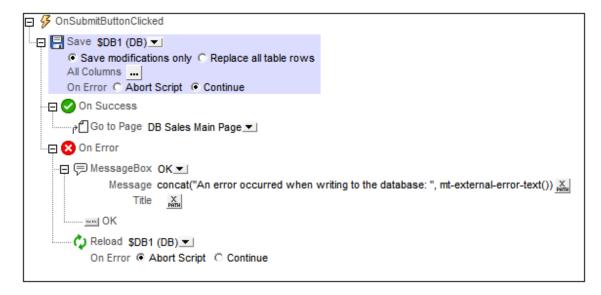
Data can be saved to the DB when a page event or control event is triggered for which the *Save* action is defined. Such an event could be, for example, the clicking of the **Submit** button by the

618 Databases Saving Data to the DB

end user. In the screenshot below, the Submit button is located in the Edit Offices Table bar.



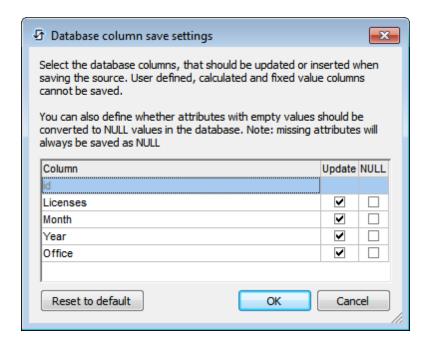
The Save action can be defined on a page action or control action. You can access the respective Actions dialogs via the All Actions dialog (**Page | Actions Overview**). The screenshot below shows a Page Actions dialog with the Save action defined for the onsubmitButtonClicked event.



Note: If the DB has a private key, the private key is used to save only those records that have been modified, added, or deleted. If the DB has no private key, the entire modified table will be saved to the DB, replacing the original table.

The DB Execute action

In the context menu of \$DB root nodes, select the command **Filter Columns** to display the Database Column Save Settings dialog (*screenshot below*) and to select which columns should be updated or inserted.

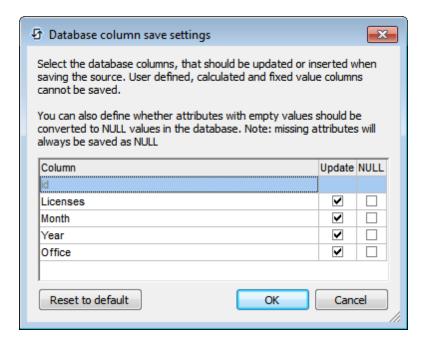


The dialog displays the columns of the data source. Columns that cannot be updated (because they are user-defined, fixed-value, or calculated-value) will not have an *Update* option check box. Deselect the columns you do not want to update. Attributes with empty values can be converted to <code>NULL</code> values in the DB by checking that column's *NULL* check box. Note that missing attributes will always be saved as <code>NULL</code>. If you wish to reset the Save settings so that all columns are updated, click **Reset to default**.

Filtering the columns to save

In the context menu of \$DB root nodes, select the command **Filter Columns** to display the Database Column Save Settings dialog (*screenshot below*) and to select which columns should be updated or inserted.

620 Databases Saving Data to the DB



The dialog displays the columns of the data source. Columns that cannot be updated (because they are user-defined, fixed-value, or calculated-value) will not have an *Update* option check box. Deselect the columns you do not want to update. Attributes with empty values can be converted to <code>NULL</code> values in the DB by checking that column's *NULL* check box. Note that missing attributes will always be saved as <code>NULL</code>. If you wish to reset the Save settings so that all columns are updated, click **Reset to default**.

About OriginalRowSet

In order for data to be edited and saved, the tree of the page source must also include an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, which is a copy of the <code>RowSet</code> element. The original data is saved in the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> element, while edited data is saved in the <code>RowSet</code> element. When the page source is saved, the difference between the two trees, <code>OriginalRowSet</code> and <code>RowSet</code>, is calculated, and the data source is updated on the basis of the difference. If the modification is successful, then the modified data is copied to <code>OriginalRowSet</code> so that <code>OriginalRowSet</code> contains the newly saved DB data, and the modification process can be repeated.

To create an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> for a page source, right-click the root node of the page source and toggle on the command <code>Create OriginalRowSet</code>.

The **Create OriginalRowSet** command is enabled for database type (\$DB) root nodes. It is a toggle command that creates/removes an <code>OriginalRowSet</code> data structure that contains the original data of the page source. User modified data is saved in the main structure created from the data source. When modified data is saved back to the DB, the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> structure is modified to contain the data newly saved to the DB. Till the time modified data is saved to the DB, the original DB data is retained in the <code>OriginalRowSet</code> structure. This ensures that the original DB data is still available in the tree.

Committing transactions

Another way to save data to a DB is to begin an independent transaction and commit it. DB transactions are available as actions for page and control events.

About DB Transactions

For each DB access that needs a transaction, one is automatically created and closed afterwards. This might not be desirable for some setups. For example, when you have two DB page sources that you want to update atomically together: If both tables are saved successfully, then the transaction is committed, but rolled back otherwise. To accommodate this kind of situation, transactions can be created on a connection basis.

If you <u>begin a transaction</u>, all DB operations belonging to the same DB connection will use this transaction.

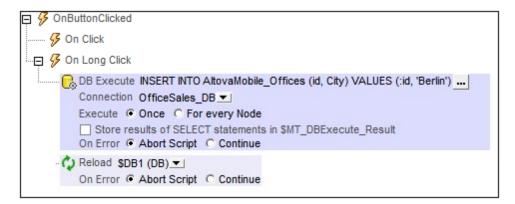
Committing a transaction makes changes visible to the world outside your transaction.

Changes can be rolled back. In this case, even if you have done a Save on your page source, the changes won't be visible after a rollback! Note that any transaction that is not closed (committed or rolled back) when the end of the action tree has been reached will be rolled back automatically! A warning to this effect will be displayed in the Messages window.

It is important to bear in mind that, while the behavior above refers to explicit transaction actions, this behavior also applies to all DB operations that use the same connection as the transaction.

10.7 The DB Execute Action

The <u>DB Execute action</u> (see screenshot below) is a powerful mechanism for modifying DB data. You can insert, delete, update, and save data by using SQL statements. This enables the power of the SQL language to be used whenever an event occurs during the progress of the solution.

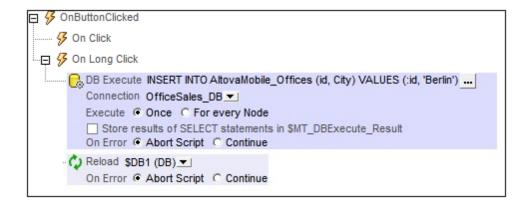


In this section, we describe how to insert, update, delete, and save data using DB Execute. The command to modify DB data is specified in the SQL statement of the action (see screenshot above). For a detailed description of the settings of the DB Execute action, see the section Page Design > Actions > Database > DB Execute. Note that the SQL statement of DB Execute provides additional flexibility since it allows the use of parameters. The values of these parameters are generated by XPath expressions. See the DB Execute action section for details.

If the DB data is being displayed on the same page as the page on which the action is defined, you should add a Reload action to update the display of the modified DB (see screenshot above). In the screenshot above, the \$DB1 tree is the root node of the database table OfficeSales_DB. After OfficeSales_DB has been modified with the INSERT statement, the \$DB1 tree on the design page is reloaded, thus immediately reflecting the modification to the DB.

INSERT: Inserting rows with DB Execute and SQL

The INSERT statement of SQL can be used to insert rows in a database table. The INSERT INTO statement is used to insert rows with specific values, whereas the INSERT SELECT statement is used to insert the result of a SELECT statement into a table. You can also use other SQL statements, such as SELECT INTO, to insert rows in a table.



■ Insert a single complete row or a single partial row

Use **INSERT INTO** to insert a single row into a table. The SQL syntax is:

```
INSERT INTO DestinationTable (ID, City) VALUES ('ID-Value', 'City-Value');
```

The statement above inserts a row containing two columns (ID and City) into the DestinationTable table. Note the following points:

- Only those columns that are specified in the SQL statement are inserted in the new row (ID, City in the example above).
- To insert a complete row (containing all table columns), specify all table columns in the SQL statement .
- The column names and column values in the SQL statement must correspond to
 each other by position. This column order does not need to correspond to the
 column order in the DB table. This means that if the layout of the DB table changes
 subsequently, the SQL statement will still be correct and does not need to be
 updated to reflect the changed layout.
- A column value must exist for each column name. Otherwise an error is generated and the row is not inserted.
- If a column is omitted in the SQL statement, then that column must be defined in the DB to allow NULL values (be empty) or to have a default value; otherwise an error is generated and the row is not inserted.
- To insert multiple rows, specify multiple INSERT INTO statements.

Insert the result of a SELECT statement

Use **INSERT SELECT** to insert the result of a SELECT statement into a table. Typically, INSERT SELECT is used to copy a set of rows from one table to another. The SQL syntax is:

```
INSERT SELECT Offices (ID, City, Country) SELECT ('ID', 'Stadt', 'Land')
FROM Offices_DE;
```

The statement above inserts all the rows of the <code>Offices_DE</code> table into the <code>Offices</code> table. Note the following points:

Only those columns that are specified in the SQL statement are inserted in the new

- row (ID, City, Country in the example above).
- The columns returned by the SELECT statement will be inserted into the corresponding columns of the destination table. The correspondence of columns is determined by position. In the example above, for instance, the column Stadt at position 2 in the SELECT statement corresponds to the column City at position 2 in the definition of the destination table. The names of columns in the two definitions do not need to match; correspondence is fixed by position.
- The SELECT statement can use a WHERE clause to filter the data that is inserted.

UPDATE: Updating rows with DB Execute and SQL

The UPDATE statement of SQL can be used to update rows in a database table. The UPDATE statement has three parts:

- The name of the DB table to update
- The names of the columns to update and their values
- A WHERE clause to filter which rows to update

Here is an example of an SQL UPDATE statement:

This statement updates the row with id=11 from, say, Office='USA' to Office='New York' and Contact=NULL to Contact='Altova Johnson'. The screenshot below shows this UPDATE statement example in the SQL statement setting of a DB Execute action.

```
On Click

On Long Click

SET [Office] = 'New York',

[Contact] = 'Altova Johnson'

WHERE [id] = 11;

Connection OfficeSales_DB \(\sigma\)

Execute (** Once (**) For every Node

Store results of SELECT statements in $MT_DBExecute_Result

On Error (**) Abort Script (**) Continue
```

Note the following points:

• The columns to be updated are given by their name=value combinations, with each name=value combination being separated from the next by a comma. There is no comma

after the last name=value combination.

- All the columns to be updated are specified within a single SET clause.
- A column's value can be deleted by setting it to NULL, assuming that NULL values are allowed for that column. For example: SET [Contact] = NULL.

The Reload action reloads the modified DB immediately after the modification has been carried out. Without the Reload action, the modification will not be displayed on the page.

DELETE: Deleting rows with DB Execute and SQL

The DELETE statement of SQL can be used to delete:

- specific rows of a table (by specifying a WHERE clause to select the rows to delete)
- all rows of a table (by omitting the WHERE clause)

Here is an example of an SQL DELETE statement:

```
DELETE FROM [AltovaMobile_Offices]
WHERE [id] = 11;
```

The SQL DELETE statement above deletes the row with id=11. If the WHERE clause is omitted, then all the rows of the AltovaMobile_Offices table will be deleted.

```
On ButtonClicked

On Click

On Long Click

WHERE [id] = 11;

Connection OfficeSales_DB 

Execute © Once © For every Node

Store results of SELECT statements in $MT_DBExecute_Result
On Error © Abort Script © Continue

Reload $DB1 (DB) 
On Error © Abort Script © Continue
```

An SQL DELETE statement in a DB Execute action.

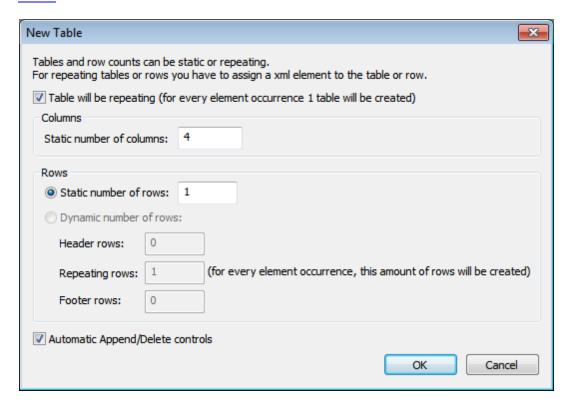
The Reload action reloads the modified DB immediately after the modification has been carried out. Without the Reload action, the modification will not be displayed on the page.

626 Databases Displaying DB Data

10.8 Displaying DB Data

Displaying DB data in tables and other controls

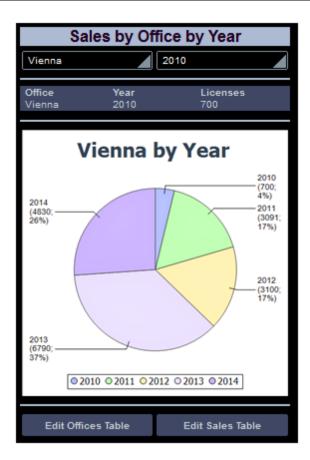
DB data can be displayed in a control by creating a page source link from the control to a data source node. Typically the best way to display DB data is in a table with repeating rows. Drag a table control into the design and create a new table as a repeating table (see screenshot below). Then, drag controls into the cells of the table and make page source links to the column nodes of the DB row. For an actual demonstration of how this works, see the tutorial, Database-And-Charts.



Displaying DB data as charts

In addition to being able to display DB data directly, you can also create charts based on DB data.

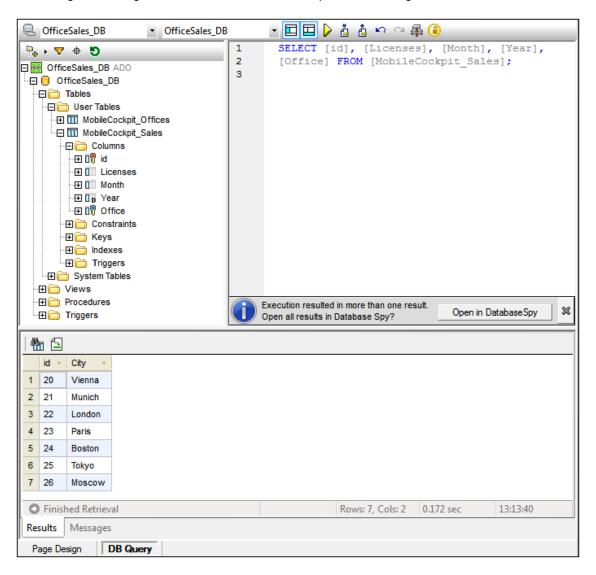
Databases Displaying DB Data 627



For an example of how to do this, see the tutorial, <u>Database-And-Charts</u>.

10.9 Database Query

The **DB Query View** (*screenshot below*) enables you to directly query any major database from within the MobileTogether Designer GUI. The database could be a data source referenced in the active document or an external database. Note that each DB Query pane is associated with the currently active design. The DB Query pane of a design can have connections to multiple databases open at a time. There can also be multiple designs open at a time in MobileTogether Designer. Queries and actions defined in the DB Query View are independent of other MobileTogether Designer tabs, and are not saved as part of the design file.



The Database Query mechanism

The Database Query mechanism is as follows. (It is described in detail in the sub-sections of this section.)

1. A connection to the database is established via the Database Query | Connect to a Data

Source window.

- 2. The connected database or parts of it are displayed in the <u>Browser pane</u>, which can be configured to suit viewing requirements.
- 3. A <u>query</u> written in a syntax appropriate to the database to be queried is entered in the <u>Query pane</u>, and the query is executed.
- 4. The results of the query can be viewed through various filters.

Supported databases

The following databases are supported. The available root object for each database is also listed. While Altova endeavors to support other databases, successful connection and data processing have only been tested with the databases listed below. If your Altova application is a 64-bit version, ensure that you have access to the 64-bit database drivers needed for the specific database you are connecting to.

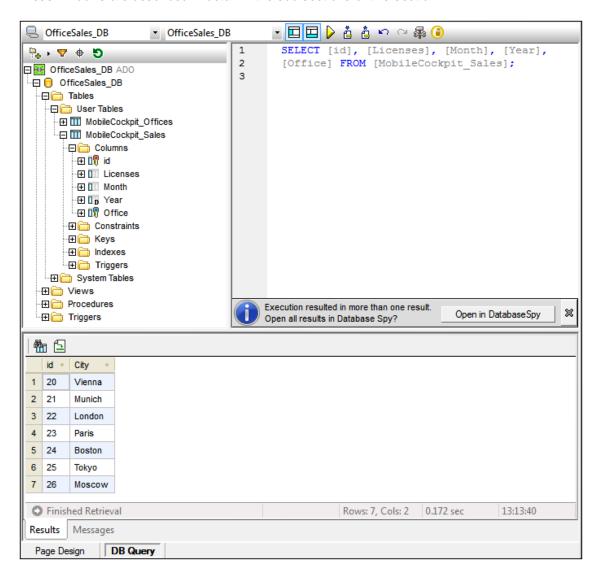
Database	Root Object	Notes
Firebird 2.5.4	database	
IBM DB2 8.x, 9.1, 9.5, 9.7, 10.1, 10.5	schema	
IBM DB2 for i 6.1, 7.1	schema	Logical files are supported and shown as views.
IBM Informix 11.70	database	
Microsoft Access 2003, 2007, 2010, 2013	database	
Microsoft SQL Server 2005, 2008, 2012, 2014	database	
MySQL 5.0, 5.1, 5.5, 5.6	database	
Oracle 9i, 10g, 11g, 12c	schema	
PostgreSQL 8.0, 8.1, 8.2, 8.3, 9.0.10, 9.1.6, 9.2.1, 9.4	database	
SQLite 3.x	database	SQLite connections are supported as native, direct connections to the SQLite database file. No separate drivers are required.
Sybase ASE15	database	

GUI Overview and Toolbar

The **DB Query View** (*screenshot below*) is divided into the following parts:

- The <u>Browser window</u> at left, which displays connection info and database tables
- The <u>SQL Editor window (Query window)</u>, to the right of the Browser window, contains your SQL queries
- The <u>Results tab of the Result/Messages windows</u> displays the query results in tabular form
- The Messages tab of the Result/Messages windows displays warnings or error messages

These windows are described in detail in the sub-sections of this section.



The DB Query View toolbar

The DB Query View toolbar (screenshot below) is located at the top of the view and provides icons

for important commands related to the view.



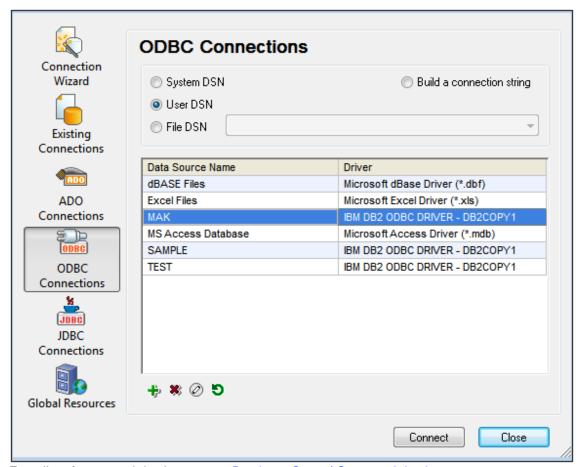
Icon	Command	Does this
e	Quick Connect	Starts the database connection wizard.
	Toggle Browser	Toggles the Browser window on and off.
	Toggle Results	Toggles the Results/Messages window on and off.
	Execute Query	Executes currently selected SQL statement. If script contains multiple statements and none is selected, then all are executed.
Ė	Import SQL File	Opens an SQL file in the SQL Editor.
ė	Export SQL File	Saves SQL queries to an SQL file.
2	Undo	Undoes an unlimited number of edits in SQL Editor.
2	Redo	Redoes an unlimited number of edits in SQL Editor.
₽	Options	Open the Options dialog of SQL Editor.
(a)	Open Query in DatabaseSpy	Opens the SQL script in Altova's DatabaseSpy application.

Connecting to Data Sources

In order to query a database, you have to first connect to the required database, and then select the required data source and root object from among multiple existing connections.

Connecting to a database

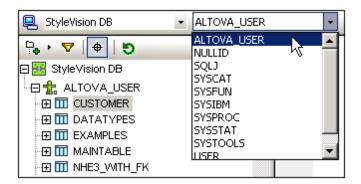
When you switch to DB Query View, any database that the active design uses as a data source is displayed in the Browser pane. If you wish to query some other database, click **Quick Connect** in the DB Query View toolbar.



For a list of supported databases, see Database Query | Supported databases.

Selecting the required data source

All the existing connections and the root objects of each are listed, respectively, in two combo boxes in the toolbar of the Database Query window (*screenshot below*). After selecting the required data source in the left-hand combo box, you can select the required root object from the right-hand combo box.



In the screenshot above, the database with the name <code>StyleVision DB</code> has been selected. Of the available root objects for this database, the root object <code>ALTOVA_USER</code> has been selected. The database and the root object are then displayed in the <code>Browser pane</code>.

Browser Pane

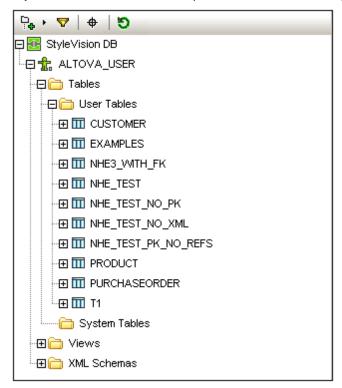
The Browser pane provides an overview of objects in the selected database. This overview includes database constraint information, such as whether a column is a primary or foreign key. In IBM DB2 version 9 and higher databases, the Browser additionally shows registered XML schemas in a separate folder (see screenshot below).

This section describes the following:

- The <u>layouts</u> available in the Browser pane.
- How to filter database objects.
- How to find database objects.
- How to refresh the root object of the active data source.

Browser pane layouts

The default Folders layout displays database objects hierarchically. Depending on the selected object, different context menu options are available when you right-click an item.



To select a layout for the Browser, click the Layout icon in the toolbar of the Browser pane (*screenshot below*) and select the layout from the drop-down list. Note that the icon changes with the selected layout.



The available layouts are:

- Folders: Organizes database objects into folders based on object type in a hierarchical tree, this is the default setting.
- No Schemas: Similar to the Folders layout, except that there are no database schema folders; tables are therefore not categorized by database schema.
- No Folders: Displays database objects in a hierarchy without using folders.
- Flat: Divides database objects by type in the first hierarchical level. For example, instead of columns being contained in the corresponding table, all columns are displayed in a separate Columns folder.
- Table Dependencies: Categorizes tables according to their relationships with other tables. There are categories for tables with foreign keys, tables referenced by foreign keys and tables that have no relationships to other tables.

To sort tables into User and System tables, switch to Folders, No Schemas or Flat layout, then right-click the Tables folder and select **Sort into User and System Tables**. The tables are sorted alphabetically in the User Tables and System Tables folders.

Filtering database objects

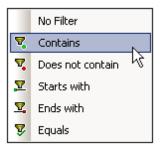
In the Browser pane (in all layouts except No Folders and Table Dependencies), schemas, tables, and views can be filtered by name or part of a name. Objects are filtered as you type in the characters, and filtering is case-insensitive by default.

To filter objects in the Browser, do the following:

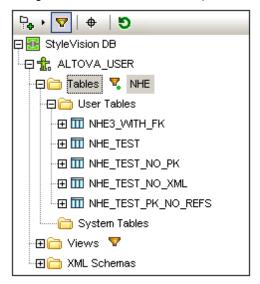
1. Click the Filter Folder Contents icon in the toolbar of the Browser pane. Filter icons appear next to the Tables and Views folders in the currently selected layout (*screenshot below*).



2. Click the filter icon next to the folder you want to filter, and select the filtering option from the popup menu, for example, Contains.



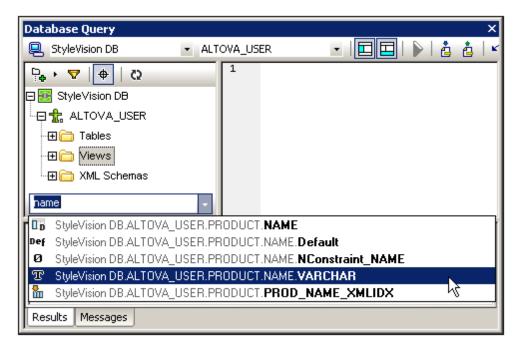
3. In the entry field that appears, enter the filter string (in the screenshot below, the filter string on the Tables folder is NHE). The filter is applied as you type.



Finding database objects

To find a specific database item by its name, you can use the Browser pane's Object Locator. This works as follows:

- 1. In the toolbar of the Browser pane, click the Object Locator icon. A drop-down list appears at the bottom of the Browser pane.
- 2. Enter the search string in the entry field of this list, for example name (*screenshot below*). Clicking the drop-down arrow displays all objects that contain the search string.



3. Click the object in the list to see it in the Browser pane.

Refreshing the root object

The root object of the active data source can be refreshed by clicking the **Refresh** button of the Browser pane's toolbar.

Query Pane: Description

The Query pane is an intelligent SQL editor for entering queries to the selected database. After entering the query, clicking the Execute command of the Database Query window executes the query and displays the result and execution messages in the Results/Messages pane. How to work with queries is described in the next section, Query Pane: Working with Queries. In this section, we describe the main features of the Query pane:

- SQL Editor icons in the Database Query toolbar
- SQL Editor options
- Auto-completion of SQL statements
- Definition of regions in an SQL script
- Insertion of comments in an SQL script
- Use of bookmarks

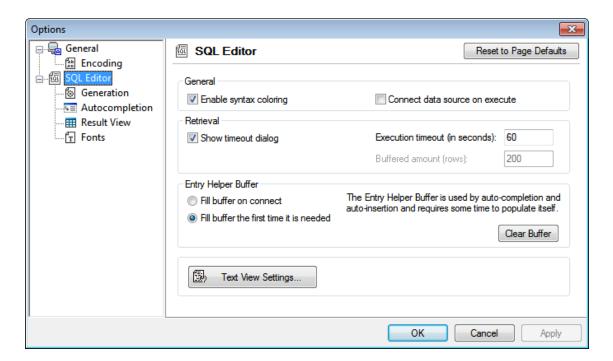
SQL Editor icons in the Database Query toolbar

The following icons in the toolbar of the Database Query window are used when working with the SQL Editor:

Icon	Command	Does this
	Execute Query	Executes currently selected SQL statement. If script contains multiple statements and none is selected, then all are executed.
È	Import SQL File	Opens an SQL file in the SQL Editor.
Ė	Export SQL File	Saves SQL queries to an SQL file.
2	Undo	Undoes an unlimited number of edits in SQL Editor.
2	Redo	Redoes an unlimited number of edits in SQL Editor.
∓ 3	Options	Open the Options dialog of SQL Editor.
(a)	Open Query in DatabaseSpy	Opens the SQL script in Altova's DatabaseSpy application.

SQL Editor options

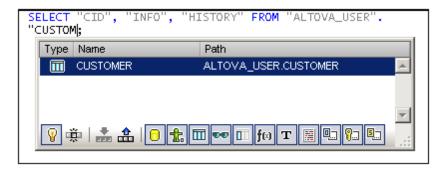
Clicking the **Options** icon in the Database Query toolbar pops up the Options dialog (*screenshot below*). A page of settings can be selected in the left-hand pane, and the options on that page can be selected. Click the **Reset to Page Defaults** button to reset the options on that page to their original settings.



The key settings are as follows:

- General | Encoding: Options for setting the encoding of new SQL files, of existing SQL files for which the encoding cannot be detected, and for setting the Byte Order Mark (BOM). (If the encoding of existing SQL files can be detected, the files are opened and saved without changing the encoding.)
- **SQL Editor:** Options for toggling syntax coloring and data source connections on execution on/off. A timeout can be set for query execution, and a dialog to change the timeout can also be shown if the specified time is exceeded. The buffer for the entry helper information can be filled on connection to the data source or the first time it is needed.
- **SQL Editor | SQL Generation:** The application generates SQL statements when you drag objects from the Browser pane into the Query pane. Options for SQL statement generation can be set in the SQL generation tab. Use the *Database* list box to select a database kind and set the statement generation options individually for the different database kinds you are working with. Activating the *Apply to all databases* check box sets the options that are currently selected for all databases. Options include appending semi-colons to statements and surrounding identifiers with escape characters.
- SQL Editor | Auto-completion: The Auto-Completion feature works by suggesting, while you type, relevant entries from various SQL syntax categories. It is available for the following databases: MS SQL Server 2000, 2005, and 2008, MS Access 2003 and 2007, and IBM DB2 v.9. When the Auto-Completion option is switched on, the Auto-Completion window (screenshot below) appears, containing suggestions for auto-completion. Select the required entry to insert it. You can define whether the autocompletion popup should be triggered automatically after a delay which you can set in the Triggering Auto-completion pane, or if the popup has to be invoked manually. You can also select the keys to be used to insert the selected completion. The SQL Editor can intelligently suggest autocompletion entries based on language statistics. If this feature is activated, items that are frequently used appear on top of the list of suggested entries. In the Autocompletion window (screenshot below) itself, note the buttons at the bottom of the window. The Context-Sensitive Suggestion button sets whether only entries that are

relevant to the context are displayed or all possible entries with that spelling. The *Single Mode* button enables you to click a category button to select only that category. The *Set All Categories* button selects all categories. You can then deselect a category by clicking its button. The *Clear All Categories* button de-selects all categories. The other buttons are the various category buttons.



- SQL Editor | Result View: Options to configure the Result tab.
- SQL Editor | Fonts: Options for setting the font style of the text in the Text Editor and in the Result View.

Definition of regions in an SQL script

Regions are sections in SQL scripts that are marked and declared to be a unit. Regions can be collapsed and expanded to hide or display parts of the script. It is also possible to nest regions within other regions. Regions are delimited by --region and --endregion comments, respectively, before and after the region. Regions can optionally be given a name, which is entered after the --region delimiter (see screenshot below).

```
The property of the content of the c
```

To insert a region, select the statement/s to be made into a region, right-click, and select **Insert Region**. The expandable/collapsible region is created. Add a name if you wish. In the screenshot above, also notice the line-numbering. To remove a region, delete the two --region and --endregion delimiters.

Insertion of comments in an SQL script

Text in an SQL script can be commented out. These portions of the script are skipped when the script is executed.

To comment out a block, mark the block, right-click, and select Insert/Remove Block

Comment. To remove the block comment, mark the comment, right-click and select **Insert/Remove Block Comment**.

 To comment out a line or part of a line, place the cursor at the point where the line comment should start, right-click, and select Insert/Remove Line Comment. To remove the line comment, mark the comment, right-click and select Insert/Remove Line Comment.

Use of bookmarks

Bookmarks can be inserted at specific lines, and you can then navigate through the bookmarks in the document. To insert a bookmark, place the cursor in the line to be bookmarked, right-click, and select **Insert/Remove Bookmark**. To go to the next or previous bookmark, right-click, and select **Go to Next Bookmark** or **Go to Previous Bookmark**, respectively. To remove a bookmark, place the cursor in the line for which the bookmark is to be removed, right-click, and select **Insert/Remove Bookmark**. To remove all bookmarks, right-click, and select **Remove All Bookmarks**.

Query Pane: Working With

After connecting to a database, an SQL script can be entered in the SQL Editor and executed. This section describes:

- How an SQL script is entered in the SQL Editor.
- How the script is executed in the Database Query window.

The following icons are referred to in this section:

	Execute Query	Executes currently selected SQL statement. If script contains multiple statements and none is selected, then all are executed.
.	Import SQL File	Opens an SQL file in the SQL Editor.

Creating SQL statements and scripts in the SQL Editor

The following GUI methods can be used to create SQL statements or scripts:

- Drag and drop: Drag an object from the Browser pane into the SQL Editor. An SQL statement is generated to query the database for that object.
- Context menu: Right-click an object in the Browser pane and select Show in SQL Editor
 | Select.
- Manual entry: Type SQL statements directly in SQL Editor. The Auto-completion feature can help with editing.
- Import an SQL script: Click the Import SQL File icon in the toolbar of the Database Query window.

Executing SQL statements

If the SQL script in the SQL Editor has more than one SQL statement, select the statement to execute and click the **Execute** icon in the toolbar of the Database Query window. If no statement in the SQL script is selected, then all the statements in the script are executed. The database data is retrieved and displayed as a grid in the <u>Results tab</u>. Messages about the execution are displayed in the <u>Messages tab</u>.

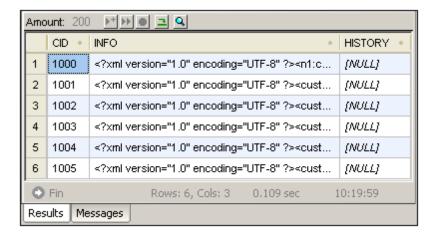
Results and Messages Pane

The Results/Messages pane has two tabs:

- The Results tab shows the data that is retrieved by the query.
- The <u>Messages tab</u> shows messages about the query execution.

Results tab

The data retrieved by the query is displayed in the form of a grid in the Results tab (*screenshot below*).



The following operations can be carried out in the Results tab, via the context menu that pops up when you right-click in the appropriate location in the Results tab:

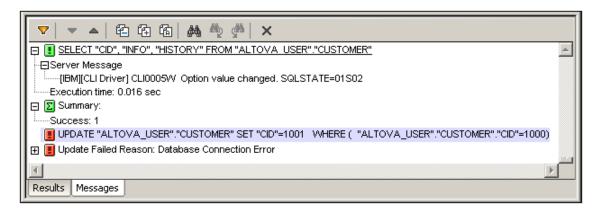
- Sorting on a column: Right-click anywhere in the column on which the records are to be sorted, then select Sorting | Ascending/Descending/Restore Default.
- Copying to the clipboard: This consists of two steps: (i) selecting the data range; and (ii) copying the selection. Data can be selected in several ways: (i) by clicking a column header or row number to select the column or row, respectively; (ii) selecting individual cells (use the Shift and/or Ctrl keys to select multiple cells); (iii) right-clicking a cell, and selecting Selection | Row/Column/All. After making the selection, right-click, and select Copy Selected Cells. This copies the selection to the clipboard, from where it can be pasted into another application. To copy the header together with the cells, use the command Copy Selected Cells with Header.

The Results tab has the following toolbar icons:

=	Go to Statement	Highlights the statement in the SQL Editor that produced the current result.
***	Find	Finds text in the Results pane. XML document content is also searched.

Messages tab

The Messages tab provides information on the previously executed SQL statement and reports errors or warning messages.



The toolbar of the Messages tab contains icons that enable you to customize the view, navigate it, and copy messages to the clipboard. The **Filter** icon enables the display of particular types of messages to be toggled on or off. The **Next** and **Previous** icons lets you step through the list, downwards and upwards, respectively. Messages can also be copied with or without their child components to the clipboard, enabling them to be pasted in documents. The **Find** function enables you to specify a search term and then search up or down the listing for this term. Finally, the **Clear** icon clears the contents of the Report pane.

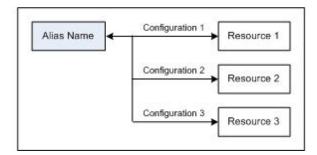
Note: These toolbar icon commands are also available as context menu commands.

Chapter 11

Altova Global Resources

11 Altova Global Resources

Altova Global Resources is a collection of aliases for file, folder, and database resources. Each alias can have multiple configurations, and each configuration maps to a single resource (see screenshot below). Therefore, when a global resource is used as an input, the global resource can be switched among its configurations. This is done easily via controls in the GUI that let you select the active configuration. For example, you can specify a global resource as the default file of a page data source and switch resources by switching the active configuration in the GUI.



Using Altova Global Resources involves two processes:

- <u>Defining Global Resources</u>: Resources are defined and the definitions are stored in an XML file. These resources can be shared across multiple Altova applications.
- <u>Using Global Resources</u>: Within MobileTogether Designer, files can be located via a global resource instead of via a file path. The advantage is that the resource can be switched by changing the active configuration in MobileTogether Designer.

Global resources in other Altova products

Currently, global resources can be defined and used in the following individual Altova products: XMLSpy, StyleVision, MapForce, Authentic Desktop, MobileTogether Designer, and DatabaseSpy.

11.1 Defining Global Resources

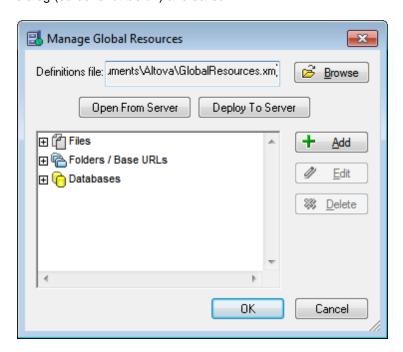
Altova Global Resources are defined in the Manage Global Resources dialog, which can be accessed in two ways:

- Click the menu command Tools | Global Resources.
- Click the **Manage Global Resources** icon in the Global Resources toolbar (*screenshot below*).



The Global Resources Definitions file

Information about global resources is stored in an XML file called the Global Resources Definitions file. This file is created when the first global resource is defined in the Manage Global Resources dialog (screenshot below) and saved.



When you open the Manage Global Resources dialog for the first time, the default location and name of the Global Resources Definitions file is specified in the *Definitions File* text box (see screenshot above):

C:\Users\<username>\My Documents\Altova\GlobalResources.xml

This file is set as the default Global Resources Definitions file for all Altova applications. So a global resource can be saved from any Altova application to this file and will be immediately available to all other Altova applications as a global resource. To define and save a global resource to the Global Resources Definitions file, add the global resource in the Manage Global Resources dialog and click **OK** to save.

To select an already existing Global Resources Definitions file to be the active definitions file of a particular Altova application, browse for it via the **Browse** button of the *Definitions File* text box (see screenshot above).

Note: You can name the Global Resources Definitions file anything you like and save it to any location accessible to your Altova applications. All you need to do in each application, is specify this file as the Global Resources Definitions file for that application (in the *Definitions File* text box). The resources become global across Altova products when you use a single definitions file across all Altova products.

Note: You can also create multiple Global Resources Definitions files. However, only one of these can be active at any time in a given Altova application, and only the definitions contained in this file will be available to the application. The availability of resources can therefore be restricted or made to overlap across products as required.

Managing global resources: adding, editing, deleting, saving

In the Manage Global Resources dialog (*screenshot above*), you can add a global resource to the selected Global Resources Definitions file, or edit or delete a selected global resource. The Global Resources Definitions file organizes the global resources you add into groups: of files, folders, and databases (*see screenshot above*).

To **add a global resource**, click the **Add** button and define the global resource in the appropriate **Global Resource** dialog that pops up (see the descriptions of <u>files</u>, <u>folders</u>, and <u>databases</u> in the sub-sections of this section). After you define a global resource and save it (by clicking **OK** in the Manage Global Resources dialog), the global resource is added to the library of global definitions in the selected Global Resources Definitions file. The global resource will be identified by an alias.

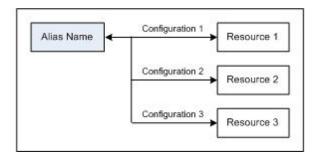
To *edit a global resource*, select it and click *Edit*. This pops up the relevant *Global Resource* dialog, in which you can make the necessary changes (see the descriptions of <u>files</u>, <u>folders</u>, and <u>databases</u> in the sub-sections of this section).

To *delete a global resource*, select it and click **Delete**.

After you finish adding, editing, or deleting, make sure to click **OK** in the Manage Global Resources dialog to **save your modifications** to the Global Resources Definitions file.

Relating global resources to alias names via configurations

Defining a global resource involves mapping an alias name to a resource (file, folder, or database). A single alias name can be mapped to multiple resources. Each mapping is called a configuration. A single alias name can therefore be associated with several resources via different configurations (*screenshot below*).



In an Altova application, you can then assign aliases instead of files. For each alias you can switch between the resources mapped to that alias simply by changing the application's active Global Resource configuration (active configuration). For example, in MobileTogether Designer, if you have a data source with two or more alternative default files, you can assign a global resource alias as the default file. In MobileTogether Designer, you can then change the active configuration to use different default files. If Configuration-1 maps FirstDefault.xml to the global resource alias, and Configuration-1 is selected as the active configuration, then FirstDefault.xml will be used as the default file. In this way multiple configurations can be used to access multiple resources via a single alias. This mechanism can be useful when testing and comparing resources. Furthermore, since global resources can be used across Altova products, resources can be tested and compared across multiple Altova products as well.

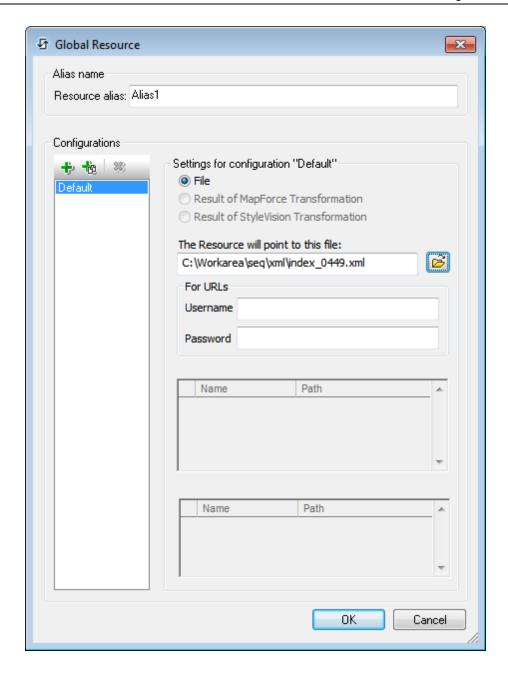
Files

The Global Resource dialog for Files (*screenshot below*) is accessed via the **Add | Files** command in the <u>Manage Global Resources dialog</u>. In this dialog, you can define configurations of the alias that is named in the *Resource Alias* text box. After specifying the properties of the configurations as explained below, save the alias definition by clicking **OK**.

After saving an alias definition, you can add another alias by repeating the steps given above (starting with the **Add | Files** command in the **Manage Global Resources dialog**).

Global Resource dialog

An alias is defined in the Global Resource dialog (screenshot below).



Global Resource dialog icons

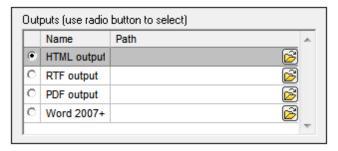


- Add Configuration as Copy: Pops up the Add Configuration dialog in which you can enter the name of the configuration to be created as a copy of the selected configuration.
- Delete: Deletes the selected configuration.
- Open: Browse for the file to be created as the global resource.

Defining the alias

Define the alias (its name and configurations) as follows:

- 1. Give the alias a name: Enter the alias name in the Resource Alias text box.
- 2. Add configurations: The Configurations pane will have, by default, a configuration named Default (see screenshot above), which cannot be deleted or renamed. You can add as many additional configurations as you like by: (i) clicking the Add Configuration or Add Configuration as Copy icons, and (ii) giving the configuration a name in the dialog that pops up. Each added configuration will be shown in the Configurations list. In the screenshot above, two additional configurations, named Long and Short, have been added to the Configurations list. The Add Configuration as Copy command enables you to copy the selected configuration and then modify it.
- 3. Select a resource type for each configuration: Select a configuration from the Configurations list, and, in the Settings for Configuration pane, specify a resource for the configuration: (i) File, (ii) Output of an Altova MapForce transformation, or (iii) Output of an Altova StyleVision transformation. Select the appropriate radio button. If a MapForce or StyleVision transformation option is selected, then a transformation is carried out by MapForce or StyleVision using, respectively, the .mfd or .sps file and the respective input file. The result of the transformation will be the resource.
- 4. Select a file for the resource type: If the resource is a directly selected file, browse for the file in the Resource File Selection text box. If the resource is the result of a transformation, in the File Selection text box, browse for the .mfd file (for MapForce transformations) or the .sps file (for StyleVision transformations). Where multiple inputs or outputs for the transformation are possible, a selection of the options will be presented. For example, the output options of a StyleVision transformation are displayed according to what edition of StyleVision is installed (the screenshot below shows the outputs for Enterprise Edition).



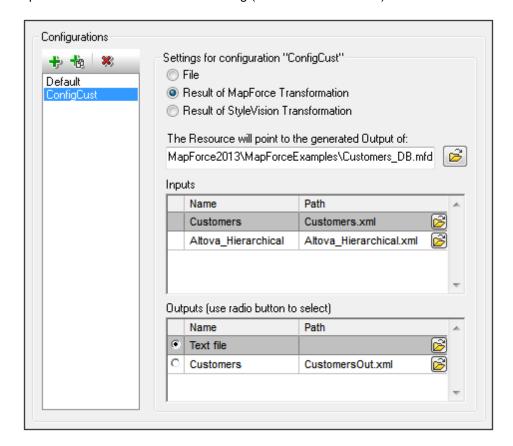
Select the radio button of the desired option (in the screenshot above, 'HTML output' is selected). If the resource is the result of a transformation, then the output can be saved as a file or itself as a global resource. Click the icon and select, respectively, Global Resource (for saving the output as a global resource) or Browse (for saving the output as a file). If neither of these two saving options is selected, the transformation result will be loaded as a temporary file when the global resource is invoked.

- 5. Define multiple configurations if required: You can add more configurations and specify a resource for each. Do this by repeating Steps 3 and 4 above for each configuration. You can add a new configuration to the alias definition at any time.
- 6. Save the alias definition: Click **OK** to save the alias and all its configurations as a global resource. The global resource will be listed under Files in the <u>Manage Global Resources</u> dialog.

Result of MapForce transformation

Altova MapForce maps one or more (existing) input document schemas to one or more (new) output document schemas. This mapping, which is created by a MapForce user, is known as a MapForce Design (MFD). XML files, text files, databases, etc, that correspond to the input schema/s can be used as data sources. MapForce generates output data files that correspond to the output document schema. This output document is the *Result of MapForce Transformation* file that will become a global resource.

If you wish to set a MapForce-generated data file as a global resource, the following must be specified in the Global Resource dialog (see screenshot below):



- A .mfd (MapForce Design) file. You must specify this file in the Resource will point to generated output of text box (see screenshot above).
- One or more input data files. After the MFD file has been specified, it is analysed and, based on the input schema information in it, default data file/s are entered in the Inputs pane (see screenshot above). You can modify the default file selection for each input schema by specifying another file.
- An output file. If the MFD document has multiple output schemas, all these are listed in the Outputs pane (see screenshot above) and you must select one of them. If the output file location of an individual output schema is specified in the MFD document, then this file location is entered for that output schema in the Outputs pane. From the screenshot above we can see that the MFD document specifies that the Customers output schema has a default XML data file (CustomersOut.xml), while the Text file output schema does not have a file association in the MFD file. You can use the default file location in

the Outputs pane or specify one yourself. The result of the MapForce transformation will be saved to the file location of the selected output schema. This is the file that will be used as the global resource

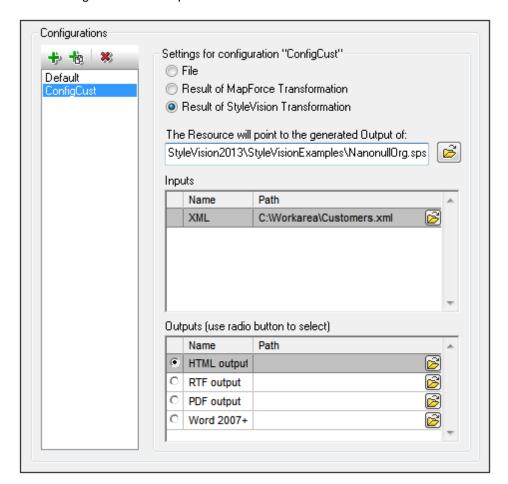
Note: The advantage of this option (Result of MapForce transformation) is that the transformation is carried out at the time the global resource is invoked. This means that the global resource will contain the most up-to-date data (from the input file/s).

Note: Since MapForce is used to run the transformation, you must have Altova MapForce installed for this functionality to work.

Result of StyleVision transformation

Altova StyleVision is used to create StyleVision Power Stylesheet (SPS) files. These SPS files generate XSLT stylesheets that are used to transform XML documents into output documents in various formats (HTML, PDF, RTF, Word 2007+, etc). If you select the option *Result of StyleVision Transformation*, the output document created by StyleVision will be the global resource associated with the selected configuration.

For the StyleVision Transformation option in the Global Resource dialog (see screenshot below), the following files must be specified.



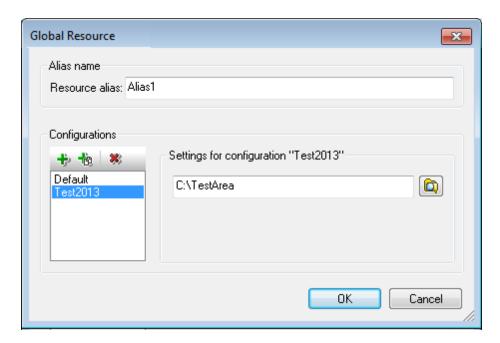
- A .sps (SPS) file. You must specify this file in the Resource will point to generated output of text box (see screenshot above).
- *Input file/s.* The input file might already be specified in the SPS file. If it is, it will appear automatically in the *Inputs* pane once the SPS file is selected. You can change this entry. If there is no entry, you must add one.
- Output file/s. Select the output format in the Outputs pane, and specify an output file location for that format.

Note: The advantage of this option (Result of StyleVision transformation) is that the transformation is carried out when the global resource is invoked. This means that the global resource will contain the most up-to-date data (from the input file/s).

Note: Since StyleVision is used to run the transformation, you must have Altova StyleVision installed for this functionality to work.

Folders

In the Global Resource dialog for Folders (*screenshot below*), add a folder resource as described below.



Global Resource dialog icons

- Add Configuration: Pops up the Add Configuration dialog in which you enter the name of the configuration to be added.
- Add Configuration as Copy: Pops up the Add Configuration dialog in which you can enter the name of the configuration to be created as a copy of the selected configuration.
- Delete: Deletes the selected configuration.
- Open: Browse for the folder to be created as the global resource.

Defining the alias

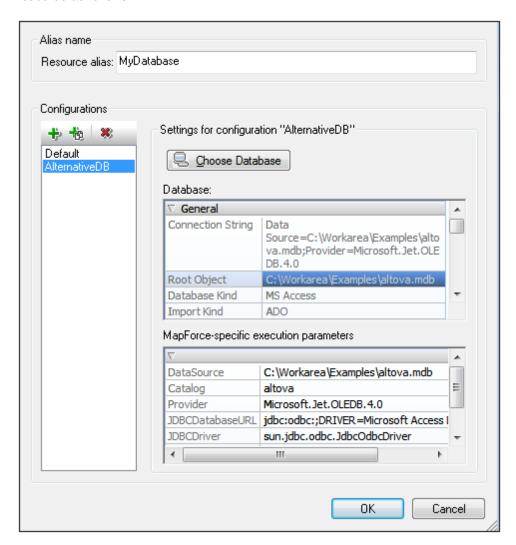
Define the alias (its name and configurations) as follows:

- 1. Give the alias a name: Enter the alias name in the Resource Alias text box.
- 2. Add configurations: The Configurations pane will have a configuration named Default (see screenshot above). This Default configuration cannot be deleted nor have its name changed. You can enter as many additional configurations for the selected alias as you like. Add a configuration by clicking the Add Configuration or Add Configuration as Copy icons. In the dialog which pops up, enter the configuration name. Click OK. The new configuration will be listed in the Configurations pane. Repeat for as many configurations as you want.
- 3. Select a folder as the resource of a configuration: Select one of the configurations in the Configurations pane and browse for the folder you wish to create as a global resource.

- 4. Define multiple configurations if required: Specify a folder resource for each configuration you have created (that is, repeat Step 3 above for the various configurations you have created). You can add a new configuration to the alias definition at any time.
- 5. Save the alias definition: Click **OK** in the Global Resource dialog to save the alias and all its configurations as a global resource. The global resource will be listed under Folders in the Manage Global Resources dialog.

Databases

In the Global Resource dialog for Databases (*screenshot below*), you can add a database resource as follows:



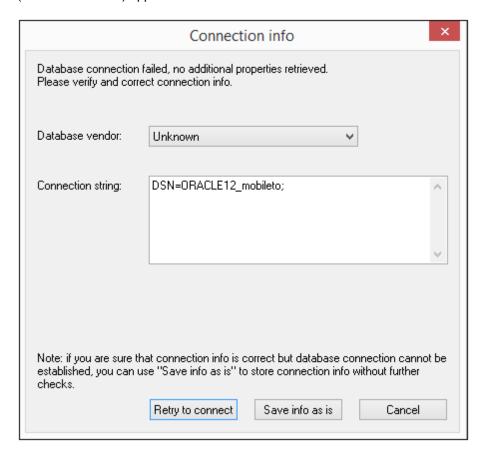
Global Resource dialog icons

- Add Configuration: Pops up the Add Configuration dialog in which you enter the name of the configuration to be added.
- Add Configuration as Copy: Pops up the Add Configuration dialog in which you can enter the name of the configuration to be created as a copy of the selected configuration.
- Delete: Deletes the selected configuration.

Saving unverified connection info

If the connection information you enter cannot correctly access the database you want, then this might be because the connection information is correct only when the solution is deployed to the server but does not work from the local machine. If the connection does not work from the local

machine (on which you are defining the global resource), then the Connection Info dialog (screenshot below) appears.



You now have the following options:

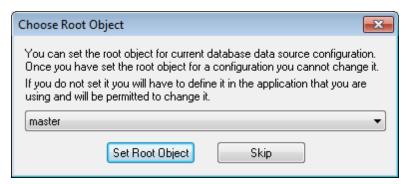
- Retry to connect: Enter the connection information that will enable you to connect from the local machine, and click Retry to Connect. MobileTogether will attempt to make the connection.
- Save info as is: Saves the connection information without attempting to connect or verify
 the connection info. This connection info will be used when the solution is deployed to the
 server.
- Cancel: Cancels the process of defining a database as a global resource.

Defining the alias

Define the alias (its name and configurations) as follows:

- 1. Give the alias a name: Enter the alias name in the Resource Alias text box.
- 2. Add configurations: The Configurations pane will have a configuration named Default (see screenshot above). This Default configuration cannot be deleted nor have its name changed. You can enter as many additional configurations for the selected alias as you like. Add a configuration by clicking the Add Configuration or Add Configuration as Copy icons. In the dialog which pops up, enter the configuration name. Click OK. The

- new configuration will be listed in the Configurations pane. Repeat for as many configurations as you want.
- 3. Start selection of a database as the resource of a configuration: Select one of the configurations in the Configurations pane and click the **Choose Database** icon. This pops up the Create Global Resources Connection dialog.
- 4. Connect to the database: Select whether you wish to create a connection to the database using the Connection Wizard, an existing connection, an ADO Connection, an ODBC Connection, or JDBC Connection.
- 5. Select the root object: If you connect to a database server where a root object can be selected, you will be prompted, in the Choose Root Object dialog (screenshot below), to select a root object on the server. Select the root object and click **Set Root Object**. The root object you select will be the root object that is loaded when this configuration is used.



If you choose not to select a root object (by clicking the **Skip** button), then you can select the root object at the time the global resource is loaded.

- 6. Define multiple configurations if required: Specify a database resource for any other configuration you have created (that is, repeat Steps 3 to 5 above for the various configurations you have created). You can add a new configuration to the alias definition at any time.
- 7. Save the alias definition: Click **OK** in the Global Resource dialog to save the alias and all its configurations as a global resource. The global resource will be listed under databases in the Manage Global Resources dialog.

11.2 Using Global Resources

There are several types of global resources (file-type, folder-type, and database-type). Some scenarios in which you can use global resources in MobileTogether Designer are listed here: Files and Folders and Databases.

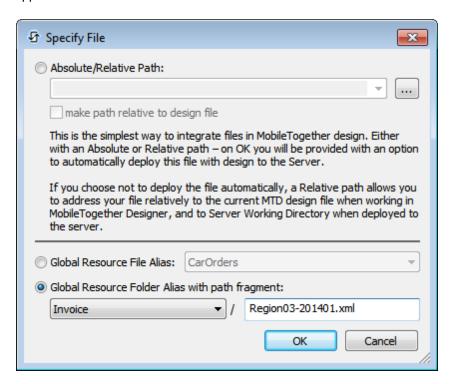
Selections that determine which resource is used

There are two application-wide selections that determine what global resources can be used and which global resources are actually used at any given time:

- The active Global Resources XML File is selected in the Global Resource dialog. The global-resource definitions that are present in the active Global Resources XML File are available to all files that are open in the application. Only the definitions in the active Global Resources XML File are available. The active Global Resources XML File can be changed at any time, and the global-resource definitions in the new active file will immediately replace those of the previously active file. The active Global Resources XML File therefore determines: (i) what global resources can be assigned, and (ii) what global resources are available for look-up (for example, if a global resource in one Global Resource XML File is assigned but there is no global resource of that name in the currently active Global Resources XML File, then the assigned global resource (alias) cannot be looked up).
- The active configuration is selected via the menu item Tools | Active Configuration or via the Global Resources toolbar. Clicking this command (or drop-down list in the toolbar) pops up a list of configurations across all aliases. Selecting a configuration makes that configuration active application-wide. This means that wherever a global resource (or alias) is used, the resource corresponding to the active configuration of each used alias will be loaded. The active configuration is applied to all used aliases. If an alias does not have a configuration with the name of the active configuration, then the default configuration of that alias will be used. The active configuration is not relevant when assigning resources; it is significant only when the resources are actually used.

Assigning Files and Folders

In certain usage scenarios, file-type and folder-type global resources can be used to specify the file or folder to use. For example, in the Page Sources Pane, the default file of a data source can be assigned via a global resource. In such scenarios, the Specify File (screenshot below) appears.

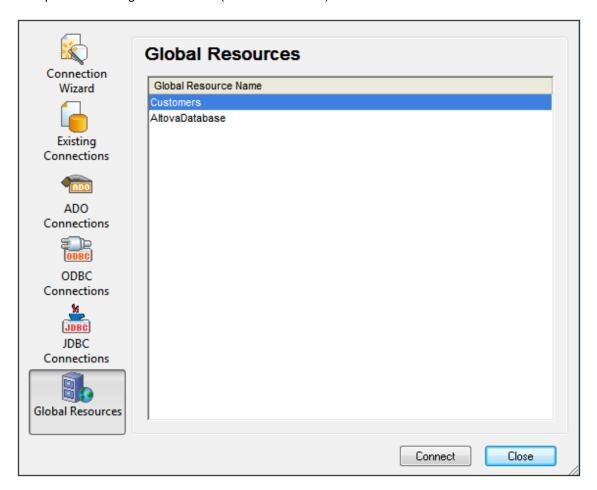


Select whether you wish to use a file-type or folder-type global resource. The combo boxes display, respectively, all the file-type global resources and all the folder-type global resources that have been defined in the currently active <u>Global Resources XML File</u> are. Select the required global resource. In the case of file-type global resources, the selected alias maps to a file. In the case of folder-type global resources, the selected alias maps to a folder, so you will have to enter the rest of the path to locate the resource (see screenshot above). Click **OK**.

If the selected global resource has more than one configuration, then the database resource for the currently active configuration is used (check **Tools | Active Configuration** or the Global Resources toolbar).

Assigning Databases

When a command is executed that imports data or a data structure from a DB, you can select the option to use a global resource (*screenshot below*).



In the Connection dialog (*screenshot above*), all the database-type global resources that have been defined in the currently active <u>Global Resources XML File</u> are displayed. Select the required global resource and click **Connect**. If the selected global resource has more than one configuration, then the database resource for the currently active configuration is used (check **Tools | Active Configuration** or the Global Resources toolbar), and the connection is made.

Changing the Active Configuration

Altova Global Resources

One configuration of a global resource can be active at any time. This configuration is called the active configuration, and it is active application-wide. This means that the active configuration is active for all global resources aliases in all currently open files and data source connections. If an alias does not have a configuration with the name of the active configuration, then the default configuration of that alias will be used. As an example of how to change configurations, consider the case in which a file has been assigned via a global resource with multiple configurations. Each configuration maps to a different file. So, which file is selected depends on which configuration is selected as the application's active configuration.

Switching the active configuration can be done in the following ways:

- Via the menu command **Tools | Active Configuration**. Select the configuration from the command's submenu.
- In the combo box of the Global Resources toolbar (*screenshot below*), select the required configuration.



In this way, by changing the active configuration, you can change source files that are assigned via a global resource.

Chapter 12

Simulation

12 Simulation

The following simulation methods are available for running and testing a solution:

- <u>Simulation in MobileTogether Designer</u>: A quick way to test whether the design is free from errors.
- <u>Simulation on Server</u>: Additional to testing that the design is error-free, this simulation enables you to test whether data sources are correctly located, whether URLs are correct, whether current server settings are appropriate, and whether the server has all permissions to access the used DBs, URLs, and files.
- <u>Simulation on Client</u>: Enables you to test the actual client-server interactions in a trial run. In this simulation, MobileTogether Designer plays the role of the server.

Note: You can also deploy a solution to the server, and, in the *Workflows* tab of the Web UI of MobileTogether Server, you can click a solution to run it in the web browser.

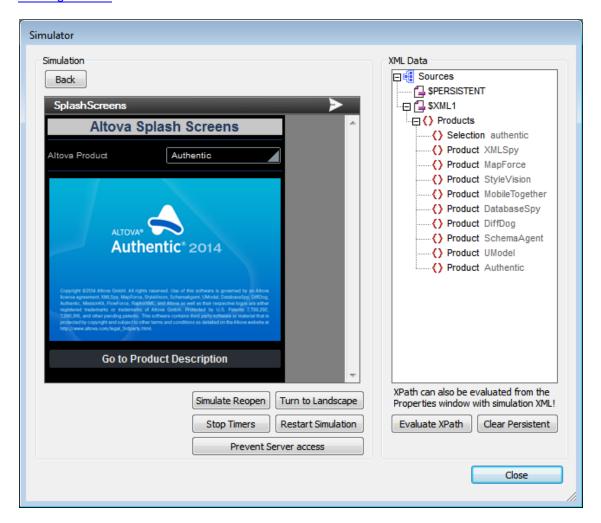
While the simulation progresses, the <u>Messages Pane</u> of the MobileTogether Designer GUI provides a detailed and step-by-step report of all the activities taking place. This is an extremely important feature for testing and debugging design files. If you run a designer or server simulation of a design containing geolocation actions, then you will need to define the geolocations to use. How to do this is described in the section Geolocation Settings.

Simulation language

The simulation language for <u>designer</u> and <u>server</u> simulations is selected via the <u>Project</u> <u>Simulation Language</u> command. The language of <u>client simulations</u> is the same as the language of the client mobile device on which the simulation runs.

12.1 Simulation in MobileTogether Designer

You can run a simulation of the project workflow directly within MobileTogether Designer. The simulation device will be the device currently selected in the Preview Device combo box of the Main toolbar. You can change the preview device to see the simulation on different devices. To run the simulation, select **Project | Simulate Workflow** or **F5**. This opens the simulator and starts the simulation. Simulation in the Designer reports both server and client messages in the Messages Pane.



Simulation language

The simulation language for <u>designer</u> and <u>server</u> simulations is selected via the <u>Project</u> <u>Simulation Language</u> command. The language of <u>client simulations</u> is the same as the language of the client mobile device on which the simulation runs.

File locations

When a simulation is run directly in MobileTogether Designer, file locations are resolved exactly as specified in the design. Relative paths are relative to the design file's location. Compare these locations to how file locations are resolved when using the server for workflow simulation.

Simulator features

The simulator window provides the following features:

- The left-hand pane displays the simulation.
- The right-hand (XML Data) pane shows the changes taking place in the XML data as the simulation progresses.
- While the simulation progresses, the <u>Messages Pane</u> of the MobileTogether Designer GUI provides a detailed and step-by-step report of all the activities taking place. You can therefore see what is happening at each step in the progress of the workflow. This is an invaluable feature for testing and debugging design files.
 - Simulation on the designer reports activities on both server and client.
 - Simulation on the server reports client messages.
 - ❖ Simulation on the client reports server messages.
- Controls that require user interaction are enabled. In the screenshot above, for example, the combo box is enabled.
- You can switch the view to landscape and you can restart the simulation at any time by using the respective buttons at the bottom of the window.
- The **Simulate Reopen** and **Stop Timers** buttons are enabled when <u>page refreshes have</u> <u>been defined to occur on page reopens and at regular intervals</u>. These buttons will then control page refreshes during simulations.
- The Prevent Server Access button disables access to the server, and so allows you to
 test the solution's behavior in a server-connection-error scenario. Once clicked, the button
 toggles to an Enable Server Access button. For more information about this feature,
 see Server Connection Errors.
- Clicking Evaluate XPath opens the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog, in which you
 can evaluate XPath expressions. XPath expressions can also be evaluated from the
 Styles & Properties Pane while the simulation is running.
- In the XML Data pane you can use copy-paste to copy parts of the tree to other locations in the tree. This is useful if you wish to copy data, such as DB records, in order to add more data for the simulation. The copied nodes are available only for the duration of the simulation.
- Clicking Clear Persistent clears persistent data and restarts the simulation
- Clicking **Back** closes the active subpage, or closes the simulator.

Editing the XML tree in the Simulator

The XML tree in the simulator displays the XML data of the various data source nodes and how these values change as the simulation progresses. You can edit the XML tree directly in the Simulator using cut/copy/past/delete and drag-and-drop. (The editing commands are available in the context menu of the XML tree.) The solution view in the simulator will instantly show the modified data. This enables you also to test the solution with modified XML data structures containing different manually entered data. As a result, you can quickly try out alternatives that contain different data and/or structures.

The context menu of the XML tree in the simulator offers the following features:

- Load XML: Loads an external XML file (that has the same structure and elements as the XML tree) into the XML tree.
- Save XML: Saves the structure and data of an XML tree to any location you like.
- View in XMLSpy: Opens the XML tree in Altova's XMLSpy program.
- Overwrite \$XML structure based on this tree: Overwrites the structure of a page source with the structure of the XML tree in the simulator.

670 Simulation Simulation Simulation

12.2 Simulation on Server

A server simulation uses MobileTogether Server to run the simulation (**Project | Use Server for Workflow Simulation**). It reports client messages in the <u>Messages Pane</u>. Additional to testing that the design is error-free, this simulation enables you to test whether data sources are correctly located, whether URLs are correct, whether current server settings are appropriate, and whether the server has all permissions to access the used DBs, URLs, and files.

Simulating the workflow on the server works as follows:

- The workflow of the active design file in MobileTogether Designer is temporarily passed to MobileTogether Server. So the design file does not need to be deployed to the server in order to see how the design will work from the server.
- 2. The server serves the workflow to the simulator of MobileTogether Designer. In this way the simulator plays the role of a client.

Simulation language

The simulation language for <u>designer</u> and <u>server</u> simulations is selected via the <u>Project | Simulation Language</u> command. The language of <u>client simulations</u> is the same as the language of the client mobile device on which the simulation runs.

Running the simulation

- 1. Start MobileTogether Server. See the <u>MobileTogether Server user manual</u> for information about how to do this.
- 2. In the <u>Web UI of MobileTogether Server</u>, you must set the solution's working directory (Settings | Server Side Solution's Working Directory, see screenshot below). All relative paths in the design will be resolved relative to the directory specified in this setting. In order for server simulation to work correctly, enter the path of the directory where your referenced files are saved.

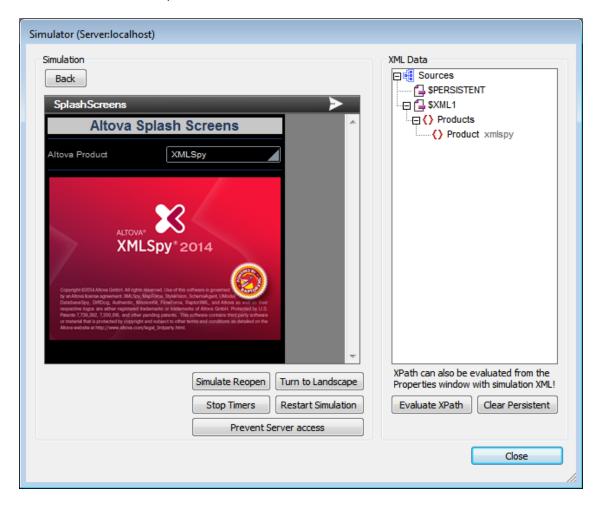
Directory: C:\MobileTogether\ Specify the server side directory where solution's files can be saved. It is also used as the base for resolving solution's relative paths.

- 3. In MobileTogether Designer, make sure that the server settings are correctly defined.
- 4. In MobileTogether Designer, select Project | Use Server for Workflow Simulation.
- 5. If you are prompted for credentials to access the server, you can enter the user-name/password combination of root/root, or any other user credentials that have been set up with the privilege of running server simulations. See the MobileTogether Server user

Simulation Simulation on Server 671

manual for information about assigning privileges to users.

The simulator window is opened and runs the workflow.



File locations

If MobileTogether Server is used for simulation, files referenced by the design must be located either directly in the directory designated as the *Server Side Solution's Working Directory*, or in a descendant directory of this directory. (The Working Directory setting is made in the MobileTogether Server settings page.)

- If absolute paths are used, the file must be located in the Working Directory or a descendant directory of the Working Directory.
- If relative paths are used, the path is resolved relative to the Working Directory.

Simulator features

The simulator window provides the following features:

672 Simulation Simulation Simulation on Server

- The left-hand pane displays the simulation.
- The right-hand (XML Data) pane shows the changes taking place in the XML data as the simulation progresses.
- While the simulation progresses, the <u>Messages Pane</u> of the MobileTogether Designer GUI provides a detailed and step-by-step report of all the activities taking place. You can therefore see what is happening at each step in the progress of the workflow. This is an invaluable feature for testing and debugging design files.
 - Simulation on the designer reports activities on both server and client.
 - Simulation on the server reports client messages.
 - Simulation on the client reports server messages.
- Controls that require user interaction are enabled. In the screenshot above, for example, the combo box is enabled.
- You can switch the view to landscape and you can restart the simulation at any time by using the respective buttons at the bottom of the window.
- The Simulate Reopen and Stop Timers buttons are enabled when page refreshes have been defined to occur on page reopens and at regular intervals. These buttons will then control page refreshes during simulations.
- The Prevent Server Access button disables access to the server, and so allows you to
 test the solution's behavior in a server-connection-error scenario. Once clicked, the button
 toggles to an Enable Server Access button. For more information about this feature,
 see Server Connection Errors.
- Clicking Evaluate XPath opens the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog, in which you
 can evaluate XPath expressions. XPath expressions can also be evaluated from the
 Styles & Properties Pane while the simulation is running.
- In the XML Data pane you can use copy-paste to copy parts of the tree to other locations in the tree. This is useful if you wish to copy data, such as DB records, in order to add more data for the simulation. The copied nodes are available only for the duration of the simulation.
- Clicking Clear Persistent clears persistent data and restarts the simulation
- Clicking **Back** closes the active subpage, or closes the simulator.

Note: If you have problems connecting to the server, try checking the settings on the server. See the MobileTogether Server user manual for information about how to do this.

Editing the XML tree in the Simulator

The XML tree in the simulator displays the XML data of the various data source nodes and how these values change as the simulation progresses. You can edit the XML tree directly in the Simulator using cut/copy/past/delete and drag-and-drop. (The editing commands are available in the context menu of the XML tree.) The solution view in the simulator will instantly show the modified data. This enables you also to test the solution with modified XML data structures containing different manually entered data. As a result, you can quickly try out alternatives that contain different data and/or structures.

The context menu of the XML tree in the simulator offers the following features:

- Load XML: Loads an external XML file (that has the same structure and elements as the XML tree) into the XML tree.
- Save XML: Saves the structure and data of an XML tree to any location you like.
- View in XMLSpy: Opens the XML tree in Altova's XMLSpy program.

Simulation Simulation on Server 673

 Overwrite \$XML structure based on this tree: Overwrites the structure of a page source with the the structure of the XML tree in the simulator.

Server IP address and network firewall settings

Your server can have a public IP address (accessible over the Internet) and/or a private IP address (accessible within a private network; for example, via WiFi within a company network). If a mobile client device tries to connect via the Internet using the server's private IP address, then the connection will not work. This is because the private IP address is not known on the Internet and cannot be resolved. If a client device uses a private IP address, then the client device must already have access to the private network.

To ensure that the server can be accessed, do one of the following:

- Provide the server with a public IP address so that it can be reached via the Internet.
 On the client device, use this public IP address to access the server.
- If you use a firewall and install MobileTogether Server on a server with a private IP
 address (inside the private network), then use the network firewall to forward requests
 sent to a public IP-address/port-combination to your MobileTogether Server server.
 On the client device, use the public IP address.

You must also ensure that the firewall is configured to allow access to the server port used for MobileTogether Client communication. The ports used by MobileTogether Server are specified in the Settings page of the Web UI of MobileTogether Server (see the MobileTogether Server user manual). On the client device, this is the port that must be specified as the server port to access.

Tip: Port 80 is usually open on most firewalls by default. So, if you are having difficulties with firewall settings and if port 80 is not already bound to some other service, you could specify port 80 as the MobileTogether Server port for client communication.

674 Simulation Simulation Simulation

12.3 Simulation on Client

This simulation method runs the workflow on your mobile device by using MobileTogether Designer as a server. It reports server messages in the <u>Messages Pane</u>. Simulation on the client assumes that your mobile device can connect to your PC over wireless LAN. Do a trial run on the client (simulation on the client) as follows:

- 1. Client: Set up a new server
 - 1. Start MobileTogether on the client and click the **Settings | Server** icon.
 - 2. Add a new server and enter all the relevant data (server address, port number (8083 is the default server port for client access), username, and password).
 - 3. Save the server settings.

2. PC: Start the simulation

- 1. If MobileTogether Server is running on your PC and uses the same port as the designer, stop it running as a service.
- 2. In MobileTogether Designer, select **Tools | Options**, click the *Trial Run on Client* tab, and enter the PC port number that the client is going to use (8083 is the default).
- 3. Open the project (.mtd) file that you want to test on the client.
- 4. Select **Project | Trial Run on Client**. This opens a dialog box that will show the page sources and data structure.

3. Client: Run the simulation

- Start the MobileTogether Client app on your mobile device if not already started. Only
 the design files that are currently open on the PC are visible on the mobile client (as
 solutions) using this type of simulation.
- 2. Select the solution that you want to test.
- 3. This opens a prompt on the PC asking if you want to start the solution. Click **Yes**. The tree structure now appears in the dialog box of the PC. After a short time, the solution runs on the client.
- Click Back/Return to stop the current solution. A prompt appears asking if you want to stop. Click Yes.

Note: A design file can be used by only one client at a time for client simulation.

Simulation language

The simulation language for <u>designer</u> and <u>server</u> simulations is selected via the <u>Project | Simulation Language</u> command. The language of <u>client simulations</u> is the same as the language of the client mobile device on which the simulation runs.

Editing the XML tree in the Simulator

Simulation Simulation on Client 675

The XML tree in the simulator displays the XML data of the various data source nodes and how these values change as the simulation progresses. You can edit the XML tree directly in the Simulator using cut/copy/past/delete and drag-and-drop. (The editing commands are available in the context menu of the XML tree.) The solution view in the simulator will instantly show the modified data. This enables you also to test the solution with modified XML data structures containing different manually entered data. As a result, you can quickly try out alternatives that contain different data and/or structures.

The context menu of the XML tree in the simulator offers the following features:

- Load XML: Loads an external XML file (that has the same structure and elements as the XML tree) into the XML tree.
- Save XML: Saves the structure and data of an XML tree to any location you like.
- View in XMLSpy: Opens the XML tree in Altova's XMLSpy program.
- Overwrite \$XML structure based on this tree: Overwrites the structure of a page source with the the structure of the XML tree in the simulator.

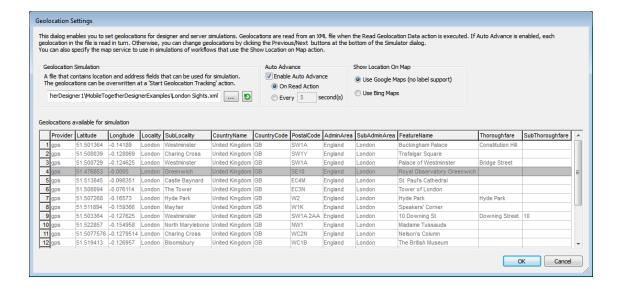
12.4 Geolocation Settings

The Geolocation Settings dialog (*screenshot below*) enables you to specify geolocations from an XML file for <u>designer</u> and <u>server</u> simulations. You need to specify geolocations in this way because these simulations do not use a mobile device and therefore have no geolocation data available to them.

The Geolocation Settings dialog is accessed via the Simulator dialog:

- Click Project | Simulate Workflow (F5) or Project | Use Server for Workflow Simulation (Ctrl+F5) to access the Simulator dialog.
- 2. In the Simulator dialog, click the **Geolocation** button at bottom left to open the Geolocation Settings dialog (*screenshot below*). The settings made here will be used for both designer and server simulations.

Note: If no geolocation action is used in the design, the **Geolocation** button will be **not be displayed** in the Simulator dialog.



The geolocation settings

You can make the following geolocation settings:

- Geolocation XML file: Contains the default geolocations to use for simulations. The XML file must have the structure listed below. The Browse button enables you to browse for the file. The Refresh button reads enters the geolocation data of the XML file into the available geolocation values pane in the lower part of the dialog. The default file can be overridden by a geolocations simulation file that is specified in the Start Geolocation Tracking action.
- Auto Advance: If Auto Advance is enabled, each geolocation in the XML file is read in turn
 during simulation. You can specify the time interval between the reading of each
 geolocation. If Auto Advance is not specified, you can change geolocations during

simulation by clicking the **Previous** or **Next** buttons at the bottom left of the Simulator dialog. Note that these geolocation values run in the simulator only. They are passed to data source tree nodes (including the \$GEOLOCTION tree) only when such an action is explicitly specified in the design.

• Show Location on Map: Selects which map application to open in the web browser when the Show Geolocation on Map action is executed.



The geolocation XML file structure

In order for MobileTogether Designer to correctly read geolocation data, the geolocation XML file must have a structure similar to that shown in the listing below. Attributes may be omitted or their values may be the empty string. However, the //Location/Latitude and //Location/Loc

■ Example structure of the Geolocation XML file

This example shows one **Geolocation** element expanded. Not all attributes of the **Location** and and **Address** elements are used. For a complete list of attributes, see the next listing. For the lexical format of latitude and longitude values, see the section *Geolocation Input String Formats* below.

```
<Root>
 <Geologations>
    <Geolocation name="Buckingham Palace">
      <Location</pre>
        Latitude="51.501364"
        Longitude="-0.14189"
        Provider="gps"
      />
      <Address
        Locality="London"
        SubLocality="Westminster"
        CountryName="United Kingdom"
        CountryCode="GB"
        PostalCode="SW1A"
        AdminArea="England"
        SubAdminArea="London"
        FeatureName="Buckingham Palace"
        Thoroughfare="Constitution Hill">
        <AddressLine>Buckingham Palace</AddressLine>
        <AddressLine>Constitution Hill</AddressLine>
        <AddressLine>London</AddressLine>
        <AddressLine>SW1A</AddressLine>
```

■ All attributes of the Geolocation XML file

```
<Root>
  <Geolocations>
    <Geolocation name="">
      <Location</pre>
        AccuracyHorizontal=""
        AccuracyVertical=""
        Altitude=""
        Latitude=""
        Longitude=""
        MagneticHeading=""
        Provider=""
        Speed=""
        Time=""
      />
      <Address
        AdminArea=""
        CountryCode=""
        CountryName=""
        FeatureName=""
        Locality=""
        Phone=""
        PostalCode=""
        Premises=""
        SubAdminArea=""
        SubLocality=""
        SubThoroughfare=""
        Thoroughfare=""
        Url="">
        <AddressLine/>
         AddressLine* elements
        <AddressLine/>
    </Geolocation>
  </Geolocations>
</Root>
```

■ Geolocation input string formats:

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow (") while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue ("").

Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M'S.SS"N/S
 D°M'S.SS"W/E
 Example: 33°55'11.11"N
 22°44'55.25"W

Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/W) is optional

+/-D°M's.ss" +/-D°M's.ss" <u>Example</u>: 33°55'11.11" -22°44'55.25"

Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M.MM'N/S D°M.MM'W/E
 Example: 33°55.55'N 22°44.44'W

Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (n/w) is optional

+/-D°M.MM' +/-D°M.MM' Example: +33°55.55' -22°44.44'

Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)

D.DDN/S D.DDW/E

Example: 33.33N 22.22W

• Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/W) is optional +/-D.DD +/-D.DD

Example: 33.33 -22.22

Examples of format-combinations:

33.33N -22°44'55.25" 33.33 22°44'55.25"W 33.33 22.45 680 Simulation Messages Pane

12.5 Messages Pane

While the simulation progresses, the Messages Pane of the MobileTogether Designer GUI provides a detailed and step-by-step report of all the solution-related activity taking place, and the time taken for each action. You can clearly see what is happening at each step in the progress of the workflow: what is executed on the server, what on the client, what is the order of the flow of actions, and why the actions happen the way they do. Server and client actions are displayed with different background colors. Errors are flagged, and warnings and traces are also displayed. All of this is absolutely necessary and extremely useful for testing and debugging design files.

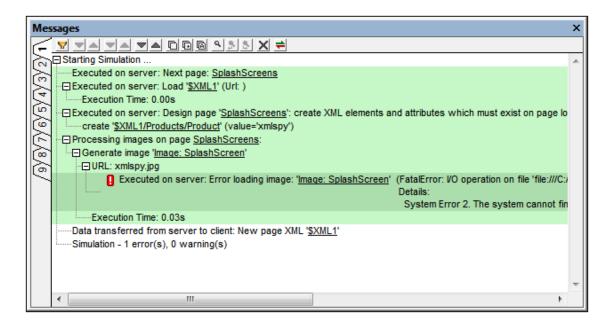
- Simulation on the designer reports activities on both server and client.
- Simulation on the server reports client messages.
- · Simulation on the client reports server messages.

The screenshot below shows a simulation that was completed without any error. At each step of the workflow, messages detailing the actions taking place on server and/or client are displayed, as well as the time taken for the different executions. Messages about actions that are executed on the server and on the client are displayed in different background colors (green and pink, respectively, in the screenshot below). This helps you to quickly see where the various actions are taking place. (The background colors can be modified according to your preference.) Links in the Messages Pane take you to the relevant component in the design or the Page Sources Pane. Hovering over a message pops up additional information about that particular workflow activity. When the simulation ends, a summary of errors and warnings is displayed (highlighted in the screenshot below).



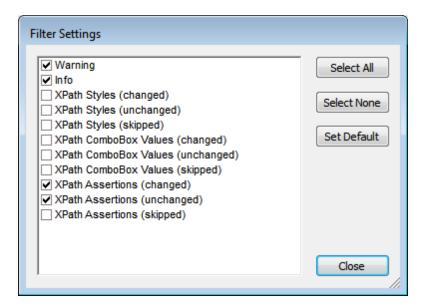
If an error occurs, it is flagged with a red icon (see screenshot below).

Simulation Messages Pane 681



Filtering messages

You can specify what kind of messages are displayed in the Messages Pane. To do this, click the **Filte** button in the toolbar of the Messages Pane (*screenshot above*). This displays the Filter Settings dialog (*screenshot below*). Select the message types you want to display and click **Close**. This feature can be very useful, for example, if there are too many messages and you wish to focus on just one type of message.

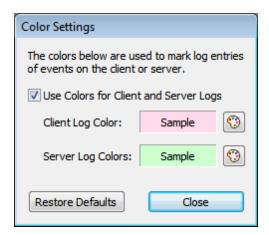


Color settings

For messages that are displayed during simulations, different colors can be set for actions that take place on the server and on the client. If you set clearly distinguishable colors, you can very easily follow the workflow in the Messages Pane. This can be of great help in debugging. To set customs colors, click the **Colors** button in the toolbar of the Messages Pane (*screenshot above*). This displays the Color Settings dialog (*screenshot below*), in which you can set the colors you

682 Simulation Messages Pane

want.



For more information, see the Messages Pane.

Chapter 13

AppStore Apps

13 AppStore Apps

You can create MobileTogether apps that can be posted to app stores for end users to download. These customized **AppStore Apps** are created in MobileTogether Designer as follows:

- Design and test the MobileTogether Designer project from which you wish to generate your app. Create the project in the same way as any other MobileTogether Designer design.
- Generate the program code of your appstore app from the design via the <u>File | Generate Program Code for AppStore Apps</u> command. Program code can be generated for Android, iOS, Windows Phone, and Windows.
- 3. <u>Deploy the project to MobileTogether Server</u>. This is done in the same way as for other project deployments.
- 4. <u>Compile the generated program code</u> to build your appstore app for the respective devices and operating systems.

The <u>program-code generation</u> and <u>code-compilation</u> steps are described in the respective subsections of this section.

Difference between AppStore App and solution on MobileTogether Client An AppStore App is different than a MobileTogether solution.

- A MobileTogether solution is deployed to a MobileTogether Server, and is accessed via a MobileTogether Client. Multiple client devices can access one or more solutions on one or MobileTogether Servers.
- An AppStore App on the other hand provides a lightweight alternative that directly
 accesses only one solution, and does not need to be configured in any way to run.

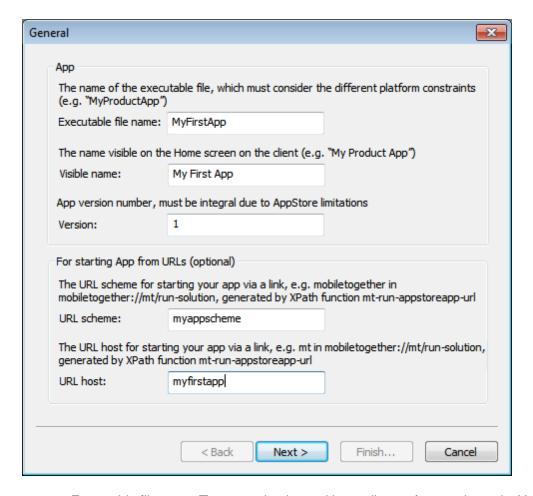
The differences between the solution and the appstore app are laid out in the table below.

Solution on MobileTogether Client	AppStore App
MobileTogether Client is downloaded from app store	AppStore App is downloaded from app store
MobileTogether Designer project is deployed to MobileTogether Server as a solution	MobileTogether Designer project is deployed to MobileTogether Server as an AppStore App solution
MobileTogether Client can access solutions on one or more MobileTogether Servers	AppStore App accesses its associated solution. It is "dedicated" to this one solution
End user needs to configure and maintain MobileTogether Client. Access to multiple servers and solutions is possible	No MobileTogether Client required. AppStore App provides end user with easy and straightforward access to a single solution

13.1 Generate Program Code from Project

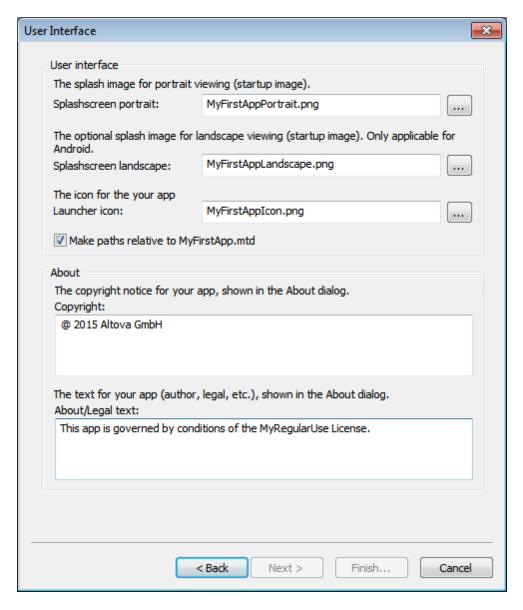
To generate program code for appstore apps that run on Android, iOS, Windows Phone, and Windows mobile devices, click the command <u>File | Generate Program Code for AppStore Apps</u>. The command opens a wizard that has seven screens if all mobile formats are selected. Each screen contains settings for the generated code.

1: General: Names, Version, URL



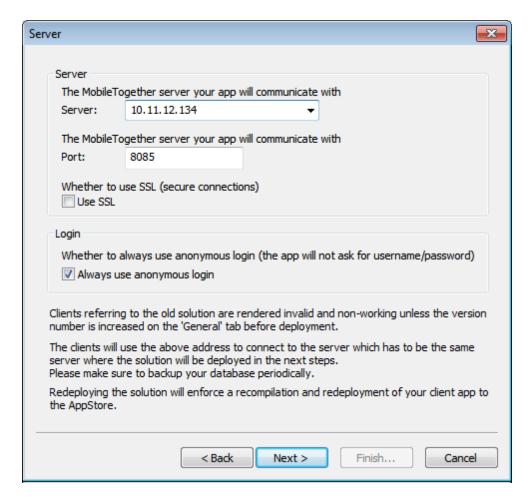
- Executable file name: The name that is used internally to reference the code. You should use a name that has no spaces.
- Visible name: The name of the app that will be visible to the user.
- Version: The version number of the app. This must be an integer.
- URL scheme and host: The URL that will start the app from a hyperlink. The hyperlink's target URL will have the format: <url-scheme>://<url-host>. Enter a unique URL scheme and unique URL host. The scheme information will be stored in the app's manifest file, and indicates to the device that the app can be used to open URLs that start with this scheme. If a link having a URL with this scheme is tapped, then the device will access the resource pointed to by the URL—which is the app.

▼ 2: User Interface: Icons, Copyright, Legal



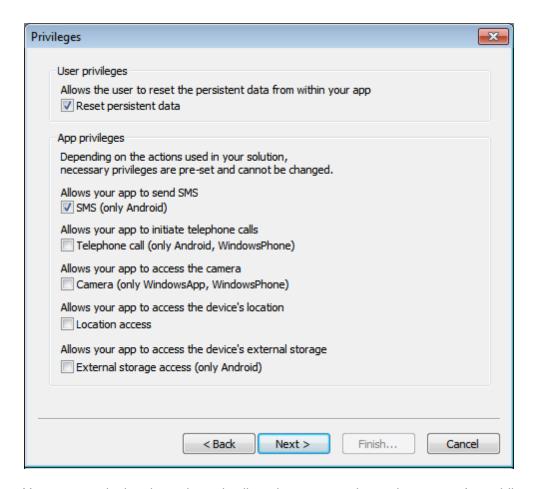
- Splashscreens: Browse for the splashscreens that should be used in portrait and landscape orientations. The corresponding splashscreen will be used on the mobile device when the device's orientation changes. For iOS apps, the portrait splashscreen is drawn in both orientations to aspect-fill the screen in both orientations. If you want individual splashscreens for orientations/devices, then assign different splashscreens for different dimensions before building the generated program code as described here.
- Launcher icon: The icon that is displayed in the apps screen of the mobile device to launch the app.
- Copyright and legal notice: The text to be displayed in the mobile device.

▼ 3: Server: Server and Login Settings



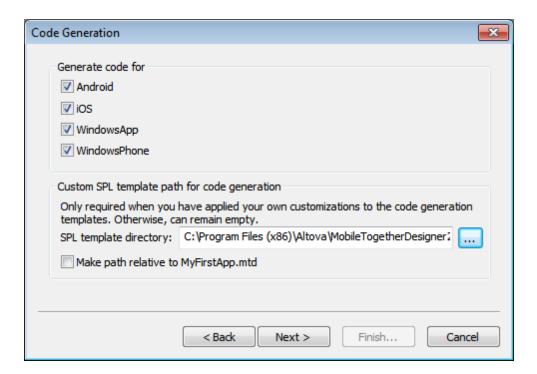
- Server: The IP address of the server on which the workflow will be deployed.
- Port: The port on the server via which the app can be accessed. The server's client device access port is set in MobileTogether Server. See the <u>MobileTogether Server</u> user manual for information.
- SSL: If you use SSL, this will need to be set up in MobileTogether Server. See the MobileTogether Server user manual for information.
- Always use anonymous login: Select this option if you want to allow end users to
 access the app without providing login details. Otherwise, end users will need a user
 name and password to log in. See the MobileTogether Server user manual for
 information about setting up login credentials.

▼ 4: Privileges: User and App privileges



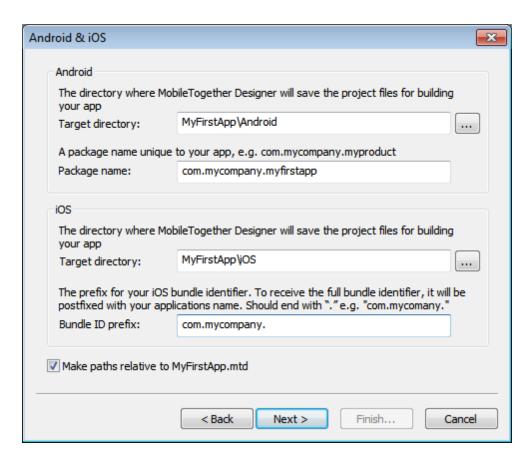
You can set whether the end user is allowed to reset persistent data or not. App privileges are privileges that the mobile device OS grants the app. The privileges you select here are stored in the app's manifest files. When the app is installed, the device checks the app's manifest and informs the end user about the privileges that the app is requesting. If the end user allows these privileges, the app will be installed, and the requested privileges are granted to the app. For example, if the design contains a <u>Send SMS</u> action, then this privilege will be preset by default and cannot be changed. Location access refers to the GPS location information of the mobile device.

▼ 5: Code Generation: App Formats and SPL Template Location



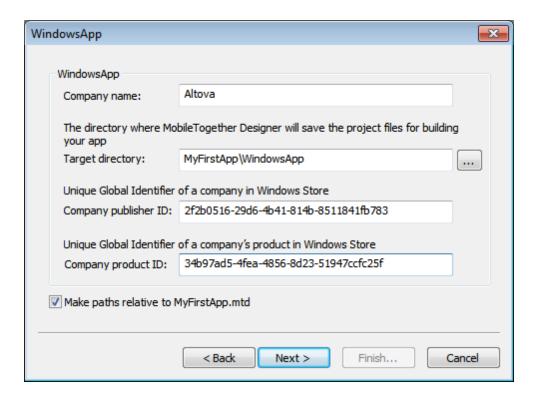
Select the app formats for which you want to generate program code. SPL templates for the different app formats are required for generation of the program code. These are provided with your MobileTogether Designer installation and are located here: C:\Program Files (x86)\Altova\MobileTogetherDesigner2\MobileTogetherSPL. If you customize one or more SPL templates, create a copy of the SPL template directory (in which the customized files will be saved) and specify the location of this directory in this screen (see screenshot above). The new folder must reproduce the directory structure of the original SPL template directory.

▼ 6: Android and iOS



Sets the target directory where the program code will be generated for the respective formats. You must specify the package name for the Android package and the Bundle ID prefix for iOS. Make sure that the Bundle ID prefix ends with the dot character. For example, com.altova. has the required format. The Bundle ID is constructed by appending the app name you provided in Screen 1 to the Bundle ID prefix.

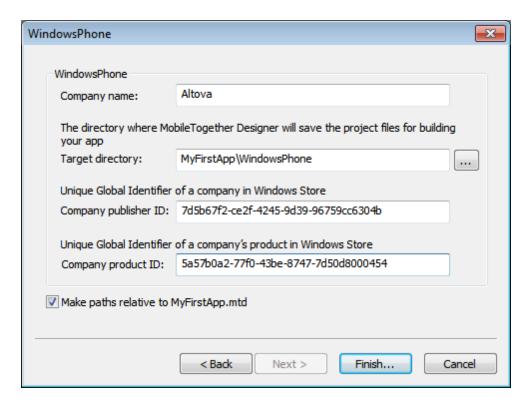
▼ 7: WindowsApp



Sets the target directory where the program code will be generated for the Windows App format. You must specify the company Publisher ID and Product ID. The Publisher ID is commonly set to the Publisher GUID that's assigned to your developer account (see Windows App | Requirements; the Publisher GUID can be found on your Account Summary page in the Dev Center). The Product ID is used for identifying the app.

▼ 8: WindowsPhone

AppStore Apps

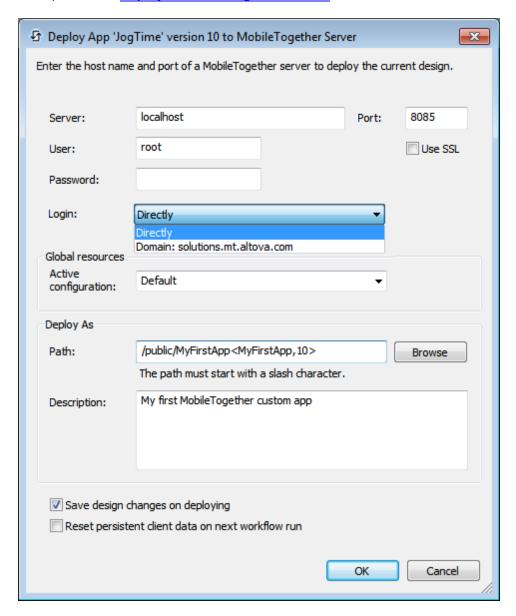


Sets the target directory where the program code will be generated for the Windows Phone format. You must specify the company Publisher ID and Product ID. The Publisher ID is commonly set to the Publisher GUID that's assigned to your developer account (see Windows Phone | Requirements; the Publisher GUID can be found on your Account Summary page in the Dev Center). The Product ID is used for identifying the app.

After you complete entering the information required by the Generate Program Code Wizard, click **Finish**. The wizard closes, and the Deploy App to Server dialog appears.

13.2 Deploy Workflow to Server

When you click **Finish** in the <u>Generate Program Code Wizard</u>, the Deploy App to MobileTogether Server dialog (*screenshot below*) appears. Fill in the data fields of the dialog as described in the description of the <u>Deploy to MobileTogether Server</u> command.



On clicking **OK**, the following happens:

- 1. The workflow is deployed to MobileTogether Server.
- 2. Program code is generated for all the selected formats in the respective target directories that you specified.

You can now <u>compile the generated program code</u> for the respective formats (Android, iOS, Windows App and/or Windows Phone) into the respective AppStore Apps.

The workflow key

Each time program code is generated and the workflow is deployed to the server, a unique **workflow key** is assigned to the program code and to the workflow on the server. When the program code is compiled, the workflow key is stored in each of the compiled formats. This workflow key serves as the "handshake" that associates a compiled app with a particular workflow and allows the app to access the workflow.

If you run the Generate Program Code Wizard again, the program code will be re-generated and the workflow will be re-deployed to the server. The app/s and the workflow will have a new workflow key. If the newly deployed workflow overwrites the previous workflow, then previous app versions will no longer be able to access the new workflow on the server. This is because the workflow key of the previous app/s will not match the workflow key of the newly deployed workflow. Only apps generated from the new program code will be able to access the newly deployed workflow (since both have the same workflow key).

Therefore, every time you modify the solution, assign a **new version number** (in <u>Screen 1 of the Generate Program Code Wizard</u>) before generating the code and deploying the workflow to the server. This way, the previous workflow on the server is not replaced by the new workflow. Apps of the previous version can continue to use the previous workflow, while apps of the new version can use the new workflow.

Note: Even if you have not changed your design, a new unique workflow key is generated every time you run the Generate Program Code Wizard.

Note: To ensure that you do not lose compatibility between apps and workflows, we recommend that you back up your MobileTogether Server periodically. This is so that you do not lose previously deployed workflows. See the MobileTogether Server manual for information about backing up MobileTogether Server.

13.3 Compile Program Code

After you complete the <u>Generate Program Code Wizard</u> and click **OK** in the <u>Deploy Workflow to Server</u> dialog, the app's workflow will be deployed to the server and program code for the selected app formats will be generated. Program code is generated for each app format separately, and is generated in the respective target directories that you <u>specified in the wizard</u>. This section describes how to compile the respective program codes into the AppStore Apps that you can upload to the respective app stores.

The program code that is generated by MobileTogether Designer does not usually need modifying before it is built. However, if you need to modify the project, it is important that you modify the SPL template files instead of the generated project files. This is so that your changes are not lost when you subsequently generate the project via the Generate Program Code Wizard. SPL and SPL templates are described in the section SPL Templates.

Program code is generated for the app formats listed below. The links below take you to the respective sub-sections. Each sub-section describes how to compile the program code for that app format.

- Android
- iOS
- Windows App
- Windows Phone

Android

696

When you complete the wizard, MobileTogether Designer creates an Android Studio project. You can use Android Studio to build this project into an Android app (which is a .apk file).

The Android Studio project

The Android Studio project is created in the directory you selected as the program code's destination folder (in Screen 6 of the Generate Program Code Wizard).

Given below are the locations of key project files. These files do not need to be changed before they are compiled in <u>Android Studio</u>. But you can <u>customize their content</u> should the need arise.

app\src\main\AndroidManifest.xml

This is the Android manifest. It contains app-related information—such as package name and app version—that you entered in the Generate Program Code Wizard.

```
app\src\main\java\<package-name>\MainActivity.java
app\src\main\java\<package-name>\<binary-name>.java
```

The values of charge-name> and <binary-name> are taken from the values you entered in Screen 6 and Screen 1, respectively, of the Generate Program Code Wizard.

The directory app\src\main\res\ contains resource files for the app icon, splashscreens, and miscellaneous resource strings. The app icon is available in various sizes in the appropriate subdirectories. The various sizes are created automatically by MobileTogether Designer from the icon file you specify in Screen 2 of the Generate Program Code Wizard.

Building the Android app

The app will be built with Android Studio. The steps described here apply to Android Studio 1.3 RC 4, which is the version that is current at the time of writing (October 2015).

Open the project (the target directory) in Android Studio. The build will start automatically, and the result is shown in the Gradle Console. During the build process, you might receive the message: AAPT err [...] libpng warning: iCCP: Not recognizing known sRGB profile that has been edited. This can be safely ignored. The APK file is not created immediately. You must run the app in order to create the APK file.

Running and debugging the app

When the build is complete, the app can be run by issuing one of the following Android Studio commands: Run <app> or Debug <app>. The APK file is created: app\build\outputs\apk \app-debug.apk.

Releasing the Android app

In order to publish the app, you will need to create a signed APK. Do this as follows:

- 1. In Android Studiio, issue the command **Build | Generate Signed APK**. This starts the Generate Signed APK Wizard.
- 2. Type in the keystore path. You might need to create a new keystore first.
- 3. Go through the wizard's screens and fill in the information that is required.
- 4. Click **Finish** to start generating the signed APK.

The signed APK file will be placed in: app\app-release.apk.

Note: The Generate Signed APK command can cause Android Studio to erroneously report lint errors in open code files. If this occurs, issuing the command File | Invalidate Caches / Restart might remove the errors. If you receive the message: AAPT err [...] libpng warning: iCCP: Not recognizing known sRGB profile that has been edited, you can safely ignore it.

iOS

698

The generated program code for iOS apps is an XCode project. It is saved in the directory you specified in Screen 6 of the Generate Program Code Wizard. You must now use XCode to open the .xcodeproj file and build the iOS app.

Requirements

In order to build, test and publish the iOS App from the generated program code, you will need the following:

- Latest version of XCode, available from Apple's Developer Platform.
- iOS 8.1 or higher for testing the app.
- Membership in the <u>Apple Developer Program</u>. You will need this to test and publish your app to the App Store.

Building and distributing the app

The broad outline for building the app is given below. For a complete description, see Apple's App Distribution Guidelines

- 1. Open the .xcodeproj file in XCode.
- Ensure that team, app id, and provisioning profiles are set up. See <u>Configuring Your XCode Project for Distribution</u> for information about how to do this. Note that test devices for ad hoc distribution are only active after re-generating the corresponding provisioning files.
- 3. Finalize what splashscreen/s to use. By default, the portrait splashscreen (specified in Screen 2 of the Generate Program Code Wizard) will be drawn in both orientations to fill the screen with the same aspect ratio as the original. If, however, you wish to set up individual splashscreens specific to different devices and orientations, do the following: (i) Go to Supporting Files | Info.plist and delete Launch screen interface file base name; (ii) Click images.xcassets, then right-click in the view and choose New Launch Image; (iii) Specify a launch image for each resolution and orientation.
- 4. If you have hooked up an iOS device, go to **Product | Destination** and check your device. Otherwise, go to **Product | Destination** and select *iOS Device*. Note that it is currently not possible to run the compiled app in the simulator. So if you want to test the app, you must connect an iOS device.
- 5. To test the compiled app on your iOS device, click **Product | Run** (after having selected your iOS device under **Product | Destination**).
- 6. For ad hoc and App Store submissions, click **Product | Archive** and export your app. Please follow Apple's App Distribution Guidelines.

Note: In iOS apps that have multiple pages, when the **Submit** button on the app's last page is tapped, the app will be re-started. This is because an iOS app cannot shut itself down.

Windows App

The Windows App format is for Windows touch devices (such as tablets running Windows RT) and PCs running Windows 8 or 10. The generated program code for Windows Apps is in C++. It is generated in the directory you specified in Screen 7 of the Generate Program Code Wizard. You can open the generated C++ project (some-app-name.vcxproj) in Visual Studio and build the project into a Windows App. The output of the build process includes a file with the .xap extension. This is a zip file that contains all the files required by your app, and it is the file that you publish to the Windows App Store.

Requirements

In order to build, test and publish the Windows App from the generated program code, you will need the following:

- Visual Studio 2013 (this version only) with Tools for Maintaining Store apps for Windows 8.0 (do not convert to Windows 8.1).
- Windows 8.0 or higher for testing the app.
- A Windows app developer account. You will need this to publish your app to the Windows Store. For details, see the Microsoft information about opening an account.

Building the app

The broad outline for building the app is as follows:

- Open the generated program code in Visual Studio. The file to open will be a .vcxproj file in the target directory you specified in <u>Screen 7 of the Generate Program Code</u> Wizard.
- 2. In Visual Studio, set the build configurations to Windows 32, Windows 64, or ARM. For the *Version* setting (see *screenshot below*), use the same version number as you entered in <u>Screen 1 of the Generate Program Code Wizard</u>. For example: If you entered 10 as the version number in the wizard, then make sure that the version number in Visual Studio is 10.0.0.0. Also, in Visual Studio, make sure that you uncheck the *Automatically Increment* option of the *Version* setting (see *screenshot below*). If this option is checked, the version number will automatically increment each time you build the app, and will lead to a mismatch with the number entered in the wizard.



- 3. In the combo box to the right of the **Run** button (in the toolbar), select **Debug**, and then click **Run**, or press **F5**, or select **Debug | Start Debugging**.
- 4. Some exceptions will be reported because Visual Studio cannot check the existence of some MobileTogether project or workflow files. Ignore these exceptions.
- 5. If you need to modify the program code, decide whether the SPL templates that generate the program code need to be edited or whether the modifications are limited to entries in the <u>Generate Program Code Wizard</u>. If the former, then edit the SPL template/s. Run the <u>Generate Program Code Wizard</u> to re-generate the program code, then re-test.
- To build the release app, go to the combo box next to the Run button and select Release. Then choose Project | Store | Create App Packages. This opens a wizard.
- 7. In the screens of the wizard, select the options you want and provide the information requested.
- 8. After completing the wizard, press **Create**. Visual Studio will start building the app.

For each selected platform (Win-32, Win-64, and ARM), an APPXUPLOAD file is created. This is the file to upload to the Windows Store. Additionally, for each platform, a folder will be created (with WindowsStore in its name), which contains an installer package that enables you to install the compiled app on the respective platform. This enables the app to be tested on multiple machines before it is published to the Windows Store. How to install from this package is described in the next section.

Installing the app directly

You can install the Windows app directly on PCs or tablets running Windows 8.0 or higher. Installing in this way (as opposed to downloading the app from the Windows Store) is convenient, for example, if you wish to test the app on multiple workstations or distribute it directly.

- 1. On the PC or tablet, go to the Start page, and search for Windows PowerShell. Rightclick it and choose **Run as administrator**.
- 2. In PowerShell, type: set-executionpolicy unrestricted
- 3. Press Enter, and confirm with y and Enter. (You only have to do this once.)
- 4. Type: Show-WindowsDeveloperLicenseRegistration, and press Enter.

700

- 5. Complete the dialog in order to get a Windows Developer License. (You only have to do this once.)
- 6. Copy the files of the compiled App package to your PC or tablet.
- 7. In PowerShell, navigate (using the cd command) to where you copied the files.
- 8. Type: Add-AppDevPackage.ps1 to start the .ps1 script in that folder, and then press Enter. (Another way to start the .ps1 script is to use the context menu command Run in PowerShell (or something similar).)
- 9. Your app should then be installed on the Start page and be ready for testing.

Windows Phone

702

The program code for Windows Phone (8.0 or higher) is in C# and is generated in the directory you specified in <u>Screen 8 of the Generate Program Code Wizard</u>. You can open the C# project in Visual Studio and build the project into the Windows Phone app. The output of the build process includes a file with the .xap extension. This is a zip file that contains all the files required by your app, and it is the file that you publish to the Windows Phone Store.

In this section, we provide the broad outline of the app-building process. For detailed information, please see the Windows Phone App Development Guide and the Visual Studio documentation.

Requirements

In order to generate the program code for Windows Phone and to build the app from the code, you will need the following:

- Visual Studio 2013 (this version only) with the Windows Phone 8.0 SDK (do not convert to Windows Phone 8.1). The SDK includes the Windows Phone Developer Registration tool, which you will need to register your phone for development use (installing and debugging your app).
- A Windows Phone 8.0 or higher for testing. The phone must be registered with the Windows Phone Developer Registration tool so that you can test your app on the phone.
- A Windows app developer account. You will need this to publish your app to the Windows Store. For details, see the <u>Microsoft information about opening an account</u>.

Building the app

The broad outline for building and publishing your app is as follows:

- 1. Open the generated program code (the C# project) in Visual Studio.
- 2. To test on a Windows Phone, connect the phone to the PC and register it with the Windows Phone Developer Registration tool.
- Next to the Run button in Visual Studio's Standard toolbar are two combo boxes. Go to
 the combo box on the right. Select **Device** to test run the app on the registered Windows
 Phone, or select **Emulator** to test the app on a simulator.
- 4. In the combo box on the left, select **Debug**, and then click **Run**, or press **F5**, or select **Debug | Start Debugging**.
- 5. If you need to modify the program code, decide whether the SPL templates that generate the program code need to be edited or whether the modifications are limited to entries in the <u>Generate Program Code Wizard</u>. If the former, then edit the SPL template/s. Run the <u>Generate Program Code Wizard</u> to re-generate the program code, then re-test.
- 6. To build the release app, go to the combo box next to the **Run** button and select **Release**. Then choose **Build | Build Solution**. When the build finishes, the .XAP file will be in the Bin\Release sub-folder.

The XAP file is the compiled Windows Phone application that you can publish at the Windows Store.

13.4 SPL Templates

MobileTogether Designer uses Spy Programming Language (SPL) templates to generate the various files of the program code that is used to build AppStore Apps for Android, iOS, Windows, and Windows Phone.

- The SPL templates are delivered with your installation of MobileTogether Designer and are located in the folder C:\Program Files (x86)\Altova\MobileTogetherDesigner2
 \MobileTogetherSPL.
- The SPL templates use variables that are tied to information that you enter in the Generate Program Code Wizard.

So, if you need to modify the program code in any way, you should **not** modify the generated code directly. Instead, you should modify the SPL templates that generate the code. This way your modifications will not be lost if you were to re-generate program code from the templates. This section explains how the SPL templates work and what you can edit in them.

Location of the SPL templates

The SPL templates are located in the MobileTogether Designer application folder:

C:\Program Files (x86)\Altova\MobileTogetherDesigner2\MobileTogetherSPL

This folder contains entry-point SPL templates for each app format (Android.spl, iOS.spl, WindowsApp.spl, and WindowsPhone.spl), a common library SPL template (CommonLibrary.spl, which must not be modified), and a folder for each app format that contains additional SPL templates for that format. Inside the folder for each app format is a ZIP file and the SPL template files for that app format.

Each SPL file is a template that can generate a number of project files and can call other SPL files. When creating an Android Studio project, for example, MobileTogether Designer begins by processing Android.spl (in the SPL template directory). This SPL file in turn calls other SPL files, which then generate other project files and call other SPL files. These SPL template files are the files that you can modify to alter the generated program code. They are written using SPL syntax and SPL instructions, which are described in the sub-sections of this section.

Using the SPL templates to modify program code

The steps to customize generated program code are as follows:

- Copy either the entire SPL template directory (or only the templates you wish to modify)
 to a directory of your choice. In this way a re-installation of MobileTogether Designer will
 not overwrite your customized SPL templates. Note that the copy of the directory must
 have the same structure as the original directory.
- 2. Modify the SPL files as required.
- Run the Generate Program Code Wizard with the modified SPL templates. In Screen 5 of the Generate Program Code Wizard, specify the location of the directory containing your customized SPL templates.

The program code will be generated according to your customized templates.

In this section

This section is organized as follows:

- SPL Syntax
- SPL String Mechanisms
- Properties of \$Options
- Properties of \$Application
- Miscellaneous Objects

SPL Syntax

An SPL template is constructed in the programming language of the program code you wish to generate. The template contains snippets of SPL instructions to integrate MobileTogether data into the generated program code. SPL instructions are enclosed in square brackets. Here, for example, is a template to generate an XML file (written in XML), with the SPL instructions highlighted in yellow.

Multiple statements

Multiple statements can be included in a bracket pair. Additional statements have to be separated from the previous statement by a new line or a colon. Valid examples are:

```
[\$x = 42  [\$x = 42: \$x = \$x + 1] [\$x = 42: \$x = \$x + 1]
```

Text

Text not enclosed by square brackets is written directly to the output. To generate square brackets, escape them with a backslash: \[and \]. To generate a backslash, use \\.

Comments

Comments inside an instruction block always begin with a 'character, and terminate on the next line, or with a closing square bracket.

Variables

Variables are created by assigning values to them. The \$ character is used when declaring or using a variable. Variable names are case-sensitive. Variables can be of the following types:

- Integer: Also used as boolean, where 0 is false and everything else is true
- String. See also String Mechanisms.
- Object: Provided by MobileTogether. For example, the <u>\$Options</u> object.

Variable types are declared by first assignment:

```
[$x = 0] means that x is now an integer.
[$x = "teststring"] means that x is now a string.
```

Strings

Strings are enclosed in double quotes. \n and \n inside double quotes are interpreted as newline and tab, \n is a literal double quote, and \n is a backslash. String constants can also span multiple lines. String concatenation uses the \n character:

```
[$BasePath = $outputpath & "/" & $JavaPackageDir]
```

Objects

Objects are MobileTogether structures. Objects have properties, which can be accessed by using the . operator. It is not possible to create new objects in SPL , but it is possible to assign objects to variables. For example:

```
class [=$class.Name]
```

This example outputs the word class, followed by a space and the value of the Name property of the Sclass object.

Conditions

Use IF statements, with or without the ELSE clause, as follows. Do not use round brackets around the condition.

Example

Iterators

Use FOREACH statements to iterate, as follows:

String Mechanisms

SPL provides the string manipulation mechanisms that are listed below.

```
integer Compare(s)
The return value indicates the lexicographic relation of the string to s (case-sensitive):
 <0 =
               the string is less than s
 Λ
               the string is identical to s
 >0 =
               the string is greater than s
integer CompareNoCase(s)
The return value indicates the lexicographic relation of the string to s (case-insensitive):
 <0 =
               the string is less than s
 Ω
               the string is identical to s
 >0 =
               the string is greater than s
integer Find(s)
Searches the string for the first match of a substring s. Returns the zero-based index of the first
character of s or -1 if s is not found.
string Left(n)
Returns the first {\tt n} characters of the string.
integer Length()
Returns the length of the string.
string MakeUpper()
Returns a string converted to upper case.
string MakeUpper(n)
Returns a string, optionally with the first n characters converted to upper case.
string MakeLower()
Returns a string converted to lower case.
string MakeLower(n)
```

Returns a string, optionally with the first n characters converted to lower case.

```
string Mid(n)
Returns a string starting with the zero-based index position n.
string Mid(n,m)
Returns a string starting with the zero-based index position n and the length m.
string RemoveLeft(s)
Returns a string excluding the substring s if Left(s.Length()) is equal to substring s.
string RemoveLeftNoCase(s)
Returns a string excluding the substring s if Left(s.Length()) is equal to substring s (case-
insensitive).
string RemoveRight(s)
Returns a string excluding the substring s if Right(s.Length()) is equal to substring s.
string RemoveRightNoCase(s)
Returns a string excluding the substring s if Right(s.Length()) is equal to substring s (case
insensitive).
string Repeat(s,n)
Returns a string containing substring s repeated n times.
string Replace(sOld,sNew)
Replaces the string sold with the string sNew.
string Right(n)
Returns the last n characters of the string.
```

String properties

The following properties are available:

- Length: returns the length of the string. *Example*: \$Options.deploymentPath.Length returns the length of the string contained in deploymentPath.
- XMLEncode: returns the length of the string in XML-encoded format. Example: \$Options.deploymentPath.XMLEncode returns the the string contained in deploymentPath as XML-escaped text.

Properties of \$Options

The **\$options** object can take the properties listed below. The values of most of these properties are usually provided in the <u>Generate Program Code Wizard</u>, and are described there. The object's properties can be accessed by using the . operator. Some SPL template usage examples are given below.

```
<data
    android:scheme="[=$Options.schemeForRunSolutionUrl]"
    android:host="[=$Options.hostForRunSolutionUrl]"/>

@Override
public boolean GetServerUsesSsl()
    {
        return [if $Options.isUseSsL = 1]true[else]false[endif];
    }
}
```

Workflow-related properties

The following workflow-related properties are available:

- workflowKey: returns the workflow key. Example: \$Options.workflowKey returns the
 workflow key. Every time program code is generated and the associated workflow is
 deployed to the server, both are assigned the same unique workflow key. An appstore
 app will be able to access this workflow only if it has the same key as the workflow. See
 Deploy Workflow to Server for details.
- deploymentPath: returns the path of the deployed workflow. Example: \$Options.deploymentPath returns the workflow path on MobileTogether Server. Example of a workflow path: /Public/DateTime/.

General properties

The values of these properties are provided in Screen 1 of the Generate Program Code Wizard.

```
appName
visibleAppName
appVersion
hostForRunSolutionUrl
schemeForRunSolutionUrl
```

User interface properties

The values of these properties are provided in Screen 2 of the Generate Program Code Wizard.

```
splashScreenPortraitFilePath
splashScreenLandscapeFilePath
```

launcherIconFilePath
aboutLegal
aboutCopyRight

Server properties

The values of these properties are provided in Screen 3 of the Generate Program Code Wizard.

serverAddress serverPort isServerAccessAlwaysAnonymous isUseSSL

Properties about user and app privileges

The values of these properties are provided in Screen 4 of the Generate Program Code Wizard.

mayResetPersistentData isAllowSMS isAllowTelephoneCall isAllowCamera isAllowLocationAccess isAllowExternalStorageAccess

Android and iOS properties

The values of these properties are provided in Screen 6 of the Generate Program Code Wizard.

targetDirectoryAndroid androidPackageName androidPackageDir targetDirectoryIOS iosBundleIdentifierPrefix

Windows App and Windows Phone properties

The values of these properties are provided in <u>Screen 7 of the Generate Program Code Wizard</u>.

windowsAppCompanyName
windowsPhoneCompanyName
targetDirectoryWindowsApp
windowsAppCompanyPublisherID
windowsAppCompanyProductID
targetDirectoryWindowsPhone
windowsPhoneCompanyPublisherID

 ${\tt windowsPhoneCompanyProductID}$

Properties of \$Application

The \$Application object can take the properties listed below. The object's properties can be can be accessed by using the . operator. Some SPL template usage examples are given below.

```
sub CopyFile( byval $sSource, byval $sTarget )
    return $Application.CopyFile( $sSource, $sTarget )
endsub

sub UnzipFile( byval $sZipFile, byval $sTargetDir )
    return $Application.UnzipFile( $sZipFile, $sTargetDir )
endsub
```

Properties

```
CopyFile(sSource, sTarget)
```

Copies the file at the location sSource to the location sTarget.

```
UnzipFile(sZipFile, sTargetDir)
```

Unzips the ZIP archive at the location szipFile to the directory stargetDir.

CopyAndResizeImage(sSource, sTarget, nTargetWidth, nTargetHeight)

Copies the image file at the location sSource to the location sTarget, and resizes the copied image to the pixel dimensions given by nTargetWidth and nTargetHeight.

Miscellaneous Objects

The following objects can be accessed as variables:

\$Host	MobileTogetherDesigner < version, e.g. 2.0>
\$HostShort	MobileTogetherDesigner
\$HostURL	http://www.altova.com/mobiletogether
\$HostVersion	Major product version (for example 1 when 1.5)
\$HostRelease	Minor product version (for example 5 when 1.5)
\$RegisteredName	Name of the licensed user
\$RegisteredCompany	Licensed company
\$CreationDate	Time of SPL code generation
\$outputpath	Directory where the code is generated

Chapter 14

Menu Commands

14 Menu Commands

MobileTogether Designer menu commands are organized into the following menus:

- File
- Edit
- Project
- Page
- View
- Tools
- Window
- Help

14.1 File

The File menu contains the following commands:

- New
- Open
- Reload
- Close
- Close All
- Close All But Active
- Save
- Save As
- Save Copy As
- Save All
- Deploy to MobileTogether Server
- Open from MobileTogether Server
- Delete from MobileTogether Server
- Generate Program Code for Mobile Apps
- Send by Mail
- Print
- Print Preview
- Print Setup
- Recent Files
- Exit

New

▼ New

■ Icon



■ Shortcut

Ctrl+N

■ Description

Opens a new document tab in the main window and loads an empty MobileTogether Design file into this tab. The document is stored temporarily in memory. It must be saved to disk with the .mtd extension if you want to keep it.

Open

▼ Open





■ Shortcut

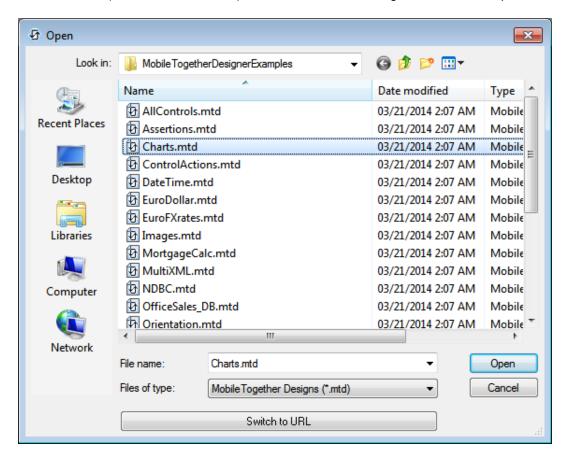
Ctrl+O

Description

Pops up the Open dialog, in which you can select the MobileTogether Design file (.mtd file) to open. The MTD file is opened in a new tab of the main window.

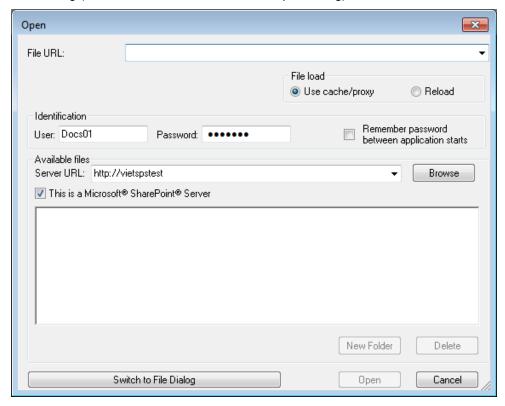
Selecting and saving files via URLs

In several File Open and File Save dialogs, you can choose to select the required file or save a file via a URL (see screenshot below). Click **Switch to URL** to go to the selection process.



To select a file via a URL (either for opening or saving), do the following:

1. Click the **Switch to URL** command. This switches to the URL mode of the Open or Save dialog (*the screenshot below shows the Open dialog*).



- 2. Enter the URL you want to access in the Server URL field (screenshot above). If the server is a Microsoft® SharePoint® Server, check the Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes below for further information about working with files on this type of server.
- 3. If the server is password protected, enter your User-ID and password in the *User* and *Password* fields.
- 4. Click **Browse** to view and navigate the directory structure of the server.
- In the folder tree, browse for the file you want to load and click it. The file URL
 appears in the File URL field. The **Open** or **Save** button only becomes active at this
 point.
- 6. Click **Open** to load the file or **Save** to save it.

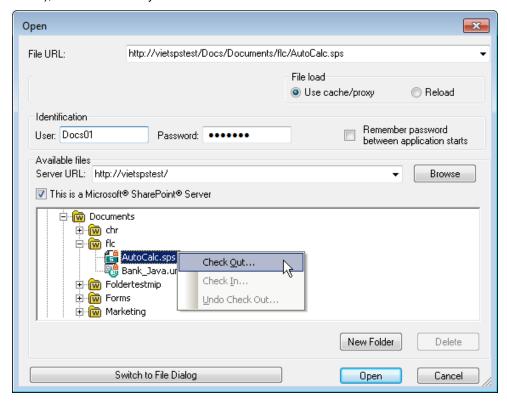
Note the following:

- The Browse function is only available on servers which support WebDAV and on Microsoft SharePoint Servers. The supported protocols are FTP, HTTP, and HTTPS.
- To give you more control over the loading process when opening a file, you can
 choose to load the file through the local cache or a proxy server (which considerably
 speeds up the process if the file has been loaded before). Alternatively, you may
 want to reload the file if you are working, say, with an electronic publishing or
 database system; select the **Reload** option in this case.

▼ Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes

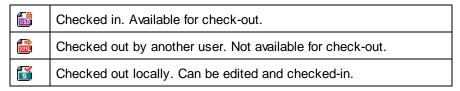
Note the following points about files on Microsoft® SharePoint® Servers:

• In the directory structure that appears in the Available Files pane (*screenshot below*), file icons have symbols that indicate the check-in/check-out status of files.



Right-clicking a file pops up a context menu containing commands available for that file (screenshot above).

The various file icons are shown below:



- After you check out a file, you can edit it in your Altova application and save it using File | Save (Ctrl+S).
- You can check-in the edited file via the context menu in the Open URL dialog (see screenshot above), or via the context menu that pops up when you right-click the file tab in the Main Window of your application (screenshot below).



- When a file is checked out by another user, it is not available for check out.
- When a file is checked out locally by you, you can undo the check-out with the Undo Check-Out command in the context menu. This has the effect of returning the

- file unchanged to the server.
- If you check out a file in one Altova application, you cannot check it out in another Altova application. The file is considered to be already checked out to you. The available commands at this point in any Altova application supporting Microsoft® SharePoint® Server will be: Check In and Undo Check Out.

Reload

▼ Reload

■ Icon



■ Description

Reloads any open documents that have modified outside MobileTogether Designer. If one or more documents is modified outside MobileTogether Designer, a prompt appears asking whether you wish to reload the modified document/s. If you choose to reload, then any changes you may have made to the file since the last time it was saved will be lost.

Close, Close All, Close All But Active

▼ Close

■ Description

Closes the active document window. If the file was modified (indicated by an asterisk * after the file name in the title bar), you will be asked if you wish to save the file first.

▼ Close All

■ Description

Closes all open document windows. If any document has been modified (indicated by an asterisk * after the file name in the title bar), you will be asked if you wish to save the file first.

▼ Close All But Active

■ Description

Closes all open document windows except the active document window. If any document has been modified (indicated by an asterisk * after the file name in the title bar), you will be asked if you wish to save the file first.

Save, Save As, Save Copy As, Save All

Save

■ Icon



■ Shortcut

Ctrl+S

■ Description

Saves the contents of the active document to the file from which it has been opened.

Save As

Description

Pops up the Save As dialog box, in which you enter the name and location of the file you wish to save the active document as. The newly saved document replaces the original document in the active tab of the main window.

Save Copy As

Description

Pops up the Save Copy As dialog box, in which you enter the name and location of the file you wish to save the active document as. The saved document will be a copy of the active document. The newly saved document will not be opened in MobileTogether Designer. The original document remains active in the main window.

▼ Save All

■ Icon

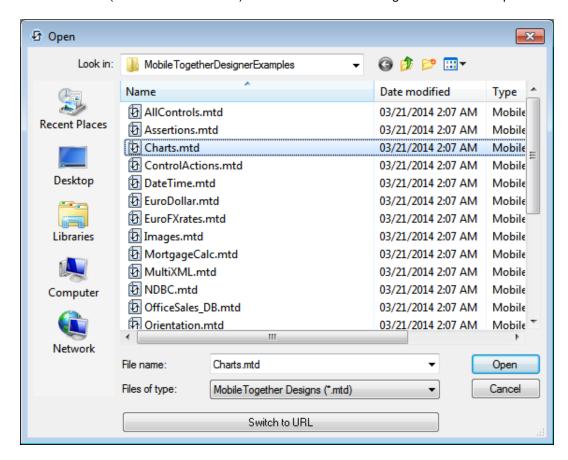


Description

Saves all modifications that have been made to any open documents. The command is useful if you edit multiple documents simultaneously. If a document has not been saved before (for example, after being newly created), the Save As dialog box is presented for that document.

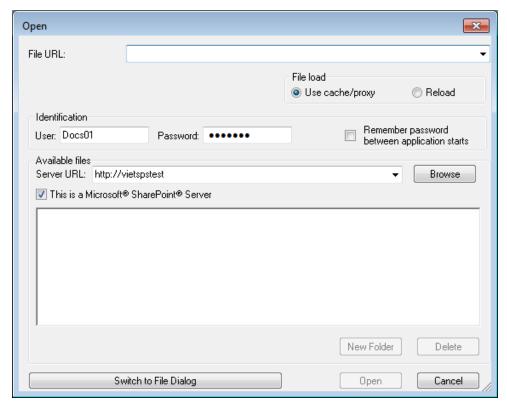
▼ Selecting and saving files via URLs

In several File Open and File Save dialogs, you can choose to select the required file or save a file via a URL (see screenshot below). Click **Switch to URL** to go to the selection process.



To select a file via a URL (either for opening or saving), do the following:

1. Click the **Switch to URL** command. This switches to the URL mode of the Open or Save dialog (*the screenshot below shows the Open dialog*).



- Enter the URL you want to access in the Server URL field (screenshot above). If the server is a Microsoft® SharePoint® Server, check the Microsoft® SharePoint® Server check box. See the Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes below for further information about working with files on this type of server.
- 3. If the server is password protected, enter your User-ID and password in the *User* and *Password* fields.
- 4. Click **Browse** to view and navigate the directory structure of the server.
- 5. In the folder tree, browse for the file you want to load and click it. The file URL appears in the File URL field. The **Open** or **Save** button only becomes active at this point.
- 6. Click **Open** to load the file or **Save** to save it.

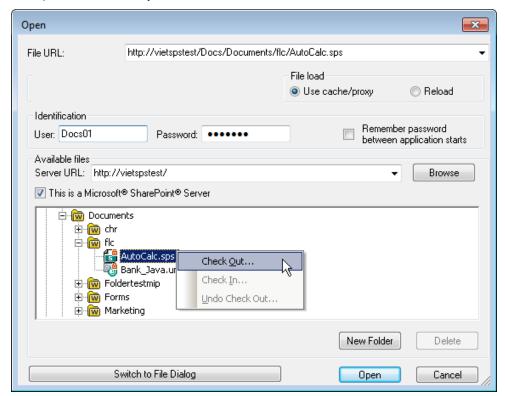
Note the following:

- The Browse function is only available on servers which support WebDAV and on Microsoft SharePoint Servers. The supported protocols are FTP, HTTP, and HTTPS.
- To give you more control over the loading process when opening a file, you can
 choose to load the file through the local cache or a proxy server (which considerably
 speeds up the process if the file has been loaded before). Alternatively, you may
 want to reload the file if you are working, say, with an electronic publishing or
 database system; select the **Reload** option in this case.

▼ Microsoft® SharePoint® Server Notes

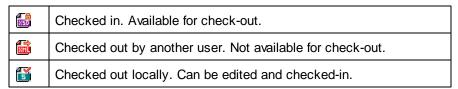
Note the following points about files on Microsoft® SharePoint® Servers:

• In the directory structure that appears in the Available Files pane (*screenshot below*), file icons have symbols that indicate the check-in/check-out status of files.



Right-clicking a file pops up a context menu containing commands available for that file (screenshot above).

• The various file icons are shown below:



- After you check out a file, you can edit it in your Altova application and save it using File | Save (Ctrl+S).
- You can check-in the edited file via the context menu in the Open URL dialog (see screenshot above), or via the context menu that pops up when you right-click the file tab in the Main Window of your application (screenshot below).



- When a file is checked out by another user, it is not available for check out.
- When a file is checked out locally by you, you can undo the check-out with the Undo Check-Out command in the context menu. This has the effect of returning the file unchanged to the server.
- If you check out a file in one Altova application, you cannot check it out in another Altova application. The file is considered to be already checked out to you. The

available commands at this point in any Altova application supporting Microsoft® SharePoint® Server will be: **Check In** and **Undo Check Out**.

Deploy to MobileTogether Server

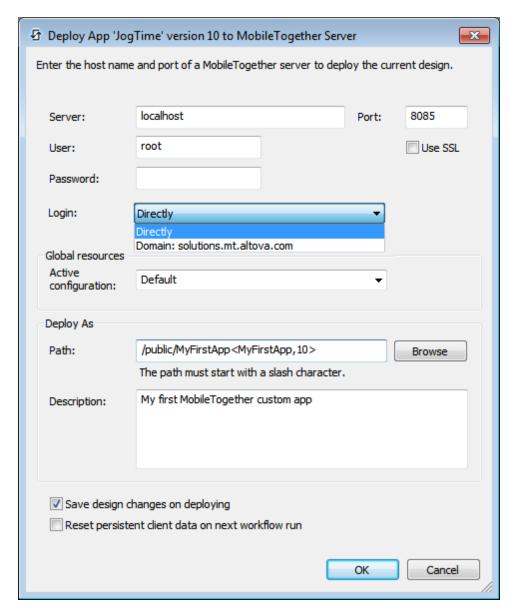
▼ Deploy to MobileTogether Server

■ Icon



■ Description

Opens the Deploy to MobileTogether Server dialog, in which you specify: (i) server connection details, and (ii) deployment properties of the project on the server. On clicking **OK**, the currently active MobileTogether design file is deployed to MobileTogether Server.



The following details are required for deployment:

Server name and port: The port refers to the MobileTogether Server
administrator port and must match the <u>Administrator Ports setting</u> of
MobileTogether Server. If you use SSL, make sure that you use the secure port
of MobileTogether Server.

- User name and password: The user name and password of a user that has been given the privilege Save workflow from designer. MobileTogether Server users and their privileges are specified in the <u>Users and Roles settings</u> of MobileTogether Server.
- Login: Specify whether login is direct or as a domain user. (If login is as a
 domain user, then the domain-specific user name and password can be used.)
 From the options in the combo box, select *Directly* or the domain you wish to
 use. Only those domains are displayed in the combo box that have been
 configured on the server for active directory login. For more information about
 configuring the server for active directory login, see the MobileTogether Server
 user manual.
- Active configuration of global resources: Select the active configuration from
 the available configurations in the dropdown list of the combo box. The available
 configurations are those that are defined in the Global Resources Definitions file
 and are automatically obtained from there. See the section <u>Altova Global</u>
 Resources for details.
- Deployment path and solution description: The <u>path and name of the deployed</u> solution, and the description of the solution that will appear on the server.
- Save design changes on deploying: The project file is saved before deploying, so that the latest changes to the design are included.
- Reset persistent client data on next workflow run: Resets persistent client data when the solution is run the next time.

■ Also see

Location of Project Files
Files Pane
Deploying the Project
Data Storage on Servers.

Open from MobileTogether Server

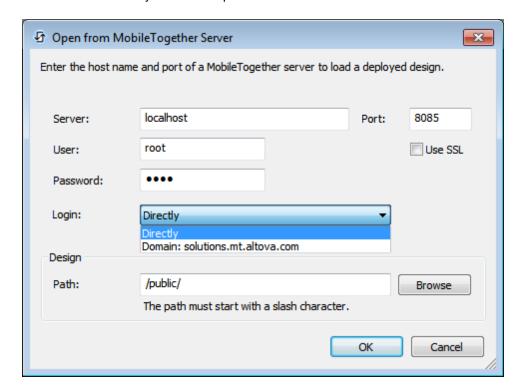
Open from MobileTogether Server

■ Icon



Description

Opens a MobileTogether design file that has been deployed to MobileTogether Server server from its location on MobileTogether Server. Use the **Browse** button to select the file on the server that you want to open.



The following details are required for opening a design from MobileTogether Server:

- Server name and port: The port refers to the MobileTogether Server
 administrator port and must match the <u>Administrator Port setting</u> of
 MobileTogether Server. If you use SSL, make sure that you use the secure port
 of MobileTogether Server.
- User name and password: The user name and password of a user that has been given the privilege Open workflow from designer. MobileTogether Server users and their privileges are specified in the <u>Users and Roles settings</u> of MobileTogether Server.
- Login: Specify whether login is direct or as a domain user. (If login is as a
 domain user, then the domain-specific user name and password can be used.)
 From the options in the combo box, select *Directly* or the domain you wish to
 use. Only those domains are displayed in the combo box that have been
 configured on the server for active directory login. For more information about
 configuring the server for active directory login, see the MobileTogether Server

user manual.

 Path and name of solution (design): The path and name of the deployed solution. Click Browse to browse through all deployed solutions on MobileTogether Server.

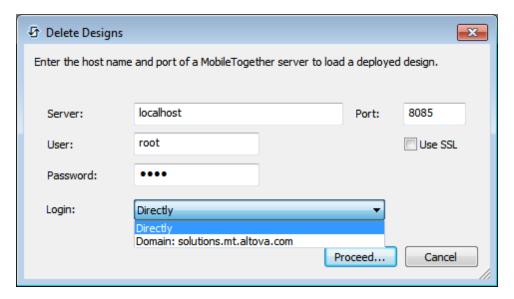
Delete from MobileTogether Server

- Delete from MobileTogether Server
 - Icon



Description

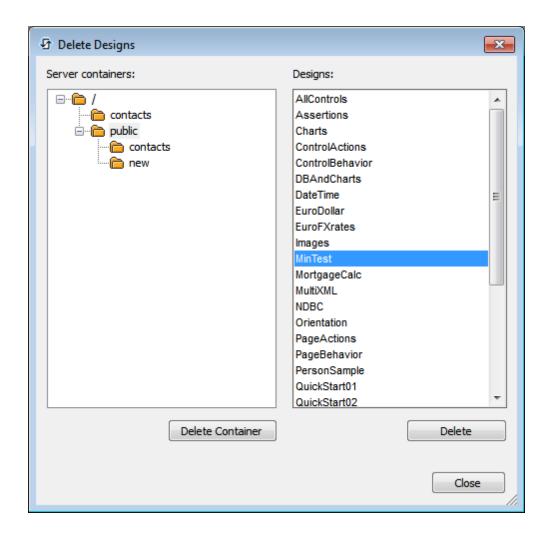
Deletes a previously deployed design file from MobileTogether Server. Use the **Proceed** button to select the file(s) on the server that you want to delete.



The following details are required for connecting to the server:

- Server name and port: The port refers to the MobileTogether Server
 administrator port and must match the <u>Administrator Port setting</u> of
 MobileTogether Server. If you use SSL, make sure that you use the secure port
 of MobileTogether Server.
- User name and password: The user name and password of a user that has been given the privilege Save workflow from designer. MobileTogether Server users and their privileges are specified in the <u>Users and Roles settings</u> of MobileTogether Server.
- Login: Specify whether login is direct or as a domain user. (If login is as a
 domain user, then the domain-specific user name and password can be used.)
 From the options in the combo box, select *Directly* or the domain you wish to
 use. Only those domains are displayed in the combo box that have been
 configured on the server for active directory login. For more information about
 configuring the server for active directory login, see the MobileTogether Server
 user manual.

On clicking **Proceed**, a window showing MobileTogether Server folders (containers) and their solutions (designs) is displayed (*screenshot below*). Browse for the container or design you wish to delete, select it, and click **Delete Container** or **Delete**.

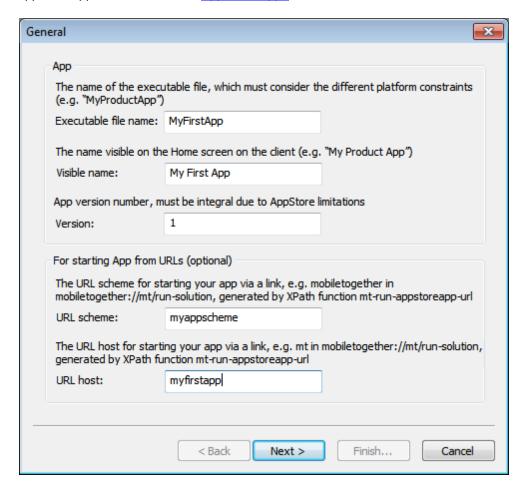


Generate Program Code for AppStore Apps

Generate Program Code for AppStore Apps

■ Description

Opens the <u>Generate Program Code Wizard</u> for creating <u>AppStore Apps</u> (*screenshot below*). For a detailed description of how to use the wizard and how to generate appstore apps, see the section <u>AppStore Apps</u>.



After you finish the wizard (by clicking **Finish**), the <u>Deploy Workflow to Server</u> dialog appears. Clicking **OK** in this dialog (i) deploys the workflow to the server, and (ii) generates program code for the selected app formats (selected in the <u>Generate Program Code Wizard</u>.).

Send by Mail

▼ Send by Mail

■ Icon



■ Description

Sends the active MobileTogether Design document (MTD document) as an email attachment. On selecting the command, an email is opened with the active MTD document attached. Enter the name of the recipient/s in the *To:* field and subject information in the *Subject:* field of the email, then click the email application's **Send** command.

Print

Print

■ Icon

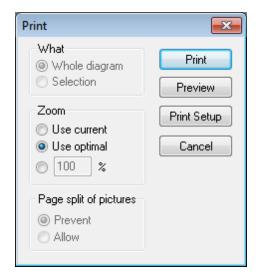


Shortcut

CtrI+P

■ Description

Opens the Print dialog box (*screenshot below*), in which you can select printing options for printing the currently active document.



Options that are applicable to the current printing job are enabled. The following options are available:

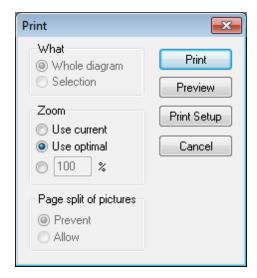
- What: Whether to print the entire design diagram or only the current selection.
- Zoom: The zoom level to use in the printout.
- Page-split of pictures: Whether images may be split (Allow) or not (Prevent).

Print Preview, Print Setup

▼ Print Preview

■ Description

Opens the print dialog box (*screenshot below*). Click **Preview** to see a preview of the currently active document according to the <u>settings specified in the dialog</u>.



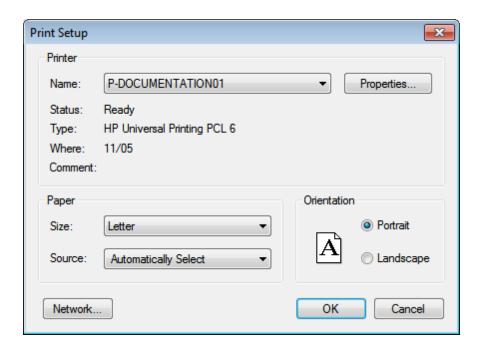
In Print Preview mode, the Print Preview toolbar at top left of the preview window provides print-related and preview-related options. The preview can be magnified or miniaturized using the **Zoom In** and **Zoom Out** buttons. When the page magnification is such that an entire page length fits in a preview window, then the **One Page / Two Page** button toggles the preview to one or two pages at a time. The **Next Page** and **Previous Page** buttons can be used to navigate among the pages. The toolbar also contains buttons to print all pages and to close the preview window.

Note: To enable background colors and images in Print Preview, do the following: (i) In the **Tools** menu of Internet Explorer, click **Internet Options**, and then click the Advanced tab; (ii) In the Settings box, under Printing, select the *Print background colors and images* check box, and (iii) then click **OK**.

Print Setup

Description

Displays the printer-specific Print Setup dialog box, in which you specify such printer settings as paper format and page orientation. These settings are applied to all subsequent print jobs.



Recent Files, Exit

Recent Files

■ Description

At the bottom of the **File** menu is a list of the nine most recently used files, with the most recently opened file shown at the top of the list. You can open any of these files by clicking its name. To open a file in the list using the keyboard, press **Alt+F** to open the **File** menu, and then press the number of the file you want to open.

▼ Exit

■ Description

Quits MobileTogether Designer. If you have any open files with unsaved changes, you are prompted to save these changes. MobileTogether Designer also saves modifications to program settings and information about the most recently used files.

742 Menu Commands Edit

14.2 Edit

The **Edit** menu contains the following commands:

- <u>Undo</u>
- Redo
- Cut
- Copy
- Paste
- Delete
- Select All

Menu Commands Edit 743

Undo, Redo

▼ Undo

■ Icon



■ Shortcut

Ctrl+Z

■ Description

Supports unlimited levels of Undo. Every action can be undone and it is possible to undo one command after another. The Undo history is retained after using the **Save** command, enabling you go back to the state the document was in before you saved your changes. You can step backwards and forwards through this history using the **Undo** and **Redo** commands (see **Redo** command below).

▼ Redo

■ Icon



■ Shortcut

Ctrl+Y

■ Description

Allows you to redo previously undone commands, thereby giving you a complete history of work completed. You can step backwards and forwards through this history using the **Undo** and **Redo** commands.

744 Menu Commands Edit

Cut, Copy, Paste, Delete

▼ Cut

■ Icon



■ Shortcut

Ctrl+X or Shift+Del

■ Description

Copies the selected text or items to the clipboard, deleting the selection from its current location.

▼ Copy

■ Icon



■ Shortcut

Ctrl+C

■ Description

Copies the selected text or items to the clipboard, *without* deleting the selection from its current location. The command can be used to duplicate data within MobileTogether Designer, or to move data to another application.

Paste

■ Icon



Shortcut

CtrI+V

■ <u>Description</u>

Inserts the contents of the clipboard at the current cursor position.

Menu Commands Edit 745

▼ Delete

■ Icon



■ Shortcut

Del

■ Description

Deletes the currently selected text or items without placing them in the clipboard.

746 Menu Commands Edit

Select All

▼ Select All

■ Shortcut

Ctrl+A

■ Description

Selects the contents of the entire document.

14.3 Project

The **Project** menu contains commands that apply to the entire project. It contains the following commands:

- Validate
- Reload Page Source Structures
- Simulate Workflow
- Trial Run on Client
- Use Server for Workflow Simulation
- Global Variables
- List Usages of All Global Variables
- List Usages of All Page Source Variables
- XPath/XQuery Functions
- List Usages of All User-Defined XPath/XQuery Functions
- Action Groups
- List Usages of All Action Groups
- Cache Overview
- Localization
- Simulation Language
- List All File and Directory References
- List All External Data References
- List Unused Functions, User Variables, and Action Groups
- Maintain OAuth Settings
- Import OAuth Settings

Validate

▼ Validate

■ Icon



■ Description

Validates the currently active project. If a project contains multiple pages, all the pages are validated. Validation results are reported in the <u>Messages Pane</u> in terms of the number of errors and warnings. If an error or warning is detected, a message about each is displayed.

Reload Page Source Structures

▼ Reload Page Source Structures

■ Icon



■ Description

Reloads the page source data structures that have been defined in the Page Sources
<a href="Page So

Simulate Workflow

▼ Simulate Workflow

■ Icon

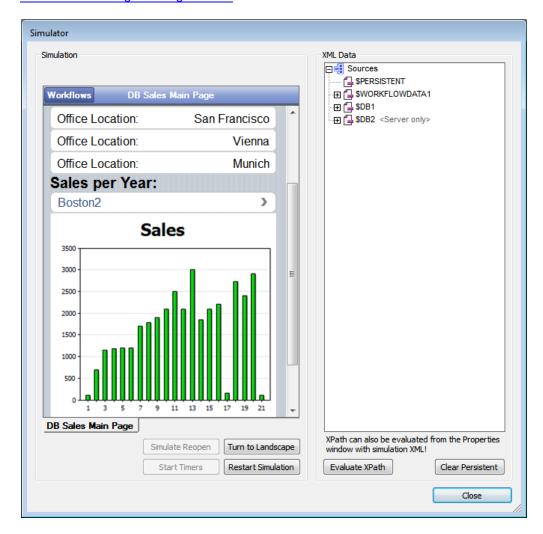


■ Shortcut

F5

■ Description

Starts the local (MobileTogether Designer) simulator in a separate window for testing purposes (see screenshot below). The simulator goes step-by-step through the workflow of the currently active project. The mobile client that is currently selected in the Device Selector of the Page Settings toolbar will be simulated.



Trial Run on Client

Trial Run on Client

■ Icon

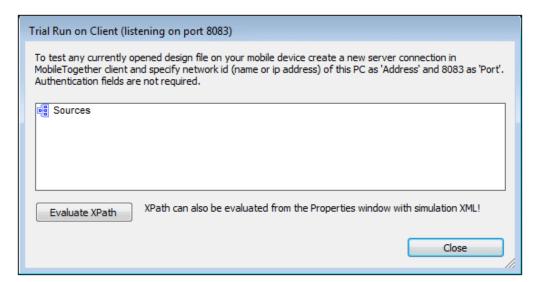


■ Shortcut

Shift+F5

Description

Tests the active MobileTogether design file on the specified client. MobileTogether Designer itself acts as the MobileTogether Server and serves the design and related data files directly to the client. In the MobileTogether Client app on your mobile device, you must set up a server connection to the local PC running MobileTogether Designer. Note that, by default, 8083 is the port on your local PC to which the client must connect. You can change this port in the Trial Run on Client tab of the Options dialog. After the connection between client and PC is established and the design is selected on the client, the Sources tree in the Trial Run on Client dialog (screenshot below) is populated and the trial run (simulation) begins.



Use Server for Workflow Simulation

▼ Use Server for Workflow Simulation

■ Icon

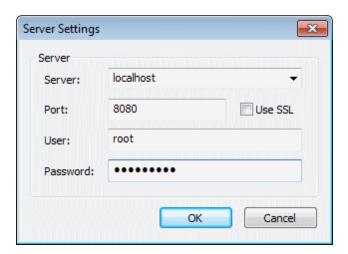


■ Shortcut

Ctrl+F5

Description

Displays the Server Settings dialog (*screenshot below*). Enter the connection and authentication details of the MobileTogether Server on which you want to run the simulation. On clicking **OK**, the simulation starts in a separate window.



Global Variables

▼ Global Variables

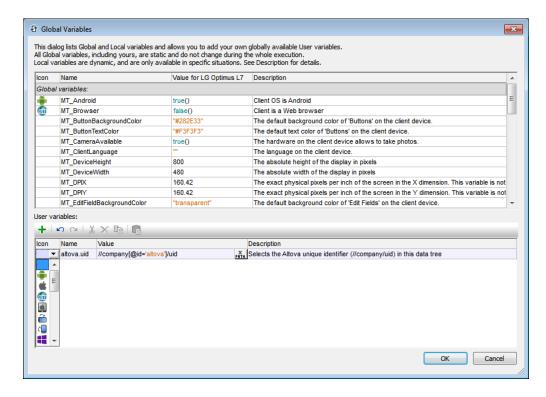
■ Icon



■ Description

Opens the Global Variables dialog (*screenshot below*). Global variables are available to the designer in programming contexts, such as XPath or XQuery, everywhere in the project. MobileTogether Designer provides a standard library of global variables, which are listed in the upper pane of the dialog. The values of the global variables are assigned by MobileTogether during simulation and when the app runs on the client device. Global variables are of three types, and the list of variables in the dialog is divided into three parts for these three types:

- Static-value variables (called <u>Global Variables</u> in the dialog): These variables contain information about the mobile device. Values of these variables do not change during the execution of the project. Notice that the *Value* column in the upper pane specifies the currently selected mobile device. The listed values are for that particular device. For simulations, the client device is considered to be the device selected in the <u>Device Selector combo box</u>. For example, the variable smt_android has a value of true when the mobile device being used is an Android. (Device information is sent by the device as part of standard mobile communication procedures.)
- Dynamic-value variables (called <u>Local Variables</u> in the dialog): These variables contain information related to the design page and its controls. Their values could change during execution. For example, the \$MT_ControlNode variable has different values according to which node is the page source link of the current control at a given time during project execution.
- <u>User variables</u>: In addition to the standard library of global variables, you can add your own global variables (called *User Variables* in the dialog) in the lower pane of the dialog. You can give a user variable any value, and this value can then be used subsequently in any XPath/XQuery expression in the project.



To add a user variable, in the lower pane, do the following:

- Click the Append or Insert icons (located in the pane's toolbar) to add a line to the list
- 2. Enter the name of your new variable (in the *Name* column) and give the variable a description (*Description* column). See screenshot above.
- 3. Click in the *Value* field to bring up the Edit XPath/XQuery Expression dialog, and enter the XPath expression that determines the value of this variable.
- 4. Select an icon to help identify the new variable as belonging to a particular group.
- 5. Click **OK** to finish. The variable is added as a global variable, and can be used in programming contexts.

See the section, Global Variables for a description of predefined global variables.

List Usages of All Global Variables

▼ List Usages of All Global Variables

■ Description

Returns a list, in the <u>Messages Pane</u>, of all <u>global variables</u>. Each global variable is listed together with information about where the variable is used. This listing contains links that take you directly to the definition containing the usage, enabling you to quickly locate and edit that definition.

List Usages of All Page Source Variables

▼ List Usages of All Page Source Variables

■ Description

Returns a list, in the <u>Messages Pane</u>, of all <u>page source variables</u>. Each page source variable in the listing contains links to the definitions in which the page source is used, enabling you to quickly locate and edit that definition. Clicking the page source link itself highlights the page source in the <u>Page Sources Pane</u>.

XPath/XQuery Functions

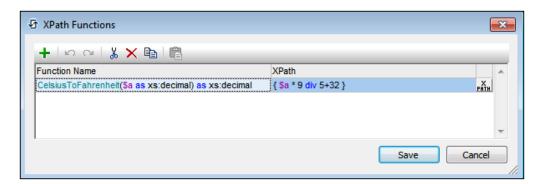
▼ XPath/XQuery Functions

■ Icon



■ Description

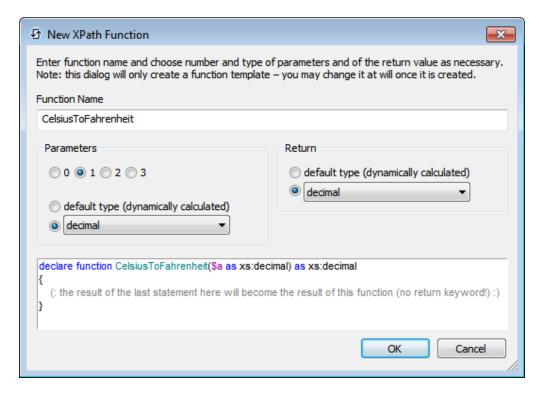
Opens the XPath Functions dialog, which lists all the user-defined XPath functions in the project. These XPath functions can be used in all XPath expressions in the project. You can add and delete functions using the corresponding icons in the toolbar of the dialog. To edit the definition of a function, click the function's **Edit XPath Expression** button.



Add a new user-defined XPath function

Adding a new user-defined function involves two steps: (i) declaring the function, and (ii) defining the function.

To add a new function, do the following, click **Add** in the toolbar of the dialog (see screenshot above). This displays the New XPath Function dialog (screenshot below).



In this dialog, you can declare the name of the function, specify the number of function parameters (arguments) and their types, and specify the return type of the function. In the screenshot above we have declared a function to convert a decimal number from Celsius to Fahrenheit. The function takes one parameter, which is the input Celsius value as a decimal. It will output a decimal value, the Fahrenheit temperature. What the function does is defined in the next step. After declaring the function (*screenshot above*), click **OK**. This displays the Edit Function dialog (*screenshot below*), which contains the template of the newly declared function and in which you can now define the function.

Enter the definition of the function within the braces. In the definition shown in the

screenshot above, \$a is the input parameter. Click **OK**. when done. The function will be added to the list of user-defined functions in the XPath Functions dialog and can be used in all XPath expressions in the project.

Note: User-defined XPath functions do not need to be placed in a separate namespace. Consequently, no namespace prefix is needed when defining or calling a user-defined function. The XPath default namespace is used for all XPath/XQuery functions, including extension functions and user-defined functions. In order to avoid ambiguities involving built-in functions, we recommend that you capitalize user-defined functions.

List Usages of All User-Defined XPath/XQuery Functions

▼ List Usages of All User-Defined XPath/XQuery Functions

Description

Returns a list, in the <u>Messages Pane</u>, of all the user-defined XPath/XQuery functions used by pages in the project, together with the pages in which they occur. Clicking the links in the listing takes you directly to the dialog defining the XPath/XQuery function or the definition containing the XPath/XQuery function.

Action Groups

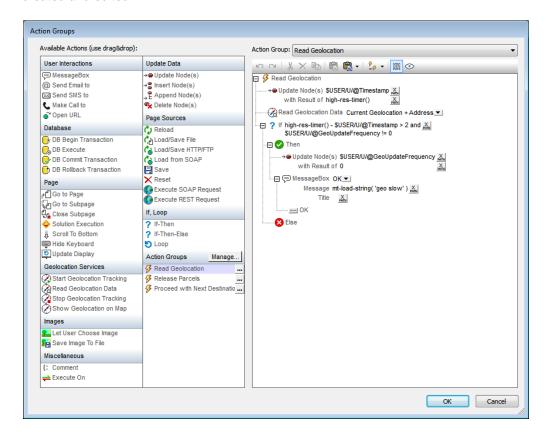
Action Groups

■ Icon



■ Description

Displays the Action Groups dialog (screenshot below), in which action groups can be created and edited.



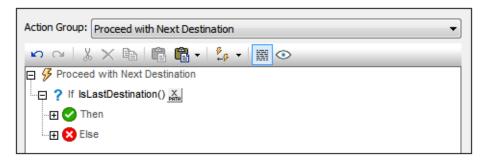
To create an Action Group, do the following:

Click Manage in the Action Groups pane (see screenshot below).



2. In the Manage Group Actions dialog that appears, click **Add** in the toolbar of the dialog. An Action Group with a default name is added to the list of Action

- Groups in this dialog.
- Double-click the name of Action Group to a suitable name to change it, and click **OK**. The Manage Action Groups dialog closes, and the new Action Group is added to the list of groups in the Action Groups pane (see screenshot above).
- 4. In the Action Groups pane (screenshot above), click the Edit icon of the Action Group you want to edit. The group's contents are displayed in the pane on the right (see screenshot below). The details of an Action Group can also be displayed by selecting the group in the Action Group combo box (see screenshot below).



- 5. To edit the contents of the active Action Group in the right-hand pane, drag and drop actions and and action groups from the Available Actions pane on the left.
- 6. Click **OK** to finish. The Action Group you have edited is available for use.

Note: The last selection in this dialog is remembered. As a result, the dialog is always reopened with the last selection highlighted.

Note: An action group can be edited at any time. Click its **Edit** button to display it in the right-hand editor pane; alternatively, select it in the combo box above the editor pane.

List Usages of All Action Groups

▼ List Usages of All Action Groups

■ Description

Returns a list, in the <u>Messages Pane</u>, of all the Action Groups used by pages in the project. The list is ordered by Action Group. Each Action Group is sub-divided into direct and indirect usages. Pages that use the Action Group are listed together with the event that triggers the Action Group. Clicking the links in the listing takes you directly to the dialog defining the action group or the event for which the action group is defined.

Cache Overview

Cache Overview

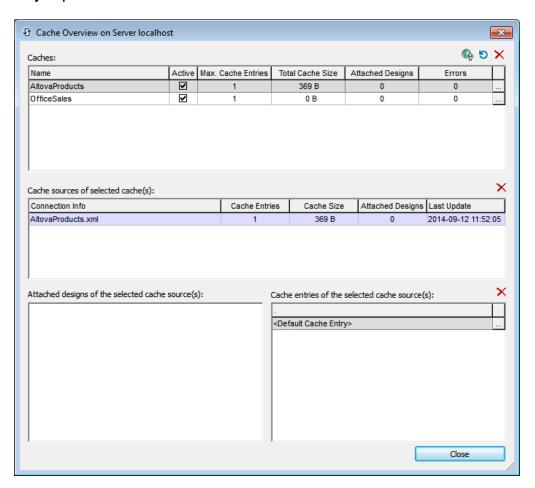
■ Icon



Description

Enables connection to MobileTogether Server and an overview of the server cache: cache hits, cache size, purges, etc.

The Cache Overview dialog (*screenshot below*) is accessed with the menu command **Project | Cache Overview**.



The dialog provides an overview of all the caches on the server. In it, you can also do the following:

- Activate/deactivate caches.
- · Delete caches.

See the section Caching for more information about caching.

Localization

▼ Localization

■ General description

Displays the Localization dialog (*screenshot below*), in which you can localize (translate) strings that appear in various **controls** (for example, the text of a button) or are related to **controls** in other ways (for example, the dropdown list values of combo boxes). In addition to strings related to controls, any **custom string** can be localized and subsequently inserted at any location in the design via the mt-load-string function.

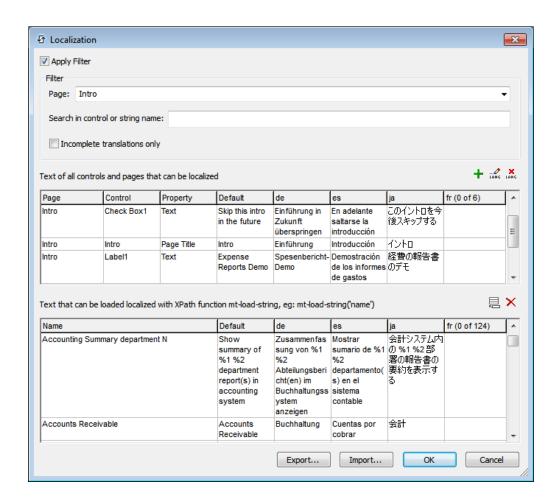
- Control-related strings are displayed in the upper pane (see screenshot below). The columns of this pane are, respectively, from left to right: (i) the page in which the control appears; (ii) the control's name; (iii) the control property that contains the text string; (iv) the text string in the default language; additional columns contain the text string in the localized languages, one column per language.
- **Custom strings** are displayed in the lower pane. The columns of this pane are, respectively, from left to right: (i) the custom string's name; (ii) the custom string in the default language; additional columns contain the custom string in the localized languages, one column per language.

You can add a column for a localization language with the **Add Language** icon, and can add as many columns as you like. To localize a control-related string or custom string in a particular language, enter the translation in the column for that language. To save translations, click **OK**.

All strings (control-related and custom) that have been localized in the Localization dialog will be used in the localized versions of the solution. If the language setting on the mobile device specifies a language-country variant (for example, es-us or fr-ch), then the language of displayed strings is selected according to the cascading order given below.

- 1. The solution's corresponding localized language-country (es-us or fr-ch) strings are used where these exist
- 2. If no language-country localization (es-us or fr-ch) exists for a string, then the localized language (es or fr) string is used—if it exists
- 3. If no language-country localization (es-us or fr-CH) or language localization (es or fr) exists for a string, then the default language is used

If you wish to see a simulation in any of the languages for which localized strings are defined, set the simulation language via the Project | Simulation Language command, and then run a simulation.



Apply Filter

The following filters are available in the Localization dialog; they can be combined:

- Page: Select a page from the dropdown list to see the strings of only that page. To select all pages, leave the option blank or select the empty entry. This filter applies to control-related strings (upper pane) only.
- Control-related strings and custom strings: Enter the text to search for.
 All control names (second column of upper pane) and custom string
 names (first column of lower pane) that contain the search text are
 displayed. This filter applies to both panes.
- Incomplete translations only: Check this option to show only incomplete translations. An incomplete translation is a string with at least one localization missing. This filter applies to both panes. Note that, if a translation is entered while this option is selected, then the display must be refreshed in order to update the filtering. You can refresh the display by deselecting and then re-selecting the option.

■ Adding, renaming, and deleting language columns

These icons are located above the upper pane, on the right-hand side.

+	Add Language	Displays the Add Language dialog, in which you can enter or select a language name. On clicking OK , a column with that language name is added to both (upper and lower) panes.
LANG	Rename Language	Place the cursor (in a row in either pane) in the language column you want to rename, then click Rename Language. The Change Language dialog is displayed with the language to change being pre-selected in the edit field. Change the language name and click OK . The column name will be changed in both panes.
K	Delete Language	Place the cursor (in a row in either pane) in the language column you want to delete, then click Delete Language . On being prompted whether you wish to delete the column, click Yes to delete the column and its entries, No to cancel.

■ Custom strings (lower pane)

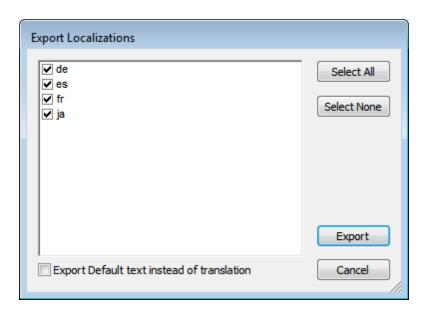
Custom strings can be any text you wish to use in the design.

- To add a custom string, click the Add Localization String icon above the lower pane.
- A newly added custom string is created with a default name, which you can edit; click the name to edit it. The name is used to reference the custom string from XPath expressions.
- Enter the custom string's text value in the default language and in the localization languages.
- To delete a custom string, click anywhere in the custom string row, and then click the **Remove Localization String** icon above the lower pane.
- To use a custom string in the design, use the mt-load-string function in an XPath expression, like this: mt-load-string('NameOfString').

Exporting and importing localizations

Localized strings can be exported to XML files. You can choose to export one or more languages to a single file (see screenshot below). The advantage is that translators can work independently with their separate language files. The translated strings in the XML files can then be imported into the project, and will be placed in their corresponding localization-language columns in the Localization dialog.

When you click **Export** in the Localization dialog (see screenshot at the beginning of this topic), the Export Localizations dialog (screenshot below) appears. The languages that are displayed in the dialog are the languages that have been defined as the localization languages of the project. Select one or more languages to export.



If the *Export default text instead of translation* option is selected, then the exported file will contain the default-language text—instead of already-completed translations—as the values of all the localization-language attributes (*see XML file listings below*). The project, however, will retain the translations. Exporting default-language text can be useful if you use translation tools that work with translation memories. This is because, when an XML file is imported into the translation tool, the translation memory will automatically translate all the imported strings on the basis of what's in its memory. So, if any of the newly imported default text strings were previously translated, then they will simply be re-translated from the translation memory. Additionally, however, if previously untranslated strings contain words or phrases that are in the translation memory, then these words or phrases will be automatically translated. Any remaining words are then translated manually. ASWhen the translated XML file is imported into the project, the translations are entered into the corresponding localization-language columns of the Localization dialog.

Clicking **Export** in the Export Localizations dialog, displays a Save dialog in which you can specify the name and location of the XML file.

XML listing of one-language export

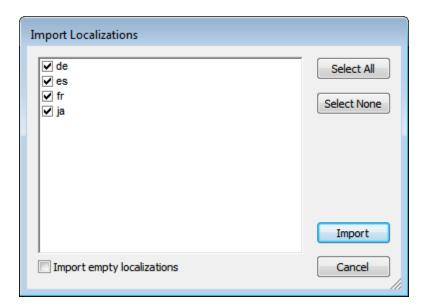
```
</Strings>
</Localizations>
```

■ XML listing of multiple-language export

Note: Strings that have not been translated into a localization language are exported as empty strings (if the export of default-language text (instead of translations) has not been enabled).

■ Importing a translated XML file

To import a translated XML file, click **Import** in the Localization dialog (see screenshot at the beginning of this topic). This displays an Open dialog in which you can select the XML file to import. When you click **Open**, the Import Localizations dialog (screenshot below) is displayed. The languages displayed are those languages found in the XML file that have corresponding columns in the Localization dialog. If a localization language is present in the XML file, but no corresponding localization language name is found in the project, then that language is not displayed.



Select the language/s you wish to import. If you select the Import empty localizations option, then empty localization strings in the XML file will overwrite all existing localization strings, even if these are non-empty. Click **Import** to finish.

The translated language strings are imported into the project and entered into the corresponding localization-language column/s of the Localization dialog. Note that the structure and content of the imported XML file must be such that MobileTogether Designer can correctly process the XML file. It is therefore important not to change the values of any other attributes besides the localization-language attributes.

Simulation Language

▼ Simulation Language

■ Description

When a project is <u>localized</u>, its text strings are translated into the target language. As a result, the localized project will be available to the end user as a solution in the target language.

If a project has been <u>localized</u> into one or more languages, these languages are available in the submenu of the **Simulation Language** command. In this submenu, you can select the language used for project simulations. The localized strings of the selected language will be used for all simulations of the project till the simulation language is changed.

List All File and Directory References

▼ List All File and Directory References

■ Description

Returns a list, in the Messages Pane, of all the files and directories that are referenced in the project. The list also includes controls that reference file sources, even if the reference is via an XPath expression. For example, an image control references an image file, so the image will be included in the list. Clicking the links in the listing takes you directly to the design definition that references the selected file or directory.

Note: The database files of file-based databases, such as MS Access and SQLite, are not listed.

List All External Data References

▼ List All External Data References

■ Description

Returns a list, in the <u>Messages Pane</u>, of all the external data sources that are referenced in the project. These include data sources accessed via HTTP, REST, and SOAP. Clicking the links in the listing takes you directly to the design definition that references the selected resource.

List Unused Functions, User Variables, and Action Groups

▼ List Unused Functions, User Variables, and Action Groups

Description

Returns a list, in the Messages Pane, of all the unused XPath/XQuery functions, user variables, and action groups that are defined in the project. This is useful if you wish to review these user-defined components and clean up the project. Clicking the links in the listing takes you directly to the respective definition.

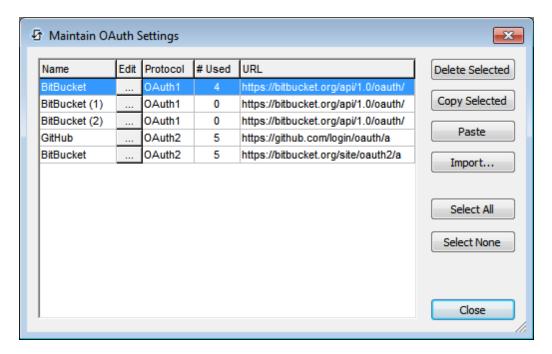
Maintain OAuth Settings

Maintain OAuth Settings

Description

REST requests made in MobileTogether Designer can be authenticated with OAuth. See the section REST Request Settings for a description of how to do this.

You can create multiple OAuth setting definitions in an MobileTogether Designer project. These are stored in a pool, and you can use a definition from the pool for authenticating REST requests defined anywhere in the document. The Maintain OAuth Settings dialog (screenshot below) lets you manage the OAuth definitions of the active project. The dialog displays all the OAuth settings definition that are currently in the active project's pool of definitions. You can delete definitions from the pool, import definitions from other open MobileTogether Designer projects, copy definitions to the clipboard, and paste definitions from the clipboard.



The dialog has the following columns:

- *Name:* The name that was assigned to the settings definition when it was created. The name cannot be edited.
- Edit: The button opens the OAuth Settings dialog, in which you can edit the settings of the selected definition.
- Protocol: Whether the definition uses OAuth1 or OAuth2.
- # Used: Refers to the number of times the definition is used in the current project (design).
- *URL*: The longest common part of the URLs of the <u>definition's endpoints</u>.

You can carry out the following actions in this dialog:

- Delete Selected: One or more definitions can be selected for deletion..
- Copy Selected: Copies one or more definitions as a group to the clipboard.

 Paste: This button is enabled when one or more OAuth settings definitions is currently in the clipboard. Copies the clipboard contents to the current project's pool of definitions

- Import: Opens the Import OAuth Settings dialog, which enables you to import
 one or more OAuth definitions from other open MobileTogether Designer files.
 See the Import OAuth Settings dialog for details.
- Select All: Selects all the definitions.
- Select None: Selects none of the definitions.

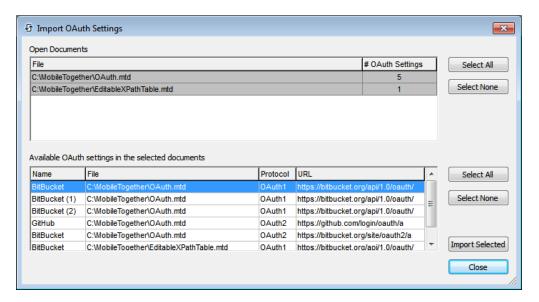
Import OAuth Settings

▼ Import OAuth Settings

■ Description

REST requests made in MobileTogether Designer can be authenticated with OAuth. See the section REST Request Settings for a description of how to do this.

You can create multiple OAuth setting definitions in an MobileTogether Designer project. These are stored in a pool, and you can use a definition from the pool for authenticating REST requests defined anywhere in the document. The Import OAuth Settings dialog (*screenshot below*) enables you to import definitions from other open MobileTogether Designer projects into the current project.



The Open Documents pane (see screenshot above) displays all the other documents that are currently open in MobileTogether Designer. Select one or more documents to display their OAuth settings definitions in the lower pane. In the lower pane, select one or more definitions that you want to import into the current MobileTogether Designer project, and then click **Import Selected**. The definitions will be imported and can be viewed in the Maintain OAuth Settings dialog.

778 Menu Commands Page

14.4 Page

The **Page** menu contains commands that apply to the currently active page of a project. It contains the following commands:

- Page Actions
- Actions Overview
- Jump to Control

Note: Page menu commands are enabled only in Page Design View.

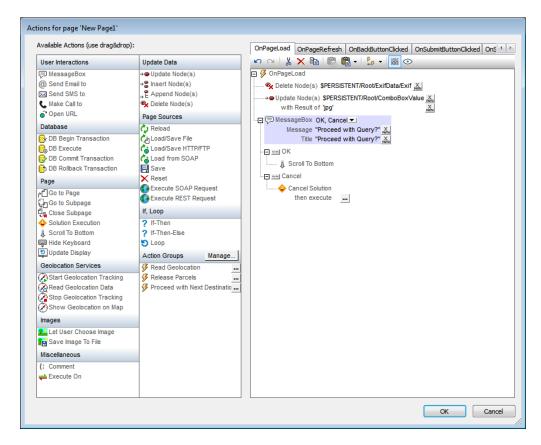
Menu Commands Page 779

Page Actions

Page Actions

Description

Displays the Actions dialog of the currently active page (see screenshot below). The left-hand pane of the dialog contains the available actions, organized by functionality. The right-hand pane contains tabs of available events for that page. The events that are available depend on the role of that page in the project workflow. For instance, a page that cannot be returned to by pressing the **Back** button will not have the OnBackButtonClicked event tab.



To specify that a particular action (from among the available actions) is carried out when an available event occurs, drag the action from the left-hand pane into the event's tab in the right-hand pane. Specify additional properties of the action as required. (For more information about individual page actions, see the section, Page Actions.) Note that you can also add any Action Group that might be defined for the project. Click **OK** to finish.

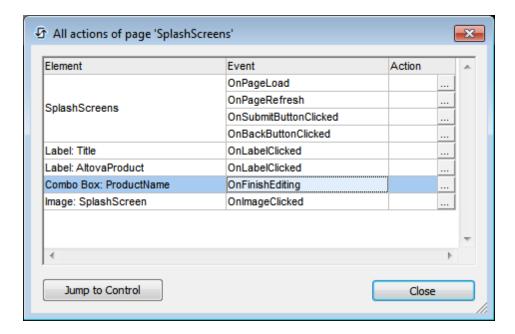
780 Menu Commands Page

Actions Overview

Actions Overview

■ Description

Displays the Actions Overview dialog of the currently active page (see screenshot below). The dialog shows Control Actions and Page Actions. Each control in the page design is listed, together with its event/s and corresponding action/s; these are Control Actions. The dialog also shows available events for the active page; these are Page Actions. For instance, in the screenshot below, the Income item is a page item: it has page events that take page actions. All the other items are controls: they have control events that take control actions.



- To create an action for any event or to edit an existing action, click the Edit
 icon of that event (see screenshot above). This takes you to the Actions dialog
 of that control or to the Actions dialog of the page.
- When a control is selected (not the page), then the **Jump to Control** button is enabled. Clicking it takes you to that control in the design.

Note: The last selection in this dialog is remembered. As a result, the dialog is always reopened with the last selection highlighted.

Menu Commands Page 781

Jump to Control

▼ Jump to Control

■ Shortcut

Ctrl+J

Description

Displays the Jump to Control dialog (*screenshot below*). The dialog contains a combo box with a dropdown list that shows all the controls of the currently active page design. Page controls are listed alphabetically by the value of their Name properties.



Select a page control from the dropdown list or enter the control's name (autocompletion is available). Click **OK** to finish. The page control that was selected in the dialog box will now be selected in the design. If the control is associated with a data node, that node in the Page Sources Pane will also be selected.

782 Menu Commands View

14.5 View

The **View** menu contains the following commands:

- Status Bar
- Pages
- Files
- Controls
- Page Sources
- Overview
- Styles & Properties
- Messages
- All On/Off
- Zoom
- Zoom In
- Zoom Out
- Zoom Reset to 100%
- Zoom to Selection
- Fit to Window

Menu Commands View 783

Status Bar and Panes

The display of the Status Bar and various panes can be toggled on/off by clicking their commands in the View Menu:

- Status Bar
- Pages Pane
- Files Pane
- Controls Pane
- Page Sources Pane
- Overview Pane
- Styles & Properties Pane
- Messages Pane

The **All On/Off** command toggles all the panes and the status bar together between being displayed and being hidden.

784 Menu Commands View

Zoom Levels

The zoom commands taken together provide considerable flexibility in changing the magnification level of the page design (between 10% and 100%) and the workflow diagram (between 10% and 200%). The zoom commands are enabled in Page Design View.

▼ Zoom

■ Description

Opens the Zoom dialog, which contains a slide rule that enables you to change the magnification from 10% to 100% in Page Design View.

▼ Zoom In

■ Icon



■ Description

Magnifies the diagram by 10 percent points (100, 110, 120...) each time the command is executed. In <u>Page Design View</u>, there might be an upper limit due to template size constraints.

▼ Zoom Out

■ Icon



■ Description

Reduces the diagram by 10 percent points (100, 90, 80...) each time the command is executed.

▼ Zoom Reset to 100%

Description

Resets the zoom factor to 100%. This is a quick way to regain the original size.

14.6 Tools

The Tools menu contains the following commands:

- Global Resources
- Active Configuration
- Customize
- Restore Toolbars and Windows
- Options

Global Resources

▼ Global Resources

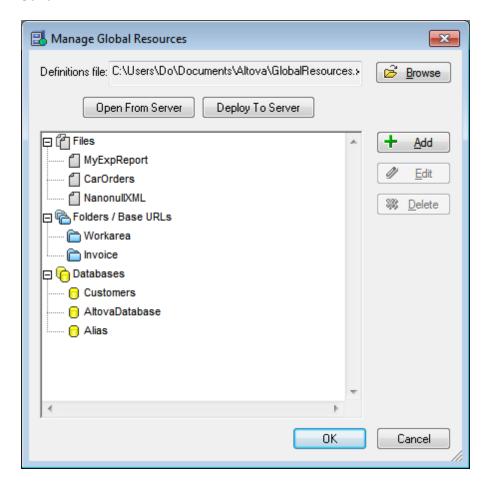
■ Icon



■ Description

Displays the Global Resources dialog (screenshot below), in which you can:

- Specify the Global Resources XML File to use for global resources (*Definitions file*).
- Add file, folder, and database global resources (or aliases)
- Specify various configurations for each global resource (alias). Each configuration maps to a specific resource. (Edit a global resource to do this.)
- Open From Server and Deploy to Server, respectively, enables you to open a global resource from and deploy a global resource to a MobileTogether Server.



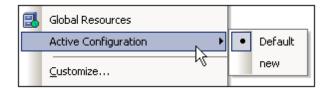
How to define global resources is described in detail in the section, <u>Defining Global</u> Resources.

Active Configuration

▼ Active Configuration

Description

Placing the mouse over the command rolls out a submenu containing all the configurations defined in the currently active <u>Global Resources XML File</u>.



The currently active configuration is indicated with a bullet. In the screenshot above the currently active configuration is Default. To change the active configuration, select the configuration you wish to make active.

Customize

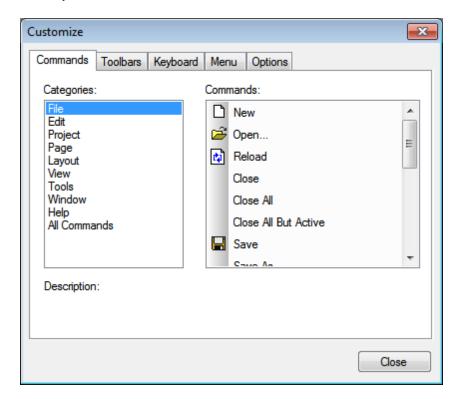
The customize command lets you customize MobileTogether Designer to suit your personal needs.

Commands
Toolbars
Keyboard
Menu
Options

Commands

▼ Commands

The Commands tab enables you to add application commands to menus and toolbars according to your preference. Note that you cannot create new application commands or menus yourself.



To add a command to a toolbar or menu, do this:

- 1. Select the **All Commands** category in the *Categories* list box. The available commands appear in the *Commands* list box.
- Click on a command in the Commands list box and drag it to an existing menu or toolbar. An I-beam appears when you place the cursor over a valid position to drop the command.
- 3. Release the mouse button at the position you want to insert the command.

Note the following:

- When you drag a command, a small button appears at the tip of mouse pointer:
 This indicates that the command is currently being dragged.
- An "x" below the pointer indicates that the command cannot be dropped at the current cursor position.
- If the cursor is moved to a position at which the command can be dropped (a toolbar or menu), the "x" disappears and an I-beam indicates the valid position.
- Commands can be placed in menus or toolbars. If you have <u>created you own</u> toolbar, you can use this customization mechanism to populate the toolbar.
- Moving the cursor over a closed menu, opens that menu, allowing you to insert the

command anywhere in that menu.

To add a command to a context menu, do this:

- 1. In the Customize dialog, click the Menu tab.
- 2. In the Context Menu pane, select a context menu from the combo box. The selected context menu appears.
- 3. In the Customize dialog, switch back to the Commands tab.
- 4. Drag the command you wish to create from the *Commands* list box and drop it onto the desired location in the context menu.

To delete a command from a menu, context menu, or toolbar, or to delete an entire menu, do this.

- 1. With the Customize dialog open (and any tab selected), right-click a menu or a menu command.
- 2. Select **Delete** from the context menu that appears. Alternatively, drag the menu or menu command till an "x" icon appears below the mouse pointer, and then drop the menu or menu command.

To reinstate deleted menu commands, use the mechanisms described in this section. To reinstate a deleted menu, go to **Tools | Customize | Menu**, and click the **Reset** button in the *Application Frame Menus* pane. Alternatively, go to **Tools | Customize | Toolbars**, select Menu Bar, and click the **Reset** button.

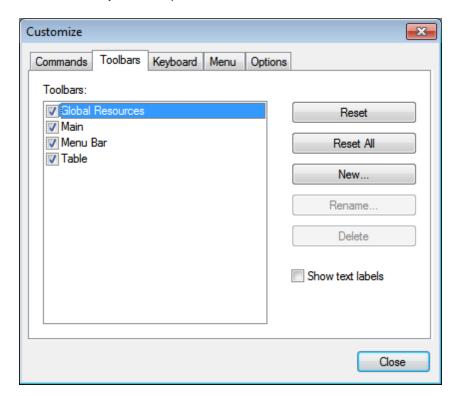
Toolbars

▼ Toolbars

Application toolbars contain icons for the most frequently used menu commands. Information about each icon is displayed in a tooltip and in the Status Bar when the cursor is placed over the icon. You can drag a toolbar to any location on the screen, where it will appear as a floating window.

The Toolbars tab enables you to do the following:

- Activate or deactivate specific toolbars (that is, to decide which ones to display in the interface)
- Set what icons are displayed in each toolbar
- Create your own specialized toolbars



The following functionality is available:

- To activate or deactivate a toolbar: Click its check box in the Toolbars list box.
- To add a new toolbar. Click the New button and give the toolbar a name in the Toolbar Name dialog that pops up. From the <u>Commands</u> tab drag commands into the new toolbar.
- To change the name of an added toolbar: Select the added toolbar in the Toolbars pane, click the Rename button, and edit the name in the Toolbar Name dialog that pops up.
- To reset the Menu bar. Select the Menu Bar item in the Toolbars pane, and then click **Reset**. This resets the Menu bar to the state it was in when the application was installed.

• To reset all toolbar and menu commands: Click the **Reset All** button. This resets all toolbars and menus to the states they were in when the application was installed.

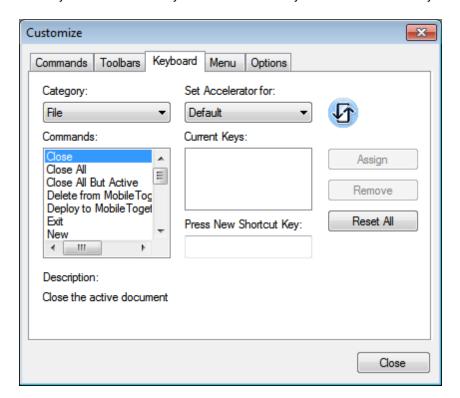
- To delete a toolbar: Select the toolbar you wish to delete in the Toolbars pane and click **Delete**.
- To show text labels of commands in a particular toolbar. Select that toolbar and click the Show Text Labels check box. Note that text labels have to be activated for each toolbar separately.

Note: To add a command to a toolbar, drag the command you want from the *Commands* list box in the <u>Commands</u> tab to the toolbar. To delete a command from a toolbar, open the Customize dialog, and with any tab selected, drag the command out of the toolbar (see <u>Commands</u> for more details).

Keyboard

Keyboard

The Keyboard tab enables you to create new keyboard shortcuts for any command.



Assign a shortcut

To assign a shortcut to a command, do the following.

- 1. Select the All Commands category in the Category combo box.
- 2. In the *Commands* list box, select the command to which you wish to assign a new shortcut or select the command the shortcut of which you wish to change.
- 3. Click in the Press New Shortcut Key text box, and press the shortcut you wish to assign to that command. The shortcut appears in the Press New Shortcut Key text box. If the shortcut has not yet been assigned to any command, the Assign button is enabled. If the shortcut has already been assigned to a command, then that command is displayed below the text box and the Assign button is disabled. (To clear the Press New Shortcut Key text box, press any of the control keys, Ctrl, Alt or Shift).
- 4. Click the **Assign** button to assign the shortcut. The shortcut now appears in the *Current Keys* list box. You can assign multiple shortcuts to a single command.
- 5. Click the **Close** button to confirm.

Delete a shortcut

A shortcut cannot be assigned to multiple commands. If you wish to delete a shortcut, click it in the Current Keys list box and then click the **Remove** button. Click **Close**.

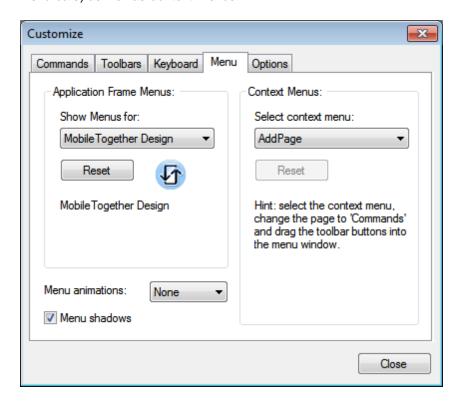
Set accelerator for

Currently no function is available.

Menu

▼ Menu

The Menu tab allows you to customize the two main menu bars (default and application menu bars) as well as context menus.



Customizing the default menu bar and application menu bar

The default menu bar is the menu bar that is displayed when no document is open in the main window. The application menu bar is the menu bar that is displayed when one or more documents are open in the main window. Each menu bar can be customized separately, and customization changes made to one do not affect the other. To customize a menu bar, select it in the *Show Menus For* combo box (see screenshot above). Then switch to the Commands tab of the Customize dialog and drag commands from the Commands list box to the menu bar or into any of the menus.

Deleting commands from menus and resetting the menu bars

To delete an entire menu or a command inside a menu, select that menu or menu command, and then either (i) right-click and select **Delete**, or (ii) drag away from the menu bar or menu, respectively. You can reset each of these two menu bars (default and application menu bars) to its original installation state by selecting the menu in the *Show Menus For* combo box and then clicking the **Reset** button below the combo box.

Customizing the application's context menus

Context menus are the menus that appear when you right-click certain objects in the application's interface. Each of these context menus can be customized by doing the following:

- 1. Select the context menu you want in the *Select Context Menu* combo box. This pops up the context menu.
- 2. Switching to the Commands tab of the Customize dialog.
- 3. Drag a command from the Commands list box into the context menu.
- 4. If you wish to delete a command from the context menu, right-click that command in the context menu, and click **Delete**. Alternatively, you can drag the command you want to delete out of the context menu.

You can reset any context menu to its original installation state by selecting it in the *Select Context Menu* combo box and then clicking the **Reset** button below the combo box.

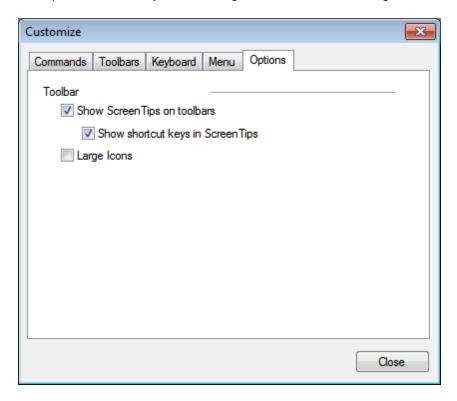
Menu shadows

Select the Menu shadows check box to give all menus shadows.

Options

▼ Options

The Options tab allows you to define general environment settings.



Select the check boxes to toggle on the following options:

- Show ScreenTips on toolbar: Displays a popup when the mouse pointer is placed over an icon in any toolbar. The popup contains a short description of the icon function, as well as the associated keyboard shortcut, if one has been assigned and if the Show shortcut keys option has been checked.
- Show shortcut keys in Screen Tips: Defines whether shortcut information will be shown in screen tips.
- Large icons: Toggles the size of toolbar icons between standard and large.

Restore Toolbars and Windows

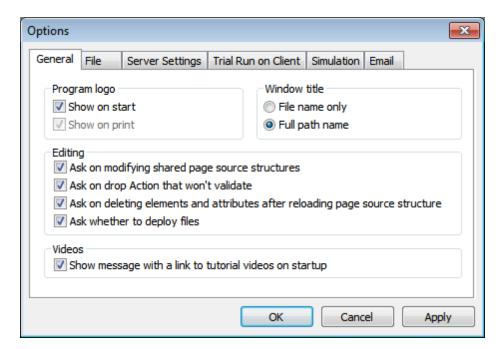
▼ Restore Toolbars and Windows

■ Description

Shuts down MobileTogether Designer and restarts it with all toolbars and windows reset to the original state in which they were at installation.

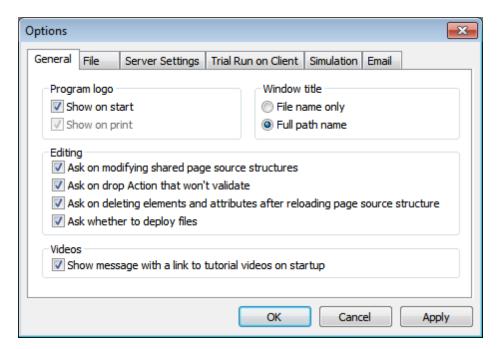
Options

The **Options** command displays the Options dialog (*screenshot below*). The settings available in the various tabs are described below.



▼ General

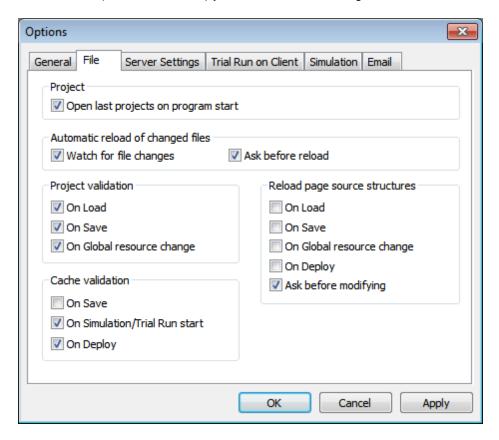
In the General tab (screenshot below) you can define the settings shown in the screenshot.



- Program logo: Can be shown at program start and in print output.
- Window title: The application window can display either the file name only, or the full file path and file name.
- Editing | Ask: In situations where designer input is required, you are prompted about
 whether to go ahead with the action or not. For example, when a shared page
 resource is modified, you are asked whether the modifications should be available on
 all pages that share the resource, or whether the modifications should apply to the
 current page only.
- Videos: Shows a message about MobileTogether Designer demo videos when
 MobileTogether Designer is started with no design open. (To start MobileTogether
 Designer with no design open, close all designs and then close MobileTogether
 Designer.) The message contains a link to the demo video page on the Altova
 website. The videos on this page provide a quick introduction to the features of
 MobileTogether Designer.

▼ File

In the File tab (screenshot below) you can define the settings shown in the screenshot.



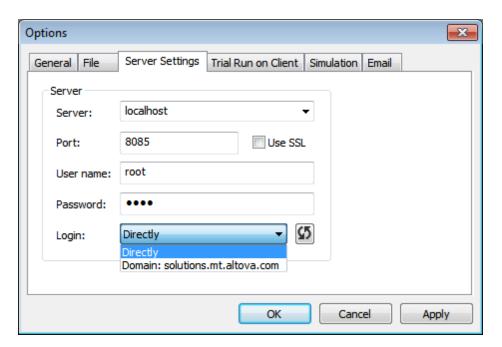
- *Project:* If selected, then on program start, all the projects are opened that were open when the program was last closed.
- Reload of changed files: Options to watch for changes made by another user and to ask whether to reload or not. If a file is reloaded, your own changes from the time of the last save will be lost.

Project validation: When to carry out project validation. Select the options you want.

- Reload page source structures: When to reload page source structures. Select the options you want. The Ask before modifying option determines whether the user should be asked before modifying page source structures that are shared with one or more other pages. For example, if this option is selected and a shared page source structure is modified, then the user is asked to select from the following options: (i) whether the shared structure should be modified in all its occurrences (that is on all pages where it occurs), (ii) whether a copy of the data structure should be made with a different name for this page; this data structure can be modified subsequently without affecting the data structures on the other pages, (iii) whether to cancel the modification.
- Cache validation: Specifies when the cache is validated. Select the options you want.

▼ Server Settings

In the Server Settings tab (screenshot below) you can define the connection and authentication settings of the MobileTogether Server to which you wish to connect MobileTogether Designer. These settings will be used when solutions are deployed to the server and when the server is used for workflow simulation. The user must have the corresponding MobileTogether Server rights: Save workflow from designer and Run server simulation. The access rights of users of MobileTogether Server are defined in the Web UI of MobileTogether Server. See the MobileTogether Server user manual for information about how to do this.

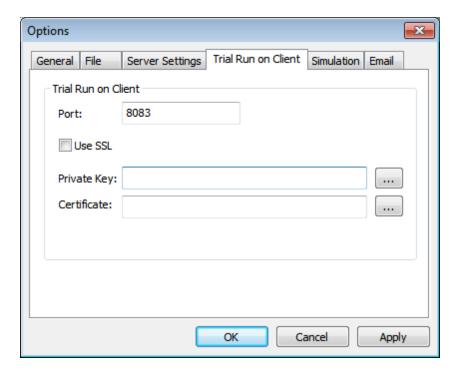


If the <u>Active Directory login feature of MobileTogether Server</u> has been enabled for you as a domain user, then the login information you enter for connecting MobileTogether Designer to MobileTogether Server can be your domain authentication info. For example, if your Windows user name and password on your office network domain has been enabled for use as MobileTogether Server authentication, then you can enter your domain-specific user name and password.

To select whether user credentials directly specified in MobileTogether Server or domain-specific user credentials are to be used, select the appropriate option from the *Login* combo box (see screenshot above). The button next to the combo box is for updating the connection with MobileTogether Server.

▼ Trial Run on Client

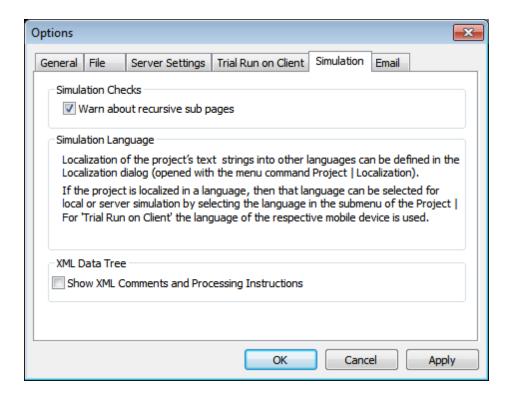
In the Trial Run on Client tab (*screenshot below*) you can define the local port via which MobileTogether Designer connects with the client. For the Trial Run on Client feature, MobileTogether Designer itself acts as the MobileTogether Server and serves the design and related data files directly to the client.



- SSL: Whether SSL is used.
- Private key, certificate: Browse for the SSL private key and certificate (if SSL is used).

▼ Simulation

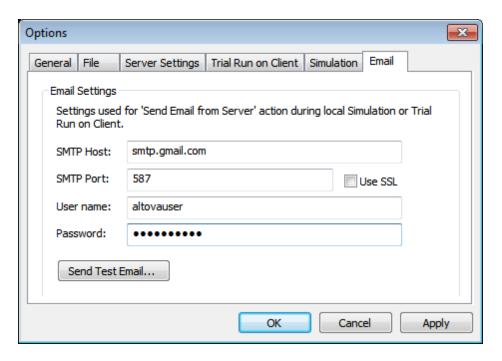
In the Simulation tab (*screenshot below*), you can specify whether warnings should be issued about recursive sub pages and whether comment and processing instructions should be shown in the simulator's XML data tree..



- Simulation checks | Recursive sub pages: Specifies whether warnings should be issued about recursive sub pages.
- Simulation language: A hint about localization options. A project can be localized—that is, the text strings in the project can be translated—in the Localization dialog (Project | Localization). If a project has been localized into some language, then that simulation language can be chosen as the simulation language in the submenu of the Project | Simulation Language command.
- XML data tree: Specifies whether comments and processing instructions should also be displayed in the simulator's XML data tree.

▼ Email

The settings in the Email tab are used during <u>local simulations</u> for access to the SMTP server of an email service provider (usually your ISP). They are used by the <u>Send Email (from Server)</u> action, which enables emails to be sent by the end user via the server. In a live, real-time scenario, the settings to access the SMTP server are configured in MobileTogether Server. During local simulations, however, the SMTP server information is not available (because MobileTogether Server is not accessed during local simulations). SMTP server settings for local simulations are therefore entered in this tab (*screenshot below*).



- SMTP Host and SMTP Port: These are the SMTP host name and SMTP port of your ISP's SMTP server. These details are provided to you by your ISP.
- *User Name and Password:* The user name and password of an email account that is registered with the email service provider.

After entering the details, click \mathbf{OK} . You can send a test email to check whether the settings work correctly.

14.7 Window

The **Window** menu contains the following commands:

- <u>Cascade</u>
- Tile Horizontally
- Tile Vertically
- Close
- Close All
- Close All But Active
- Currently Open Windows List

Cascade and Tile

The **Window** menu has commands to specify how MobileTogether Designer windows should be displayed in the GUI (cascaded, tiled, or maximized). To maximize a window, click the **Maximize** button of that window.

Close, Close All, Close All But Active

▼ Close

■ Description

Closes the active document window. If the file was modified (indicated by an asterisk * after the file name in the title bar), you will be asked if you wish to save the file first.

▼ Close All

■ Description

Closes all open document windows. If any document has been modified (indicated by an asterisk * after the file name in the title bar), you will be asked if you wish to save the file first.

Close All But Active

■ Description

Closes all open document windows except the active document window. If any document has been modified (indicated by an asterisk * after the file name in the title bar), you will be asked if you wish to save the file first.

Currently Open Window List

All currently open document windows are listed at the bottom of the **Window** menu by document name, with the active window being checked. To make another window active, click the name of the window you wish to make active. This list shows all currently open windows, and lets you quickly switch between them. You can also use **CTRL+TAB** or **CTRL+F6** keyboard shortcuts to cycle through the open windows.

Windows dialog

At the very bottom of the list of open windows is an entry for the **Windows** dialog. Clicking this entry opens the Windows dialog, which displays a list of all open windows and provides commands that can be applied to the selected window/s. (A window is selected by clicking on its name.)

Warning: To exit the Windows dialog, click **OK**. Do **not** click the **Close Window(s)** button. The **Close Window(s)** button closes the window/s currently selected in the Windows dialog.

14.8 Help

The **HeIp** menu contains commands required to get help or more information about MobileTogether Designer, as well as links to information and support pages on the Altova web server. The **HeIp** menu also contains the <u>Registration dialog</u>, which lets you enter your license key-code once you have purchased the product.

The **Help** menu contains the following commands:

- Table of Contents
- Index
- Search
- Software Activation
- Order Form
- Registration
- Check for Updates
- Support Center
- Show Video Demos
- MobileTogether Designer on the Internet
- About MobileTogether Designer

Table of Contents, Index, Search

▼ Table of Contents

■ Description

Opens the onscreen help manual of MobileTogether Designer with the Table of Contents displayed in the left-hand-side pane of the Help window. The Table of Contents provides an overview of the entire Help document. Clicking an entry in the Table of Contents takes you to that topic.

▼ Index

■ Description

Opens the onscreen help manual of MobileTogether Designer with the Keyword Index displayed in the left-hand-side pane of the Help window. The index lists keywords and lets you navigate to a topic by double-clicking the keyword. If a keyword is linked to more than one topic, a list of these topics is displayed.

▼ Search

■ Description

Opens the onscreen help manual of MobileTogether Designer with the Search dialog displayed in the left-hand-side pane of the Help window. To search for a term, enter the term in the input field, and press **Return**. The Help system performs a full-text search on the entire Help documentation and returns a list of hits. Double-click any item to display that item.

Activation, Order Form, Registration, Updates

Software Activation

Description

After you download your Altova product software, you can activate it using either a free evaluation key or a purchased permanent license key.

- Free evaluation key. When you first start the software after downloading and installing it, the Software Activation dialog will pop up. In it is a button to request a free evaluation key-code. Enter your name, company, and e-mail address in the dialog that appears, and click Request Now! The evaluation key is sent to the e-mail address you entered and should reach you in a few minutes. Now enter the key in the key-code field of the Software Activation dialog box and click **OK** to start working with your Altova product. The software will be unlocked for a period of 30 days.
- Permanent license key. The Software Activation dialog contains a button to purchase a permanent license key. Clicking this button takes you to Altova's online shop, where you can purchase a permanent license key for your product. There are two types of permanent license: single-user and multi-user. Both will be sent to you by e-mail. A single-user license contains your license-data and includes your name, company, e-mail, and key-code. A multi-user license contains your license-data and includes your company name and key-code. Note that your license agreement does not allow you to install more than the licensed number of copies of your Altova software on the computers in your organization (per-seat license). Please make sure that you enter the data required in the registration dialog exactly as given in your license e-mail.

Note: When you enter your license information in the Software Activation dialog, ensure that you enter the data exactly as given in your license e-mail. For multi-user licenses, each user should enter his or her own name in the Name field.

The Software Activation dialog can be accessed at any time by clicking the **Help | Software Activation** command.

Order Form

■ Description

When you are ready to order a licensed version of the software product, you can use either the **Order license key** button in the Software Activation dialog (see previous section) or the **Help | Order Form** command to proceed to the secure Altova Online Shop.

▼ Registration

■ Description

Opens the Altova Product Registration page in a tab of your browser. Registering your Altova software will help ensure that you are always kept up to date with the latest product information.

Check for Updates

■ Description

Checks with the Altova server whether a newer version than yours is currently available and displays a message accordingly.

Other Commands

▼ Support Center

■ Description

A link to the Altova Support Center on the Internet. The Support Center provides FAQs, discussion forums where problems are discussed, and access to Altova's technical support staff.

Show Video Demos

■ Description

A link to the MobileTogether Designer <u>video demo page</u> on the Altova website. The videos on this page show you how to get started with using MobileTogether Designer.

MobileTogether Designer on the Internet

■ Description

A link to the <u>Altova website</u> on the Internet. You can learn more about MobileTogether Designer and related technologies and products at the <u>Altova website</u>.

About MobileTogether Designer

■ Description

Displays the splash window and version number of your product.

Chapter 15

Frequently Asked Questions

15 Frequently Asked Questions

■ My project uses MySQL over ODBC. If I deploy my solution to MobileTogether Server and run it from there, I get the following error: "Database: [Microsoft][ODBC Driver Manager] Data source name not found and no default driver specified... Retrieval from database resulted in error." How do I resolve this?

You have to consider that MobileTogether Server is installed as a Windows Service, and therefore by default doesn't run under your Windows account. Try these options to resolve your issue:

- Your Data Source Name (DSN) is probably defined as a User DSN. Use Windows Control Panel to move/recreate it as a System DSN. Then, if necessary, redo the connection in MobileTogether Designer, and redeploy.
- Assign the MobileTogether Server service to your Windows user account. After installation of MobileTogether Server, use Windows Services app to assign your user account.
- Use MobileTogether's <u>Global Resources mechanism</u> to use a different connection, or even a different database, for MobileTogether Server and MobileTogether Designer.
- ▼ I am using an ODBC connection with a Sybase DB (Sybase ASE ODBC Driver 4.10.00.00). It looks like the user name and password are not being stored to the registry or file DSN. Why?

If you create a data source using the ODBC-Administrator, user name and password are never stored to the registry or the file DSN. In order to make the connection work for MobileTogether Server, which of course cannot show a popup to enter username and password, you have to add this information manually. This needs to be done for System DSNs, UserDSNs (as REG SZ) and FileDSNs:

Name: UID Value: <Your UserID>Name: PWD Value: <Your Password>

▼ I am using an ODBC connection with an IBM iSeries (iSeries Access ODBC Driver 12.00.00.00). The user name and password are not being saved. What should I do?

The design file (*.mtd) needs to be modified. This is because we currently write information to the file that the driver returns and is not correct. What is wrong:

- The current catalog name is replaced with the default catalog that the ODBC driver returns.
- User ID and Password are not stored in the design file by default and cannot be stored in the ODBC-Connection information.

The line created by MobileTogether Designer:

```
<dbContextInfo catalog="<someInitialCatalog>" connection="DSN=MyISeries"
contextType="odbc" databaseMajorVersion="7" vendor="ibmiseries"/>

Modify it to the following:
<dbContextInfo catalog="MyCatalog"
connection="DSN=MyISeries;PWD=EncryptedPassword;UID=User1"
contextType="odbc" databaseMajorVersion="7" vendor="ibmiseries"/>
```

▼ If I use a web browser as a client, where is the persistent data stored?

Data that is saved on a web client is saved in the local storage (aka web storage) of your browser. HTML 5.0 local storage is supported in the following browsers:

IE 8.0	Firefox	Safari	Chrome	Opera	iPhone 2.0	Android
+	3.5+	4.0+	4.0+	10.5+	+	2.0+

Chapter 16

Appendices

16 Appendices

Information included in this section:

- XSLT and XPath/XQuery Functions
- License Information

16.1 XSLT and XPath/XQuery Functions

This section lists Altova extension functions that can be used in XPath and/or XQuery expressions. Altova extension functions can be used with Altova's XSLT and XQuery engines, and provide functionality additional to that available in the function libraries defined in the W3C standards.

General points

The following general points should be noted:

- Functions from the core function libraries defined in the W3C specifications can be called without a prefix. That's because the XSLT and XQuery engines read non-prefixed functions as belonging to a default functions namespace which is that specified in the XPath/XQuery functions specificationshttp://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions. If this namespace is explicitly declared in an XSLT or XQuery document, the prefix used in the namespace declaration can also optionally be used on function names.
- In general, if a function expects a sequence of one item as an argument, and a sequence of more than one item is submitted, then an error is returned.
- All string comparisons are done using the Unicode codepoint collation.
- Results that are QNames are serialized in the form [prefix:]localname.

Precision of xs:decimal

The precision refers to the number of digits in the number, and a minimum of 18 digits is required by the specification. For division operations that produce a result of type xs:decimal, the precision is 19 digits after the decimal point with no rounding.

Implicit timezone

When two date, time, or dateTime values need to be compared, the timezone of the values being compared need to be known. When the timezone is not explicitly given in such a value, the implicit timezone is used. The implicit timezone is taken from the system clock, and its value can be checked with the implicit-timezone() function.

Collations

The default collation is the Unicode codepoint collation, which compares strings on the basis of their Unicode codepoint. Other supported collations are the ICU collations listed below. To use a specific collation, supply its URI as given in the list of supported collations (*table below*). Any string comparisons, including for the max and min functions, will be made according to the specified collation. If the collation option is not specified, the default Unicode-codepoint collation is used.

Language	URIs
da: Danish	da_DK
de: German	de_AT, de_BE, de_CH, de_DE, de_LI, de_LU
en: English	en_AS, en_AU, en_BB, en_BE, en_BM, en_BW, en_BZ, en_CA,

	,
	en_GB, en_GU, en_HK, en_IE, en_IN, en_JM, en_MH, en_MP, en_MT, en_MU, en_NA, en_NZ, en_PH, en_PK, en_SG, en_TT, en_UM, en_US, en_VI, en_ZA, en_ZW
es: Spanish	es_419, es_AR, es_BO, es_CL, es_CO, es_CR, es_DO, es_EC, es_ES, es_GQ, es_GT, es_HN, es_MX, es_NI, es_PA, es_PE, es_PR, es_PY, es_SV, es_US, es_UY, es_VE
fr: French	<pre>fr_BE, fr_BF, fr_BI, fr_BJ, fr_BL, fr_CA, fr_CD, fr_CF, fr_CG, fr_CH, fr_CI, fr_CM, fr_DJ, fr_FR, fr_GA, fr_GN, fr_GP, fr_GQ, fr_KM, fr_LU, fr_MC, fr_MF, fr_MG, fr_ML, fr_MQ, fr_NE, fr_RE, fr_RW, fr_SN, fr_TD, fr_TG</pre>
it: Italian	it_CH, it_IT
ja: Japanese	ja_JP
nb: Norwegian Bokmal	nb_NO
nl: Dutch	nl_AW, nl_BE, nl_NL
nn: Nynorsk	nn_NO
pt: Portuguese	pt_AO, pt_BR, pt_GW, pt_MZ, pt_PT, pt_ST
ru: Russian	ru_MD, ru_RU, ru_UA
sv: Swedish	sv_FI, sv_SE

Namespace axis

The namespace axis is deprecated in XPath 2.0. Use of the namespace axis is, however, supported. To access namespace information with XPath 2.0 mechanisms, use the in-scope-prefixes(), namespace-uri() and namespace-uri-for-prefix() functions.

Altova Extension Functions

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions.

- In order to distinguish Altova extension functions from functions in the standard library, Altova extension functions are named in this documentation with a suffix of [altova:]. For example: add-years-to-date [altova:].
- When using Altova extension functions in your XPath/XQuery expressions, however, you must use the function without any prefix or suffix, just as you would use any standard XPath/XQuery function. Use an Altova extension like this: add-years-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), 10).

XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XP1 XP2 XP3
XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XSLT1 XSLT2 XSLT3
XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):	XQ1 XQ3

XPath/XQuery functions

XPath/XQuery functions can be used both in XPath expressions as well as in XQuery expressions:

- Date/Time
- Geolocation
- Image-related
- Numeric
- <u>Sequence</u>
- String
- Miscellaneous

XPath/XQuery Functions: Date and Time

Altova's date/time extension functions can be used in XPath and XQuery expressions and provide additional functionality for the processing of data held as XML Schema's various date and time datatypes.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions.

- In order to distinguish Altova extension functions from functions in the standard library, Altova extension functions are named in this documentation with a suffix of [altova:]. For example: add-years-to-date [altova:].
- When using Altova extension functions in your XPath/XQuery expressions, however, you must use the function without any prefix or suffix, just as you would use any standard XPath/XQuery function. Use an Altova extension like this: add-years-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), 10).

XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XP1 XP2 XP3
XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XSLT1 XSLT2 XSLT3
XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):	XQ1 XQ3

Grouped by functionality

- Add duration to xs:dateTime and return xs:dateTime
- Add a duration to xs:date and return xs:date
- Add a duration to xs:time and return xs:time
- Format and retrieve durations
- Remove timezone from functions that generate current date/time
- Return weekday as integer from date
- Return week number as integer from date
- Build date, time, or duration type from lexical components of each type
- · Construct date, dateTime, or time type from string input
- · Age-related functions

Grouped alphabetically

```
altova:add-days-to-date
altova:add-days-to-dateTime
altova:add-hours-to-dateTime
altova:add-hours-to-time
altova:add-minutes-to-dateTime
altova:add-minutes-to-date
altova:add-months-to-date
altova:add-months-to-dateTime
altova:add-seconds-to-dateTime
altova:add-seconds-to-time
altova:add-years-to-date
altova:add-years-to-dateTime
altova:add-years-to-dateTime
altova:age
altova:age
```

```
altova:build-date
altova:build-duration
altova:build-time
altova:current-dateTime-no-TZ
altova:current-time-no-TZ
altova:current-time-no-TZ
altova:format-duration
altova:parse-date
altova:parse-dateTime
altova:parse-duration
altova:parse-time
altova:parse-time
altova:weekday-from-date
altova:weekday-from-dateTime
altova:weeknumber-from-date
```

[<u>Top</u>]

Add a duration to xs:dateTime XP3 XQ3

These functions add a duration to xs:dateTime and return xs:dateTime. The xs:dateTime type has a format of CCYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss. This is a concatenation of the xs:date and xs:time formats separated by the letter T. A timezone suffix+01:00 (for example) is optional.

▼ add-years-to-dateTime [altova:]

```
add-years-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Years as xs:integer) as
xs:dateTime XP3 XO3
```

Adds a duration in years to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of years to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.

- Examples
 - add-years-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), 10) returns 2024-01-15T14:00:00
 - add-years-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), -4) returns 2010-01-15T14:00:00
- ▼ add-months-to-dateTime [altova:]

```
add-months-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Months as xs:integer) as
xs:dateTime XP3 XQ3
```

Adds a duration in months to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of months to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.

- Examples
 - add-months-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), 10) returns 2014-11-15T14:00:00
 - add-months-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), -2) returns 2013-11-15T14:00:00

add-days-to-dateTime [altova:]

```
add-days-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Days as xs:integer) as
xs:dateTime XP3 XQ3
```

Adds a duration in days to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of days to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.

■ Examples

- add-days-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), 10) returns 2014-01-25T14:00:00
- add-days-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:00"), -8) returns 2014-01-07T14:00:00

▼ add-hours-to-dateTime [altova:]

```
add-hours-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Hours as xs:integer) as xs:dateTime XP3 XQ3
```

Adds a duration in hours to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of hours to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.

■ Examples

- add-hours-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T13:00:00"), 10) returns 2014-01-15T23:00:00
- add-hours-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T13:00:00"), -8) returns 2014-01-15T05:00:00

▼ add-minutes-to-dateTime [altova:]

```
add-minutes-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Minutes as xs:integer) as
xs:dateTime XP3 XQ3
```

Adds a duration in minutes to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of minutes to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.

■ Examples

- add-minutes-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:10:00"), 45) returns 2014-01-15T14:55:00
- add-minutes-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:10:00"), -5) returns 2014-01-15T14:05:00

add-seconds-to-dateTime [altova:]

```
add-seconds-to-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Seconds as xs:integer) as
xs:dateTime XP3 XQ3
```

Adds a duration in seconds to an xs:dateTime (see examples below). The second argument is the number of seconds to be added to the xs:dateTime supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:dateTime.

■ Examples

- add-seconds-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:10"), 20) returns 2014-01-15T14:00:30
- add-seconds-to-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-01-15T14:00:10"), -5) returns 2014-01-15T14:00:05

[<u>Top</u>]

Add a duration to xs:date XP3 XQ3

These functions add a duration to xs:date and return xs:date. The xs:date type has a format of CCYY-MM-DD.

add-years-to-date [altova:]

add-years-to-date(Date as xs:date, Years as xs:integer) as xs:date Adds a duration in years to a date. The second argument is the number of years to be added to the xs:date supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:date.

- Examples
 - add-years-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), 10) returns 2024-01-15
 - add-years-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), -4) returns 2010-01-15
- ▼ add-months-to-date [altova:]

add-months-to-date(Date as xs:date, Months as xs:integer) as xs:date XP3 XQ3 Adds a duration in months to a date. The second argument is the number of months to be added to the xs:date supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:date.

- Examples
 - add-months-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), 10) returns 2014-11-15
 - add-months-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), -2) returns 2013-11-15
- ▼ add-days-to-date [altova:]

add-days-to-date(Date as xs:date, Days as xs:integer) as xs:date XP3 XQ3

Adds a duration in days to a date. The second argument is the number of days to be added to the xs:date supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:date.

- Examples
 - add-days-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), 10) returns 2014-01-25
 - add-days-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), -8) returns 2014-01-07

[**Top**]

Format and retrieve durations XP3 XQ3

These functions add a duration to xs:date and return xs:date. The xs:date type has a format of

CCYY-MM-DD.

▼ format-duration [altova:]

format-duration(Duration as xs:duration, Picture as xs:string) as xs:string

Formats a duration, which is submitted as the first argument, according to a picture string submitted as the second argument. The output is a text string formatted according to the picture string.

■ Examples

- format-duration(xs:duration("P2DT2H53M11.7S"), "Days:[D01] Hours:[H01] Minutes:[m01] Seconds:[s01] Fractions:[f0]") returns "Days:02 Hours:02 Minutes:53 Seconds:11 Fractions:7"
- format-duration(xs:duration("P3M2DT2H53M11.7S"), "Months:[M01] Days:
 [D01] Hours:[H01] Minutes:[m01]") returns "Months:03 Days:02 Hours:02
 Minutes:53"

parse-duration [altova:]

parse-duration(InputString as xs:string, Picture as xs:string) as xs:duration

Takes a patterned string as the first argument, and a picture string as the second argument. The input string is parsed on the basis of the picture string, and an xs:duration is returned.

■ Examples

- parse-duration("Days:02 Hours:02 Minutes:53 Seconds:11 Fractions:7"),
 "Days:[D01] Hours:[H01] Minutes:[m01] Seconds:[s01] Fractions:[f0]")
 returns "P2DT2H53M11.7S"
- parse-duration("Months:03 Days:02 Hours:02 Minutes:53 Seconds:11
 Fractions:7", "Months:[M01] Days:[D01] Hours:[H01] Minutes:[m01]")
 returns "P3M2DT2H53M"

[<u>Top</u>]

Add a duration to xs:time XP3 XQ3

These functions add a duration to xs:time and return xs:time. The xs:time type has a lexical form of hh:mm:ss.sss. An optional time zone may be suffixed. The letter z indicates Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). All other time zones are represented by their difference from UTC in the format +hh:mm, or -hh:mm. If no time zone value is present, it is considered unknown; it is not assumed to be UTC.

▼ add-hours-to-time [altova:]

add-hours-to-time(Time as xs:time, Hours as xs:integer) as xs:time XP3 XQ3

Adds a duration in hours to a time. The second argument is the number of hours to be added to the xs:time supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:time.

Examples

- add-hours-to-time(xs:time("11:00:00"), 10) returns 21:00:00
- add-hours-to-time(xs:time("11:00:00"), -7) returns 04:00:00

▼ add-minutes-to-time [altova:]

```
add-minutes-to-time(Time as xs:time, Minutes as xs:integer) as xs:time XP3
```

Adds a duration in minutes to a time. The second argument is the number of minutes to be added to the xs:time supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:time.

- Examples
 - add-minutes-to-time(xs:time("14:10:00"), 45) returns 14:55:00
 - add-minutes-to-time(xs:time("14:10:00"), -5) returns 14:05:00
- ▼ add-seconds-to-time [altova:]

```
add-seconds-to-time(Time as xs:time, Minutes as xs:integer) as xs:time XP3
```

Adds a duration in seconds to a time. The second argument is the number of seconds to be added to the xs:time supplied as the first argument. The result is of type xs:time. The Seconds component can be in the range of 0 to 59.999.

- Examples
 - add-seconds-to-time(xs:time("14:00:00"), 20) returns 14:00:20
 - add-seconds-to-time(xs:time("14:00:00"), 20.895) returns 14:00:20.895

[Top]

Remove the timezone part from date/time datatypes XP3 XQ3

These functions remove the timezone from the current xs:dateTime, xs:date, or xs:time values, respectively. Note that the difference between xs:dateTime and xs:dateTimeStamp is that in the case of the latter the timezone part is required (while it is optional in the case of the former). So the format of an xs:dateTimeStamp value is: CCYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss±hh:mm. or CCYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssz. If the date and time is read from the system clock as xs:dateTimeStamp, the current-dateTime-no-TZ() function can be used to remove the timezone if so required.

current-dateTime-no-TZ [altova:]

```
current-dateTime-no-TZ() as xs:dateTime XP3 XQ3
```

This function takes no argument. It removes the timezone part of current-dateTime() (which is the current date-and-time according to the system clock) and returns an xs:dateTime value.

■ Examples

If the current dateTime is 2014-01-15T14:00:00+01:00:

- current-dateTime-no-TZ() returns 2014-01-15T14:00:00
- current-date-no-TZ [altova:]

```
current-date-no-TZ() as xs:date XP3 XQ3
```

This function takes no argument. It removes the timezone part of current-date() (which is

the current date according to the system clock) and returns an xs:date value.

■ Examples

If the current date is 2014-01-15+01:00:

- current-date-no-TZ() returns 2014-01-15
- ▼ current-time-no-TZ [altova:]

```
current-time-no-TZ() as xs:time XP3 XQ3
```

This function takes no argument. It removes the timezone part of current-time() (which is the current time according to the system clock) and returns an xs:time value.

■ Examples

If the current time is 14:00:00+01:00:

• current-time-no-TZ() returns 14:00:00

[<u>Top</u>]

Return the weekday from xs:dateTime Or xs:date XP3 XQ3

These functions return the weekday (as an integer) from xs:dateTime or xs:date. The days of the week are numbered (using the American format) from 1 to 7, with Sunday=1. In the European format, the week starts with Monday (=1). The American format, where Sunday=1, can be set by using the integer 0 where an integer is accepted to indicate the format.

weekday-from-dateTime [altova:]

```
weekday-from-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime) as xs:integer XP3 XQ3
```

Takes a date-with-time as its single argument and returns the day of the week of this date as an integer. The weekdays are numbered starting with <code>Sunday=1</code>. If the European format is required (where <code>Monday=1</code>), use the other signature of this function (see next signature below).

- Examples
 - weekday-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-02-03T09:00:00")) returns 2, which would indicate a Monday.

```
weekday-from-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Format as xs:integer) as
xs:integer XP3 XQ3
```

Takes a date-with-time as its first argument and returns the day of the week of this date as an integer. The weekdays are numbered starting with Monday=1. If the second (integer) argument is 0, then the weekdays are numbered 1 to 7 starting with Sunday=1. If the second argument is an integer other than 0, then Monday=1. If there is no second argument, the function is read as having the other signature of this function (see previous signature).

- Examples
 - weekday-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-02-03T09:00:00"), 1) returns 1, which would indicate a Monday
 - weekday-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-02-03T09:00:00"), 4) returns 1, which would indicate a Monday
 - weekday-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-02-03T09:00:00"), 0) returns 2,

which would indicate a Monday.

▼ weekday-from-date [altova:]

weekday-from-date(Date as xs:date) as xs:integer XP3 XQ3

Takes a date as its single argument and returns the day of the week of this date as an integer. The weekdays are numbered starting with Sunday=1. If the European format is required (where Monday=1), use the other signature of this function (see next signature below).

■ Examples

• weekday-from-date(xs:date("2014-02-03+01:00")) returns 2, which would indicate a Monday.

```
weekday-from-date(Date as xs:date, Format as xs:integer) as xs:integer XP3
xo3
```

Takes a date as its first argument and returns the day of the week of this date as an integer. The weekdays are numbered starting with Monday=1. If the second (Format) argument is 0, then the weekdays are numbered 1 to 7 starting with Sunday=1. If the second argument is an integer other than 0, then Monday=1. If there is no second argument, the function is read as having the other signature of this function (see previous signature).

Examples

- weekday-from-date(xs:date("2014-02-03"), 1) returns 1, which would indicate a Monday
- weekday-from-date(xs:date("2014-02-03"), 4) returns 1, which would indicate a Monday
- weekday-from-date(xs:date("2014-02-03"), 0) returns 2, which would indicate a Monday.

[<u>Top</u>]

Return the week number from xs:dateTime Or xs:date XP2 XQ1 XP3 XQ3

These functions return the week number (as an integer) from xs:dateTime or xs:date. Week-numbering is available in the US, ISO/European, and Islamic calendar formats. Week-numbering is different in these calendar formats because the week is considered to start on different days (on Sunday in the US format, Monday in the ISO/European format, and Saturday in the Islamic format).

▼ weeknumber-from-date [altova:]

```
weeknumber-from-date(Date as xs:date, Calendar as xs:integer) as xs:integer
XP2 XQ1 XP3 XQ3
```

Returns the week number of the submitted Date argument as an integer. The second argument (Calendar) specifies the calendar system to follow.

Supported Calendar values are:

- 0 = US calendar (week starts Sunday)
- 1 = ISO standard, European calendar (week starts Monday)
- 2 = Islamic calendar (week starts Saturday)

Default is o.

■ Examples

```
    weeknumber-from-date(xs:date("2014-03-23"), 0) returns 13
    weeknumber-from-date(xs:date("2014-03-23"), 1) returns 12
    weeknumber-from-date(xs:date("2014-03-23"), 2) returns 13
    weeknumber-from-date(xs:date("2014-03-23")) returns 13
```

The day of the date in the examples above (2014-03-23) is Sunday. So the US and Islamic calendars are one week ahead of the European calendar on this day.

▼ weeknumber-from-dateTime [altova:]

```
weeknumber-from-dateTime(DateTime as xs:dateTime, Calendar as xs:integer) as
xs:integer XP2 XQ1 XP3 XQ3
```

Returns the week number of the submitted DateTime argument as an integer. The second argument (Calendar) specifies the calendar system to follow.

Supported calendar values are:

- 0 = US calendar (week starts Sunday)
- 1 = ISO standard, European calendar (week starts Monday)
- 2 = Islamic calendar (week starts Saturday)

Default is o.

Examples

- weeknumber-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-03-23T00:00:00"), 0) returns
 13
- weeknumber-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-03-23T00:00:00"), 1) returns
- weeknumber-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-03-23T00:00:00"), 2) returns
 13
- weeknumber-from-dateTime(xs:dateTime("2014-03-23T00:00:00")) returns
 13

The day of the dateTime in the examples above (2014-03-23T00:00:00) is Sunday. So the US and Islamic calendars are one week ahead of the European calendar on this day.

[Top]

Build date, time, and duration datatypes from their lexical components xp3

The functions take the lexical components of the xs:date, xs:time, or xs:duration datatype as input arguments and combine them to build the respective datatype.

▼ build-date [altova:]

```
build-date(Year as xs:integer, Month as xs:integer, Date as xs:integer) as
xs:date XP3 XQ3
```

The first, second, and third arguments are, respectively, the year, month, and date. They are combined to build a value of xs:date type. The values of the integers must be within the correct range of that particular date part. For example, the second argument (for the month part) should not be greater than 12.

- Examples
 - build-date(2014, 2, 03) returns 2014-02-03

▼ build-time [altova:]

```
build-time(Hours as xs:integer, Minutes as xs:integer, Seconds as
xs:integer) as xs:time XP3 XQ3
```

The first, second, and third arguments are, respectively, the hour (0 to 23), minutes (0 to 59), and seconds (0 to 59) values. They are combined to build a value of xs:time type. The values of the integers must be within the correct range of that particular time part. For example, the second (Minutes) argument should not be greater than 59. To add a timezone part to the value, use the other signature of this function (see next signature).

- Examples
 - build-time(23, 4, 57) returns 23:04:57

```
build-time(Hours as xs:integer, Minutes as xs:integer, Seconds as xs:integer, TimeZone as xs:string) as xs:time XP3 XQ3
```

The first, second, and third arguments are, respectively, the hour (0 to 23), minutes (0 to 59), and seconds (0 to 59) values. The fourth argument is a string that provides the timezone part of the value. The four arguments are combined to build a value of xs:time type. The values of the integers must be within the correct range of that particular time part. For example, the second (Minutes) argument should not be greater than 59.

- Examples
 - build-time(23, 4, 57, '+1') returns 23:04:57+01:00

build-duration [altova:]

Takes two arguments to build a value of type xs:yearMonthDuration. The first arguments provides the Years part of the duration value, while the second argument provides the Months part. If the second (Months) argument is greater than or equal to 12, then the integer is divided by 12; the quotient is added to the first argument to provide the Years part of the duration value while the remainder (of the division) provides the Months part. To build a duration of type xs:dayTimeDuration., see the next signature.

- Examples
 - build-duration(2, 10) returns P2Y10M
 - build-duration(14, 27) returns P16Y3M
 - build-duration(2, 24) returns P4Y

build-duration(Days as xs:integer, Hours as xs:integer, Minutes as

xs:integer, Seconds as xs:integer) as xs:dayTimeDuration XP3 XQ3

Takes four arguments and combines them to build a value of type xs:dayTimeDuration. The first argument provides the Days part of the duration value, the second, third, and fourth arguments provide, respectively, the Hours, Minutes, and Seconds parts of the duration value. Each of the three Time arguments is converted to an equivalent value in terms of the next higher unit and the result is used for calculation of the total duration value. For example, 72 seconds is converted to 1M+12S (1 minute and 12 seconds), and this value is used for calculation of the total duration value. To build a duration of type xs:yearMonthDuration., see the previous signature.

Examples

- build-duration(2, 10, 3, 56) returns P2DT10H3M56S
- build-duration(1, 0, 100, 0) returns P1DT1H40M
- build-duration(1, 0, 0, 3600) returns P1DT1H

[<u>Top</u>]

Construct date, dateTime, and time datatypes from string input XP2 XQ1 XP3 XQ3

These functions take strings as arguments and construct xs:date, xs:dateTime, or xs:time datatypes. The string is analyzed for components of the datatype based on a submitted pattern argument.

parse-date [altova:]

```
parse-date(Date as xs:string, DatePattern as xs:string) as xs:date XP2 XQ1
XP3 XQ3
```

Returns the input string Date as an xs:date value. The second argument DatePattern specifies the pattern (sequence of components) of the input string. DatePattern is described with the component specifiers listed below and with component separators that can be any character. See the examples below.

- D Date
- M Month
- Y Year

The pattern in DatePattern must match the pattern in Date. Since the output is of type xs:date, the output will always have the lexical format YYYY-MM-DD.

Examples

- parse-date(xs:string("09-12-2014"), "[D]-[M]-[Y]") returns 2014-12-09
- parse-date(xs:string("09-12-2014"), "[M]-[D]-[Y]") returns 2014-09-12
- parse-date("06/03/2014", "[M]/[D]/[Y]") returns 2014-06-03
- parse-date("06 03 2014", "[M] [D] [Y]") returns 2014-06-03
- parse-date("6 3 2014", "[M] [D] [Y]") returns 2014-06-03

parse-dateTime [altova:]

```
parse-dateTime(DateTime as xs:string, DateTimePattern as xs:string) as
```

xs:dateTime XP2 XO1 XP3 XO3

Returns the input string DateTime as an xs:dateTime value. The second argument DateTimePattern specifies the pattern (sequence of components) of the input string. DateTimePattern is described with the component specifiers listed below and with component separators that can be any character. See the examples below.

D	Date
м	Month
Y	Year
н	Hour
m	minutes
s	seconds

The pattern in DateTimePattern must match the pattern in DateTime. Since the output is of type xs:dateTime, the output will always have the lexical format YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss.

■ Examples

```
parse-dateTime(xs:string("09-12-2014 13:56:24"), "[M]-[D]-[Y] [H]:[m]:
[s]") returns 2014-09-12T13:56:24
```

```
• parse-dateTime("time=13:56:24; date=09-12-2014", "time=[H]:[m]:[s];
  date=[D]-[M]-[Y]") returns 2014-12-09T13:56:24
```

parse-time [altova:]

```
parse-time(Time as xs:string, TimePattern as xs:string) as xs:time XP2 XQ1
XP3 XQ3
```

Returns the input string Time as an xs:time value. The second argument TimePattern specifies the pattern (sequence of components) of the input string. TimePattern is described with the component specifiers listed below and with component separators that can be any character. See the examples below.

```
H Hourm minutess seconds
```

The pattern in TimePattern must match the pattern in Time. Since the output is of type xs:time, the output will always have the lexical format HH:mm:ss.

■ Examples

```
    parse-time(xs:string("13:56:24"), "[H]:[m]:[s]") returns 13:56:24
    parse-time("13-56-24", "[H]-[m]") returns 13:56:00
    parse-time("time=13h56m24s", "time=[H]h[m]m[s]s") returns 13:56:24
    parse-time("time=24s56m13h", "time=[s]s[m]m[H]h") returns 13:56:24
```

[**Top**]

Age-related functions XP3 XQ3

These functions return the age as calculated (i) between one input argument date and the current date, or (ii) between two input argument dates. The altova:age function returns the age in terms of years, the altova:age-details function returns the age as a sequence of three integers giving the years, months, and days of the age.

age [altova:]

```
age(StartDate as xs:date) as xs:integer XP3 XQ3
```

Returns an integer that is the age *in years* of some object, counting from a start-date submitted as the argument and ending with the current date (taken from the system clock). If the input argument is a date anything greater than or equal to one year in the future, the return value will be negative.

■ Examples

If the current date is 2014-01-15:

- age(xs:date("2013-01-15")) returns 1
- age(xs:date("2013-01-16")) returns 0
- age(xs:date("2015-01-15")) returns -1
- age(xs:date("2015-01-14")) returns 0

age(StartDate as xs:date, EndDate as xs:date) as xs:integer XP3 XQ3

Returns an integer that is the age *in years* of some object, counting from a start-date that is submitted as the first argument up to an end-date that is the second argument. The return value will be negative if the first argument is one year or more later than the second argument.

■ Examples

If the current date is 2014-01-15:

- age(xs:date("2000-01-15"), xs:date("2010-01-15")) returns 10
- age(xs:date("2000-01-15"), current-date()) returns 14 if the current date is 2014-01-15
- age(xs:date("2014-01-15"), xs:date("2010-01-15")) returns -4

age-details [altova:]

```
age-details(InputDate as xs:date) as (xs:integer)* XP3 XQ3
```

Returns three integers that are, respectively, the years, months, and days between the date that is submitted as the argument and the current date (taken from the system clock). The sum of the returned <code>years+months+days</code> together gives the total time difference between the two dates (the input date and the current date). The input date may have a value earlier or later than the current date, but whether the input date is earlier or later is not indicated by the sign of the return values; the return values are always positive.

■ Examples

If the current date is 2014-01-15:

- age-details(xs:date("2014-01-16")) returns (0 0 1)
- age-details(xs:date("2014-01-14")) returns (0 0 1)
- age-details(xs:date("2013-01-16")) returns (1 0 1)
- age-details(current-date()) returns (0 0 0)

```
age-details(Date-1 as xs:date, Date-2 as xs:date) as (xs:integer) * XP3 XQ3
```

Returns three integers that are, respectively, the years, months, and days between the two argument dates. The sum of the returned <code>years+months+days</code> together gives the total time difference between the two input dates; it does not matter whether the earlier or later of the two dates is submitted as the first argument. The return values do not indicate whether the input date occurs earlier or later than the current date. Return values are always positive.

■ Examples

```
    age-details(xs:date("2014-01-16"), xs:date("2014-01-15")) returns (0 0 1)
    age-details(xs:date("2014-01-15"), xs:date("2014-01-16")) returns (0 0 1)
```

[<u>Top</u>]

XPath/XQuery Functions: Geolocation

The following geolocation XPath/XQuery extension functions are supported in the current version of MobileTogether Designer.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions.

- In order to distinguish Altova extension functions from functions in the standard library, Altova extension functions are named in this documentation with a suffix of [altova:]. For example: add-years-to-date [altova:].
- When using Altova extension functions in your XPath/XQuery expressions, however, you must use the function without any prefix or suffix, just as you would use any standard XPath/XQuery function. Use an Altova extension like this: add-years-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), 10).

XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XP1 XP2 XP3
XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XSLT1 XSLT2 XSLT3
XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):	XQ1 XQ3

parse-geolocation [altova:]

parse-geolocation(GeolocationInputString as xs:string) as xs:decimal+ XP3
XO3

Parses the supplied <code>GeolocationInputString</code> argument and returns the geolocation's latitude and longitude (in that order) as a sequence two <code>xs:decimal</code> items. The formats in which the geolocation input string can be supplied are listed below.

Note: The <u>image-exif-data</u> function and the Exif metadata's <u>@Geolocation</u> attribute can be used to supply the geolocation input string (see example below).

■ Examples

- parse-geolocation("33.33 -22.22") returns the sequence of two xs:decimals (33.33, 22.22)
- parse-geolocation("48°51'29.6""N 24°17'40.2""") returns the sequence of two xs:decimals (48.8582222222222, 24.2945)
- parse-geolocation('48°51''29.6"N 24°17''40.2"') returns the sequence of two xs:decimals (48.8582222222222, 24.2945)
- parse-geolocation(image-exif-data(//MyImages/Image20141130.01)/ @Geolocation) returns a sequence of two xs:decimals

■ Geolocation input string formats:

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument,

this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow (") while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue ("").

Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M'S.SS"N/S D°M'S.SS"W/E

Example: 33°55'11.11"N 22°44'55.25"W

 Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/W) is optional

+/-D°M'S.SS" +/-D°M'S.SS"

Example: 33°55'11.11" -22°44'55.25"

• Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
Dom.mm'n/s Dom.mm'w/E

Example: 33°55.55'N 22°44.44'W

Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (n/w) is optional

+/-D°M.MM' +/-D°M.MM'

Example: +33°55.55' -22°44.44'

Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)

D.DDN/S D.DDW/E

Example: 33.33N 22.22W

• Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (n/w) is optional

+/-D.DD +/-D.DD <u>Example</u>: 33.33 -22.22

Examples of format-combinations:

33.33N -22°44'55.25" 33.33 22°44'55.25"W 33.33 22.45

■ Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute Geolocation from standard Exif metadata tags. Geolocation is a concatenation of four Exif tags: GPSLatitude, GPSLatitudeRef, GPSLongitude, GPSLongitudeRef, with units added (see table below).

GPSLatitu	GPSLatitude	GPSLongitu	GPSLongitude	Geolocation
de	Ref	de	Ref	
33 51 21.91	S	151 13 11.73	_	33°51'21.91"S 151° 13'11.73"E

▼ geolocation-distance-km [altova:]

```
geolocation-distance-km(GeolocationInputString-1 as xs:string,
GeolocationInputString-2 as xs:string) as xs:decimal XP3 XQ3
```

Calculates the distance between two geolocations in kilometers. The formats in which the geolocation input string can be supplied are listed below. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: The <u>image-exif-data</u> function and the Exif metadata's <u>@Geolocation</u> attribute can be used to supply geolocation input strings.

Examples

```
• geolocation-distance-km("33.33 -22.22", "48°51'29.6""N 24° 17'40.2""") returns the xs:decimal 4183.08132372392
```

■ Geolocation input string formats:

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow (*) while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue (**).

Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M'S.SS"N/S D°M'S.SS"W/E
 Example: 33°55'11.11"N 22°44'55.25"W

Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (n/w) is optional

```
+/-D°M's.ss" +/-D°M's.ss"

Example: 33°55'11.11" -22°44'55.25"
```

Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M.MM'N/S D°M.MM'W/E
 Example: 33°55.55'N 22°44.44'W

Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (x/w) is optional

```
+/-D°M.MM' +/-D°M.MM'

Example: +33°55.55' -22°44.44'
```

Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D.DDN/S
 D.DDW/E

Example: 33.33N 22.22W

• Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (Ŋ/w) is optional +/-D.DD +/-D.DD Example: 33.33 -22.22

Examples of format-combinations:

```
33.33N -22°44'55.25"
33.33 22°44'55.25"W
33.33 22.45
```

Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute Geolocation from standard Exif metadata tags. Geolocation is a concatenation of four Exif tags: GPSLatitude, GPSLatitudeRef, GPSLongitude, GPSLongitudeRef, with units added (see table below).

GPSLatitu	GPSLatitude	GPSLongitu	GPSLongitude	Geolocation
de	Ref	de	Ref	
33 51 21.91	S	151 13 11.73	_	33°51'21.91"S 151° 13'11.73"E

▼ geolocation-distance-mi [altova:]

```
geolocation-distance-mi(GeolocationInputString-1 as xs:string,
GeolocationInputString-2 as xs:string) as xs:decimal XP3 XQ3
```

Calculates the distance between two geolocations in miles. The formats in which a geolocation input string can be supplied are listed below. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: The <u>image-exif-data</u> function and the Exif metadata's <u>@Geolocation</u> attribute can be used to supply geolocation input strings.

■ Examples

```
• geolocation-distance-mi("33.33 -22.22", "48°51'29.6""N 24° 17'40.2""") returns the xs:decimal 2599.40652340653
```

■ Geolocation input string formats:

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes

that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow ($^{\bullet}$) while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue ($^{\bullet}$).

• Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
Dom's.ss"N/S Dom's.ss"W/E

Example: 33°55'11.11"N 22°44'55.25"W

 Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/W) is optional

+/-D°M'S.SS" +/-D°M'S.SS"

Example: 33°55'11.11" -22°44'55.25"

Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M.MM'N/S
 D°M.MM'W/E

Example: 33°55.55'N 22°44.44'W

Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/W) is optional

+/-D°M.MM' +/-D°M.MM'

Example: +33°55.55' -22°44.44'

Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)

D.DDN/S D.DDW/E

Example: 33.33N 22.22W

• Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (n/w) is optional

+/-D.DD +/-D.DD <u>Example</u>: 33.33 -22.22

Examples of format-combinations:

33.33N -22°44'55.25" 33.33 22°44'55.25"W 33.33 22.45

■ Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute Geolocation from standard Exif metadata tags. Geolocation is a concatenation of four Exif tags: GPSLatitude, GPSLatitudeRef, GPSLongitude, GPSLongitudeRef, with units added (see table below).

GPSLatitu	GPSLatitude	GPSLongitu	GPSLongitude	Geolocation
de	Ref	de	Ref	
33 51 21.91	S	151 13 11.73	_	33°51'21.91"S 151° 13'11.73"E

▼ geolocation-within-polygon [altova:]

```
geolocation-within-polygon(Geolocation as xs:string, ((PolygonPoint as
xs:string)+)) as xs:boolean XP3 XQ3
```

Determines whether <code>Geolocation</code> (the first argument) is within the polygonal area described by the <code>PolygonPoint</code> arguments. If the <code>PolygonPoint</code> arguments do not form a closed figure (formed when the first point and the last point are the same), then the first point is implicitly added as the last point in order to close the figure. All the arguments (<code>Geolocation</code> and <code>PolygonPoint+</code>) are given by geolocation input strings (formats listed below). If the <code>Geolocation</code> argument is within the polygonal area, then the function returns <code>true();</code> otherwise it returns <code>false()</code>. Latitude values range from <code>+90</code> to <code>-90</code> (N to s). Longitude values range from <code>+180</code> to <code>-180</code> (E to W).

Note: The <u>image-exif-data</u> function and the Exif metadata's <u>@Geolocation</u> attribute can be used to supply geolocation input strings.

■ Examples

```
• geolocation-within-polygon("33 -22", ("58 -32", "-78 -55", "48 24", "58 -32")) returns true()
```

- geolocation-within-polygon("33 -22", ("58 -32", "-78 -55", "48 24"))
 returns true()
- geolocation-within-polygon("33 -22", ("58 -32", "-78 -55", "48° 51'29.6""N 24°17'40.2""")) returns true()

■ Geolocation input string formats:

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow (") while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue ("").

- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M'S.SS"N/S D°M'S.SS"W/E
 Example: 33°55'11.11"N 22°44'55.25"W
- Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/W) is optional

```
+/-D°M's.ss" +/-D°M's.ss"

Example: 33°55'11.11" -22°44'55.25"
```

Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M.MM'N/S D°M.MM'W/E
 Example: 33°55.55'N 22°44.44'W

Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/W) is optional

+/-D°M.MM' +/-D°M.MM'

Example: +33°55.55' -22°44.44'

Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)

D.DDN/S D.DDW/E

Example: 33.33N 22.22W

• Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (n/w) is optional

+/-D.DD +/-D.DD

Example: 33.33 -22.22

Examples of format-combinations:

33.33N -22°44'55.25"

33.33 22°44'55.25"W

33.33 22.45

■ Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute Geolocation from standard Exif metadata tags. Geolocation is a concatenation of four Exif tags: GPSLatitude, GPSLatitudeRef, GPSLongitude, GPSLongitudeRef, with units added (see table below).

GPSLatitu	GPSLatitude	GPSLongitu	GPSLongitude	Geolocation
de	Ref	de	Ref	
33 51 21.91	S	151 13 11.73	_	33°51'21.91"S 151° 13'11.73"E

▼ geolocation-within-rectangle [altova:]

geolocation-within-rectangle(Geolocation as xs:string, RectCorner-1 as
xs:string, RectCorner-2 as xs:string) as xs:boolean XP3 XQ3

Determines whether <code>Geolocation</code> (the first argument) is within the rectangle defined by the second and third arguments, <code>RectCorner-1</code> and <code>RectCorner-2</code>, which specify opposite corners of the rectangle. All the arguments (<code>Geolocation</code>, <code>RectCorner-1</code> and <code>RectCorner-2</code>) are given by geolocation input strings (formats listed below). If the <code>Geolocation</code> argument is within the rectangle, then the function returns true(); otherwise it returns false(). Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to s). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: The <u>image-exif-data</u> function and the Exif metadata's <u>@Geolocation</u> attribute can be used to supply geolocation input strings.

■ Examples

• geolocation-within-rectangle("33 -22", "58 -32", "-48 24") returns true()

```
    geolocation-within-rectangle("33 -22", "58 -32", "48 24") returns false()
    geolocation-within-rectangle("33 -22", "58 -32", "48°51'29.6""S 24° 17'40.2""") returns true()
```

■ Geolocation input string formats:

The geolocation input string must contain latitude and longitude (in that order) separated by whitespace. Each can be in any of the following formats. Combinations are allowed. So latitude can be in one format and longitude can be in another. Latitude values range from +90 to -90 (N to S). Longitude values range from +180 to -180 (E to W).

Note: If single quotes or double quotes are used to delimit the input string argument, this will create a mismatch with the single quotes or double quotes that are used, respectively, to indicate minute-values and second-values. In such cases, the quotes that are used for indicating minute-values and second-values must be escaped by doubling them. In the examples in this section, quotes used to delimit the input string are highlighted in yellow (") while unit indicators that are escaped are highlighted in blue ("").

Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M'S.SS"N/S D°M'S.SS"W/E
 Example: 33°55'11.11"N 22°44'55.25"W

Degrees, minutes, decimal seconds, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (n/w) is optional

```
+/-D°M'S.SS" +/-D°M'S.SS"

Example: 33°55'11.11" -22°44'55.25"
```

Degrees, decimal minutes, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)
 D°M.MM'N/S D°M.MM'W/E
 Example: 33°55.55'N 22°44.44'W

Degrees, decimal minutes, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (n/w) is optional

```
+/-D°M.MM' +/-D°M.MM'

Example: +33°55.55' -22°44.44'
```

Decimal degrees, with suffixed orientation (N/S, W/E)

```
D.DDN/S D.DDW/E

Example: 33.33N 22.22W
```

• Decimal degrees, with prefixed sign (+/-); the plus sign for (N/W) is optional +/-D.DD +/-D.DD

```
Example: 33.33 -22.22
```

Examples of format-combinations:

```
33.33N -22°44'55.25"
33.33 22°44'55.25"W
33.33 22.45
```

■ Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute Geolocation from standard Exif metadata tags. Geolocation is a concatenation of four Exif tags: GPSLatitude, GPSLatitudeRef, GPSLongitude, GPSLongitudeRef, with units added (see table below).

GPSLatitu	GPSLatitude	GPSLongitu	GPSLongitude	Geolocation
de	Ref	de	Ref	
33 51 21.91	S	151 13 11.73		33°51'21.91"S 151° 13'11.73"E

[<u>Top</u>]

XPath/XQuery Functions: Image-Related

The following image-related XPath/XQuery extension functions are supported in the current version of MobileTogether Designer.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions.

- In order to distinguish Altova extension functions from functions in the standard library, Altova extension functions are named in this documentation with a suffix of [altova:]. For example: add-years-to-date [altova:].
- When using Altova extension functions in your XPath/XQuery expressions, however, you must use the function without any prefix or suffix, just as you would use any standard XPath/XQuery function. Use an Altova extension like this: add-years-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), 10).

XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XP1 XP2 XP3	
XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XSLT1 XSLT2 XSLT3	
XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):	XQ1 XQ3	

▼ suggested-image-file-extension [altova:]

suggested-image-file-extension(Base64String as string) as string? XP3 XQ3

Takes the Base64 encoding of an image file as its argument and returns the file extension of the image as recorded in the Base64-encoding of the image. The returned value is a suggestion based on the image type information available in the encoding. If this information is not available, then an empty string is returned. This function is useful if you wish to save a Base64 image as a file and wish to dynamically retrieve an appropriate file extension.

■ Examples

- suggested-image-file-extension(/MyImages/MobilePhone/Image20141130.01)
 returns 'jpg'
- suggested-image-file-extension(\$XML1/Staff/Person/@photo) returns ''

In the examples above, the nodes supplied as the argument of the function are assumed to contain a Base64-encoded image. The first example retrieves <code>jpg</code> as the file's type and extension. In the second example, the submitted Base64 encoding does not provide usable file extension information.

▼ mt-transform-image [altova:]

mt-transform-image(Base64Image as Base64BinaryString, Size as item()+,

Rotation as xs:integer, Quality as xs:integer) as Base64BinaryString XP3 XQ3

Takes a Base64-encoded image as its first argument and returns a transformed Base64-encoded image. The second, third, and fourth arguments are the image parameters that are transformed: size, rotation, and quality.

The size argument provides three resizing options.

(X,Y)	Absolute pixel values. The aspect ratio is not maintained. The order of height and width does not matter since height and width are automatically selected according to the long and short sides of the image. The value is entered as a sequence of two integer items; the parentheses are required.
Х	Proportionally resizes the image with x as the new longer side in pixels; aspect ratio is maintained. The value is an integer, and is entered without quotes.
'X%'	Resizes the image to the given percentage of the original dimensions. The value must be entered as a string, in quotes.

- Rotation can be one of the following values: 90, 180, 270, -90, -180, -270. These are rotation values in degrees of a circle. Positive values rotate the image clockwise; negative values rotate the image counter-clockwise. Note that you can use the Altova Exif attribute orientationDegree to obtain the current rotation of the image in degrees (0, 90, 180, 270) from the Exif orientation tag of the image. However, since the orientationDegree attribute is obtained from the orientation tag of the Exif data, it will be available only if the orientation tag is present in the Exif data (see the description of OrientationDegree below).
- Quality can be any value between 0 and 100 and refers to values on the IJG quality scale for JPEG compression; it is not a percentage indicator of quality. The tradeoff is between file size and quality. For a full-color source image, 75 is generally considered an optimal value. If 75 produces unsatisfactory results, increase the value.

Note: If Exif data is present in the original image, it will be removed during the transformation, and the transformed image will not contain Exif data.

■ Examples

- mt-transform-image(Images/Image[@id='43'], '50%', 90, 75)

 The function takes as its input an image that is stored as a Base64-encoded string in the descendant Images/Image node that has an @id value of 43. The function returns a transformed image. The transformed image is resized to 50%, rotated 90 degrees clockwise, and given a quality level of 75.
- mt-transform-image(Images/Image[@id='43'], 400, 90, 75)
 The function produces the same result as the previous example, except that the long side is set to a specific value of 400 pixels; the aspect ratio of the original image is maintained.
- mt-transform-image(Images/Image[@id='43'], (400, 280), image-exif-data(\$XML1/\$XML1/Images/ReferenceImage)/@OrientationDegree, 75)

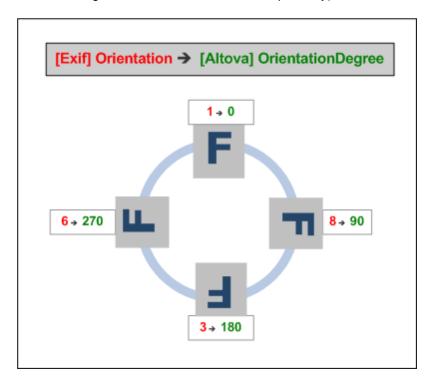
 This example selects the same image as in the previous examples, and sets the same quality value (75). The image size is set at 400x280 pixels, and the Rotation value is obtained from the @OrientationDegree attribute of a Base64-encoded image in the ReferenceImage node.

■ Altova Exif Attribute: OrientationDegree

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute orientationDegree

from the Exif metadata tag orientation.

OrientationDegree translates the standard Exif tag Orientation from an integer value (1, 8, 3, or 6) to the respective degree values of each (0, 90, 180, 270), as shown in the figure below. Note that there are no translations of the Orientation values of 2, 4, 5, 7. (These orientations are obtained by flipping image 1 across its vertical center axis to get the image with a value of 2, and then rotating this image in 90-degree jumps clockwise to get the values of 7, 4, and 5, respectively).



■ Listing of standard Exif meta tags

- ImageWidth
- ImageLength
- BitsPerSample
- Compression
- PhotometricInterpretation
- Orientation
- SamplesPerPixel
- PlanarConfiguration
- YCbCrSubSampling
- YCbCrPositioning
- XResolution
- YResolution
- ResolutionUnit
- StripOffsets
- RowsPerStrip
- StripByteCounts
- JPEGInterchangeFormat
- JPEGInterchangeFormatLength

- TransferFunction
- WhitePoint
- PrimaryChromaticities
- YCbCrCoefficients
- ReferenceBlackWhite
- DateTime
- ImageDescription
- Make
- Model
- Software
- Artist
- Copyright

- ExifVersion
- FlashpixVersion
- ColorSpace
- ComponentsConfiguration
- CompressedBitsPerPixel
- PixelXDimension
- PixelYDimension
- MakerNote
- UserComment
- RelatedSoundFile
- DateTimeOriginal
- DateTimeDigitized
- SubSecTime
- SubSecTimeOriginal
- SubSecTimeDigitized
- ExposureTime
- FNumber
- ExposureProgram
- SpectralSensitivity
- ISOSpeedRatings
- OECF
- ShutterSpeedValue
- ApertureValue
- BrightnessValue
- ExposureBiasValue
- MaxApertureValue
- SubjectDistance
- MeteringMode
- LightSource
- Flash
- FocalLength
- SubjectArea
- FlashEnergy
- SpatialFrequencyResponse
- FocalPlaneXResolution
- FocalPlaneYResolution
- FocalPlaneResolutionUnit
- SubjectLocation
- ExposureIndex
- SensingMethod
- FileSource
- SceneType

- CFAPattern
- CustomRendered
- ExposureMode
- WhiteBalance
- DigitalZoomRatio
- FocalLengthIn35mmFilm
- SceneCaptureType
- GainControl
- Contrast
- Saturation
- Sharpness
- DeviceSettingDescription
- SubjectDistanceRange
- ImageUniqueID

- GPSVersionID
- GPSLatitudeRef
- GPSLatitude
- GPSLongitudeRef
- GPSLongitude
- GPSAltitudeRef
- GPSAltitude
- GPSTimeStamp
- GPSSatellites
- GPSStatus
- GPSMeasureMode
- GPSDOP
- GPSSpeedRef
- GPSSpeed
- GPSTrackRef
- GPSTrack
- GPSImgDirectionRef
- GPSImgDirection
- GPSMapDatum
- GPSDestLatitudeRef
- GPSDestLatitude
- GPSDestLongitudeRef
- GPSDestLongitude
- GPSDestBearingRef
- GPSDestBearing
- GPSDestDistanceRef
- GPSDestDistance
- GPSProcessingMethod
- GPSAreaInformation
- GPSDateStamp
- GPSDifferential

▼ image-exif-data [altova:]

image-exif-data(Base64BinaryString as string) as element? XP3 XQ3

Takes a Base64-encoded image as its argument and returns an element called <code>Exif</code> that contains the Exif metadata of the image. The Exif metadata is created as attribute-value pairs of the <code>Exif</code> element. The attribute names are the Exif data tags found in the Base64 encoding. The list of Exif-specification tags is given below. If a vendor-specific tag is present

in the Exif data, this tag and its value will also be returned as an attribute-value pair. Additional to the standard Exif metadata tags (see *list below*), Altova-specific attribute-value pairs are also generated. These Altova Exif attributes are listed below.

■ Examples

- To access any one attribute, use the function like this: image-exif-data(//MyImages/Image20141130.01)/@GPSLatitude image-exif-data(//MyImages/Image20141130.01)/@Geolocation
- To access all the attributes, use the function like this: image-exif-data(//MyImages/Image20141130.01)/@*
- To access the names of all the attributes, use the following expression:
 for \$i in image-exif-data(//MyImages/Image20141130.01)/@* return
 name(\$i)

This is useful to find out the names of the attributes returned by the function.

■ Altova Exif Attribute: Geolocation

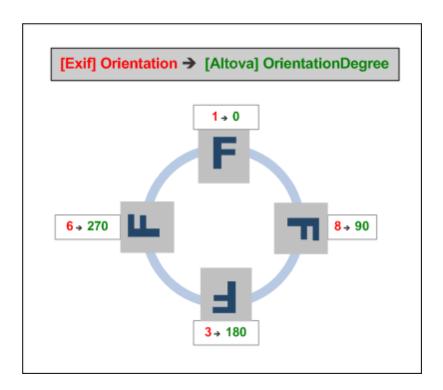
The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute <code>Geolocation</code> from standard Exif metadata tags. <code>Geolocation</code> is a concatenation of four Exif tags: <code>GPSLatitude</code>, <code>GPSLatitudeRef</code>, <code>GPSLongitude</code>, <code>GPSLongitudeRef</code>, with units added (see table below).

GPSLatitu	GPSLatitude	GPSLongitu	GPSLongitude	Geolocation
de	Ref	de	Ref	
33 51 21.91	S	151 13 11.73		33°51'21.91"S 151° 13'11.73"E

Altova Exif Attribute: OrientationDegree

The Altova XPath/XQuery Engine generates the custom attribute orientationDegree from the Exif metadata tag orientation.

OrientationDegree translates the standard Exif tag Orientation from an integer value (1, 8, 3, or 6) to the respective degree values of each (0, 90, 180, 270), as shown in the figure below. Note that there are no translations of the Orientation values of 2, 4, 5, 7. (These orientations are obtained by flipping image 1 across its vertical center axis to get the image with a value of 2, and then rotating this image in 90-degree jumps clockwise to get the values of 7, 4, and 5, respectively).



■ Listing of standard Exif meta tags

- ImageWidth
- ImageLength
- BitsPerSample
- Compression
- PhotometricInterpretation
- Orientation
- SamplesPerPixel
- PlanarConfiguration
- YCbCrSubSampling
- YCbCrPositioning
- XResolution
- YResolution
- ResolutionUnit
- StripOffsets
- RowsPerStrip
- StripByteCounts
- JPEGInterchangeFormat
- JPEGInterchangeFormatLength
- TransferFunction
- WhitePoint
- PrimaryChromaticities
- YCbCrCoefficients
- ReferenceBlackWhite
- DateTime
- ImageDescription
- Make
- Model
- Software

- Artist
- Copyright

- ExifVersion
- FlashpixVersion
- ColorSpace
- ComponentsConfiguration
- CompressedBitsPerPixel
- PixelXDimension
- PixelYDimension
- MakerNote
- UserComment
- RelatedSoundFile
- DateTimeOriginal
- DateTimeDigitized
- SubSecTime
- SubSecTimeOriginal
- SubSecTimeDigitized
- ExposureTime
- FNumber
- ExposureProgram
- SpectralSensitivity
- ISOSpeedRatings
- OECF
- ShutterSpeedValue
- ApertureValue
- BrightnessValue
- ExposureBiasValue
- MaxApertureValue
- SubjectDistance
- MeteringMode
- LightSource
- Flash
- FocalLength
- SubjectArea
- FlashEnergy
- SpatialFrequencyResponse
- FocalPlaneXResolution
- FocalPlaneYResolution
- FocalPlaneResolutionUnit
- SubjectLocation
- ExposureIndex
- SensingMethod
- FileSource
- SceneType
- CFAPattern
- CustomRendered
- ExposureMode
- WhiteBalance
- DigitalZoomRatio
- FocalLengthIn35mmFilm
- SceneCaptureType
- GainControl
- Contrast
- Saturation

- Sharpness
- DeviceSettingDescription
- SubjectDistanceRange
- ImageUniqueID

- GPSVersionID
- GPSLatitudeRef
- GPSLatitude
- GPSLongitudeRef
- GPSLongitude
- GPSAltitudeRef
- GPSAltitude
- GPSTimeStamp
- GPSSatellites
- GPSStatus
- GPSMeasureMode
- GPSDOP
- GPSSpeedRef
- GPSSpeed
- GPSTrackRef
- GPSTrack
- GPSImgDirectionRef
- GPSImgDirection
- GPSMapDatum
- GPSDestLatitudeRef
- GPSDestLatitude
- GPSDestLongitudeRef
- GPSDestLongitude
- GPSDestBearingRef
- GPSDestBearing
- GPSDestDistanceRef
- GPSDestDistance
- GPSProcessingMethod
- GPSAreaInformation
- GPSDateStamp
- GPSDifferential

[<u>Top</u>]

XPath/XQuery Functions: Numeric

Altova's numeric extension functions can be used in XPath and XQuery expressions and provide additional functionality for the processing of data.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions.

- In order to distinguish Altova extension functions from functions in the standard library, Altova extension functions are named in this documentation with a suffix of [altova:]. For example: add-years-to-date [altova:].
- When using Altova extension functions in your XPath/XQuery expressions, however, you must use the function without any prefix or suffix, just as you would use any standard XPath/XQuery function. Use an Altova extension like this: add-years-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), 10).

XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XP1 XP2 XP3
XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XSLT1 XSLT2 XSLT3
XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):	XQ1 XQ3

Auto-numbering functions

▼ generate-auto-number [altova:]

generate-auto-number(ID as xs:string, StartsWith as xs:double, Increment as xs:double, ResetOnChange as xs:string) as xs:integer XP1 XP2 XQ1 XP3 XQ3

Generates a number each time the function is called. The first number, which is generated the first time the function is called, is specified by the StartsWith argument. Each subsequent call to the function generates a new number, this number being incremented over the previously generated number by the value specified in the Increment argument. In effect, the generate-auto-number function creates a counter having a name specified by the ID argument, with this counter being incremented each time the function is called. If the value of the ResetOnChange argument changes from that of the previous function call, then the value of the number to be generated is reset to the StartsWith value. Auto-numbering can also be reset by using the reset-auto-number function.

■ Examples

• generate-auto-number("ChapterNumber", 1, 1, "SomeString") will return one number each time the function is called, starting with 1, and incrementing by 1 with each call to the function. As long as the fourth argument remains "SomeString" in each subsequent call, the incrementing will continue. When the value of the fourth argument changes, the counter (called ChapterNumber) will reset to 1. The value of ChapterNumber can also be reset by a call to the reset-auto-number function, like this: reset-auto-number("ChapterNumber").

reset-auto-number [altova:]

```
reset-auto-number(ID as xs:string) XP1 XP2 XQ1 XP3 XQ3
```

This function resets the number of the auto-numbering counter named in the ID argument. The number is reset to the number specified by the StartsWith argument of the generate-auto-number function that created the counter named in the ID argument.

Examples

• reset-auto-number("ChapterNumber") resets the number of the auto-numbering counter named ChapterNumber that was created by the generate-auto-number function. The number is reset to the value of the StartsWith argument of the generate-auto-number function that created ChapterNumber.

[<u>Top</u>]

Numeric functions

▼ hex-string-to-integer [altova:]

hex-string-to-integer(Hexstring as xs:string) as xs:integer XP3 XQ3

Takes a string argument that is the Base-16 equivalent of an integer in the decimal system (Base-10), and returns the decimal integer.

- Examples
 - hex-string-to-integer('1') returns 1
 - hex-string-to-integer('9') returns 9
 - hex-string-to-integer('A') returns 10
 - hex-string-to-integer('B') returns 11
 - hex-string-to-integer('F') returns 15
 - hex-string-to-integer('G') returns an error
 - hex-string-to-integer('10') returns 16
 - hex-string-to-integer('01') returns 1
 - hex-string-to-integer('20') returns 32
 - hex-string-to-integer('21') returns 33
 - hex-string-to-integer('5A') returns 90
 - hex-string-to-integer('USA') returns an error
- ▼ integer-to-hex-string [altova:]

integer-to-hex-string(Integer as xs:integer) as xs:string XP3 XQ3

Takes an integer argument and returns its Base-16 equivalent as a string.

■ Examples

- integer-to-hex-string(1) returns '1'
- integer-to-hex-string(9) returns '9'
- integer-to-hex-string(10) returns 'A'
- integer-to-hex-string(11) returns 'B'
- integer-to-hex-string(15) returns 'F'
- integer-to-hex-string(16) returns '10'
- integer-to-hex-string(32) returns '20'
- integer-to-hex-string(33) returns '21'
- integer-to-hex-string(90) returns '5A'

[<u>Top</u>]

Number-formatting functions

▼ mt-format-number [altova:]

```
mt-format-number(Number as xs:numeric, PictureString as xs:string) as
xs:string XP3 XQ3
```

Takes a number as the first argument, formats it according to the second (PictureString) argument, and returns the formatted number as a string. This is useful for formatting difficult-to-read numbers into a format that is more reader-friendly. The picture string can also contain characters, such as currency symbols, and so can also be used to insert characters in the formatted output. If you wish to insert a zero at a digit position when no digit exists in the input number at that position, then use a zero in that digit position of the picture string (see examples below). If you do not wish to force a zero (or other character), use the hash symbol (#).

Digits before the decimal separator are never foreshortened. The decimal part of a number (to the right of the decimal separator) as well as the units digit (first digit to the left of the decimal separator) are rounded off if the picture string of the decimal part is shorter than the number of decimal places in the input number.

Note: The grouping separator and decimal separator in the formatted output on the mobile device will be those of the language being used on the mobile device.

Examples

```
mt-format-number(12.3, '$#0.00') returns $12.30
mt-format-number(12.3, '$00.00') returns $12.30
mt-format-number(12.3, '$0,000.00') returns $0,012.30
mt-format-number(12.3, '$#,000.00') returns $012.30
mt-format-number(1234.5, '$#,##0.00') returns $1,234.50
mt-format-number(1234.5, '$#0.00') returns $1234.50
mt-format-number(1234.5, '$0') returns $123
mt-format-number(1234.5, '$0') returns $1235
mt-format-number(1234.54, '$0.0') returns $1234.5
mt-format-number(1234.55, '$0.0') returns $1234.5
```

▼ generate-auto-number [altova:]

```
generate-auto-number(ID as xs:string, StartsWith as xs:double, Increment as xs:double, ResetOnChange as xs:string) as xs:integer XP1 XP2 XQ1 XP3 XQ3

Generates a number each time the function is called. The first number, which is generated the first time the function is called, is specified by the StartsWith argument. Each subsequent call to the function generates a new number, this number being incremented over the previously generated number by the value specified in the Increment argument. In effect, the generate-auto-number function creates a counter having a name specified by the ID argument, with this counter being incremented each time the function is called. If the value of the ResetOnChange argument changes from that of the previous function call, then the value of the number to be generated is reset to the StartsWith value. Auto-numbering can also be
```

reset by using the reset-auto-number function.

■ Examples

• generate-auto-number("ChapterNumber", 1, 1, "SomeString") will return one number each time the function is called, starting with 1, and incrementing by 1 with each call to the function. As long as the fourth argument remains "SomeString" in each subsequent call, the incrementing will continue. When the value of the fourth argument changes, the counter (called ChapterNumber) will reset to 1. The value of ChapterNumber can also be reset by a call to the reset-auto-number function, like this: reset-auto-number("ChapterNumber").

[<u>Top</u>]

XPath/XQuery Functions: Sequence

Altova's sequence extension functions can be used in XPath and XQuery expressions and provide additional functionality for the processing of data.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions.

- In order to distinguish Altova extension functions from functions in the standard library, Altova extension functions are named in this documentation with a suffix of [altova:]. For example: add-years-to-date [altova:].
- When using Altova extension functions in your XPath/XQuery expressions, however, you must use the function without any prefix or suffix, just as you would use any standard XPath/XQuery function. Use an Altova extension like this: add-years-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), 10).

XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XP1 XP2 XP3
XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XSLT1 XSLT2 XSLT3
XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):	XQ1 XQ3

▼ attributes [altova:]

attributes(AttributeName as xs:string) as attribute()* XP3 XQ3

Returns all attributes that have a local name which is the same as the name supplied in the input argument, AttributeName. The search is case-sensitive and conducted along the attribute:: axis. This means that the context node must be the parent element node.

Examples

• attributes("MyAttribute") returns MyAttribute()*

attributes(AttributeName as xs:string, SearchOptions as xs:string) as
attribute()* XP3 XQ3

Returns all attributes that have a local name which is the same as the name supplied in the input argument, AttributeName. The search is case-sensitive and conducted along the attribute:: axis. The context node must be the parent element node. The second argument is a string containing option flags. Available flags are:

- r = switches to a regular-expression search; AttributeName must then be a regular-expression search string;
- **f** = If this option is specified, then AttributeName provides a full match; otherwise AttributeName need only partially match an attribute name to return that attribute. For example: if **f** is not specified, then MyAtt will return MyAttribute;
- i = switches to a case-insensitive search;
- p = includes the namespace prefix in the search; AttributeName should then contain the namespace prefix, for example: altova:MyAttribute.

The flags can be written in any order. Invalid flags will generate errors. One or more flags can be omitted. The empty string is allowed, and will produce the same effect as the function having only one argument (*previous signature*). However, an empty sequence is not allowed as the second argument.

Examples

```
    attributes("MyAttribute", "rfip") returns MyAttribute()*
    attributes("MyAttribute", "pri") returns MyAttribute()*
    attributes("MyAttributes", "rfip") returns MyAttribute()*
    attributes("MyAttributes", "rfip") returns no match
    attributes("MyAttribute", "") returns MyAttribute()*
    attributes("MyAttribute", "Rip") returns an unrecognized-flag error.
    attributes("MyAttribute", ) returns a missing-second-argument error.
```

elements [altova:]

```
elements(ElementName as xs:string) as element()* XP3 XQ3
```

Returns all elements that have a local name which is the same as the name supplied in the input argument, ElementName. The search is case-sensitive and conducted along the child:: axis. The context node must be the parent node of the element/s being searched for.

Examples

• elements("MyElement") returns MyElement()*

```
elements(ElementName as xs:string, SearchOptions as xs:string) as element()*
xp3 xQ3
```

Returns all elements that have a local name which is the same as the name supplied in the input argument, ElementName. The search is case-sensitive and conducted along the child:: axis. The context node must be the parent node of the element/s being searched for. The second argument is a string containing option flags. Available flags are:

- **r** = switches to a regular-expression search; ElementName must then be a regular-expression search string;
- **f** = If this option is specified, then ElementName provides a full match; otherwise ElementName need only partially match an element name to return that element. For example: if **f** is not specified, then MyElem will return MyElement;
- i = switches to a case-insensitive search;
- p = includes the namespace prefix in the search; ElementName should then contain the namespace prefix, for example: altova:MyElement.

The flags can be written in any order. Invalid flags will generate errors. One or more flags can be omitted. The empty string is allowed, and will produce the same effect as the function having only one argument (*previous signature*). However, an empty sequence is not allowed.

Examples

```
    elements("MyElement", "rip") returns MyElement()*
    elements("MyElement", "pri") returns MyElement()*
    elements("MyElement", "") returns MyElement()*
    attributes("MyElem", "rip") returns MyElement()*
    attributes("MyElements", "rfip") returns no match
    elements("MyElement", "Rip") returns an unrecognized-flag error.
    elements("MyElement", ) returns a missing-second-argument error.
```

```
▼ find-first [altova:]
```

```
find-first((Sequence as item()*), (Condition( Sequence-Item as xs:boolean))
```

as item()? XP3 XQ3

This function takes two arguments. The first argument is a sequence of one or more items of any datatype. The second argument, <code>Condition</code>, is a reference to an XPath function that takes one argument (has an arity of 1) and returns a boolean. Each item of <code>sequence</code> is submitted, in turn, to the function referenced in <code>Condition</code>. (Remember: This function takes a single argument.) The first <code>sequence</code> item that causes the function in <code>Condition</code> to evaluate to <code>true()</code> is returned as the result of <code>find-first</code>, and the iteration stops.

Examples

- find-first (5 to 10, function(\$a) {\$a mod 2 = 0}) returns xs:integer 6
 The condition argument references the XPath 3.0 inline function, function(), which
 declares an inline function named \$a and then defines it. Each item in the sequence
 argument of find-first is passed, in turn, to \$a as its input value. The input value is
 tested on the condition in the function definition (\$a mod 2 = 0). The first input value to
 satisfy this condition is returned as the result of find-first (in this case 6).
- find-first((1 to 10), (function(\$a) {\$a+3=7})) returns xs:integer 4

Further examples

If the file C:\Temp\Customers.xml exists:

find-first(("C:\Temp\Customers.xml", "http://www.altova.com/index.html"), (doc-available#1)) returns xs:string C:\Temp\Customers.xml

If the file C:\Temp\Customers.xml does not exist, and http://www.altova.com/index.html exists:

find-first(("C:\Temp\Customers.xml", "http://www.altova.com/
index.html"), (doc-available#1)) returns xs:string http://
www.altova.com/index.html

If the file C:\Temp\Customers.xml does not exist, and http://www.altova.com/index.html also does not exist:

find-first(("C:\Temp\Customers.xml", "http://www.altova.com/index.html"), (doc-available#1)) returns no result

Notes about the examples given above

- The XPath 3.0 function, doc-available, takes a single string argument, which is used as a URI, and returns true if a document node is found at the submitted URI. (The document at the submitted URI must therefore be an XML document.)
- The doc-available function can be used for condition, the second argument of find-first, because it takes only one argument (arity=1), because it takes an item() as input (a string which is used as a URI), and returns a boolean value.
- Notice that the doc-available function is only referenced, not called. The #1 suffix that is attached to it indicates a function with an arity of 1. In its entirety doc-available#1 simply means: Use the doc-availabe() function that has arity=1, passing to it as its single argument, in turn, each of the items in the first sequence. As a result, each of the two strings will be passed to doc-available(), which uses the string as a URI and tests whether a document node exists at the URI. If one does, the doc-available() evaluates to true() and that string is returned as

the result of the find-first function. Note about the doc-available() function: Relative paths are resolved relative to the the current base URI, which is by default the URI of the XML document from which the function is loaded.

▼ find-first-combination [altova:]

```
find-first-combination((Seq-01 as item()*), (Seq-02 as item()*),
(Condition( Seq-01-Item, Seq-02-Item as xs:boolean)) as item()* xp3 xq3
This function takes three arguments:
```

- The first two arguments, seq-01 and seq-02, are sequences of one or more items of any datatype.
- The third argument, condition, is a reference to an XPath function that takes two arguments (has an arity of 2) and returns a boolean.

The items of seq-01 and seq-02 are passed in ordered pairs (one item from each sequence making up a pair) as the arguments of the function in condition. The pairs are ordered as follows.

```
If Seq-01 = X1, X2, X3 ... Xn

And Seq-02 = Y1, Y2, Y3 ... Yn

Then (X1 Y1), (X1 Y2), (X1 Y3) ... (X1 Yn), (X2 Y1), (X2 Y2) ... (Xn Yn)
```

The first ordered pair that causes the condition function to evaluate to true() is returned as the result of find-first-combination. Note that: (i) If the Condition function iterates through the submitted argument pairs and does not once evaluate to true(), then find-first-combination returns No results; (ii) The result of find-first-combination will always be a pair of items (of any datatype) or no item at all.

Examples

- find-first-combination(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function(\$a, \$b) {\$a+\$b = 32}) returns the sequence of xs:integers (11, 21)
- find-first-combination(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function(\$a, \$b) {\$a+\$b = 33}) returns the sequence of xs:integers (11, 22)
- find-first-combination(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function(\$a, \$b) {\$a+\$b = 34}) returns the sequence of xs:integers (11, 23)

▼ find-first-pair [altova:]

```
find-first-pair((Seq-01 as item()*), (Seq-02 as item()*), (Condition( Seq-
01-Item, Seq-02-Item as xs:boolean)) as item()*
xP3 xQ3
```

This function takes three arguments:

- The first two arguments, seq-01 and seq-02, are sequences of one or more items of any datatype.
- The third argument, condition, is a reference to an XPath function that takes two arguments (has an arity of 2) and returns a boolean.

The items of seq-01 and seq-02 are passed in ordered pairs as the arguments of the function in condition. The pairs are ordered as follows.

```
If Seq-01 = X1, X2, X3 ... Xn
```

```
And Seq-02 = Y1, Y2, Y3 ... Yn
Then (X1 \ Y1), (X2 \ Y2), (X3 \ Y3) ... (Xn \ Yn)
```

The first ordered pair that causes the condition function to evaluate to true() is returned as the result of find-first-pair. Note that: (i) If the Condition function iterates through the submitted argument pairs and does not once evaluate to true(), then find-first-pair returns *No results*; (ii) The result of find-first-pair will always be a pair of items (of any datatype) or no item at all.

Examples

- find-first-pair(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function(\$a, \$b) {\$a+\$b = 32}) returns the sequence of xs:integers (11, 21)
- find-first-pair(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function(\$a, \$b) {\$a+\$b = 33}) returns No results

Notice from the two examples above that the ordering of the pairs is: (11, 21) (12, 22) (13, 23)...(20, 30). This is why the second example returns *No results* (because no ordered pair gives a sum of 33).

▼ find-first-pair-pos [altova:]

```
find-first-pair-pos((Seq-01 as item()*), (Seq-02 as item()*),
(Condition( Seq-01-Item, Seq-02-Item as xs:boolean)) as xs:integer XP3 XQ3
This function takes three arguments:
```

- The first two arguments, seq-01 and seq-02, are sequences of one or more items of any datatype.
- The third argument, condition, is a reference to an XPath function that takes two arguments (has an arity of 2) and returns a boolean.

The items of seq-01 and seq-02 are passed in ordered pairs as the arguments of the function in condition. The pairs are ordered as follows.

```
If Seq-01 = X1, X2, X3 ... Xn
And Seq-02 = Y1, Y2, Y3 ... Yn
Then (X1 Y1), (X2 Y2), (X3 Y3) ... (Xn Yn)
```

The index position of the first ordered pair that causes the condition function to evaluate to true() is returned as the result of find-first-pair-pos. Note that if the condition function iterates through the submitted argument pairs and does not once evaluate to true(), then find-first-pair-pos returns No results.

Examples

- find-first-pair-pos(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function(\$a, \$b) {\$a+\$b = 32}) returns 1
- find-first-pair-pos(11 to 20, 21 to 30, function(\$a, \$b) {\$a+\$b = 33}) returns No results

Notice from the two examples above that the ordering of the pairs is: (11, 21) (12, 22) (13, 23)...(20, 30). In the first example, the first pair causes the **condition** function to evaluate to true(), and so its index position in the sequence, 1, is returned.

The second example returns No results because no pair gives a sum of 33.

▼ find-first-pos [altova:]

```
find-first-pos((Sequence as item()*), (Condition( Sequence-Item as
xs:boolean)) as xs:integer XP3 XQ3
```

This function takes two arguments. The first argument is a sequence of one or more items of any datatype. The second argument, <code>condition</code>, is a reference to an XPath function that takes one argument (has an arity of 1) and returns a boolean. Each item of <code>sequence</code> is submitted, in turn, to the function referenced in <code>condition</code>. (Remember: This function takes a single argument.) The first <code>sequence</code> item that causes the function in <code>condition</code> to evaluate to <code>true()</code> has its index position in <code>sequence</code> returned as the result of <code>find-first-pos</code>, and the iteration stops.

Examples

• find-first-pos(5 to 10, function(\$a) {\$a mod 2 = 0}) returns xs:integer 2

The condition argument references the XPath 3.0 inline function, function(), which declares an inline function named a and then defines it. Each item in the sequence argument of find-first-pos is passed, in turn, to a as its input value. The input value is tested on the condition in the function definition (a mod a = a0). The index position in the sequence of the first input value to satisfy this condition is returned as the result of find-first-pos (in this case a2, since a6, the first value (in the sequence) to satisfy the condition, is at index position a2 in the sequence).

• find-first-pos((2 to 10), (function(\$a) {\$a+3=7})) returns xs:integer 3

Further examples

If the file C:\Temp\Customers.xml exists:

• find-first-pos(("C:\Temp\Customers.xml", "http://www.altova.com/index.html"), (doc-available#1)) returns 1

If the file C:\Temp\Customers.xml does not exist, and http://www.altova.com/index.html exists:

• find-first-pos(("C:\Temp\Customers.xml", "http://www.altova.com/index.html"), (doc-available#1)) returns 2

If the file C:\Temp\Customers.xml does not exist, and http://www.altova.com/index.html also does not exist:

find-first-pos(("C:\Temp\Customers.xml", "http://www.altova.com/index.html"), (doc-available#1)) returns no result

Notes about the examples given above

- The XPath 3.0 function, doc-available, takes a single string argument, which is used as a URI, and returns true if a document node is found at the submitted URI. (The document at the submitted URI must therefore be an XML document.)
- The doc-available function can be used for condition, the second argument of

- find-first-pos, because it takes only one argument (arity=1), because it takes an item() as input (a string which is used as a URI), and returns a boolean value.
- Notice that the doc-available function is only referenced, not called. The #1 suffix that is attached to it indicates a function with an arity of 1. In its entirety doc-available#1 simply means: Use the doc-availabe() function that has arity=1, passing to it as its single argument, in turn, each of the items in the first sequence. As a result, each of the two strings will be passed to doc-available(), which uses the string as a URI and tests whether a document node exists at the URI. If one does, the doc-available() function evaluates to true() and the index position of that string in the sequence is returned as the result of the find-first-pos function. Note about the doc-available() function: Relative paths are resolved relative to the the current base URI, which is by default the URI of the XML document from which the function is loaded.

▼ substitute-empty [altova:]

```
substitute-empty(FirstSequence as item()*, SecondSequence as item()) as
item()* XP3 XQ3
```

If FirstSequence is empty, returns SecondSequence. If FirstSequence is not empty, returns FirstSequence.

- Examples
 - substitute-empty((1,2,3), (4,5,6)) returns (1,2,3)
 - substitute-empty((), (4,5,6)) returns (4,5,6)

XPath/XQuery Functions: String

Altova's string extension functions can be used in XPath and XQuery expressions and provide additional functionality for the processing of data.

Note about naming of functions and language applicability

Altova extension functions can be used in XPath/XQuery expressions. They provide additional functionality to the functionality that is available in the standard library of XPath, XQuery, and XSLT functions.

- In order to distinguish Altova extension functions from functions in the standard library, Altova extension functions are named in this documentation with a suffix of [altova:]. For example: add-years-to-date [altova:].
- When using Altova extension functions in your XPath/XQuery expressions, however, you must use the function without any prefix or suffix, just as you would use any standard XPath/XQuery function. Use an Altova extension like this: add-years-to-date(xs:date("2014-01-15"), 10).

XPath functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XP1 XP2 XP3
XSLT functions (used in XPath expressions in XSLT):	XSLT1 XSLT2 XSLT3
XQuery functions (used in XQuery expressions in XQuery):	XQ1 XQ3

camel-case [altova:]

```
camel-case(InputString as xs:string) as xs:string XP3 XQ3
```

Returns the input string Inputstring in CamelCase. The string is analyzed using the regular expression '\s' (which is a shortcut for the whitespace character). The first non-whitespace character after a whitespace or sequence of consecutive whitespaces is capitalized. The first character in the output string is capitalized.

Examples

- camel-case("max") returns Max
- camel-case("max max") returns Max Max
- camel-case("file01.xml") returns File01.xml
- camel-case("file01.xml file02.xml") returns File01.xml File02.xml
- camel-case("file01.xml file02.xml") returns File01.xml File02.xml
- camel-case("file01.xml -file02.xml") returns File01.xml -file02.xml

```
camel-case(InputString as xs:string, SplitChars as xs:string, IsRegex as
xs:boolean) as xs:string XP3 XQ3
```

Converts the input string Inputstring to camel case by using splitchars to determine the character/s that trigger the next capitalization. splitchars is used as a regular expression when Isregex = true(), or as plain characters when Isregex = false(). The first character in the output string is capitalized.

Examples

- camel-case("setname getname", "set|get", true()) returns setName getName
- camel-case("altova\documents\testcases", "\", false()) returns Altova \Documents\Testcases

▼ char [altova:]

char(Position as xs:integer) as xs:string XP3 XQ3

Returns a string containing the character at the position specified by the Position argument, in the string obtained by converting the value of the context item to xs:string. The result string will be empty if no character exists at the index submitted by the Position argument.

■ Examples

If the context item is 1234ABCD:

- char(2) returns 2
- char(5) returns A
- char (9) returns the empty string.
- char (-2) returns the empty string.

char(InputString as xs:string, Position as xs:integer) as xs:string XP3 XQ3
Returns a string containing the character at the position specified by the Position argument, in the string submitted as the InputString argument. The result string will be empty if no character exists at the index submitted by the Position argument.

■ Examples

- char("2014-01-15", 5) returns -
- char("USA", 1) returns U
- char("USA", 10) returns the empty string.
- char("USA", -2) returns the empty string.

▼ first-chars [altova:]

first-chars(X-Number as xs:integer) as xs:string XP3 XQ3

Returns a string containing the first x-Number of characters of the string obtained by converting the value of the context item to xs:string.

Examples

If the context item is 1234ABCD:

- first-chars(2) returns 12
- first-chars(5) returns 1234A
- first-chars(9) returns 1234ABCD

first-chars(InputString as xs:string, X-Number as xs:integer) as xs:string
xp3 xQ3

Returns a string containing the first x-Number of characters of the string submitted as the InputString argument.

■ Examples

- first-chars("2014-01-15", 5) returns 2014-
- first-chars("USA", 1) returns U

▼ last-chars [altova:]

```
last-chars(X-Number as xs:integer) as xs:string XP3 XQ3
```

Returns a string containing the last x-Number of characters of the string obtained by converting the value of the context item to xs:string.

■ Examples

If the context item is 1234ABCD:

- last-chars(2) returns CD
- last-chars(5) returns 4ABCD
- last-chars(9) returns 1234ABCD

```
last-chars(InputString as xs:string, X-Number as xs:integer) as xs:string
xp3 xo3
```

Returns a string containing the last x-Number of characters of the string submitted as the InputString argument.

Examples

- last-chars("2014-01-15", 5) returns 01-15
- last-chars("USA", 10) returns USA

pad-string-left [altova:]

```
pad-string-left(StringToPad as xs:string, StringLength as xs:integer,
PadCharacter as xs:string) as xs:string XP3 XQ3
```

The PadCharacter argument is a single character. It is padded to the left of the string to increase the number of characters in StringToPad so that this number equals the integer value of the StringLength argument. The StringLength argument can have any integer value (positive or negative), but padding will occur only if the value of StringLength is greater than the number of characters in StringToPad. If StringToPad. has more characters than the value of StringLength, then StringToPad is left unchanged.

■ Examples

```
pad-string-left('AP', 1, 'Z') returns 'AP'
pad-string-left('AP', 2, 'Z') returns 'AP'
pad-string-left('AP', 3, 'Z') returns 'ZAP'
pad-string-left('AP', 4, 'Z') returns 'ZZAP'
pad-string-left('AP', -3, 'Z') returns 'AP'
pad-string-left('AP', 3, 'YZ') returns a pad-character-too-long error
```

▼ pad-string-right [altova:]

```
pad-string-right(StringToPad as xs:string, StringLength as xs:integer,
PadCharacter as xs:string) as xs:string XP3 XQ3
```

The PadCharacter argument is a single character. It is padded to the right of the string to increase the number of characters in StringToPad so that this number equals the integer value of the StringLength argument. The StringLength argument can have any integer value (positive or negative), but padding will occur only if the value of StringLength is greater than the number of characters in StringToPad. If StringToPad has more characters than the value of StringLength, then StringToPad is left unchanged.

■ Examples

```
pad-string-right('AP', 1, 'Z') returns 'AP'pad-string-right('AP', 2, 'Z') returns 'AP'
```

```
    pad-string-right('AP', 3, 'Z') returns 'APZ'
    pad-string-right('AP', 4, 'Z') returns 'APZZ'
    pad-string-right('AP', -3, 'Z') returns 'AP'
    pad-string-right('AP', 3, 'YZ') returns a pad-character-too-long error
```

▼ repeat-string [altova:]

repeat-string(InputString as xs:string, Repeats as xs:integer) as xs:string
XP2 XQ1 XP3 XQ3

Generates a string that is composed of the first InputString argument repeated Repeats number of times.

Examples

• repeat-string("Altova #", 3) returns "Altova #Altova #Altova #"

▼ substring-after-last [altova:]

substring-after-last(MainString as xs:string, CheckString as xs:string) as
xs:string XP3 XQ3

If CheckString is found in MainString, then the substring that occurs after CheckString in MainString is returned. If CheckString is not found in MainString, then the empty string is returned. If CheckString is an empty string, then MainString is returned in its entirety. If there is more than one occurrence of CheckString in MainString, then the substring after the last occurrence of CheckString is returned.

■ Examples

```
    substring-after-last('ABCDEFGH', 'B') returns 'CDEFGH'
    substring-after-last('ABCDEFGH', 'BC') returns 'DEFGH'
    substring-after-last('ABCDEFGH', 'BD') returns ''
    substring-after-last('ABCDEFGH', 'Z') returns ''
    substring-after-last('ABCDEFGH', '') returns 'ABCDEFGH'
    substring-after-last('ABCD-ABCD', 'B') returns 'CD'
    substring-after-last('ABCD-ABCD-ABCD', 'BCD') returns ''
```

▼ substring-before-last [altova:]

substring-before-last(MainString as xs:string, CheckString as xs:string) as
xs:string XP3 XQ3

If CheckString is found in MainString, then the substring that occurs before CheckString in MainString is returned. If CheckString is not found in MainString, or if CheckString is an empty string, then the empty string is returned. If there is more than one occurrence of CheckString in MainString, then the substring before the last occurrence of CheckString is returned.

Examples

```
    substring-before-last('ABCDEFGH', 'B') returns 'A'
    substring-before-last('ABCDEFGH', 'BC') returns 'A'
    substring-before-last('ABCDEFGH', 'BD') returns ''
    substring-before-last('ABCDEFGH', 'Z') returns ''
```

```
    substring-before-last('ABCDEFGH', '') returns ''
    substring-before-last('ABCD-ABCD', 'B') returns 'ABCD-A'
    substring-before-last('ABCD-ABCD-ABCD', 'ABCD') returns 'ABCD-ABCD-'
```

substring-pos [altova:]

substring-pos(StringToCheck as xs:string, StringToFind as xs:string) as
xs:integer XP3 XQ3

Returns the character position of the first occurrence of StringToFind in the string StringToCheck. The character position is returned as an integer. The first character of StringToCheck has the position 1. If StringToFind does not occur within StringToCheck, the integer 0 is returned. To check for the second or a later occurrence of StringToCheck, use the next signature of this function.

■ Examples

```
    substring-pos('Altova', 'to') returns 3
    substring-pos('Altova', 'tov') returns 3
    substring-pos('Altova', 'tv') returns 0
    substring-pos('AltovaAltova', 'to') returns 3
```

substring-pos(StringToCheck as xs:string, StringToFind as xs:string, Integer
as xs:integer) as xs:integer XP3 XQ3

Returns the character position of StringToFind in the string, StringToCheck. The search for StringToFind starts from the character position given by the Integer argument; the character substring before this position is not searched. The returned integer, however, is the position of the found string within the *entire* string, StringToCheck. This signature is useful for finding the second or a later position of a string that occurs multiple times with the StringToCheck. If StringToFind does not occur within StringToCheck, the integer 0 is returned.

Examples

```
substring-pos('Altova', 'to', 1) returns 3
substring-pos('Altova', 'to', 3) returns 3
substring-pos('Altova', 'to', 4) returns 0
substring-pos('Altova-Altova', 'to', 0) returns 3
substring-pos('Altova-Altova', 'to', 4) returns 10
```

trim-string [altova:]

trim-string(InputString as xs:string) as xs:string XP3 XQ3

This function takes an xs:string argument, removes any leading and trailing whitespace, and returns a "trimmed" xs:string.

Examples

```
    trim-string(" Hello World ")) returns "Hello World"
    trim-string("Hello World ")) returns "Hello World"
    trim-string(" Hello World")) returns "Hello World"
    trim-string("Hello World")) returns "Hello World"
    trim-string("Hello World")) returns "Hello World"
```

▼ trim-string-left [altova:]

trim-string-left(InputString as xs:string) as xs:string XP3 XQ3

This function takes an xs:string argument, removes any leading whitespace, and returns a left-trimmed xs:string.

■ Examples

- trim-string-left(" Hello World ")) returns "Hello World "
 trim-string-left("Hello World ")) returns "Hello World "
- trim-string-left(" Hello World")) returns "Hello World"
- trim-string-left("Hello World")) returns "Hello World"
- trim-string-left("Hello World")) returns "Hello World"

trim-string-right [altova:]

trim-string-right(InputString as xs:string) as xs:string XP3 XQ3

This function takes an xs:string argument, removes any trailing whitespace, and returns a right-trimmed xs:string.

■ Examples

- trim-string-right(" Hello World ")) returns " Hello World"
- trim-string-right("Hello World ")) returns "Hello World"
- trim-string-right(" Hello World")) returns " Hello World"
- trim-string-right("Hello World")) returns "Hello World"
- trim-string-right("Hello World")) returns "Hello World"

16.2 License Information

This section contains:

- Information about the <u>distribution of this software product</u>
- Information about software activation and license metering
- Information about the intellectual property rights related to this software product
- The End-User License Agreement governing the use of this software product

Please read this information carefully. It is binding upon you since you agreed to these terms when you installed this software product.

Electronic Software Distribution

This product is available through electronic software distribution, a distribution method that provides the following unique benefits:

- You can evaluate the software free-of-charge before making a purchasing decision.
- Once you decide to buy the software, you can place your order online at the <u>Altova</u> website and immediately get a fully licensed product within minutes.
- When you place an online order, you always get the latest version of our software.
- The product package includes a comprehensive integrated onscreen help system. The
 latest version of the user manual is available at www.altova.com (i) in HTML format for
 online browsing, and (ii) in PDF format for download (and to print if you prefer to have the
 documentation on paper).

30-day evaluation period

After downloading this product, you can evaluate it for a period of up to 30 days free of charge. About 20 days into this evaluation period, the software will start to remind you that it has not yet been licensed. The reminder message will be displayed once each time you start the application. If you would like to continue using the program after the 30-day evaluation period, you have to purchase an Altova Software License Agreement, which is delivered in the form of a key-code that you enter into the Software Activation dialog to unlock the product. You can purchase your license at the online shop at the Altova website.

Helping Others within Your Organization to Evaluate the Software

If you wish to distribute the evaluation version within your company network, or if you plan to use it on a PC that is not connected to the Internet, you may only distribute the Setup programs, provided that they are not modified in any way. Any person that accesses the software installer that you have provided, must request their own 30-day evaluation license key code and after expiration of their evaluation period, must also purchase a license in order to be able to continue using the product.

For further details, please refer to the <u>Altova Software License Agreement</u> at the end of this section.

Software Activation and License Metering

As part of Altova's Software Activation, the software may use your internal network and Internet connection for the purpose of transmitting license-related data at the time of installation, registration, use, or update to an Altova-operated license server and validating the authenticity of the license-related data in order to protect Altova against unlicensed or illegal use of the software and to improve customer service. Activation is based on the exchange of license related data such as operating system, IP address, date/time, software version, and computer name, along with other information between your computer and an Altova license server.

Your Altova product has a built-in license metering module that further helps you avoid any unintentional violation of the End User License Agreement. Your product is licensed either as a single-user or multi-user installation, and the license-metering module makes sure that no more than the licensed number of users use the application concurrently.

This license-metering technology uses your local area network (LAN) to communicate between instances of the application running on different computers.

Single license

When the application starts up, as part of the license metering process, the software sends a short broadcast datagram to find any other instance of the product running on another computer in the same network segment. If it doesn't get any response, it will open a port for listening to other instances of the application.

Multi license

If more than one instance of the application is used within the same LAN, these instances will briefly communicate with each other on startup. These instances exchange key-codes in order to help you to better determine that the number of concurrent licenses purchased is not accidentally violated. This is the same kind of license metering technology that is common in the Unix world and with a number of database development tools. It allows Altova customers to purchase reasonably-priced concurrent-use multi-user licenses.

We have also designed the applications so that they send few and small network packets so as to not put a burden on your network. The TCP/IP ports (2799) used by your Altova product are officially registered with the IANA (see the IANA website (http://www.iana.org/) for details) and our license-metering module is tested and proven technology.

If you are using a firewall, you may notice communications on port 2799 between the computers that are running Altova products. You are, of course, free to block such traffic between different groups in your organization, as long as you can ensure by other means, that your license agreement is not violated.

You will also notice that, if you are online, your Altova product contains many useful functions; these are unrelated to the license-metering technology.

Intellectual Property Rights

The Altova Software and any copies that you are authorized by Altova to make are the intellectual property of and are owned by Altova and its suppliers. The structure, organization and code of the Software are the valuable trade secrets and confidential information of Altova and its suppliers. The Software is protected by copyright, including without limitation by United States Copyright Law, international treaty provisions and applicable laws in the country in which it is being used. Altova retains the ownership of all patents, copyrights, trade secrets, trademarks and other intellectual property rights pertaining to the Software, and that Altova's ownership rights extend to any images, photographs, animations, videos, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the Software and all accompanying printed materials. Notifications of claimed copyright infringement should be sent to Altova's copyright agent as further provided on the Altova Web Site.

Altova software contains certain Third Party Software that is also protected by intellectual property laws, including without limitation applicable copyright laws as described in detail at http://www.altova.com/legal_3rdparty.html.

All other names or trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Altova MobileTogether Designer End User License Agreement THIS IS A LEGAL DOCUMENT -- RETAIN FOR YOUR RECORDS

ALTOVA® MOBILETOGETHER DESIGNER END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

Licensor: Altova GmbH Rudolfsplatz 13a/9 A-1010 Wien Austria

Important - Read Carefully. Notice to User:

This End User License Agreement ("Agreement") is a legal document between you and Altova GmbH ("Altova"). It is important that you read this document before using the Altova-provided software ("Software") and any accompanying documentation, including, without limitation printed materials, 'online' files, or electronic documentation ("Documentation"). By clicking the "I accept" and "Next" buttons below, or by installing, or otherwise using the Software, you agree to be bound by the terms of this Agreement as well as the Altova Privacy Policy ("Privacy Policy") including, without limitation, the warranty disclaimers, limitation of liability, data use and termination provisions below, whether or not you decide to purchase the Software. You agree that this agreement is enforceable like any written agreement negotiated and signed by you. If you do not agree, you are not licensed to use the Software, and you must destroy any downloaded copies of the Software in your possession or control. You may print a copy of this Agreement as part of the installation process at the time of acceptance. Alternatively, a copy of this Agreement may be found at http://www.altova.com/legal.html and a copy of the Privacy Policy may be found at http://www.altova.com/privacy.

1. SOFTWARE LICENSE

(a) License Grant.

- (i) Upon your acceptance of this Agreement Altova grants you a non-exclusive, non-transferable (except as provided below), limited license, without the right to grant sublicenses, to install and use a copy of the Software on one compatible personal computer or workstation.
- (ii) You may not use the Software to develop and distribute other software programs that directly compete with any Altova software or service without prior written permission. Altova reserves all other rights in and to the Software.
- **(b) Backup and Archival Copies.** You may make one (1) backup and one (1) archival copy of the Software, provided your backup and archival copies are not installed or used on any computer and further provided that all such copies shall bear the original and unmodified copyright, patent and other intellectual property markings that appear on or in the Software.
- **(c) Title.** Title to the Software is not transferred to you. Ownership of all copies of the Software and of copies made by you is vested in Altova, subject to the rights of use granted to you in this Agreement. As between you and Altova, documents, files, stylesheets, generated program code (including the Unrestricted Source Code) and schemas that are authored or created by you via your utilization of the Software, in accordance with its Documentation and the terms of this Agreement, are your property.

(d) Reverse Engineering. Except and to the limited extent as may be otherwise specifically provided by applicable law in the European Union, you may not reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to discover the source code, underlying ideas, underlying user interface techniques or algorithms of the Software by any means whatsoever, directly or indirectly, or disclose any of the foregoing, except to the extent you may be expressly permitted to decompile under applicable law in the European Union, if it is essential to do so in order to achieve operability of the Software with another software program, and you have first requested Altova to provide the information necessary to achieve such operability and Altova has not made such information available. Altova has the right to impose reasonable conditions and to request a reasonable fee before providing such information. Any information supplied by Altova or obtained by you, as permitted hereunder, may only be used by you for the purpose described herein and may not be disclosed to any third party or used to create any software which is substantially similar to the expression of the Software. Requests for information from users in the European Union with respect to the above should be directed to the Altova Customer Support Department.

(e) Other Restrictions. You may not loan, rent, lease, sublicense, distribute or otherwise transfer all or any portion of the Software to third parties except as otherwise expressly provided. You may not copy the Software except as expressly set forth herein, and any copies that you are permitted to make pursuant to this Agreement must contain the same copyright, patent and other intellectual property markings that appear on or in the Software. You may not modify, adapt or translate the Software. You may not, directly or indirectly, encumber or suffer to exist any lien or security interest on the Software; knowingly take any action that would cause the Software to be placed in the public domain; or use the Software in any computer environment not specified in this Agreement. You may not permit any use of or access to the Software by any third party in connection with a commercial service offering, such as for a cloud-based or web-based SaaS offering.

You will comply with applicable law and Altova's instructions regarding the use of the Software. You agree to notify your employees and agents who may have access to the Software of the restrictions contained in this Agreement and to ensure their compliance with these restrictions.

NO GUARANTEE. THE SOFTWARE IS NEITHER GUARANTEED NOR WARRANTED TO BE ERROR-FREE NOR SHALL ANY LIABILITY BE ASSUMED BY ALTOVA IN THIS RESPECT. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY SUPPORT FOR ANY TECHNICAL STANDARD, THE SOFTWARE IS NOT INTENDED FOR USE IN OR IN CONNECTION WITH. WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE OPERATION OF NUCLEAR FACILITIES, AIRCRAFT NAVIGATION, COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS, AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL EQUIPMENT, MEDICAL DEVICES OR LIFE SUPPORT SYSTEMS, MEDICAL OR HEALTH CARE APPLICATIONS, OR OTHER APPLICATIONS WHERE THE FAILURE OF THE SOFTWARE OR ERRORS IN DATA PROCESSING COULD LEAD TO DEATH. PERSONAL INJURY OR SEVERE PHYSICAL OR ENVIRONMENTAL DAMAGE. YOU AGREE THAT YOU ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THE ACCURACY AND ADEQUACY OF THE SOFTWARE AND ANY DATA GENERATED OR PROCESSED BY THE SOFTWARE FOR YOUR INTENDED USE AND YOU WILL DEFEND. INDEMNIFY AND HOLD ALTOVA, ITS OFFICERS AND EMPLOYEES HARMLESS FROM ANY THIRD PARTY CLAIMS, DEMANDS, OR SUITS THAT ARE BASED UPON THE ACCURACY AND ADEQUACY OF THE SOFTWARE IN YOUR USE OR ANY DATA GENERATED BY THE SOFTWARE IN YOUR USE.

2. INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS

You acknowledge that the Software and any copies that you are authorized by Altova to make are

the intellectual property of and are owned by Altova and its suppliers. The structure, organization and code of the Software are the valuable trade secrets and confidential information of Altova and its suppliers. The Software is protected by copyright, including without limitation by United States Copyright Law, international treaty provisions and applicable laws in the country in which it is being used. You acknowledge that Altova retains the ownership of all patents, copyrights, trade secrets, trademarks and other intellectual property rights pertaining to the Software, and that Altova's ownership rights extend to any images, photographs, animations, videos, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the Software and all accompanying printed materials. You will take no actions which adversely affect Altova's intellectual property rights in the Software. Trademarks shall be used in accordance with accepted trademark practice, including identification of trademark owners' names. Trademarks may only be used to identify printed output produced by the Software, and such use of any trademark does not give you any right of ownership in that Altova®, XMLSpy®, Authentic®, StyleVision®, MapForce®, trademark. UModel®, DatabaseSpy®, DiffDog®, SchemaAgent®, SemanticWorks®, MissionKit®, Markup Your Mind®, MobileTogether™, MobileTogether Server™, MobileTogether MobileTogether Mobile App™, RaptorXML™, RaptorXML Server™, RaptorXML +XBRL Server™, Powered By RaptorXML™, FlowForce Server™, StyleVision Server™, and MapForce Server™ are trademarks of Altova GmbH. (pending or registered in numerous countries). Unicode and the Unicode Logo are trademarks of Unicode, Inc. Windows, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, and Windows 8 are trademarks of Microsoft. W3C, CSS, DOM, MathML, RDF, XHTML, XML and XSL are trademarks (registered in numerous countries) of the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C); marks of the W3C are registered and held by its host institutions, MIT, INRIA and Keio. Except as expressly stated above, this Agreement does not grant you any intellectual property rights in the Software. Notifications of claimed copyright infringement should be sent to Altova's copyright agent as further provided on the Altova Web Site.

3. LIMITED WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

- (a) Limited Warranty and Customer Remedies. YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED TO YOU "AS-IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES FOR USE OR PERFORMANCE, AND ALTOVA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY OR LIABILITY OBLIGATIONS TO YOU OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. WHERE LEGALLY LIABILITY CANNOT BE EXCLUDED FOR THE SOFTWARE, BUT IT MAY BE LIMITED, ALTOVA'S LIABILITY AND THAT OF ITS SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE SUM OF FIFTY DOLLARS (USD \$50) IN TOTAL.
- No Other Warranties and Disclaimer. THE FOREGOING LIMITED WARRANTY AND REMEDIES STATE THE SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDIES FOR ALTOVA OR ITS ALTOVA AND ITS SUPPLIERS DO NOT AND SUPPLIER'S BREACH OF WARRANTY. CANNOT WARRANT THE PERFORMANCE OR RESULTS YOU MAY OBTAIN BY USING THE SOFTWARE. EXCEPT FOR THE FOREGOING LIMITED WARRANTY, AND FOR ANY WARRANTY, CONDITION, REPRESENTATION OR TERM TO THE EXTENT WHICH THE SAME CANNOT OR MAY NOT BE EXCLUDED OR LIMITED BY LAW APPLICABLE TO YOU IN YOUR JURISDICTION, ALTOVA AND ITS SUPPLIERS MAKE NO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS OR TERMS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WHETHER BY STATUTE, COMMON LAW, CUSTOM, USAGE OR OTHERWISE AS TO ANY OTHER MATTERS. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ALTOVA AND ITS SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, INFORMATIONAL CONTENT OR ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT, WITH REGARD TO THE SOFTWARE, AND THE PROVISION OF OR FAILURE TO PROVIDE SUPPORT SERVICES. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS. YOU MAY HAVE

OTHERS, WHICH VARY FROM STATE/JURISDICTION TO STATE/JURISDICTION.

Limitation of Liability. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW EVEN IF A REMEDY FAILS ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE, IN NO EVENT SHALL ALTOVA OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, OR ANY OTHER PECUNIARY LOSS) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE OR THE PROVISION OF OR FAILURE TO PROVIDE SUPPORT SERVICES, EVEN IF ALTOVA HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Because some states and jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of liability, the above limitation may not apply to you. In such states and jurisdictions, Altova's liability shall be limited to the greatest extent permitted by law and the limitations or exclusions of warranties and liability contained herein do not prejudice applicable statutory consumer rights of person acquiring goods otherwise than in the course of business. The disclaimer and limited liability above are fundamental to this Agreement between Altova and you.

(d) Waiver and Indemnity. BY USING THE SOFTWARE, YOU AGREE, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, TO SAVE AND PROTECT, HOLD HARMLESS, INDEMNIFY AND DEFEND ALTOVA, ITS DIRECTORS, OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AFFILIATES, AGENTS, CONTRACTORS, AND LICENSORS AGAINST ANY AND ALL LIABILITY, CAUSES OF ACTION, CLAIMS, LOSS DAMAGE OR COST AND EXPENSE ARISING FROM, ALLEGEDLY ARISING FROM, OR RESULTING DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY FROM ANY ACTS OF THE LICENSEE OR ANY OF ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, INDEPENDENT CONTRACTORS OR AGENTS DONE IN THE PERFORMANCE, OPERATION, OR USE OF THE SOFTWARE, OR ANY ACT DONE UNDER PRETENDED AUTHORITY OF THIS LICENSE. THIS AGREEMENT TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD ALTOVA HARMLESS SHALL INCLUDE ANY COSTS INCURRED BY ALTOVA IN DEFENDING ANY ACTION INVOLVING AN ACT BY THE LICENSEE OR ANY OF ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, INDEPENDENT CONTRACTORS OR AGENTS, AND SHALL INCLUDE ANY ATTORNEY'S FEES INCURRED BY ALTOVA.

4. SUPPORT AND MAINTENANCE

Altova offers "Support & Maintenance Package(s)" ("SMP") for the Software only if you have obtained a valid license for MobileTogether Server, which may be obtained from Altova at www.altova.com. The Support Period shall coincide with the MobileTogether Server Software license term. The terms of SMP are set forth in the Altova MobileTogether Server Software License Agreement located at http://www.altova.com/license_agreements.html.

5. SOFTWARE ACTIVATION AND UPDATES

- (a) License Metering. The Software includes a built-in license metering module that is designed to assist you with monitoring license compliance in small local networks. The metering module attempts to communicate with other machines on your local area network. You permit Altova to use your internal network for license monitoring for this purpose. This license metering module may be used to assist with your license compliance but should not be the sole method. Should your firewall settings block said communications, you must deploy an accurate means of monitoring usage by the end user and preventing users from using the Software more than the Permitted Number.
- **(b)** License Compliance Monitoring. You are required to utilize a process or tool to ensure that the Permitted Number is not exceeded. Without prejudice or waiver of any potential violations of the Agreement, Altova may provide you with additional compliance tools should you

be unable to accurately account for license usage within your organization. If provided with such a tool by Altova, you (a) are required to use it in order to comply with the terms of this Agreement and (b) permit Altova to use your internal network for license monitoring and metering and to generate compliance reports that are communicated to Altova from time to time.

- (c) Software Activation. The Software may use your internal network and Internet connection for the purpose of transmitting license-related data at the time of installation, registration, use, or update to an Altova-operated license server and validating the authenticity of the license-related data in order to protect Altova against unlicensed or illegal use of the Software and to improve customer service. Activation is based on the exchange of license related data between your computer and the Altova license server. You agree that Altova may use these measures and you agree to follow any applicable requirements. You further agree that use of license key codes that are not or were not generated by Altova and lawfully obtained from Altova, or an authorized reseller as part of an effort to activate or use the Software violates Altova's intellectual property rights as well as the terms of this Agreement. You agree that efforts to circumvent or disable Altova's copyright protection mechanisms or License Server violate Altova's intellectual property rights as well as the terms of this Agreement. Altova expressly reserves the rights to seek all available legal and equitable remedies to prevent such actions and to recover lost profits, damages and costs.
- **(d) LiveUpdate**. Altova provides a new LiveUpdate notification service to you, which is free of charge. Altova may use your internal network and Internet connection for the purpose of transmitting license-related data to an Altova-operated LiveUpdate server to validate your license at appropriate intervals and determine if there is any update available for you.
- **(e) Use of Data.** The terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy are set out in full at http://www.altova.com/privacy and are incorporated by reference into this Agreement. By your acceptance of the terms of this Agreement and/or use of the Software, you authorize the collection, use and disclosure of information collected by Altova for the purposes provided for in this Agreement and/or the Privacy Policy. Altova has the right in its sole discretion to amend this provision of the Agreement and/or Privacy Policy at any time. You are encouraged to review the terms of the Privacy Policy as posted on the Altova Web site from time to time.
- **(f)** Audit Rights. You agree that Altova may audit your use of the Software for compliance with the terms of this Agreement at any time, upon reasonable notice. In the event that such audit reveals any use of the Software by you other than in full compliance with the terms of this Agreement, you shall reimburse Altova for all reasonable expenses related to such audit in addition to any other liabilities you may incur as a result of such non-compliance.
- (g) Notice to European Users. Please note that the information as described in paragraph 5(d) above may be transferred outside of the European Economic Area, for purposes of processing, analysis, and review, by Altova, Inc., a company located in Beverly, Massachusetts, U.S.A., or its subsidiaries or Altova's subsidiaries or divisions, or authorized partners, located worldwide. You are advised that the United States uses a sectoral model of privacy protection that relies on a mix of legislation, governmental regulation, and self-regulation. You are further advised that the Council of the European Union has found that this model does not provide "adequate" privacy protections as contemplated by Article 25 of the European Union's Data Directive. (Directive 95/46/EC, 1995 O.J. (L 281) 31). Article 26 of the European Union's Data Directive allows for transfer of personal data from the European Union to a third country if the individual has unambiguously given his consent to the transfer of personal information, regardless of the third country's level of protection. By agreeing to this Agreement, you consent to the transfer of all such information to the United States and the processing of that information as

described in this Agreement and the Privacy Policy.

6. TERM AND TERMINATION

This Agreement may be terminated (a) by your giving Altova written notice of termination; or (b) by Altova, at any time without prior notice. Upon any termination of the Agreement, you must cease all use of the Software that this Agreement governs, destroy all copies then in your possession or control and take such other actions as Altova may reasonably request to ensure that no copies of the Software remain in your possession or control. The terms and conditions set forth in Sections 1(c), 1(d), 1(e), 1(l), 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, and 9 survive termination as applicable.

7. RESTRICTED RIGHTS NOTICE AND EXPORT RESTRICTIONS

The Software was developed entirely at private expense and is commercial computer software provided with RESTRICTED RIGHTS. Use, duplication or disclosure by the U.S. Government or a U.S. Government contractor or subcontractor is subject to the restrictions set forth in this Agreement and as provided in FAR 12.211 and 12.212 (48 C.F.R. §12.211 and 12.212) or DFARS 227. 7202 (48 C.F.R. §227-7202) as applicable. Consistent with the above as applicable, Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Computer Documentation licensed to U.S. government end users only as commercial items and only with those rights as are granted to all other end users under the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement. Manufacturer is Altova GmbH, Rudolfsplatz, 13a/9, A-1010 Vienna, Austria/EU. You may not use or otherwise export or re-export the Software or Documentation except as authorized by United States law and the laws of the jurisdiction in which the Software was obtained. In particular, but without limitation, the Software or Documentation may not be exported or re-exported (i) into (or to a national or resident of) any U.S. embargoed country or (ii) to anyone on the U.S. Treasury Department's list of Specially Designated Nationals or the U.S. Department of Commerce's Table of Denial Orders. By using the Software, you represent and warrant that you are not located in, under control of, or a national or resident of any such country or on any such list.

8. U.S. GOVERNMENT ENTITIES

Notwithstanding the foregoing, if you are an agency, instrumentality or department of the federal government of the United States, then this Agreement shall be governed in accordance with the laws of the United States of America, and in the absence of applicable federal law, the laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts will apply. Further, and notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement (including but not limited to Section 5 (Indemnification)), all claims, demands, complaints and disputes will be subject to the Contract Disputes Act (41 U.S.C. §§7101 et seq.), the Tucker Act (28 U.S.C. §1346(a) and §1491), or the Federal Tort Claims Act (28 U.S.C. §§1346(b), 2401-2402, 2671-2672, 2674-2680), FAR 1.601(a) and 43.102 (Contract Modifications); FAR 12.302(b), as applicable, or other applicable governing authority. For the avoidance of doubt, if you are an agency, instrumentality, or department of the federal, state or local government of the U.S. or a U.S. public and accredited educational institution, then your indemnification obligations are only applicable to the extent they would not cause you to violate any applicable law (e.g., the Anti-Deficiency Act), and you have any legally required authorization or authorizing statute.

9. THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE

The Software may contain third party software which requires notices and/or additional terms and conditions. Such required third party software notices and/or additional terms and conditions are located at our Website at http://www.altova.com/legal_3rdparty.html and are made a part of and incorporated by reference into this Agreement. By accepting this Agreement, you are also accepting the additional terms and conditions, if any, set forth therein.

10. GENERAL PROVISIONS

If you are located in the European Union and are using the Software in the European Union and not in the United States, then this Agreement will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the Republic of Austria (excluding its conflict of laws principles and the U.N. Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods) and you expressly agree that exclusive jurisdiction for any claim or dispute with Altova or relating in any way to your use of the Software resides in the Handelsgericht, Wien (Commercial Court, Vienna) and you further agree and expressly consent to the exercise of personal jurisdiction in the Handelsgericht, Wien (Commercial Court, Vienna) in connection with any such dispute or claim.

If you are located in the United States or are using the Software in the United States then this Agreement will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, USA (excluding its conflict of laws principles and the U.N. Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods) and you expressly agree that exclusive jurisdiction for any claim or dispute with Altova or relating in any way to your use of the Software resides in the federal or state courts of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts and you further agree and expressly consent to the exercise of personal jurisdiction in the federal or state courts of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts in connection with any such dispute or claim.

If you are located outside of the European Union or the United States and are not using the Software in the United States, then this Agreement will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the Republic of Austria (excluding its conflict of laws principles and the U.N. Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods) and you expressly agree that exclusive jurisdiction for any claim or dispute with Altova or relating in any way to your use of the Software resides in the Handelsgericht, Wien (Commercial Court, Vienna) and you further agree and expressly consent to the exercise of personal jurisdiction in the Handelsgericht Wien (Commercial Court, Vienna) in connection with any such dispute or claim. This Agreement will not be governed by the conflict of law rules of any jurisdiction or the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded.

This Agreement contains the entire agreement and understanding of the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes all prior written and oral understandings of the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof. Any notice or other communication given under this Agreement shall be in writing and shall have been properly given by either of us to the other if sent by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, or by overnight courier to the address shown on Altova's Web site for Altova and the address shown in Altova's records for you, or such other address as the parties may designate by notice given in the manner set forth above. This Agreement will bind and inure to the benefit of the parties and our respective heirs, personal and legal representatives, affiliates, successors and permitted assigns. The failure of either of us at any time to require performance of any provision hereof shall in no manner affect such party's right at a later time to enforce the same or any other term of this Agreement. This Agreement may be amended only by a document in writing signed by both of us. In the event of a breach or threatened breach of this Agreement by either party, the other shall have all applicable equitable as well as legal remedies. Each party is duly authorized and empowered to enter into and perform this Agreement. If, for any reason, any provision of this Agreement is held invalid or otherwise unenforceable, such invalidity or unenforceability shall not affect the remainder of this Agreement, and this Agreement shall continue in full force and effect to the fullest extent allowed by law. The parties knowingly and expressly consent to the foregoing terms and conditions.

Last updated: 2014-06-05

Index

A

Action Groups, 403

creating and editing, 404 using, 407

Actions, 320

Append Node, 380

Close Subpage, 349

Comment, 368

DB Begin Transaction, 335

DB Commit Transaction, 340

DB Execute, 337

DB Rollback Transaction, 341

Delete Node, 384

Execute On, 369

Execute REST Request, 397

Execute SOAP Request, 395

ExecuteOn, 441

for OnPageLoad, 51

Go to Page, 344

Go to Subpage, 345

Hide Keyboard, 353

If-Then, 399

If-Then-Else, 400

Insert Node, 376

Let User Choose Image, 365

Load from file, 388

Load/Save File, 388

Load/Save from SOAP, 390

Load/Save HTTP/FTP, 389

Loop, 401

Make Call To, 332

Message Box, 325

Open URL, 64, 333

Read Geolocation Data, 357

Reload, 387

Reset, 394

Save, 66, 392

Save Image to File, 366

Save to file, 388

Scroll to Bottom, 352

Send Email To, 326

Send SMS To, 331

setting for events, 40

Show Geolocation on Map, 362

Solution Execution, 350

Start Geolocation Tracking, 356

Stop Geolocation Tracking, 361

Update Display, 354

Update Node, 372

ADO.

as data connection interface, 542

setting up a connection, 549

Alias,

see Global Resources, 646

Altova extensions,

chart functions (see chart functions), 823

Altova Global Resources,

see under Global Resources, 646

Append Node action, 380

area chart features, 475

Assertion Message control, 226

Assertions, 226

B

bar chart features, 475

Base64-encoded images,

see under Images, 425

Button control,

OnButtonClicked, 229

C

Caches, 201

Caching, 162

candlestick chart features, 475

Chart control, 236

Charts, 443

3d settings, 484

adding legend, 473

appearance, 463

area chart features, 475

background color, 473

bar chart features, 475

candlestick chart features, 475

Charts, 443	DateTime (iOS), 256
color range, 478	Edit Field, 261
color schema, 478	Horizontal Line, 269
creating and configuring, 444	Image, 271
data selection, 447	Label, 277
data selection; 447	Radio Button, 283
data selection: simple, 451	Space, 296
defining colors, 478	Switch, 298
fonts, 485	Table, 303
gauge chart features, 475	Time, 310
grid lines, 480, 482, 483	Controls Pane, 132
line chart features, 475	Copyright information, 873
margins, 484	Copyright information, 673
-	
pie chart features, 475 removing legend, 473	_
series color, 478	D
sizes, 484	
tick size, 484	Data,
title, 473	persistent on client, 164
X-axis, 480	Data source,
Y-axis, 482	see Page data source, 28
Z-axis, 483	Data source tree,
Charts tutorial, 68, 82	modifying, 51
Check Box control, 240	Data sources, 74, 166
Client-side data storage, 164	HTTP/FTP, REST, SOAP, 177
Close Subpage action, 349	types of, 169
Combo Box,	Data storage on server, 162
adding and defining, 34	Data trees, 192
dropdown list definitions, 78	Database connection,
editing dropdown list, 59	reusing from Global Resources, 567
events and actions, 40	setting up, 542
source node of, 55	setup examples, 568
Combo Box control, 246	starting the wizard, 544
Comment action, 368	Database drivers,
Configurations,	overview, 546
of a global resource, 647	Database tutorial, 68
Configurations in global resources, 664	Databases, 536
Control actions, 40	actions for, 334
Control events, 40, 318	and auto-increment of fields, 538
and their actions, 318	and DB Execute action, 622
Controls,	and display of data in MobileTogether, 626
Assertion message, 226	and global resources, 663
Button, 229	and tables, 81, 87, 92
Chart, 236	as data sources, 538
Check Box, 240	committing transactions, 340
Combo Box, 246	editing DB data, 613
common context menu commands of, 222	enabling editing of, 87, 92
Date, 251	executing SQL statements, 337
Date, 231	

Databases, 536	candlestick chart features, 475
images in, 442	chart fonts, 485
NULL values, 392	charts colors, 478
OriginalRowSet, 538	charts sizes, 484
primary key values, 538	charts title, 473
rolling back transactions, 341	color of charts, 478
saving data to, 617	fonts in charts, 485
selecting data sources with SELECT statements, 610	gauge chart features, 475
selecting DB objects as data sources, 610	grid lines, 480, 482, 483
selecting tables as datasources, 610	line chart features, 475
starting transactions, 335	pie chart features, 475
DatabaseSpy,	X-axis settings, 480
3d charts, 484	Y-axis settings, 482
area chart features, 475	Z-axis settings, 483
bar chart features, 475	Delete Node action, 384
candlestick chart features, 475	Deploy to server, 47
chart background, 473	Deploying project to server,
chart colors, 478	files to deploy, 130
chart font options, 485	Deploying the project, 147
chart fonts, 485	Design file,
chart grid, 480, 482, 483	creating new, 25
chart legend, 473	Design steps, 15
chart title, 473	Distribution,
chart X-axis, 480	of Altova's software products, 873, 874, 876
chart Y-axis, 482	
chart Z-axis, 483	
charts sizes, 484	_
gauge chart features, 475	E
line chart features, 475	
pie chart features, 475	Edit Field control, 261
Date control, 251	Edit XPath/XQuery Expression Dialog, 502
DateTime control (iOS), 256	Email, 326
DB,	Embed XML in design, 160
see Databases, 536	End User License Agreement, 873
DB Begin Transaction action, 335	Evaluation period,
DB Commit Transaction action, 340	of Altova's software products, 873, 874, 876
DB data sources, 74	Events, 315
DB Execute action, 337	control events, 318
DB Query View, 127	page events, 316
DB Rollback Transaction action, 341	setting actions for, 40
DB transactions, 335, 340, 341	Execute On action, 369
Default file, 62	ExecuteOn, 441
Default file of data source trees, 197	Exif images,
Default XPath context node, 28	see under Images, 428
Defining,	Extension functions for MobileTogether, 509
3d settings, 484	
area chart features, 475	

bar chart features, 475

	settings for requests, 178
	Hyperlinking to solutions, 489
F	
1	
File DSN,	
setting up, 557	•
File locations for designer simulation, 667	IBM DB2,
File locations for server simulation, 670	connecting through ODBC, 574
Files Pane, 130	IBM DB2 for i,
Firebird,	connecting through ODBC, 580
Connecting through ODBC, 569	IBM Informix,
Formatting the design, 32	connecting through JDBC, 583
FTP,	If-Then action, 399
adding as page source, 177, 178	If-Then-Else action, 400
settings for requests, 178	Image actions, 364
	Image control, 271, 423
	Images, 37, 422
C	Base64, 428, 435
G	Base64 or URL, 423
	Base64-encoded, 425
gauge chart features, 475	changing URL of, 55
Geolocation actions, 355	Exif, 425, 428
Global Resources, 158, 646	file extension, 366
changing configurations, 664	in databases, 442
defining, 647	resizing, 441
defining database-type, 658	rotating, 441
defining file-type, 650	saving to file, 366
defining folder-type, 656	sources for, 423
using, 661, 663, 664	transforming, 441
Global Resources XML File, 647	transforming on server, 369
Global variables, 525	user-selected, 365, 435
dynamic, 530	Insert Node action, 376
local variables, 530	
static, 527	
user-defined, 533	I
Go to Page action, 344	J
Go to Subpage action, 345	IDDC
GUI,	JDBC, as data connection interface, 542
see User interface, 122	setting up a connection (Linux), 608
	setting up a connection (Linux), 608 setting up a connection (Mac OS), 608
	setting up a connection (Windows), 560
Н	setting up a connection (windows), 500 setting up an Oracle connection on Mac OS X Yosemite,
	setting up an Oracle connection on Mac OS X Tosemite,
Hide Keyboard action, 353	
Horizontal Line control, 269	

HTTP,

adding as page source, 177, 178

Label control, 277
Legal information, 873
Let User Choose Image action, 365
License,

information about, 873

License metering,

in Altova products, 875

line chart features, 475 Linking to solutions, 489 Linux,

deploying server execution files to, 606 setting up database connections on, 606 supported databases, 606

Local variables, 530 Localization, 156 Loop action, 401

M

Mac OS.

deploying server execution files to, 606 setting up database connections on, 606 supported databases, 606

Main Window,

description and features, 124

Make Call To action, 332

Message Box action, 325

Messages Pane, 140

Microsoft Access,

connecting through ADO, 549, 585

Microsoft SQL Server,

connecting through ADO, 587 connecting through ODBC, 591

Mixed-content elements,

serializing of, 523

MobileTogether,

system requirements, 11 terminology, 13

MobileTogether Client, 11
MobileTogether overview, 11

MobileTogether Server, 11

MTDMenu_Project_ListAll ExternalDatarRefs, 773 MySQL,

connecting through ODBC, 594

N

Namespaces, 157 Namespaces in the project, 200 New features, 6 Nodes,

creating new, 376, 380

O

OAuth in REST requests, 180 ODBC.

as data connection interface, 542 setting up a connection, 557

ODBC Drivers,

checking availability of, 557

OLE DB,

as data connection interface, 542

Open URL action, 64, 333 Options,

3d charts, 484

area chart features, 475

bar chart features, 475

candlestick chart features, 475

chart colors, 478

chart fonts, 485

chart grid, 480, 482, 483

chart legend, 473

chart title, 473

chart X-axis, 480

chart Y-axis, 482

chart Z-axis, 483

charts background, 473

charts sizes, 484

gauge chart features, 475

line chart features, 475

pie chart features, 475

Oracle database,

connecting through ODBC, 597

Overview Pane, 136

adding, 28
Page design, 218
Page Design View, 125
Page events, 316
and their actions, 316
Page properties, 219
Page sequence, 70
Page setup, 27
Page source link, 55
Page source trees, 192
context menus of, 204
importing data from file, 197
importing XML structure into, 195
read-only and editable, 197
structure of, 195
Page sources,
adding, 168
options, 175
root nodes of, 190
trees, their structure and data, 192
Page Sources actions, 385
Page Sources Pane,
creating a tree structure, 134
features of, 134
Page View settings, 125
Page-related actions, 342
Pages Pane, 128
Performance, 159
Persistent data, 164
pie chart features, 475
PostgreSQL,
connecting through ODBC, 602
Preview device,
selecting, 27
selection of, 125
Project simulation,
see Simulation, 44
Project structure, 70
Projects, 144
deploying, 147
localization of, 156

P

Page Controls, 132, 222

Page data source,

location of project files, 145 namespaces in, 157 properties, 151

R

Radio Button control, 283
Read Geolocation Data action, 357
Reload action, 387
Reset action, 394
REST,
 adding as page source, 177, 180
 settings for requests, 180
Root node in page source trees,
 context menus of, 204

S

Save action, 66, 392
Save Image to File action, 366
Saving data to default file, 66
Scroll to Bottom action, 352
Send Email To action, 326
Send SMS To action, 331
Server actions, 369
Server connection errors, 495
Settings,

3d charts, 484 area chart features, 475 bar chart features, 475 candlestick chart features, 475 chart background, 473 chart colors, 478 chart fonts, 485 chart grid, 480, 482, 483 chart legend, 473 chart title, 473 chart X-axis, 480 chart Y-axis, 482 chart Z-axis, 483 charts sizes, 484 gauge chart features, 475 line chart features, 475 pie chart features, 475

Show Geolocation on Map action, 362	adding, 32
Simulation, 666	Table control, 303
file locations (designer), 667	Tables, 408
file locations (server), 670	and databases, 81, 87, 92
in MobileTogether Designer, 667	context menu, 420
Messages Pane, 680	dy namic, 414
of designs with geolocation components, 676	properties, 417
on client, 674	repeating, 411
on server, 670	static, 409
results and causes, 57	Telephony, 332
running, 44, 57	Terminology, 13
SMS, 331	Testing the design,
SOAP,	see Simulation, 674
adding as page source, 177, 188	Text content of mixed-content elements, 523
settings for requests, 188	Time control, 310
Solution Execution action, 350	Top pages, 128
Solutions,	Transforming images, 441
minimize one and start another, 350	Tree data, 192
starting another after ending one, 350	default file for, 197
Source data,	importing data from file, 197
see Data sources, 166	manually entering, 197
Space control, 296	Tree nodes in page source trees,
SQL Server,	context menus of, 204
connecting through ADO, 549	Tree structure, 192
SQL statements, 337	about, 195
SQLite,	manually creating, 195
setting up a connection (Linux), 607	Trial run on client, 674
setting up a connection (Mac), 607	Tutorials, 22
setting up a connection (Windows), 564	Database and Charts tutorial, 68
Start Geolocation Tracking action, 356	file locations, 24, 50
Stop Geolocation Tracking action, 361	QuickStart (Part 1), 24
Styles & Properties Pane, 137	QuickStart (Part 2), 50
Sub pages, 128	
Suggested image file extension, 366	
Switch control, 298	11
Sybase,	U
connecting through JDBC, 604	Undete data actions 070
System DSN,	Update data actions, 370
setting up, 557	Update Display action, 354
System requirements, 11	Update Node action, 372
	User DSN,
	setting up, 557
т	User interface,
I	description of mechanisms, 122
Tab aulite 420	overview, 122
Tab splits, 128	User variables, 533
Tabbed pages, 128	User-defined XPath/XQuery functions, 520

Table,

V

Validate project, 43

W

WADL,

in REST requests, 180

Windows,

deploying server execution files to, 606

Workflow, 70

defined by sequence of top pages, 128

Workflow simulation,

see Simulation, 44

Working Directory setting on server,

and server simulation, 670

WSDL,

in SOAP requests, 188



XML trees, 192

XPath context node, 28

XPath expressions,

uses in MobileTogether designs, 17

XPath extension functions for MobileTogether, 509 XPath/XQuery,

FAQ, 523

XPath/XQuery Expression Builder, 502, 504

XPath/XQuery Expression Dialog, 502

XPath/XQuery Expression Evaluator, 502, 507

XPath/XQuery functions,

extension functions for MobileTogether, 509 user-defined, 520